Rhetoric

ARISTOTLE

384–322 BC

Rhetoric

Τέχνη ῥητορική

Translated from the Greek with AI (Claude) and edited

FORAGE
forage.com

Rhetoric · Aristotle (384–322 BC)

Translated from the Greek with AI (Claude) and edited. Parallel-text edition, Forage, October 2026. forage.com/aristotle/rhetoric

Greek text: *Aristotelis Ars rhetorica*, ed. Adolf Roemer, 2nd ed. (Leipzig: Teubner, 1898), read from the Internet Archive scan (archive.org/details/aristotelisarsrhooaris_0) (public domain) and proofread page by page against it; Roemer's critical apparatus is omitted, and square brackets mark words he regarded as spurious. English: translated from the Greek with AI (Claude), then edited for accuracy and consistency. Not reviewed by a human specialist. Free to reuse under CC BY-SA 4.0. Margin numbers are the standard Bekker page references.

The original text is in the public domain. This translation is free to share and adapt under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International license (CC BY-SA 4.0): creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0

Set in Source Serif 4, with Gentium Book Plus.

CONTENTS

Introduction vii

Book I 1

Chapter 1: Rhetoric and dialectic 1
Chapter 2: Definition of rhetoric and the three proofs 5
Chapter 3: The three kinds of speech 11
Chapter 4: The subjects of political deliberation 13
Chapter 5: Happiness and its parts 15
Chapter 6: The good and the advantageous 19
Chapter 7: The greater good 23
Chapter 8: The constitutions 28
Chapter 9: The fine and the excellences 30
Chapter 10: Why people do wrong 35
Chapter 11: Pleasure 38
Chapter 12: Wrongdoers and their victims 43
Chapter 13: Law, justice and equity 47
Chapter 14: Greater and lesser wrongs 50
Chapter 15: The non-technical proofs 51

Book II 57

Chapter 1: Character and emotion 57
Chapter 2: Anger 58
Chapter 3: Calmness 62
Chapter 4: Friendship and enmity 65
Chapter 5: Fear and confidence 68
Chapter 6: Shame and shamelessness 71
Chapter 7: Kindness 75
Chapter 8: Pity 76
Chapter 9: Indignation 78
Chapter 10: Envy 81
Chapter 11: Emulation 82
Chapter 12: The character of the young 84
Chapter 13: The character of the old 85
Chapter 14: The character of those in their prime 87
Chapter 15: Good birth 88
Chapter 16: Wealth 88
Chapter 17: Power and good fortune 89
Chapter 18: What all kinds of speech share 90
Chapter 19: The possible, fact, and magnitude 91
Chapter 20: Example 93
Chapter 21: Maxims 95
Chapter 22: Finding enthymemes 98

Chapter 23: The topics of enthymemes 101
Chapter 24: Apparent enthymemes 109
Chapter 25: Refutation 113
Chapter 26: Amplification, and the end of Book II 115

Book III 117
Chapter 1: Delivery and style 117
Chapter 2: Clarity and metaphor 119
Chapter 3: Frigidity 123
Chapter 4: Simile 124
Chapter 5: Speaking good Greek 126
Chapter 6: Amplitude of style 127
Chapter 7: Appropriateness 128
Chapter 8: Prose rhythm 129
Chapter 9: The running and the periodic style 131
Chapter 10: Witty sayings 134
Chapter 11: Before the eyes 136
Chapter 12: Styles for each kind of speech 140
Chapter 13: The parts of a speech 142
Chapter 14: The introduction 143
Chapter 15: Meeting prejudice 146
Chapter 16: Narration 148
Chapter 17: Proof 151
Chapter 18: Interrogation and jokes 154
Chapter 19: The epilogue 155

INTRODUCTION

"Rhetoric is the counterpart of dialectic." With that sentence Aristotle claims for persuasion the status of an art: a discipline with its own method, not a bag of courtroom tricks. Written as lectures for his school in Athens in the fourth century BC, the *Rhetoric* is the first systematic study of how speech moves people.

Book I defines rhetoric as the power to see the available means of persuasion in any case, and names three kinds of proof: the speaker's character, the hearer's emotions, and the argument itself, above all the enthymeme, the rhetorical syllogism. It then surveys what speakers in the assembly, at festivals and in the law courts need to know: the good, the useful, the noble, justice and wrongdoing. Book II is a study of human psychology, with sharp portraits of anger, fear, shame, pity and envy, and of the young, the old and the rich; it ends with examples, maxims and the common topics of argument. Book III turns to style and arrangement: clarity, metaphor, prose rhythm, the parts of a speech.

The book shaped the teaching of rhetoric from Cicero and Quintilian to the present, and its account of the emotions is still read by philosophers and psychologists. The Greek text here is Adolf Roemer's edition of 1898.

Book I

What rhetoric is, the three kinds of proof, and the topics of political, ceremonial and forensic speech: the good, the noble, justice and wrongdoing.

CHAPTER 1: RHETORIC AND DIALECTIC

Rhetoric is an art like dialectic; the handbook writers neglect argument for appeals to emotion.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
1354a	Ἡ ῥητορική ἐστιν ἀντίστροφος τῇ διαλεκτικῇ· ἀμφότεραι γὰρ περὶ τοιούτων τινῶν εἰσιν ἃ κοινὰ τρόπον τινὰ ἁπάντων ἐστὶ γνωρίζειν καὶ οὐδεμιᾶς ἐπιστήμης ἀφωρισμένης. διὸ καὶ πάντες τρόπον τινὰ μετέχουσιν ἀμφοῖν· πάντες γὰρ μέχρι τινὸς καὶ ἐξετάζειν καὶ ὑπέχειν λόγον καὶ ἀπολογεῖσθαι καὶ κατηγορεῖν ἐγχειροῦσιν. τῶν μὲν οὖν πολλῶν οἱ μὲν εἰκῇ ταῦτα δρῶσιν, οἱ δὲ διὰ συνήθειαν ἀπὸ ἕξεως. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀμφοτέρως ἐνδέχεται, δῆλον ὅτι εἴη ἂν αὐτὰ καὶ ὁδοποιεῖν· δι' ὃ γὰρ ἐπιτυγχάνουσιν οἵ τε διὰ συνήθειαν καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, τὴν αἰτίαν θεωρεῖν ἐνδέχεται, τὸ δὲ τοιοῦτον ἤδη πάντες ἂν ὁμολογήσαιεν τέχνης ἔργον εἶναι.	Rhetoric is the counterpart of dialectic. Both are concerned with things that are, in a way, everyone's business to know, and that belong to no distinct science. That is why everyone, in a way, has a share in both. Up to a point, everyone tries to examine an argument and to uphold one, to defend themselves and to accuse. Most people do these things either at random or through a familiarity that comes from habit. Since both ways are possible, it is clear that these things could also be done methodically. We can study the cause that makes both kinds succeed, those who succeed through familiarity and those who succeed by chance. Everyone would at once agree that such study is the work of an art.
	νῦν μὲν οὖν οἱ τὰς τέχνας τῶν λόγων συντιθέντες ὀλίγον πεποιήκασιν αὐτῆς μόριον· αἱ γὰρ πίστεις ἔντεχνόν ἐστι μόνον, τὰ δ' ἄλλα προσθῆκαι· οἱ δὲ περὶ μὲν ἐνθυμημάτων οὐδὲν λέγουσιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ σῶμα τῆς πίστεως, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος τὰ πλεῖστα πραγματεύονται· διαβολὴ γὰρ καὶ ἔλεος καὶ ὀργὴ καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πάθη τῆς ψυχῆς οὐ περὶ τοῦ πράγματός ἐστιν ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν δικαστήν.	Up to now, those who have put together arts of speaking have supplied only a small part of the subject. Proofs are the only thing in it that belongs to the art; everything else is accessory. Yet these writers say nothing about enthymemes, which are the body of proof, and spend most of their effort on matters outside the subject. Prejudice, pity, anger and similar emotions of the soul have nothing to do with the facts of the case; they are aimed at the juror.[1]
	ὥστ' εἰ περὶ πάσας ἦν τὰς κρίσεις καθάπερ ἐν ἐνίαις γε νῦν ἐστὶ τῶν πόλεων καὶ μάλιστα ταῖς εὐνομουμέναις, οὐδὲν ἂν εἶχον ὅ τι λέγωσιν· ἅπαντες γὰρ οἱ μὲν οἴονται δεῖν οὕτω τοὺς νόμους ἀγορεύειν, οἱ δὲ καὶ χρῶνται καὶ κωλύουσιν ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος λέγειν, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ, ὀρθῶς τοῦτο νομίζοντες· οὐ γὰρ δεῖ τὸν δικαστὴν διαστρέφειν εἰς ὀργὴν προάγοντας ἢ φθόνον ἢ ἔλεον· (ὅμοιον γὰρ κἂν εἴ τις ᾧ μέλλει χρῆσθαι κανόνι, τοῦτον ποιήσειε στρεβλόν)· ἔτι δὲ φανερὸν ὅτι τοῦ μὲν	So if all trials were conducted as they are now in some cities, especially the well-governed ones, these writers would have nothing to say. Everyone either thinks the laws ought to lay this down, or actually adopts it and forbids speaking outside the subject, as on the Areopagus. They are right to think so. One ought not to warp the juror by leading him into anger or envy or pity; that would be like making crooked the very ruler one is going to

1 An enthymeme is a rhetorical syllogism: an argument that draws a conclusion from premises the audience accepts. Aristotle defines it below (1356b).

GREEK

ἀμφισβητοῦντος οὐδέν ἐστιν ἔξω τοῦ δεῖξαι τὸ πρᾶγμα ὅτι ἔστιν ἢ οὐκ ἔστιν ἢ γέγονεν ἢ οὐ γέγονεν· εἰ δὲ μέγα ἢ μικρὸν ἢ δίκαιον ἢ ἄδικον, ὅσα μὴ ὁ νομοθέτης διώρικεν, αὐτὸν δή που τὸν δικαστὴν δεῖ γιγνώσκειν καὶ οὐ μανθάνειν παρὰ τῶν ἀμφισβητούντων.

μάλιστα μὲν οὖν προσήκει τοὺς ὀρθῶς κειμένους νόμους, ὅσα ἐνδέχεται, πάντα διορίζειν αὐτούς, καὶ ὅτι ἐλάχιστα καταλείπειν ἐπὶ τοῖς κρίνουσι, πρῶτον μὲν ὅτι ἕνα λαβεῖν καὶ ὀλίγους ῥᾷον ἢ πολλοὺς [1354b] εὖ φρονοῦντας καὶ δυναμένους νομοθετεῖν καὶ δικάζειν· ἔπειθ' αἱ μὲν νομοθεσίαι ἐκ πολλοῦ χρόνου σκεψαμένων γίνονται, αἱ δὲ κρίσεις ἐξ ὑπογυίου, ὥστε χαλεπὸν ἀποδιδόναι τὸ δίκαιον καὶ τὸ συμφέρον καλῶς τοὺς κρίνοντας. τὸ δὲ πάντων μέγιστον, ὅτι ἡ μὲν τοῦ νομοθέτου κρίσις οὐ κατὰ μέρος ἀλλὰ περὶ μελλόντων τε καὶ καθόλου ἐστίν, ὁ δ' ἐκκλησιαστὴς καὶ δικαστὴς ἤδη περὶ παρόντων καὶ ἀφωρισμένων κρίνουσιν· πρὸς οὓς καὶ τὸ φιλεῖν ἤδη καὶ τὸ μισεῖν καὶ τὸ ἴδιον συμφέρον συνήρτηται πολλάκις, ὥστε μηκέτι δύνασθαι θεωρεῖν ἱκανῶς τὸ ἀληθές, ἀλλ' ἐπισκοτεῖν τῇ κρίσει τὸ ἴδιον ἡδὺ ἢ λυπηρόν.

[1354b] περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἄλλων, ὥσπερ λέγομεν, δεῖ ὡς ἐλαχίστων ποιεῖν κύριον τὸν κριτήν, περὶ δὲ τοῦ γεγονέναι ἢ μὴ γεγονέναι, ἢ ἔσεσθαι ἢ μὴ ἔσεσθαι, ἢ εἶναι ἢ μὴ εἶναι, ἀνάγκη ἐπὶ τοῖς κριταῖς καταλείπειν· οὐ γὰρ δυνατὸν ταῦτα τὸν νομοθέτην προϊδεῖν. εἰ δὴ ταῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει, φανερὸν ὅτι τὰ ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος τεχνολογοῦσιν ὅσοι τἄλλα διορίζουσιν, οἷον τί δεῖ τὸ προοίμιον ἢ τὴν διήγησιν ἔχειν, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἕκαστον μορίων· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐν αὐτοῖς ἄλλο πραγματεύονται πλὴν ὅπως τὸν κριτὴν ποιόν τινα ποιήσωσιν, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐντέχνων πίστεων οὐδὲν δεικνύουσιν, τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ὅθεν ἄν τις γένοιτο ἐνθυμηματικός.

διὰ γὰρ τοῦτο τῆς αὐτῆς οὔσης μεθόδου περὶ τὰ δημηγορικὰ καὶ δικανικὰ καὶ καλλίονος καὶ πολιτικωτέρας τῆς δημηγορικῆς πραγματείας οὔσης ἢ τῆς περὶ τὰ συναλλάγματα, περὶ μὲν ἐκείνης οὐδὲν λέγουσι, περὶ δὲ τοῦ δικάζεσθαι πάντες πειρῶνται τεχνολογεῖν, ὅτι ἧττόν ἐστι πρὸ ἔργου τὰ ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος λέγειν ἐν τοῖς δημηγορικοῖς καὶ ἧττόν ἐστι κακοῦργον ἡ δημηγορία δικολογίας, ὅτι κοινότερον. ἐνταῦθα μὲν γὰρ ὁ κριτὴς

ENGLISH

use. It is also plain that the litigant has no business beyond showing that the fact is or is not so, has or has not happened. Whether it is important or trivial, just or unjust, insofar as the lawgiver has not defined it, is surely something the juror must decide for himself, not learn from the litigants.[2]

Above all, then, well-framed laws should themselves define everything they can and leave as little as possible to those who judge. First, it is easier to find one or a few people than many [1354b] who are sensible and capable of making laws and judging cases. Next, laws are made after long consideration, while judgments are given on the spur of the moment, so it is hard for those judging to assign what is just and advantageous well. Most important of all, the lawgiver's judgment is not about particular cases but about what is future and universal. The member of the assembly and the juror, by contrast, judge cases that are present and definite. With these, affection and hatred and private advantage are often bound up. As a result, they can no longer see the truth adequately, and their own pleasure or pain clouds their judgment.

On the other matters, as we say, the judge should be given authority over as few as possible. But whether something has happened or not, will happen or not, is so or is not, must be left to the judges, since the lawgiver cannot foresee these things. If this is so, it is clear that those who lay down rules about other things are writing treatises on matters outside the subject. These are rules about what the introduction or the narration should contain, for instance, and each of the other parts. In all of this they are concerned with nothing except how to put the judge into a certain frame of mind. About the technical proofs they show nothing, and those are what would make someone skilled at enthymemes.

For this reason they say nothing about political speaking, although the method is the same for political and forensic speeches. Political speaking is also a finer and more statesmanlike business than speaking about private dealings. Yet all of them try to write treatises on litigation. The reason is that speaking outside the subject serves less purpose in political speeches. Political oratory is

2 The Areopagus was Athens' ancient council and court on the Hill of Ares, which tried homicide cases. Ordinary Athenian courts were large panels of citizen jurors who also acted as judges, with no professional judge presiding.

GREEK

περὶ οἰκείων κρίνει, ὥστ' οὐδὲν ἄλλο δεῖ πλὴν ἀποδεῖξαι ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει ὥς φησιν ὁ συμβουλεύων· ἐν δὲ τοῖς δικανικοῖς οὐχ ἱκανὸν τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ πρὸ ἔργου ἐστὶν ἀναλαβεῖν τὸν ἀκροατήν· περὶ ἀλλοτρίων γὰρ ἡ κρίσις, ὥστε πρὸς τὸ αὑτῶν σκοπούμενοι καὶ πρὸς χάριν ἀκροώμενοι διδόασι τοῖς ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ κρίνουσιν.

1355a διὸ καὶ πολλαχοῦ, ὥσπερ πρότερον εἴπομεν, ὁ νόμος κωλύει λέγειν ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος· ἐκεῖ δ' αὐτοὶ οἱ κριταὶ τοῦτο τηροῦσιν ἱκανῶς. ἐπεὶ δὲ φανερόν ἐστιν ὅτι ἡ μὲν ἔντεχνος μέθοδος περὶ τὰς πίστεις ἐστίν, ἡ δὲ πίστις ἀπόδειξίς τις· (τότε γὰρ πιστεύομεν μάλιστα ὅταν ἀποδεδεῖχθαι ὑπολάβωμεν,) ἔστι δ' ἀπόδειξις ῥητορικὴ ἐνθύμημα, καὶ ἔστι τοῦτο ὡς εἰπεῖν ἁπλῶς κυριώτατον τῶν πίστεων, τὸ δ' ἐνθύμημα συλλογισμός τις, περὶ δὲ συλλογισμοῦ ὁμοίως ἅπαντος τῆς διαλεκτικῆς ἐστιν ἰδεῖν, ἢ αὐτῆς ὅλης ἢ μέρους τινός, δῆλον [δ'] ὅτι ὁ μάλιστα τοῦτο δυνάμενος θεωρεῖν, ἐκ τίνων καὶ πῶς γίνεται συλλογισμός, οὗτος καὶ ἐνθυμηματικὸς ἂν εἴη μάλιστα, προσλαβὼν περὶ ποῖά τέ ἐστι τὸ ἐνθύμημα καὶ τίνας ἔχει διαφορὰς πρὸς τοὺς λογικοὺς συλλογισμούς.

τό τε γὰρ ἀληθὲς καὶ τὸ ὅμοιον τῷ ἀληθεῖ τῆς αὐτῆς ἐστι δυνάμεως ἰδεῖν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι πρὸς τὸ ἀληθὲς πεφύκασιν ἱκανῶς καὶ τὰ πλείω τυγχάνουσι τῆς ἀληθείας· διὸ πρὸς τὰ ἔνδοξα στοχαστικῶς ἔχειν τοῦ ὁμοίως ἔχοντος καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀλήθειάν ἐστιν. ὅτι μὲν οὖν τὰ ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος οἱ ἄλλοι τεχνολογοῦσι, καὶ διότι μᾶλλον ἀπονενεύκασι πρὸς τὸ δικολογεῖν, φανερόν· χρήσιμος δέ ἐστιν ἡ ῥητορικὴ διά τε τὸ φύσει εἶναι κρείττω τἀληθῆ καὶ τὰ δίκαια τῶν ἐναντίων, ὥστε ἐὰν μὴ κατὰ τὸ προσῆκον αἱ κρίσεις γίγνωνται, ἀνάγκη δι' αὐτῶν ἡττᾶσθαι. τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἄξιον ἐπιτιμήσεως.

ἔτι δὲ πρὸς ἐνίους οὐδ' εἰ τὴν ἀκριβεστάτην ἔχοιμεν ἐπιστήμην, ῥᾴδιον ἀπ' ἐκείνης πεῖσαι λέγοντας· διδασκαλίας γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κατὰ τὴν ἐπιστήμην λόγος, τοῦτο δὲ ἀδύνατον, ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη διὰ τῶν κοινῶν ποιεῖσθαι τὰς πίστεις καὶ τοὺς λόγους, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς

ENGLISH

also less open to sharp practice than forensic pleading, because it is more a matter of common concern. In the assembly the judge is judging his own affairs, so nothing more is needed than to prove that things are as the adviser says. In forensic speeches this is not enough, and it pays to win the hearer over. There the judgment is about other people's affairs. So the jurors look to their own interest and listen for their own gratification, and they give themselves over to the litigants instead of judging.

That is why in many places, as we said earlier, the law forbids speaking outside the subject; in the assembly the judges themselves guard against it well enough. Consider the following points, which are evident. The technical method is concerned with proofs. Proof is a kind of demonstration, since we are most convinced when we suppose that something has been demonstrated. Rhetorical demonstration is the enthymeme, and this is, in general, the most authoritative of the proofs. The enthymeme is a kind of syllogism. And examining every kind of syllogism alike belongs to dialectic, either to dialectic as a whole or to some part of it. It is clear, then, that whoever is best able to see what a syllogism is made from and how it comes about would also be the most skilled at enthymemes. He would only need to grasp in addition what sorts of things enthymemes are about and how they differ from logical syllogisms.

It belongs to the same capacity to see both what is true and what resembles the truth. Human beings are also naturally well enough equipped for the truth, and for the most part they attain it. So someone who is good at aiming at reputable opinions is also good at aiming at the truth. It is clear, then, that the others write treatises on matters outside the subject, and why they have leaned more toward forensic pleading. Rhetoric is useful, first, because what is true and what is just are by nature stronger than their opposites. So if judgments do not come out as they should, the true and the just must have been defeated through the speakers themselves, and that deserves blame.

Again, with some audiences, even if we had the most exact knowledge, it would not be easy to persuade them by speaking from it. Argument based on knowledge belongs to teaching, and teaching is impossible here. Proofs and arguments must in-

GREEK

ἐλέγομεν περὶ τῆς πρὸς τοὺς πολλοὺς ἐντεύξεως. ἔτι δὲ τἀναντία δεῖ δύνασθαι πείθειν, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς συλλογισμοῖς, οὐχ ὅπως ἀμφότερα πράττωμεν (οὐ γὰρ δεῖ τὰ φαῦλα πείθειν) ἀλλ' ἵνα μήτε λανθάνῃ πῶς ἔχει, καὶ ὅπως ἄλλου χρωμένου μὴ δικαίως [τοῖς λόγοις] αὐτοῖς λύειν ἔχωμεν. τῶν μὲν οὖν ἄλλων τεχνῶν οὐδεμία τἀναντία συλλογίζεται, ἡ δὲ διαλεκτικὴ καὶ ἡ ῥητορικὴ μόναι τοῦτο ποιοῦσιν· ὁμοίως γάρ εἰσιν ἀμφότεραι τῶν ἐναντίων.

τὰ μέντοι ὑποκείμενα πράγματα οὐχ ὁμοίως ἔχει, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ τἀληθῆ καὶ τὰ βελτίω τῇ φύσει εὐσυλλογιστότερα καὶ πιθανώτερα ὡς ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἄτοπον εἰ τῷ σώματι μὲν αἰσχρὸν μὴ δύνασθαι βοηθεῖν ἑαυτῷ, 1355b λόγῳ δ' οὐκ αἰσχρόν· ὃ μᾶλλον ἴδιόν ἐστιν ἀνθρώπου τῆς τοῦ σώματος χρείας. εἰ δ' ὅτι μεγάλα βλάψειεν ἂν ὁ χρώμενος ἀδίκως τῇ τοιαύτῃ δυνάμει τῶν λόγων, τοῦτό γε κοινόν ἐστι κατὰ πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν πλὴν ἀρετῆς, καὶ μάλιστα κατὰ τῶν χρησιμωτάτων, οἷον ἰσχύος ὑγιείας πλούτου στρατηγίας· τούτοις γὰρ ἄν τις ὠφελήσειεν τὰ μέγιστα χρώμενος δικαίως καὶ βλάψειεν ἀδίκως.

1355b ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐκ ἔστιν οὔτε ἑνός τινος γένους ἀφωρισμένου ἡ ῥητορική, ἀλλὰ καθάπερ ἡ διαλεκτική, καὶ ὅτι χρήσιμος, φανερόν, καὶ ὅτι οὐ τὸ πεῖσαι ἔργον αὐτῆς, ἀλλὰ τὸ ἰδεῖν τὰ ὑπάρχοντα πιθανὰ περὶ ἕκαστον, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἄλλαις τέχναις πάσαις (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἰατρικῆς τὸ ὑγιᾶ ποιῆσαι, ἀλλὰ μέχρι οὗ ἐνδέχεται, μέχρι τούτου προαγαγεῖν.

ἔστιν γὰρ καὶ τοὺς ἀδυνάτους μεταλαβεῖν ὑγιείας ὅμως θεραπεῦσαι καλῶς) πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ὅτι τῆς αὐτῆς τό τε πιθανὸν καὶ τὸ φαινόμενον ἰδεῖν πιθανόν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς διαλεκτικῆς συλλογισμόν τε καὶ φαινόμενον συλλογισμόν (ἡ γὰρ σοφιστικὴ οὐκ ἐν τῇ δυνάμει ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ προαιρέσει· πλὴν ἐνταῦθα μὲν ἔσται ὁ μὲν κατὰ τὴν ἐπιστήμην ὁ δὲ κατὰ τὴν προαίρεσιν ῥήτωρ, ἐκεῖ δὲ σοφιστὴς μὲν κατὰ τὴν προαίρεσιν, διαλεκτικὸς δὲ οὐ κατὰ τὴν προαίρεσιν ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὴν δύναμιν) περὶ δὲ αὐτῆς ἤδη τῆς μεθόδου πειρώμεθα λέγειν, πῶς τε καὶ ἐκ τίνων δυνησόμεθα τυγχάνειν τῶν προκειμένων. πάλιν οὖν οἷον ἐξ ὑπαρχῆς ὁρισάμενοι αὐτὴν τίς ἐστι, λέγωμεν τὰ λοιπά.

ENGLISH

stead be built from common notions, as we said in the *Topics* about dealing with the general public. Again, one must be able to argue persuasively for opposite conclusions, just as in syllogisms. The point is not that we should actually do both, since one must not persuade people of what is bad. The point is that we should not miss how the matter stands, and that if someone else uses [the arguments] unjustly, we can refute them ourselves. None of the other arts draws conclusions on both sides; only dialectic and rhetoric do this, since both deal equally with opposites.

The underlying facts, however, are not equally balanced. What is true and what is better is always, generally speaking, easier to argue for and more persuasive by nature. Besides, it would be absurd if it were shameful to be unable to defend oneself with one's body, 1355b but not shameful to be unable to do so with speech, which is more distinctive of a human being than the use of the body. Someone may object that a person who uses this power of speech unjustly could do great harm. But this objection applies to all good things except excellence, and above all to the most useful ones, such as strength, health, wealth and generalship. Used justly, these can do the greatest good; used unjustly, the greatest harm.

Several things are clear, then. Rhetoric does not belong to any single defined genus but is like dialectic, and it is useful. Its function is not to persuade but to see the available means of persuasion in each case. The same holds in all the other arts too (it is not the function of medicine to make someone healthy, but to bring him as far toward health as is possible.

Even those who cannot recover their health can still be treated well.) It is also clear that the same art sees both what is persuasive and what appears persuasive. In dialectic, likewise, the same art sees both a syllogism and an apparent syllogism. (What makes sophistry is not the capacity but the choice. The difference is that here one person will be a rhetorician by virtue of knowledge and another by virtue of choice. There, a sophist is one by virtue of choice, and a dialectician is one not by virtue of choice but by virtue of capacity.) Let us now try to discuss the method itself: how, and from what, we will be able to achieve our aims. So

GREEK	ENGLISH
	let us define again what rhetoric is, as if starting from the beginning, and then say the rest.

CHAPTER 2: DEFINITION OF RHETORIC AND THE THREE PROOFS

Rhetoric is defined; proof comes from the speaker's character, the hearer's emotions and the argument itself.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστω δὴ ῥητορικὴ δύναμις περὶ ἕκαστον τοῦ θεωρῆσαι τὸ ἐνδεχόμενον πιθανόν. τοῦτο γὰρ οὐδεμιᾶς ἑτέρας ἐστὶ τέχνης ἔργον· τῶν γὰρ ἄλλων ἑκάστη περὶ τὸ αὐτῇ ὑποκείμενόν ἐστιν διδασκαλικὴ καὶ πειστική, οἷον ἰατρικὴ περὶ ὑγιεινῶν καὶ νοσερῶν καὶ γεωμετρία περὶ τὰ συμβεβηκότα πάθη τοῖς μεγέθεσι καὶ ἀριθμητικὴ περὶ ἀριθμῶν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ τῶν τεχνῶν καὶ ἐπιστημῶν· ἡ δὲ ῥητορικὴ περὶ τοῦ δοθέντος ὡς εἰπεῖν δοκεῖ δύνασθαι θεωρεῖν τὸ πιθανόν, διὸ καί φαμεν αὐτὴν οὐ περί τι γένος ἴδιον ἀφωρισμένον ἔχειν τὸ τεχνικόν. τῶν δὲ πίστεων αἱ μὲν ἄτεχνοί εἰσιν αἱ δ' ἔντεχνοι.	Let rhetoric be the power to see, in each case, the available means of persuasion. This is the function of no other art. Each of the others teaches and persuades about its own subject matter. Medicine does so about what makes for health and sickness, geometry about the properties of magnitudes, and arithmetic about numbers, and the same goes for the rest of the arts and sciences. But rhetoric seems able to see what is persuasive about practically any subject put before it. That is why we say that its technical side is not concerned with any special, defined genus. Of the proofs, some are non-technical, others technical.[3]
ἄτεχνα δὲ λέγω ὅσα μὴ δι' ἡμῶν πεπόρισται ἀλλὰ προϋπῆρχεν, οἷον μάρτυρες βάσανοι συγγραφαὶ καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα, ἔντεχνα δὲ ὅσα διὰ τῆς μεθόδου καὶ δι' ἡμῶν κατασκευασθῆναι δυνατόν, ὥστε δεῖ τούτων τοῖς μὲν χρήσασθαι τὰ δὲ εὑρεῖν. 1356a τῶν δὲ διὰ τοῦ λόγου πορι̣ζομένων πίστεων τρία εἴδη ἐστίν· αἱ μὲν γάρ εἰσιν ἐν τῷ ἤθει τοῦ λέγοντος, αἱ δὲ ἐν τῷ τὸν ἀκροατὴν διαθεῖναί πως, αἱ δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ λόγῳ διὰ τοῦ δεικνύναι ἢ φαίνεσθαι δεικνύναι. διὰ μὲν οὖν τοῦ ἤθους, ὅταν οὕτω λεχθῇ ὁ λόγος ὥστε ἀξιόπιστον ποιῆσαι τὸν λέγοντα· τοῖς γὰρ ἐπιεικέσι πιστεύομεν μᾶλλον καὶ θᾶττον, περὶ πάντων μὲν ἁπλῶς, ἐν οἷς δὲ τὸ ἀκριβὲς μή ἐστιν ἀλλὰ τὸ ἀμφιδοξεῖν, καὶ παντελῶς.	By non-technical I mean those that we have not supplied but that were already there: witnesses, testimony under torture, contracts and the like. By technical I mean those that can be constructed by method and by us. So the former only need to be used, while the latter must be found. 1356a The proofs supplied through speech are of three kinds. Some lie in the character of the speaker, some in putting the hearer into a certain state, and some in the argument itself, through demonstrating or appearing to demonstrate. Proof comes through character when the speech is delivered so as to make the speaker worthy of belief. We trust decent people more, and more readily, on all subjects in general. Where there is no certainty and room for doubt, we trust them completely.[4]
1356a δεῖ δὲ καὶ τοῦτο συμβαίνειν διὰ τοῦ λόγου, ἀλλὰ μὴ διὰ τοῦ προδεδοξάσθαι ποιόν τινα εἶναι τὸν λέγοντα· † οὐ γὰρ ὥσπερ ἔνιοι τῶν τεχνολογούντων τιθέασιν ἐν τῇ τέχνῃ καὶ τὴν ἐπιείκειαν τοῦ λέγοντος ὡς οὐδὲν συμβαλλομένην πρὸς τὸ πιθανόν, ἀλλὰ σχεδὸν ὡς εἰπεῖν κυριωτάτην ἔχει πίστιν τὸ ἦθος. διὰ δὲ τῶν ἀκροατῶν, ὅταν εἰς πάθος ὑπὸ τοῦ λόγου προαχθῶσιν· οὐ γὰρ ὁμοίως ἀποδίδομεν τὰς κρίσεις λυπούμενοι καὶ χαίροντες ἢ φιλοῦντες καὶ μισοῦντες· πρὸς ὃ καὶ μόνον πειρᾶσθαί	But this too must come about through the speech, not through a prior opinion that the speaker is a certain kind of person. Some writers of handbooks lay down in their art that the speaker's decency contributes nothing to persuasiveness, but this is not so. On the contrary, character is, one might almost say, the most authoritative proof. Proof comes through the hearers when the speech leads them into emotion. We do not give our judgments

3 "Technical" proofs are those the art of rhetoric itself produces. "Non-technical" ones, such as witnesses or contracts, exist independently and are simply used.

4 These three proofs, character, emotion and the argument itself, are the Greek *ēthos*, *pathos* and *logos*.

GREEK	ENGLISH
φαμεν πραγματεύεσθαι τοὺς νῦν τεχνολογοῦντας. περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων δηλωθήσεται καθ' ἕκαστον, ὅταν περὶ τῶν παθῶν λέγωμεν· διὰ δὲ τοῦ λόγου πιστεύουσιν, ὅταν ἀληθὲς ἢ φαινόμενον δείξωμεν ἐκ τῶν περὶ ἕκαστα πιθανῶν.	in the same way when we are pained as when we are pleased, or when we love as when we hate. This, we say, is the only thing that present-day handbook writers try to deal with. These matters will be explained one by one when we discuss the emotions. People are persuaded through the argument itself when we show what is true, or what appears true, from whatever is persuasive in each case.
ἐπεὶ δ' αἱ πίστεις διὰ τούτων εἰσί, φανερὸν ὅτι ταύτας [τὰ τρία] ἐστὶν λαβεῖν τοῦ συλλογίσασθαι δυναμένου καὶ τοῦ θεωρῆσαι περὶ τὰ ἤθη καὶ περὶ τὰς ἀρετὰς καὶ τρίτον τοῦ περὶ τὰ πάθη, τί τε ἕκαστόν ἐστιν τῶν παθῶν καὶ ποῖόν τι, καὶ ἐκ τίνων ἐγγίνεται καὶ πῶς, ὥστε συμβαίνει τὴν ῥητορικὴν οἷον παραφυές τι τῆς διαλεκτικῆς εἶναι καὶ τῆς περὶ τὰ ἤθη πραγματείας, ἣν δίκαιόν ἐστι προσαγορεύειν πολιτικήν.	Since proofs come about through these means, it is clear who can grasp them [the three]. It is someone who can reason syllogistically and can study characters and excellences, and, third, the emotions. He must understand what each emotion is and what kind of thing it is, and from what causes and how it arises. So it turns out that rhetoric is a kind of offshoot of dialectic and of the study of character, which it is right to call politics.
διὸ καὶ ὑποδύεται ὑπὸ τὸ σχῆμα τὸ τῆς πολιτικῆς ἡ ῥητορικὴ καὶ οἱ ἀντιποιούμενοι ταύτης τὰ μὲν δι' ἀπαιδευσίαν τὰ δὲ δι' ἀλαζονείαν τὰ δὲ καὶ δι' ἄλλας ἀνθρωπικὰς αἰτίας· ἔστι γὰρ μόριόν τι τῆς διαλεκτικῆς καὶ ὁμοία, καθάπερ καὶ ἀρχόμενοι εἴπομεν· περὶ οὐδενὸς γὰρ ὡρισμένου οὐδετέρα αὐτῶν ἐστιν ἐπιστήμη, πῶς ἔχει, ἀλλὰ δυνάμεις τινὲς τοῦ πορίσαι λόγους. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς δυνάμεως αὐτῶν, καὶ πῶς ἔχουσι πρὸς ἀλλήλας, εἴρηται σχεδὸν ἱκανῶς.	That is why rhetoric slips into the guise of politics. So do those who lay claim to it, partly from lack of education, partly from pretension, and partly for other human reasons. For rhetoric is a part of dialectic and resembles it, as we said at the start. Neither of them is a science of how things stand in any defined subject. Both are capacities for supplying arguments. About their capacity, then, and how they relate to each other, enough has pretty much been said.
τῶν δὲ διὰ τοῦ δεικνύναι ἢ φαίνεσθαι δεικνύναι, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς διαλεκτικοῖς 1356b τὸ μὲν ἐπαγωγή ἐστιν τὸ δὲ συλλογισμὸς τὸ δὲ φαινόμενος συλλογισμός, καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὁμοίως· ἔστιν γὰρ τὸ μὲν παράδειγμα ἐπαγωγή, τὸ δ' ἐνθύμημα συλλογισμός, ⟨τὸ δὲ φαινόμενον ἐνθύμημα φαινόμενος συλλογισμός⟩ καλῶ δ' ἐνθύμημα μὲν ῥητορικὸν συλλογισμόν, παράδειγμα δὲ ἐπαγωγὴν ῥητορικήν. πάντες δὲ τὰς πίστεις ποιοῦνται διὰ τοῦ δεικνύναι ἢ παραδείγματα λέγοντες ἢ ἐνθυμήματα, καὶ παρὰ ταῦτα οὐδέν· ὥστ' εἴπερ καὶ ὅλως ἀνάγκη ⟨ἢ⟩ συλλογιζόμενον ἢ ἐπάγοντα δεικνύναι ὁτιοῦν [ἢ ὁντινοῦν] (δῆλον δ' ἡμῖν τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἀναλυτικῶν), ἀναγκαῖον ἑκάτερον αὐτῶν ἑκατέρῳ τούτων τὸ αὐτὸ εἶναι.	Now for the proofs that work through demonstrating or appearing to demonstrate. In dialectic 1356b there is induction, syllogism and apparent syllogism, and it is the same here. The example is an induction, the enthymeme a syllogism, ⟨and the apparent enthymeme an apparent syllogism⟩. I call the enthymeme a rhetorical syllogism and the example a rhetorical induction. Everyone who produces proofs by demonstration does so by stating either examples or enthymemes, and by nothing besides these. So if it is necessary in general to demonstrate anything [or anyone] either by syllogism or by induction (and this is clear to us from the *Analytics*), then example and enthymeme must be the same as induction and syllogism respectively.[5]
1356b τίς δ' ἐστὶν διαφορὰ παραδείγματος καὶ ἐνθυμήματος, φανερὸν ἐκ τῶν τοπικῶν, (ἐκεῖ γὰρ περὶ συλλογισμοῦ καὶ	The difference between example and enthymeme is clear from the *Topics*, where syllogism and in-

5 Angle brackets ⟨ ⟩ mark words that the editor, Roemer, added to the text of the manuscripts; square brackets mark words he thought spurious.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐπαγωγῆς εἴρηται πρότερον), ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν καὶ ὁμοίων δείκνυσθαι ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει ἐκεῖ μὲν ἐπαγωγή ἐστιν ἐνταῦθα δὲ παράδειγμα, τὸ δὲ τινῶν ὄντων ἕτερόν τι διὰ ταῦτα συμβαίνειν παρὰ ταῦτα τῷ ταῦτα εἶναι ἢ καθόλου ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἐκεῖ μὲν συλλογισμὸς ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἐνθύμημα καλεῖται. φανερὸν δὲ καὶ ὅτι καὶ ἑκάτερον ἔχει ἀγαθὸν τὸ εἶδος τῆς ῥητορείας· καθάπερ γὰρ καὶ ἐν τοῖς μεθοδικοῖς εἴρηται, καὶ ἐν τούτοις ὁμοίως ἔχει. εἰσὶν γὰρ αἱ μὲν παραδειγματώδεις ῥητορεῖαι αἱ δὲ ἐνθυμηματικαί, καὶ ῥήτορες ὁμοίως οἱ μὲν παραδειγματώδεις οἱ δὲ ἐνθυμηματικοί. πιθανοὶ μὲν οὖν οὐχ ἧττον οἱ λόγοι οἱ διὰ τῶν παραδειγμάτων, θορυβοῦνται δὲ μᾶλλον οἱ ἐνθυμηματικοί.	duction were discussed earlier. Showing that something is so on the basis of many similar cases is called induction there and example here. Suppose that, when certain things are so, something else follows from them, beyond them, because they are so, either universally or for the most part. That is called a syllogism there and an enthymeme here. It is also clear that each kind of rhetoric has its merits, since what was said in the *Methodics* applies here as well. Some rhetorical speeches rely on examples, others on enthymemes, and in the same way some orators favor examples and others enthymemes. Speeches that use examples are no less persuasive, but those that use enthymemes draw louder applause.[6]
τὴν δ’ αἰτίαν αὐτῶν, καὶ πῶς ἑκατέρῳ χρηστέον, ἐροῦμεν ὕστερον· νῦν δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων μᾶλλον διορίσωμεν καθαρῶς. ἐπεὶ γὰρ τὸ πιθανὸν τινὶ πιθανόν ἐστι, καὶ τὸ μὲν εὐθὺς ὑπάρχει δι’ αὑτὸ πιθανὸν καὶ πιστὸν τὸ δὲ τῷ δείκνυσθαι δοκεῖν διὰ τοιούτων, οὐδεμία δὲ τέχνη σκοπεῖ τὸ καθ’ ἕκαστον, οἷον ἡ ἰατρικὴ τί Σωκράτει τὸ ὑγιεινόν ἐστιν ἢ Καλλίᾳ, ἀλλὰ τί τῷ τοιῷδε ἢ τοῖς τοιοῖσδε· (τοῦτο γὰρ ἔντεχνον, τὸ δὲ καθ’ ἕκαστον ἄπειρον καὶ οὐκ ἐπιστητόν) οὐδὲ ἡ ῥητορικὴ τὸ καθ’ ἕκαστον ἔνδοξον θεωρήσει, οἷον Σωκράτει ἢ Ἱππίᾳ, ἀλλὰ τὸ τοιοῖσδε, καθάπερ καὶ ἡ διαλεκτική. καὶ γὰρ ἐκείνη συλλογίζεται οὐκ ἐξ ὧν ἔτυχεν· (φαίνεται γὰρ ἄττα καὶ τοῖς παραληροῦσιν) ἀλλ’ ἐκείνη μὲν ἐκ τῶν λόγου δεομένων, ἡ δὲ ῥητορικὴ ἐκ τῶν ἤδη βουλεύεσθαι εἰωθότων.	We will discuss the cause of this later, and how each should be used. For now let us define these things themselves more clearly. What is persuasive is persuasive to someone. Some things are persuasive and credible immediately, in themselves, while others are so because they seem to be demonstrated through such things. No art studies the particular case. Medicine, for instance, does not study what is healthy for Socrates or for Callias, but for this kind of person or these kinds of people. That is what is technical, since particulars are infinite and cannot be known. Rhetoric likewise will not study what a particular person finds reputable, such as Socrates or Hippias, but what people of a given kind find reputable, and dialectic does the same. Dialectic does not draw conclusions from just anything, since even people who talk nonsense find some things plausible. It draws them from what calls for argument, and rhetoric draws them from what people are already used to deliberating about.
1357a ἔστιν δὲ τὸ ἔργον αὐτῆς περί τε τοιούτων περὶ ὧν βουλευόμεθα καὶ τέχνας μὴ ἔχομεν, καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀκροαταῖς οἳ οὐ δύνανται διὰ πολλῶν συνορᾶν οὐδὲ λογίζεσθαι πόρρωθεν. βουλευόμεθα δὲ περὶ τῶν φαινομένων ἐνδέχεσθαι ἀμφοτέρως ἔχειν· περὶ γὰρ τῶν ἀδυνάτων ἄλλως ἢ γενέσθαι ἢ ἔσεσθαι ἢ ἔχειν οὐδεὶς βουλεύεται οὕτως ὑπολαμβάνων· οὐδὲν γὰρ πλέον.	The function of rhetoric concerns things that we deliberate about but have no arts for. It is exercised before hearers of a kind who cannot take in many steps at once or follow reasoning from far back. We deliberate about things that seem capable of turning out either way. No one deliberates about things that could not have happened, or cannot happen in the future, or cannot be, otherwise, if he takes them to be so, since nothing is gained by it.
ἐνδέχεται δὲ συλλογίζεσθαι καὶ συνάγειν τὰ μὲν ἐκ συλλελογισμένων πρότερον, τὰ δ’ ἐξ ἀσυλλογίστων μὲν	There are two ways to reason and draw conclusions. One can start from what has already been

GREEK

δεομένων δὲ συλλογισμοῦ διὰ τὸ μὴ εἶναι ἔνδοξα, ἀνάγκη δὲ τούτων τὸ μὲν μὴ εἶναι εὐεπακολούθητον διὰ τὸ μῆκος (ὁ γὰρ κριτὴς ὑπόκειται εἶναι ἁπλοῦς), τὰ δὲ μὴ πιθανὰ διὰ τὸ μὴ ἐξ ὁμολογουμένων εἶναι μηδ' ἐνδόξων, ὥστ' ἀναγκαῖον τό τε ἐνθύμημα εἶναι καὶ τὸ παράδειγμα περί τε τῶν ἐνδεχομένων ὡς τὰ πολλὰ ἔχειν ἄλλως, τὸ μὲν παράδειγμα ἐπαγωγὴν τὸ δ' ἐνθύμημα συλλογισμόν, καὶ ἐξ ὀλίγων τε καὶ πολλάκις ἐλαττόνων ἢ ἐξ ὧν ὁ πρῶτος συλλογισμός· ἐὰν γὰρ ᾖ τι τούτων γνώριμον, οὐδὲ δεῖ λέγειν· αὐτὸς γὰρ τοῦτο προστίθησιν ὁ ἀκροατής, οἷον ὅτι Δωριεὺς στεφανίτην ἀγῶνα νενίκηκεν, ἱκανὸν γὰρ εἰπεῖν ὅτι Ὀλύμπια γὰρ νενίκηκεν, τὸ δ' ὅτι στεφανίτης τὰ Ὀλύμπια, οὐδὲ δεῖ προσθεῖναι· γιγνώσκουσι γὰρ πάντες.

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐστὶν ὀλίγα μὲν τῶν ἀναγκαίων περὶ ὧν οἱ ῥητορικοὶ συλλογισμοί εἰσι· (τὰ γὰρ πολλὰ περὶ ὧν αἱ κρίσεις καὶ αἱ σκέψεις, ἐνδέχεται καὶ ἄλλως ἔχειν· περὶ ὧν μὲν γὰρ πράττουσι, βουλεύονται καὶ σκοποῦσι, τὰ δὲ πραττόμενα πάντα τοιούτου γένους ἐστί, καὶ οὐδὲν ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης τούτων) τὰ δ' ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ συμβαίνοντα καὶ ἐνδεχόμενα ἐκ τοιούτων ἀνάγκη ἑτέρων συλλογίζεσθαι, τὰ δ' ἀναγκαῖα ἐξ ἀναγκαίων (δῆλον δ' ἡμῖν καὶ τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἀναλυτικῶν), φανερὸν ὅτι ἐξ ὧν τὰ ἐνθυμήματα λέγεται, τὰ μὲν ἀναγκαῖα ἔσται, τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, τὰ δ' ἐνθυμήματα ἐξ εἰκότων καὶ ἐκ σημείων, ὥστε ἀνάγκη τούτων ἑκάτερον ἑκατέρῳ ταὐτὸ εἶναι.

τὸ μὲν γὰρ εἰκός ἐστιν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ γινόμενον, οὐχ ἁπλῶς δὲ καθάπερ ὁρίζονταί τινες, ἀλλὰ τὸ περὶ τὰ ἐνδεχόμενα ἄλλως ἔχειν, οὕτως ἔχον πρὸς ἐκεῖνο πρὸς ὃ εἰκός, [1357b] ὡς τὸ καθόλου πρὸς τὸ κατὰ μέρος· τῶν δὲ σημείων τὸ μὲν οὕτως ἔχει ὡς τῶν καθ' ἕκαστόν τι πρὸς τὸ καθόλου, τὸ δὲ ὡς τῶν καθόλου τι πρὸς τὸ κατὰ μέρος. τούτων δὲ τὸ μὲν ἀναγκαῖον τεκμήριον, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνώνυμόν ἐστι κατὰ τὴν διαφοράν. ἀναγκαῖα μὲν οὖν λέγω ἐξ ὧν γίνεται συλλογισμός. διὸ καὶ τεκμήριον τὸ τοιοῦτον τῶν σημείων ἐστίν· ὅταν γὰρ μὴ ἐνδέχεσθαι οἴωνται λῦσαι τὸ λεχθέν, τότε φέρειν οἴονται

ENGLISH

established by syllogism. Or one can start from what has not been so established but needs a syllogism because it is not reputable. The first will necessarily be hard to follow because of its length, since the judge is assumed to be a simple person. The second will be unpersuasive, because it does not start from what is agreed or reputable. So the enthymeme and the example must be about things that can, for the most part, be otherwise, the example being an induction and the enthymeme a syllogism. They must also be drawn from few premises, often fewer than those of a primary syllogism. If any of these premises is well known, there is no need to state it, because the hearer supplies it himself. Suppose the point is that Dorieus has won a contest whose prize is a crown. It is enough to say that he has won at Olympia. There is no need to add that the Olympic prize is a crown, since everyone knows it.[7]

Few of the things that rhetorical syllogisms are about are necessary. Most of the things that judgments and inquiries concern could be otherwise. People deliberate and inquire about what they do, and actions are all of this kind; virtually none of them happens of necessity. What happens for the most part and is merely possible must be concluded from other things of the same kind, while necessary conclusions come from necessary premises (this too is clear to us from the *Analytics*). It is evident, then, that some of the premises from which enthymemes are drawn will be necessary, but most will hold only for the most part. Enthymemes are drawn from probabilities and from signs, so each of these two must correspond to one of those two kinds of premise.

A probability is what happens for the most part. It is not simply that, as some define it, but what holds among things that can be otherwise. It is related to the thing it makes probable [1357b] as the universal is to the particular. Of signs, one kind is related as a particular to the universal, the other as a universal to the particular. A necessary sign is a sure sign; the sign that is not necessary has no name of its own to mark the difference. By necessary I mean those from which a syllogism comes

6 The *Methodics* is a lost work of Aristotle.

7 Dorieus of Rhodes was a famous athlete of the late fifth century BC and a three-time Olympic champion. The prize at Olympia was a crown of olive leaves.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	τεκμήριον ὡς δεδειγμένον καὶ πεπερασμένον· τὸ γὰρ τέκμαρ καὶ πέρας ταὐτόν ἐστι κατὰ τὴν ἀρχαίαν γλῶτταν.	about. That is why this kind of sign is a sure sign. When people think that what they have said cannot be refuted, they believe they are offering a sure sign, something proved and brought to its limit. In the old language *tekmar* and 'limit' mean the same thing.[8]
1357b	ἔστιν δὲ τῶν σημείων τὸ μὲν ὡς τὸ καθ' ἕκαστον πρὸς τὸ καθόλου ὧδε, οἷον εἴ τις εἴπειεν σημεῖον εἶναι ὅτι οἱ σοφοὶ δίκαιοι, Σωκράτης γὰρ σοφὸς ἦν καὶ δίκαιος. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν σημεῖον, λυτὸν δέ, κἂν ἀληθὲς ᾖ τὸ εἰρημένον· ἀσυλλόγιστον γάρ. τὸ δέ, οἷον εἴ τις εἴπειεν σημεῖον ὅτι νοσεῖ, πυρέττει γάρ, ἢ τέτοκεν ὅτι γάλα ἔχει, ἀναγκαῖον. ὅπερ τῶν σημείων τεκμήριον μόνον ἐστίν· μόνον γάρ, ἂν ἀληθὲς ᾖ, ἄλυτόν ἐστιν. τὸ δὲ ὡς τὸ καθόλου πρὸς τὸ κατὰ μέρος ἔχον, οἷον εἴ τις εἴπειεν, ὅτι πυρέττει, σημεῖον εἶναι, πυκνὸν γὰρ ἀναπνεῖ. λυτὸν δὲ καὶ τοῦτο, κἂν ἀληθὲς ᾖ· ἐνδέχεται γὰρ καὶ μὴ πυρέττοντα πνευστιᾶν.	Here is a sign related as particular to universal. Someone might say it is a sign that the wise are just, since Socrates was wise and just. This is a sign, but it can be refuted even if the statement is true, because it does not form a syllogism. Another kind is necessary. Someone might say it is a sign that a person is ill, because he has a fever, or that a woman has given birth, because she has milk. This is the only kind of sign that is a sure sign, because it alone cannot be refuted if it is true. Here, finally, is a sign related as universal to particular. Someone might say it is a sign that a person has a fever, because he is breathing fast. This too can be refuted even if it is true, since a person can breathe hard without having a fever.
	τί μὲν οὖν εἰκός ἐστι καὶ τί σημεῖον καὶ τεκμήριον, καὶ τί διαφέρουσιν, εἴρηται μὲν καὶ νῦν, μᾶλλον δὲ φανερῶς καὶ περὶ τούτων, καὶ διὰ τίν' αἰτίαν τὰ μὲν ἀσυλλόγιστά ἐστι τὰ δὲ συλλελογισμένα, ἐν τοῖς ἀναλυτικοῖς διώρισται περὶ αὐτῶν.	We have now said, for present purposes, what a probability is, what a sign and a sure sign are, and how they differ. These matters are defined more clearly in the *Analytics*. That is also where we explain why some of them fail to form a syllogism and others do form one.
	παράδειγμα δὲ ὅτι μέν ἐστιν ἐπαγωγὴ καὶ περὶ ποῖα ἐπαγωγή, εἴρηται· ἔστι δὲ οὔτε ὡς μέρος πρὸς ὅλον οὔθ' ὡς ὅλον πρὸς μέρος οὔθ' ὡς ὅλον πρὸς ὅλον, ἀλλ' ὡς μέρος πρὸς μέρος, ὅμοιον πρὸς ὅμοιον, ὅταν ἄμφω μὲν ᾖ ὑπὸ τὸ αὐτὸ γένος, γνωριμώτερον δὲ θάτερον ᾖ θατέρου, παράδειγμά ἐστιν· οἷον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύει τυραννίδι Διονύσιος αἰτῶν τὴν φυλακήν· καὶ γὰρ Πεισίστρατος πρότερον ἐπιβουλεύων ᾔτει φυλακὴν καὶ λαβὼν ἐτυράννευσε, καὶ Θεαγένης ἐν Μεγάροις· καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσους ἴσασι, παράδειγμα πάντες γίγνονται τοῦ Διονυσίου, ὃν οὐκ ἴσασίν πω εἰ διὰ τοῦτο αἰτεῖ. πάντα δὲ ταῦτα ὑπὸ τὸ αὐτὸ καθόλου, ὅτι ὁ ἐπιβουλεύων τυραννίδι φυλακὴν αἰτεῖ. [1358a] ἐξ ὧν μὲν οὖν λέγονται αἱ δοκοῦσαι εἶναι πίστεις ἀποδεικτικαί, εἴρηται.	As for the example, we have said that it is an induction and what sort of things it is an induction about. It is not related as part to whole, or whole to part, or whole to whole, but as part to part, like to like. When both fall under the same genus but one is better known than the other, that is an example. Take the claim that Dionysius is plotting a tyranny because he is asking for a bodyguard. Pisistratus earlier asked for a bodyguard when he was plotting, and once he had it he became tyrant. Theagenes did the same at Megara. All the other cases people know of likewise serve as examples for Dionysius, about whom they do not yet know whether this is why he is asking. All of these fall under the same universal: whoever is plotting a tyranny asks for a bodyguard. [1358a] We have now stated the sources of the proofs that seem demonstrative.[9]

8 Aristotle links *tekmērion* ("sure sign") with the old poetic word *tekmar*, "goal" or "limit": a sure sign brings an argument to its end.
9 Pisistratus seized power at Athens in the sixth century BC and Theagenes at Megara in the seventh. Dionysius I became tyrant of Syracuse in 405 BC.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
1358a	τῶν δὲ ἐνθυμημάτων μεγίστη διαφορὰ καὶ μάλιστα λελη θυῖα σχεδὸν παρὰ πᾶσίν ἐστιν ἥπερ καὶ περὶ τὴν διαλεκτικὴν μέθοδον τῶν συλλογισμῶν· τὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν ἐστι κατὰ τὴν ῥητορικὴν ὥσπερ καὶ κατὰ τὴν διαλεκτικὴν μέθοδον τῶν συλλογισμῶν, τὰ δὲ κατ' ἄλλας τέχνας καὶ δυνάμεις, τὰς μὲν οὔσας τὰς δ' οὔπω κατειλημμένας· διὸ καὶ λανθάνουσίν τε [τοὺς ἀκροατὰς], καὶ μᾶλλον ἁπτόμενοι κατὰ τρόπον μεταβαίνουσιν ἐξ αὐτῶν. μᾶλλον δὲ σαφὲς ἔσται τὸ λεγόμενον διὰ πλειόνων ῥηθέν. λέγω γὰρ διαλεκτικούς τε καὶ ῥητορικοὺς συλλογισμοὺς εἶναι περὶ ὧν τοὺς τόπους λέγομεν.	Among enthymemes there is a very great difference that has escaped almost everyone's notice. The same difference exists among syllogisms in the method of dialectic. Some enthymemes belong to rhetoric, just as some syllogisms belong to the method of dialectic. Others belong to other arts and capacities, some of which already exist while others have not yet been established. That is why they go unnoticed [by the audience]. And the more properly people handle them, the further they move out of rhetoric and dialectic. What I mean will be clearer if I explain it at greater length. I say that dialectical and rhetorical syllogisms are those that our topics are about.[10]
	οὗτοι δ' εἰσὶν οἱ κοινοὶ περὶ δικαίων καὶ φυσικῶν καὶ περὶ πολιτικῶν καὶ περὶ πολλῶν διαφερόντων εἴδει, οἷον ὁ τοῦ μᾶλλον καὶ ἧττον τόπος· οὐδὲν γὰρ μᾶλλον ἔσται ἐκ τούτου συλλογίσασθαι ἢ ἐνθύμημα εἰπεῖν περὶ δικαίων ἢ περὶ φυσικῶν ἢ περὶ ὁτουοῦν· καίτοι ταῦτα εἴδει διαφέρει. ἴδια δὲ ὅσα ἐκ τῶν περὶ ἕκαστον εἶδος καὶ γένος προτάσεών ἐστιν, οἷον περὶ φυσικῶν εἰσι προτάσεις ἐξ ὧν οὔτε ἐνθύμημα οὔτε συλλογισμός ἐστι περὶ τῶν ἠθικῶν, καὶ περὶ τούτων ἄλλαι ἐξ ὧν οὐκ ἔσται περὶ τῶν φυσικῶν· ὁμοίως δὲ τοῦτ' ἔχει ἐπὶ πάντων.	These topics are the common ones. They apply alike to questions of justice, of nature, of politics, and of many things that differ in kind. An example is the topic of more and less. It is no more suited to forming a syllogism or stating an enthymeme about justice than about nature or anything else, even though these differ in kind. Specific topics are those drawn from the premises proper to each species and genus. For instance, there are premises about nature from which no enthymeme or syllogism about ethics can be formed. There are others about ethics from which none can be formed about nature. The same holds in every field.
	κἀκεῖνα μὲν οὐ ποιήσει περὶ οὐδὲν γένος ἔμφρονα· περὶ οὐδὲν γὰρ ὑποκείμενόν ἐστιν· ταῦτα δὲ ὅσῳ τις ἂν βελτίω ἐκλέγηται, [τὰς προτάσεις] λήσει ποιήσας ἄλλην ἐπιστήμην τῆς διαλεκτικῆς καὶ ῥητορικῆς· ἂν γὰρ ἐντύχῃ ἀρχαῖς, οὐκέτι διαλεκτικὴ οὐδὲ ῥητορικὴ ἀλλ' ἐκείνη ἔσται ἧς ἔχει τὰς ἀρχάς. ἔστι δὲ τὰ πλεῖστα τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων ἐκ τούτων τῶν εἰδῶν λεγόμενα τῶν κατὰ μέρος καὶ ἰδίων, ἐκ δὲ τῶν κοινῶν ἐλάττω. καθάπερ οὖν καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς, καὶ ἐνταῦθα διαιρετέον τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων τά τε εἴδη καὶ τοὺς τόπους ἐξ ὧν ληπτέον. λέγω δ' εἴδη μὲν τὰς καθ' ἕκαστον γένος ἰδίας προτάσεις, τόπους δὲ τοὺς κοινοὺς ὁμοίως πάντων.	The common topics will not make anyone knowledgeable about any genus, since they have no particular subject matter. But the better someone selects the specific ones [the premises], the more he will unwittingly produce a science different from dialectic and rhetoric. If he hits upon first principles, what he has will no longer be dialectic or rhetoric. It will be the science whose principles he has reached. Most enthymemes are drawn from these specific topics, the particular and special ones, and fewer from the common ones. So here too, as in the *Topics*, we must distinguish the specific topics of enthymemes and the topics from which they are to be drawn. By specific topics I mean the premises proper to each genus, and by topics those that are common to all alike.
	πρότερον οὖν εἴπωμεν περὶ τῶν εἰδῶν· πρῶτον δὲ λάβωμεν τὰ γένη τῆς ῥητορικῆς, ὅπως διελόμενοι πόσα	Let us speak first, then, about the specific topics. But before that let us take up the genres of rhetoric. Once we have determined how many there are,

10 A topic (literally a "place") is a standard line of argument, a place where arguments can be found that apply to many subjects.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐστίν, περὶ τούτων χωρὶς λαμβάνωμεν τὰ στοιχεῖα καὶ τὰς προτάσεις.	we can take up the elements and premises of each one separately.

CHAPTER 3: THE THREE KINDS OF SPEECH

Deliberative, forensic and ceremonial speech differ in hearer, time and end.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστιν δὲ τῆς ῥητορικῆς εἴδη τρία τὸν ἀριθμόν· τοσοῦτοι γὰρ καὶ οἱ ἀκροαταὶ τῶν λόγων ὑπάρχουσιν ὄντες. σύγκειται μὲν γὰρ ἐκ τριῶν ὁ λόγος, ἔκ τε τοῦ λέγοντος	Rhetoric has three kinds, because there are three kinds of hearers of speeches. A speech is made up of three things: the speaker,
1358b καὶ περὶ οὗ λέγει καὶ πρὸς ὅν, καὶ τὸ τέλος πρὸς τοῦτόν ἐστιν, λέγω δὲ τὸν ἀκροατήν. ἀνάγκη δὲ τὸν ἀκροατὴν ἢ θεωρὸν εἶναι ἢ κριτήν, κριτὴν δὲ ἢ τῶν γεγενημένων ἢ τῶν μελλόντων. ἔστιν δ' ὁ μὲν περὶ τῶν μελλόντων κρίνων οἷον ἐκκλησιαστής, ὁ δὲ περὶ τῶν γεγενημένων οἷον ὁ δικαστής, ὁ δὲ [περὶ] τῆς δυνάμεως [ὁ] θεωρός, ὥστ' ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἂν εἴη τρία γένη τῶν λόγων τῶν ῥητορικῶν, συμβουλευτικόν, δικανικόν, ἐπιδεικτικόν. συμβουλῆς δὲ τὸ μὲν προτροπὴ τὸ δὲ ἀποτροπή· ἀεὶ γὰρ καὶ οἱ ἰδίᾳ συμβουλεύοντες καὶ οἱ κοινῇ δημηγοροῦντες τούτων θάτερον ποιοῦσιν.	1358b the subject he speaks about, and the person he speaks to. Its end is directed at this last, by which I mean the hearer. The hearer must be either a spectator or a judge, and a judge either of what has happened or of what is to come. Someone judging about the future is, for instance, a member of the assembly. Someone judging about the past is, for instance, the juror. The one [concerned with] the speaker's skill is [the] spectator. So of necessity there are three genres of rhetorical speech: deliberative, forensic and ceremonial. Deliberation is either exhortation or dissuasion. Both those who advise in private and those who address the people in public always do one or the other.
1358b δίκης δὲ τὸ μὲν κατηγορία τὸ δ' ἀπολογία· τούτων γὰρ ὁποτερονοῦν ποιεῖν ἀνάγκη τοὺς ἀμφισβητοῦντας. ἐπιδεικτικοῦ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἔπαινος τὸ δὲ ψόγος. χρόνοι δὲ ἑκάστου τούτων εἰσὶ τῷ μὲν συμβουλεύοντι ὁ μέλλων· περὶ γὰρ τῶν ἐσομένων συμβουλεύει ἢ προτρέπων ἢ ἀποτρέπων, τῷ δὲ δικαζομένῳ ὁ γενόμενος· περὶ γὰρ τῶν πεπραγμένων ἀεὶ ὁ μὲν κατηγορεῖ ὁ δὲ ἀπολογεῖται, τῷ δ' ἐπιδεικτικῷ κυριώτατος μὲν ὁ παρών· κατὰ γὰρ τὰ ὑπάρχοντα ἐπαινοῦσιν ἢ ψέγουσιν πάντες, προσχρῶνται δὲ πολλάκις καὶ τὰ γενόμενα ἀναμιμνήσκοντες καὶ τὰ μέλλοντα προεικάζοντες.	A lawsuit is either accusation or defense, since the litigants must do one or the other. Ceremonial speech is either praise or blame. Each of these has its own time. For the adviser it is the future, since he advises about what will be, either exhorting or dissuading. For the litigant it is the past, since one party always accuses and the other defends concerning what has been done. For the ceremonial speaker the present matters most, since everyone praises or blames in view of things as they are. But speakers often draw on other times as well, reminding the audience of the past and making conjectures about the future.
τέλος δὲ ἑκάστοις τούτων ἕτερόν ἐστι, καὶ τρισὶν οὖσι τρία, τῷ μὲν συμβουλεύοντι τὸ συμφέρον καὶ βλαβερόν· ὁ μὲν γὰρ προτρέπων ὡς βέλτιον συμβουλεύει, ὁ δὲ ἀποτρέπων ὡς χεῖρον ἀποτρέπει, τὰ δ' ἄλλα πρὸς τοῦτο συμπαραλαμβάνει ἢ δίκαιον ἢ ἄδικον, ἢ καλὸν ἢ αἰσχρόν· τοῖς δὲ δικαζομένοις τὸ δίκαιον καὶ τὸ ἄδικον, τὰ δ' ἄλλα καὶ οὗτοι συμπαραλαμβάνουσι πρὸς ταῦτα· τοῖς δ' ἐπαινοῦσιν καὶ ψέγουσιν τὸ καλὸν καὶ τὸ αἰσχρόν, τὰ δ' ἄλλα καὶ οὗτοι πρὸς ταῦτα ἐπαναφέρουσιν. σημεῖον δ' ὅτι τὸ εἰρημένον ἑκάστοις τέλος· περὶ μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἄλλων ἐνίοτε οὐκ ἂν ἀμφισβητήσαιεν, οἷον ὁ δικαζόμενος ὡς οὐ	Each of these has a different end, and since there are three of them, there are three ends. For the adviser the end is the advantageous and the harmful. The one who exhorts recommends a course as better, and the one who dissuades argues against it as worse. He brings in the other considerations, just or unjust, fine or shameful, as subsidiary to this end. For litigants the end is the just and the unjust, and they too bring in the other considerations in relation to it. For those who praise and blame the end is the fine and the shameful, and they too refer the other considerations to it. A sign that

GREEK

γέγονεν ἢ οὐκ ἔβλαψεν· ὅτι δ' ἀδικεῖ, οὐδέ ποτ' ἂν ὁμολογήσειεν· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἂν ἔδει δίκης.

ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ οἱ συμβουλεύοντες τὰ μὲν ἄλλα πολλάκις προΐενται, ὡς δὲ ἀσύμφορα συμβουλεύουσιν ἢ ἀπ' ὠφελίμων ἀποτρέπουσιν οὐκ ἂν ὁμολογήσαιεν· ὡς δ' οὐκ ἄδικον τοὺς ἀστυγείτονας καταδουλοῦσθαι καὶ τοὺς μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντας, πολλάκις οὐδὲν φροντίζουσιν. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐπαινοῦντες καὶ οἱ ψέγοντες οὐ σκοποῦσιν 1359a εἰ συμφέροντα ἔπραξεν ἢ βλαβερά, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν ἐπαίνῳ πολλάκις τιθέασιν ὅτι ὀλιγωρήσας τοῦ αὐτῷ λυσιτελοῦντος ἔπραξεν ὅ τι καλόν, οἷον Ἀχιλλέα ἐπαινοῦσιν ὅτι ἐβοήθησε τῷ ἑταίρῳ Πατρόκλῳ εἰδὼς ὅτι δεῖ αὐτὸν ἀποθανεῖν ἐξὸν ζῆν. τούτῳ δὲ ὁ μὲν τοιοῦτος θάνατος κάλλιον, τὸ δὲ ζῆν συμφέρον.

1359a φανερὸν δὲ ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων ὅτι ἀνάγκη περὶ τούτων ἔχειν πρῶτον τὰς προτάσεις· τὰ γὰρ τεκμήρια καὶ τὰ εἰκότα καὶ τὰ σημεῖα προτάσεις εἰσὶν ῥητορικαί· ὅλως μὲν γὰρ συλλογισμὸς ἐκ προτάσεών ἐστιν, τὸ δ' ἐνθύμημα συλλογισμός ἐστι συνεστηκὼς ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων προτάσεων. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε πραχθῆναι οἷόν τε οὔτε πραχθήσεσθαι τὰ ἀδύνατα ἀλλὰ τὰ δυνατά, οὐδὲ τὰ μὴ γενόμενα ἢ μὴ ἐσόμενα οὐχ οἷόν τε τὰ μὲν πεπρᾶχθαι τὰ δὲ πραχθήσεσθαι, ἀναγκαῖον καὶ τῷ συμβουλεύοντι καὶ τῷ δικαζομένῳ καὶ τῷ ἐπιδεικτικῷ ἔχειν προτάσεις περὶ δυνατοῦ καὶ ἀδυνάτου, καὶ εἰ γέγονεν ἢ μή, καὶ εἰ ἔσται ἢ μή.

ἔτι δὲ ἐπεὶ ἅπαντες καὶ ἐπαινοῦντες καὶ ψέγοντες καὶ προτρέποντες καὶ ἀποτρέποντες καὶ κατηγοροῦντες καὶ ἀπολογούμενοι οὐ μόνον τὰ εἰρημένα δεικνύναι πειρῶνται ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅτι μέγα ἢ μικρὸν τὸ ἀγαθὸν ἢ τὸ κακόν, ἢ τὸ καλὸν ἢ τὸ αἰσχρόν, ἢ τὸ δίκαιον ἢ τὸ ἄδικον, ἢ καθ' αὐτὰ λέγοντες ἢ πρὸς ἄλληλα ἀντιπαραβάλλοντες, δῆλον ὅτι δέοι ἂν καὶ περὶ μεγέθους καὶ μικρότητος καὶ τοῦ μείζονος καὶ τοῦ ἐλάττονος προτάσεις ἔχειν, καὶ καθόλου καὶ περὶ ἑκάστου, οἷον τί μεῖζον ἀγαθὸν ἢ ἔλαττον ἢ ἀδίκημα ἢ δικαίωμα· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων.

ENGLISH

each has the end we have stated is that on other points they sometimes would not even argue. A litigant, for instance, will sometimes not contend that something did not happen or did no harm. But he would never admit that he is doing wrong, since then there would be no need for a trial.

Likewise, those giving advice often concede the other points, but they would never admit that they are advising what is disadvantageous or deterring people from what is beneficial. Whether it is unjust to enslave their neighbors, even people who have done them no wrong, they often don't trouble about at all. Likewise, those who praise and those who blame do not consider 1359a whether someone did what was advantageous or harmful. They often even count it as praise that he did something fine with no regard for his own interest. They praise Achilles, for instance, because he came to the aid of his comrade Patroclus knowing that he must die, when he could have lived. For him such a death was finer, but living was advantageous.

It is clear from what has been said that one must first have premises on these subjects. Sure signs, probabilities and signs are rhetorical premises. In general a syllogism is made of premises, and the enthymeme is a syllogism composed of the premises just mentioned. Impossible things cannot have been done and will not be done; only possible things can. Nor can what did not happen have been done, or what will not happen be done in the future. So the deliberative speaker, the forensic speaker and the ceremonial speaker alike must have premises about the possible and the impossible, about whether something has happened or not, and about whether it will happen or not.

Further, everyone, whether praising or blaming, urging or dissuading, accusing or defending, tries to show not only the points mentioned but also that the good or the bad, the fine or the shameful, the just or the unjust, is great or small. They do this either by speaking of things by themselves or by comparing them with one another. Clearly, then, one would also need premises about greatness and smallness and about the greater and the lesser, both in general and in each particular case: for instance, what is the greater or lesser good, or the greater or lesser wrong or just act; and likewise with the rest.

GREEK	ENGLISH
περὶ ὧν μὲν οὖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης δεῖ λαβεῖν τὰς προτάσεις, εἴρηται· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα διαιρετέον ἰδίᾳ περὶ ἑκάστου τούτων, οἷον περὶ ὧν συμβουλὴ καὶ περὶ ὧν οἱ ἐπιδεικτικοὶ λόγοι, τρίτον δὲ περὶ ὧν αἱ δίκαι.	We have stated, then, the subjects on which premises must necessarily be obtained. After this we must make distinctions about each of these separately: first, what deliberation is about; second, what ceremonial speeches are about; and third, what lawsuits are about.

CHAPTER 4: THE SUBJECTS OF POLITICAL DELIBERATION

The deliberative speaker must know revenue, war and peace, defense, trade and legislation.

GREEK	ENGLISH
πρῶτον μὲν οὖν ληπτέον περὶ ποῖα ἀγαθὰ ἢ κακὰ ὁ συμβουλεύων συμβουλεύει, ἐπειδὴ οὐ περὶ ἅπαντα ἀλλ' ὅσα ἐνδέχεται καὶ γενέσθαι καὶ μή. ὅσα δὲ ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἢ ἔστιν ἢ ἔσται, ἢ ἀδύνατον ἢ εἶναι ἢ γενέσθαι, περὶ δὲ τούτων οὐκ ἔστι συμβουλή. οὐδὲ δὴ περὶ τῶν ἐνδεχομένων ἁπάντων· ἔστιν γὰρ καὶ φύσει ἔνια καὶ ἀπὸ τύχης γινόμενα ἀγαθὰ τῶν ἐνδεχομένων καὶ γίγνεσθαι καὶ μή, περὶ ὧν οὐδὲν πρὸ ἔργου τὸ συμβουλεύειν· ἀλλὰ δῆλον ὅτι περὶ ὅσων ἐστὶν τὸ βουλεύεσθαι. τοιαῦτα δ' ἐστὶν ὅσα πέφυκεν ἀνάγεσθαι εἰς ἡμᾶς, καὶ ὧν ἡ ἀρχὴ τῆς γενέσεως ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐστιν· [1359b] μέχρι γὰρ τούτου σκοποῦμεν, ἕως ἂν εὕρωμεν εἰ ἡμῖν δυνατὰ ἢ ἀδύνατα πρᾶξαι.	First, then, we must grasp what sorts of goods or evils the deliberative speaker gives advice about, since he does not advise about everything, only about things that can either happen or not. About whatever necessarily is or will be, or cannot possibly be or come about, there is no deliberation. Nor, for that matter, about all things that can happen or not. Among these, some goods come about by nature and some by chance, and there is no point in giving advice about them. Clearly, advice concerns the things we deliberate about. These are things that can naturally be traced back to us as their cause, and whose coming into being has its starting point in our power. [1359b] We go on examining them until we discover whether they are possible or impossible for us to do.
1359b καθ' ἕκαστον μὲν οὖν ἀκριβῶς διαριθμήσασθαι καὶ διαλαβεῖν εἰς εἴδη περὶ ὧν εἰώθασι χρηματίζειν, ἔτι δ' ὅσον ἐνδέχεται περὶ αὐτῶν διορίσαι κατὰ τὴν ἀλήθειαν, οὐ δεῖ κατὰ τὸν παρόντα καιρὸν ζητεῖν διὰ τὸ μήτε τῆς ῥητορικῆς εἶναι τέχνης ἀλλ' ἐμφρονεστέρας καὶ μᾶλλον ἀληθινῆς, πολλῷ τε πλείω δεδόσθαι καὶ νῦν αὐτῇ τῶν οἰκείων θεωρημάτων· ὅπερ γὰρ καὶ πρότερον εἰρηκότες τυγχάνομεν ἀληθές ἐστιν, ὅτι ἡ ῥητορικὴ σύγκειται μὲν ἔκ τε τῆς ἀναλυτικῆς ἐπιστήμης καὶ τῆς περὶ τὰ ἤθη πολιτικῆς, ὁμοία δ' ἐστὶν τὰ μὲν τῇ διαλεκτικῇ τὰ δὲ τοῖς σοφιστικοῖς λόγοις. ὅσῳ δ' ἄν τις ἢ τὴν διαλεκτικὴν ἢ ταύτην μὴ καθάπερ ἂν δυνάμεις ἀλλ' ἐπιστήμας πειρᾶται κατασκευάζειν, λήσεται τὴν φύσιν αὐτῶν ἀφανίσας τῷ μεταβαίνειν ἐπισκευάζων εἰς ἐπιστήμας ὑποκειμένων τινῶν πραγμάτων, ἀλλὰ μὴ μόνον λόγων.	Now, to enumerate precisely, one by one, the subjects on which people usually do public business and to divide them into kinds, and further to define them as far as possible in accordance with the truth, is not something we need to undertake at present. It belongs not to the art of rhetoric but to a more intelligent and more truthful discipline, and rhetoric has already been given far more than its proper subjects of study. What we said earlier is true: rhetoric is compounded of analytical science and the political science that deals with character, and it resembles partly dialectic and partly sophistical arguments. But the more one tries to construct dialectic or rhetoric not as capacities but as sciences, the more one will unwittingly obliterate their nature. In reconstructing them one passes over into sciences of certain underlying subject matters, rather than of arguments alone.
ὅμως δὲ ὅσα πρὸ ἔργου μέν ἐστι διελεῖν, ἔτι δ' ὑπολείπει σκέψιν τῇ πολιτικῇ ἐπιστήμῃ, εἴπωμεν καὶ νῦν. σχεδὸν γάρ, περὶ ὧν βουλεύονται πάντες καὶ περὶ ὧν ἀγορεύουσιν οἱ συμβουλεύοντες, τὰ μέγιστα τυγχάνει	Still, let us now say as much as is worth analyzing while leaving room for inquiry to political science. Roughly speaking, of all the things people

GREEK

πέντε τὸν ἀριθμὸν ὄντα· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν περί τε πόρων, καὶ πολέμου καὶ εἰρήνης, ἔτι δὲ περὶ φυλακῆς τῆς χώρας, καὶ τῶν εἰσαγομένων καὶ ἐξαγομένων, καὶ νομοθεσίας. ὥστε περὶ μὲν πόρων τὸν μέλλοντα συμβουλεύειν δέοι ἂν τὰς προσόδους τῆς πόλεως εἰδέναι τίνες καὶ πόσαι, ὅπως εἴτε τις παραλείπεται προστεθῇ καὶ εἴ τις ἐλάττων αὐξηθῇ, ἔτι δὲ τὰς δαπάνας τῆς πόλεως ἁπάσας, ὅπως εἴ τις περίεργος ἀφαιρεθῇ καὶ εἴ τις μείζων ἐλάττων γένηται· οὐ γὰρ μόνον πρὸς τὰ ὑπάρχοντα προστιθέντες πλουσιώτεροι γίνονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀφαιροῦντες τῶν δαπανημάτων.

ταῦτα δ' οὐ μόνον ἐκ τῆς περὶ τὰ ἴδια ἐμπειρίας ἐνδέχεται συνορᾶν, ἀλλ' ἀναγκαῖον καὶ τῶν παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις εὑρημένων ἱστορικὸν εἶναι πρὸς τὴν περὶ τούτων συμβουλήν. περὶ δὲ πολέμου καὶ εἰρήνης τὴν δύναμιν εἰδέναι τῆς πόλεως, ὁπόση τε ὑπάρχει ἤδη καὶ πόσην ἐνδέχεται ὑπάρξαι, καὶ ποία τις ἥ τε ὑπάρχουσά ἐστιν καὶ ἥ τις ἐνδέχεται προσγενέσθαι, ἔτι δὲ πολέμους πῶς καὶ τίνας πεπολέμηκεν. οὐ μόνον δὲ τῆς οἰκείας πόλεως ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ὁμόρων ταῦτα ἀναγκαῖον εἰδέναι. [ἢ] καὶ πρὸς οὓς ἐπίδοξον πολεμεῖν, ὅπως πρὸς μὲν τοὺς κρείττους εἰρηνεύηται, [1360a] πρὸς δὲ τοὺς ἥττους ἐπ' αὐτοῖς ᾖ τὸ πολεμεῖν. καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις, πότερον ὅμοιαι ἢ ἀνόμοιαι· ἔστιν γὰρ καὶ ταύτῃ πλεονεκτεῖν ἢ ἐλαττοῦσθαι.

1360a ἀναγκαῖον δὲ καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα μὴ μόνον τοὺς οἰκείους πολέμους τεθεωρηκέναι ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἄλλων, πῶς ἀποβαίνουσιν· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῶν ὁμοίων τὰ ὅμοια γίγνεσθαι πέφυκεν. ἔτι δὲ περὶ φυλακῆς τῆς χώρας μὴ λανθάνειν πῶς φυλάττεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ πλῆθος εἰδέναι τῆς φυλακῆς καὶ τὸ εἶδος καὶ τοὺς τόπους τῶν φυλακτηρίων (τοῦτο δ' ἀδύνατον μὴ ἔμπειρον ὄντα τῆς χώρας), ἵν' εἴτ' ἐλάττων ἡ φυλακὴ προστεθῇ καὶ εἴ τις περίεργος ἀφαιρεθῇ καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους τόπους τηρῶσι μᾶλλον.

ἔτι δὲ περὶ τροφῆς, πόση δαπάνη ἱκανὴ τῇ πόλει καὶ ποία, ἡ αὐτοῦ τε γιγνομένη καὶ εἰσαγώγιμος, καὶ τίνων τ' ἐξαγωγῆς δέονται καὶ τίνων εἰσαγωγῆς, ἵνα πρὸς τούτους καὶ συνθῆκαι καὶ συμβολαὶ γίγνωνται· πρὸς δύο γὰρ διαφυλάττειν ἀναγκαῖον ἀνεγκλήτους τοὺς πολίτας, πρός τε τοὺς κρείττους καὶ πρὸς τοὺς εἰς ταῦτα χρησίμους. εἰς δ' ἀσφάλειαν ἅπαντα μὲν ταῦτα ἀναγκαῖον δύνασθαι θεωρεῖν, οὐκ ἐλάχιστον δὲ περὶ νομοθεσίας ἐπαΐειν· ἐν

ENGLISH

deliberate about and deliberative speakers address in public, the most important happen to be five in number: finances, war and peace, the defense of the country, imports and exports, and legislation. On finances, then, someone who means to give advice would need to know the city's revenues, what they are and how large. That way, any source that is being neglected can be added and any that is too small can be increased. He would also need to know all the city's expenditures, so that any that is superfluous can be removed and any that is too large can be reduced. People become richer not only by adding to what they have but also by cutting their expenses.

These things cannot be surveyed from experience of one's own affairs alone. To advise on them one must also be informed about what has been discovered among other peoples. On war and peace, he must know the city's power: how large it already is and how large it could become, what kind it is and what kind could be added; and further, what wars it has fought and how. He must know these things not only about his own city but also about its neighbors, [or] also about those it is likely to fight. That way peace can be kept with the stronger, [1360a] and with the weaker the decision to fight can rest with us. He must know their forces too, whether they are like ours or unlike; for here too one can gain the advantage or be at a disadvantage.

To this end, too, one must have studied not only one's own wars but also those of others, and how they turn out; for like results naturally come from like causes. On the defense of the country, he must not be unaware of how it is defended. He must know the size of the garrison, its kind and the positions of the guard posts (which is impossible without familiarity with the country). That way, if the garrison is too small it can be increased, any part that is superfluous can be removed, and the suitable positions can be guarded more closely.

Further, on the food supply: what expenditure is sufficient for the city, and of what sort, both what is produced at home and what is imported; and which exports and which imports the citizens need, so that agreements and trade treaties can be made with the relevant peoples. There are two groups toward whom the citizens must be kept free of grounds for complaint: those stronger than

GREEK	ENGLISH
γὰρ τοῖς νόμοις ἐστὶν ἡ σωτηρία τῆς πόλεως, ὥστ' ἀναγκαῖον εἰδέναι πόσα τέ ἐστι πολιτειῶν εἴδη, καὶ ποῖα συμφέρει ἑκάστῃ, καὶ ὑπὸ τίνων φθείρεσθαι πέφυκεν καὶ οἰκείων τῆς πολιτείας καὶ ἐναντίων.	them, and those useful to them for these purposes. For the city's security he must be able to survey all these things, but not least he must understand legislation, since the safety of the city lies in its laws. So he must know how many kinds of constitution there are, what is advantageous for each, and by what each is naturally destroyed, both by causes proper to the constitution and by causes contrary to it.
λέγω δὲ τὸ ὑπὸ οἰκείων φθείρεσθαι, ὅτι ἔξω τῆς βελτίστης πολιτείας αἱ ἄλλαι πᾶσαι καὶ ἀνιέμεναι καὶ ἐπιτεινόμεναι φθείρονται, οἷον δημοκρατία οὐ μόνον ἀνιεμένη ἀσθενεστέρα γίνεται ὥστε τέλος ἥξει εἰς ὀλιγαρχίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπιτεινομένη σφόδρα, ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ γρυπότης καὶ ἡ σιμότης οὐ μόνον ἀνιέμενα ἔρχεται εἰς τὸ μέσον, ἀλλὰ καὶ σφόδρα γρυπὰ γινόμενα ἢ σιμὰ οὕτως διατίθεται ὥστε μηδὲ μυκτῆρα δοκεῖν εἶναι. χρήσιμον δὲ πρὸς τὰς νομοθεσίας τὸ μὴ μόνον ἐπαΐειν τίς πολιτεία συμφέρει ἐκ τῶν παρεληλυθότων θεωροῦντι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰδέναι, αἱ ποῖαι τοῖς ποίοις ἁρμόττουσιν.	By being destroyed through causes proper to it I mean this. Apart from the best constitution, all the others are destroyed both by being relaxed and by being tightened. Democracy, for instance, grows weaker when relaxed, so that in the end it will turn into oligarchy, but it also grows weaker when it is tightened too far. In the same way, a hooked nose or a snub nose comes toward the mean when relaxed, but when it becomes extremely hooked or extremely snub it ends up in such a state that it no longer even looks like a nose. For legislation it is useful not only to understand what constitution is advantageous by studying the past, but also to know the constitutions of other peoples, and which kinds suit which kinds of people.
ὥστε δῆλον ὅτι πρὸς μὲν τὴν νομοθεσίαν αἱ τῆς γῆς περίοδοι χρήσιμοι· (ἐντεῦθεν γὰρ λαβεῖν ἔστιν τοὺς τῶν ἐθνῶν νόμους), πρὸς δὲ τὰς πολιτικὰς συμβουλὰς αἱ τῶν περὶ τὰς πράξεις γραφόντων ἱστορίαι· ἅπαντα δὲ ταῦτα πολιτικῆς ἀλλ' οὐ ῥητορικῆς ἔργον ἐστίν. περὶ ὧν μὲν οὖν ἔχειν δεῖ ⟨τὰς προτάσεις⟩ τὸν μέλλοντα συμβουλεύειν, [1360b] τὰ μέγιστα τοσαῦτά ἐστιν· ἐξ ὧν δὲ δεῖ καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων προτρέπειν ἢ ἀποτρέπειν, λέγωμεν πάλιν.	So it is clear that for legislation, travelers' accounts of the earth are useful (from them one can learn the laws of different peoples), while for political deliberation the histories of those who write about public affairs are useful. But all of this is the business of politics, not of rhetoric. These, then, are the most important subjects on which someone who means to give advice must have ⟨premises⟩. [1360b] Now let us go back and say on what grounds one should urge or dissuade, both on these matters and on the rest.

CHAPTER 5: HAPPINESS AND ITS PARTS

All choice aims at happiness; Aristotle lists its parts, from good birth and wealth to excellence.

GREEK	ENGLISH
1360b σχεδὸν δὲ καὶ ἰδίᾳ ἑκάστῳ καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσι σκοπός τίς ἐστιν, οὗ στοχαζόμενοι καὶ αἱροῦνται καὶ φεύγουσιν· καὶ τοῦτ' ἐστὶν ἐν κεφαλαίῳ εἰπεῖν ἥ τ' εὐδαιμονία καὶ τὰ μόρια αὐτῆς. ὥστε παραδείγματος χάριν λάβωμεν τί ἐστιν ὡς ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἡ εὐδαιμονία, καὶ ἐκ τίνων τὰ μόρια ταύτης· περὶ γὰρ ταύτης καὶ τῶν εἰς ταύτην συντεινόντων καὶ τῶν ἐναντίων ταύτῃ αἵ τε προτροπαὶ καὶ αἱ ἀποτροπαὶ πᾶσαί εἰσιν· τὰ μὲν γὰρ παρασκευάζοντα ταύτην ἢ τῶν μορίων τι, ἢ μεῖζον ἀντ' ἐλάττονος	Roughly speaking, each person privately and all people in common have some target that they aim at in what they choose and what they avoid. To put it in a word, this is happiness and its parts. So, by way of illustration, let us grasp what happiness is, speaking simply, and what its parts consist of. All urging and all dissuading are about happiness, about the things that contribute to it and about those that are contrary to it. One should do the

GREEK

ποιοῦντα, δεῖ πράττειν, τὰ δὲ φθείροντα ἢ ἐμποδίζοντα ἢ τὰ ἐναντία ποιοῦντα μὴ πράττειν.

ἔστω δὴ εὐδαιμονία εὐπραξία μετ' ἀρετῆς, ἢ αὐτάρκεια ζωῆς, ἢ ὁ βίος ὁ μετὰ ἀσφαλείας ἥδιστος, ἢ εὐθενία κτημάτων καὶ σωμάτων μετὰ δυνάμεως φυλακτικῆς τε καὶ πρακτικῆς τούτων· σχεδὸν γὰρ τούτων ἓν ἢ πλείω τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν ὁμολογοῦσιν εἶναι ἅπαντες. εἰ δή ἐστιν ἡ εὐδαιμονία τοιοῦτον, ἀνάγκη αὐτῆς εἶναι μέρη εὐγένειαν πολυφιλίαν χρηστοφιλίαν πλοῦτον εὐτεκνίαν πολυτεκνίαν εὐγηρίαν, ἔτι τὰς τοῦ σώματος ἀρετάς, οἷον ὑγίειαν κάλλος ἰσχὺν μέγεθος, δύναμιν ἀγωνιστικήν, δόξαν τιμὴν εὐτυχίαν ἀρετήν· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν αὐταρκέστατος εἴη, εἰ ὑπάρχοι αὐτῷ τά τ' ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ ἐκτὸς ἀγαθά· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλα παρὰ ταῦτα. ἔστι δ' ἐν αὐτῷ μὲν τὰ περὶ ψυχὴν καὶ τὰ ἐν σώματι, ἔξω δὲ εὐγένεια καὶ φίλοι καὶ χρήματα καὶ τιμή.

ἔτι δὲ προσήκειν οἰόμεθα δυνάμεις ὑπάρχειν καὶ τύχην· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ἀσφαλέστατος ὁ βίος εἴη. λάβωμεν τοίνυν ὁμοίως καὶ τούτων ἕκαστον τί ἐστιν. εὐγένεια μὲν οὖν ἐστιν ἔθνει μὲν καὶ πόλει τὸ αὐτόχθονας ἢ ἀρχαίους εἶναι, καὶ ἡγεμόνας τοὺς πρώτους ἐπιφανεῖς, καὶ πολλοὺς ἐπιφανεῖς γεγονέναι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τοῖς ζηλουμένοις· ἰδίᾳ δὲ εὐγένεια ἢ ἀπ' ἀνδρῶν ἢ ἀπὸ γυναικῶν, καὶ γνησιότης ἀπ' ἀμφοῖν, καὶ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ πόλεως τούς τε πρώτους γνωρίμους ἢ ἐπ' ἀρετῇ ἢ πλούτῳ ἢ ἄλλῳ τῳ τῶν τιμωμένων, καὶ πολλοὺς ἐπιφανεῖς ἐκ τοῦ γένους καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ νέους καὶ πρεσβυτέρους.

1361a εὐτεκνία δὲ καὶ πολυτεκνία οὐκ ἄδηλα· ἔστιν δὲ τῷ κοινῷ μὲν [εὐτεκνία], νεότης ἂν ᾖ πολλὴ καὶ ἀγαθή, ἀγαθὴ δὲ κατ' ἀρετὴν σώματος, οἷον μέγεθος κάλλος ἰσχὺν δύναμιν ἀγωνιστικήν· ψυχῆς δὲ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἀνδρία νέου ἀρεταί. ἰδίᾳ δὲ εὐτεκνία καὶ πολυτεκνία τὸ τὰ ἴδια τέκνα πολλὰ καὶ τοιαῦτα εἶναι, καὶ θήλεα καὶ ἄρρενα· θηλειῶν δὲ ἀρετὴ σώματος μὲν κάλλος καὶ μέγεθος, ψυχῆς δὲ σωφροσύνη καὶ φιλεργία ἄνευ ἀνελευθερίας. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἰδίᾳ καὶ κοινῇ καὶ κατ' ἄνδρας καὶ κατὰ γυναῖκας δεῖ ζητεῖν ἕκαστον ὑπάρχειν τῶν τοιούτων· ὅσοις γὰρ τὰ κατὰ

ENGLISH

things that produce happiness or one of its parts, or that make it greater instead of less. One should not do the things that destroy or hinder it or produce its opposites.

Let happiness be, then, doing well combined with excellence; or self-sufficiency of life; or the most pleasant life combined with security; or an abundance of property and bodies, together with the power to protect them and make use of them. Practically everyone agrees that happiness is one or more of these. If happiness is something like this, its parts must be good birth, many friends, good friends, wealth, good children, many children and a good old age. Further, the excellences of the body, such as health, beauty, strength, stature and athletic prowess; and reputation, honor, good fortune and excellence. A person would be most self-sufficient if he had both the goods within himself and the external ones, since there are no others besides these. Within him are the goods of the soul and those of the body; outside are good birth, friends, money and honor.[11]

We also think a person should have power and luck, since that way his life would be most secure. Let us grasp, then, in the same way what each of these is. For a people or a city, good birth means being sprung from the land itself or being ancient, having had distinguished first leaders, and having produced many people distinguished for things that are envied. For an individual, good birth comes either from the men's side or from the women's side, and means legitimacy on both sides. As with a city, it means having first ancestors notable for excellence or wealth or something else that is honored, and many distinguished members of the family, men and women, young and old.

Good children and many children are clear enough. For the community, [good children] means having a youth that is numerous and good, good in bodily excellence such as stature, beauty, strength and athletic prowess; the excellences of a young man's soul are moderation and courage. For an individual, good children and many children means having many children of one's own, of this kind, both female and male. For females, the excellence of the body is beauty and stature; that of the soul, moderation and industriousness without

11 "Bodies" here probably means slaves and livestock.

GREEK

γυναῖκας φαῦλα ὥσπερ Λακεδαιμονίοις, σχεδὸν κατὰ τὸ ἥμισυ οὐκ εὐδαιμονοῦσιν.

* * * πλούτου δὲ μέρη νομίσματος πλῆθος, γῆς, χωρίων κτῆσις πλήθει καὶ μεγέθει καὶ κάλλει διαφερόντων, ἔτι δὲ ἐπίπλων κτῆσις καὶ ἀνδραπόδων καὶ βοσκημάτων πλήθει καὶ κάλλει διαφερόντων, ταῦτα δὲ πάντα ⟨οἰκεῖα⟩ καὶ ἀσφαλῆ καὶ ἐλευθέρια καὶ χρήσιμα. ἔστιν δὲ χρήσιμα μὲν μᾶλλον τὰ κάρπιμα, ἐλευθέρια δὲ τὰ πρὸς ἀπόλαυσιν· κάρπιμα δὲ λέγω ἀφ' ὧν αἱ πρόσοδοι, ἀπολαυστικὰ δὲ ἀφ' ὧν μηδὲν παρὰ τὴν χρῆσιν γίγνεται, ὅ τι καὶ ἄξιον. ὅρος δὲ ἀσφαλείας μὲν τὸ ἐνταῦθα καὶ οὕτω κεκτῆσθαι ὥστ' ἐφ' αὐτῷ εἶναι τὴν χρῆσιν αὐτῶν, τοῦ δὲ οἰκεῖα εἶναι ὅταν ἐφ' αὐτῷ ᾖ ἀπαλλοτριῶσαι ἢ μή· λέγω δὲ ἀπαλλοτρίωσιν δόσιν καὶ πρᾶσιν.

ὅλως δὲ τὸ πλουτεῖν ἐστιν ἐν τῷ χρῆσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τῷ κεκτῆσθαι· καὶ γὰρ ἡ ἐνέργειά ἐστι τῶν τοιούτων καὶ ἡ χρῆσις πλοῦτος. εὐδοξία δ' ἐστὶν τὸ ὑπὸ πάντων σπουδαῖον ὑπολαμβάνεσθαι ἢ τοιοῦτόν τι ἔχειν οὗ πάντες ἐφίενται ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ ἢ οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἢ οἱ φρόνιμοι. τιμὴ δ' ἐστὶν μὲν σημεῖον εὐεργετικῆς εὐδοξίας, τιμῶνται δὲ δικαίως μὲν καὶ μάλιστα οἱ εὐεργετηκότες, οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ τιμᾶται καὶ ὁ δυνάμενος εὐεργετεῖν· εὐεργεσία δὲ ἢ εἰς σωτηρίαν καὶ ὅσα αἴτια τοῦ εἶναι, ἢ εἰς πλοῦτον, ἢ εἴς τι τῶν ἄλλων ἀγαθῶν, ὧν μὴ ῥᾳδία ἡ κτῆσις ἢ ὅλως ἢ ἐνταῦθα ἢ ποτέ· πολλοὶ γὰρ διὰ μικρὰ δοκοῦντα τιμῆς τυγχάνουσιν, ἀλλ' οἱ τόποι καὶ οἱ καιροὶ αἴτιοι.

μέρη δὲ τιμῆς θυσίαι, μνῆμαι ἐν μέτροις καὶ ἄνευ μέτρων, γέρα, τεμένη, προεδρίαι, τάφοι, εἰκόνες, τροφαὶ δημόσιαι, τὰ βαρβαρικά, οἷον προσκυνήσεις καὶ ἐκστάσεις, δῶρα τὰ παρ' ἑκάστοις τίμια. καὶ γὰρ τὸ δῶρόν ἐστι κτήματος δόσις καὶ τιμῆς σημεῖον, διὸ καὶ οἱ φιλοχρήματοι καὶ οἱ φιλότιμοι ἐφίενται αὐτῶν· 1361b ἀμφοτέροις γὰρ ἔχει ὧν δέονται· καὶ γὰρ κτῆμά ἐστιν, οὗ ἐφίενται οἱ φιλοχρήματοι, καὶ τιμὴν ἔχει, οὗ οἱ φιλότιμοι. σώματος δὲ ἀρετὴ ὑγίεια, αὕτη δὲ οὕτως ὥστε ἀνόσους εἶναι χρωμένους τοῖς σώμασιν· πολλοὶ γὰρ ὑγιαίνουσιν ὥσπερ Ἡρόδικος λέγεται, οὓς οὐδεὶς ἂν εὐδαιμονίσειε τῆς

ENGLISH

servility. Both privately and publicly, among men and among women alike, one should seek to have each of these qualities present. Peoples whose women are in a poor condition, like the Spartans, are roughly half lacking in happiness.

* * * The parts of wealth are plenty of coined money and land; ownership of estates distinguished for number, size and beauty; and further, ownership of furniture, slaves and livestock distinguished for number and beauty. All these should be ⟨one's own⟩, secure, fit for a free man, and useful. The more useful are the productive ones; the more fit for a free man are those for enjoyment. By productive I mean those that yield income; by those for enjoyment, those from which nothing worth mentioning comes beyond their use. Security is defined as possessing things in such a place and such a way that their use is in one's own power; being one's own, as its being in one's power to alienate them or not. By alienation I mean giving and selling.[12]

In general, being rich consists more in using than in possessing, since the activity and use of such things is wealth. Good reputation is being regarded by everyone as excellent, or having something of the sort that everyone, or most people, or the good, or people of practical wisdom desire. Honor is a sign of a reputation for doing good. Those who have done good are honored, justly and above all, though someone capable of doing good is honored too. Doing good concerns either safety and whatever causes existence, or wealth, or some other good that is not easy to acquire, either at all, or in that place, or at that time. Many people are honored for things that seem small, but the place and the occasion account for it.

The components of honor are sacrifices; memorials in verse and in prose; privileges; grants of land; front seats; tombs; statues; meals at public expense; foreign honors such as prostration and making way; and gifts that are valued in each society. For a gift is both a giving of property and a sign of honor, which is why both lovers of money and lovers of honor desire them: 1361b a gift holds what each of them needs. It is a possession, which lovers of money desire, and it carries honor, which lovers of honor desire. The excellence of

12 * * * marks a gap in the text, where something has dropped out of the manuscripts.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	ὑγιείας διὰ τὸ πάντων ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων ἢ τῶν πλείστων. κάλλος δὲ ἕτερον καθ' ἑκάστην ἡλικίαν ἐστίν.	the body is health, and health in such a way that people are free of illness while using their bodies. Many people are healthy the way Herodicus is said to have been, and no one would congratulate them on their health, since they abstain from all or most human activities. Beauty is different at each stage of life.[13]
1361b	νέου μὲν οὖν κάλλος τὸ πρὸς τοὺς πόνους χρήσιμον ἔχειν τὸ σῶμα τούς τε πρὸς δρόμον καὶ πρὸς βίαν, ἡδὺν ὄντα ἰδεῖν πρὸς ἀπόλαυσιν, διὸ οἱ πένταθλοι κάλλιστοι, ὅτι πρὸς βίαν καὶ πρὸς τάχος ἅμα πεφύκασιν· ἀκμάζοντος δὲ πρὸς μὲν πόνους τοὺς πολεμικούς, ἡδὺν δ' εἶναι δοκεῖν μετὰ φοβερότητος· γέροντος δὲ πρὸς μὲν πόνους τοὺς ἀναγκαίους ἱκανόν, ἄλυπον δὲ διὰ τὸ μηδὲν ἔχειν ὧν τὸ γῆρας λωβᾶται. ἰσχὺς δ' ἐστὶ μὲν δύναμις τοῦ κινεῖν ἕτερον ὡς βούλεται, ἀνάγκη δὲ κινεῖν ἕτερον ἢ ἕλκοντα ἢ ὠθοῦντα ἢ αἴροντα ἢ πιέζοντα ἢ συνθλίβοντα, ὥστε ὁ ἰσχυρὸς ἢ πᾶσιν ἢ τούτων τισίν ἐστιν ἰσχυρός. μεγέθους δὲ ἀρετὴ τὸ ὑπερέχειν κατὰ μῆκος καὶ βάθος καὶ πλάτος τῶν πολλῶν τοσούτῳ μείζονι ὥστε μὴ βραδυτέρας ποιεῖν τὰς κινήσεις διὰ τὴν ὑπερβολήν.	The beauty of a young man is having a body useful for exertions, both of running and of force, while being pleasant to look at for enjoyment. That is why pentathletes are the most beautiful: they are naturally fitted for force and for speed at once. The beauty of a man in his prime is fitness for the exertions of war, together with seeming pleasant to look at and also formidable. That of an old man is being adequate for necessary exertions and not distressing, because he has none of the things with which old age disfigures us. Strength is the power of moving something else as one wishes. One must move something else by pulling, pushing, lifting, squeezing or crushing, so that a strong man is strong in all of these or in some. The excellence of stature is surpassing most people in height, depth and breadth by just so much that one's movements are not made slower by the excess.
	ἀγωνιστικὴ δὲ σώματος ἀρετὴ σύγκειται ἐκ μεγέθους καὶ ἰσχύος [καὶ τάχους·] καὶ γὰρ ὁ ταχὺς ἰσχυρός ἐστιν· ὁ γὰρ δυνάμενος τὰ σκέλη ῥιπτεῖν πως καὶ κινεῖν ταχὺ καὶ πόρρω δρομικός, ὁ δὲ θλίβειν καὶ κατέχειν παλαιστικός, ὁ δὲ ὦσαι τῇ πληγῇ πυκτικός, ὁ δ' ἀμφοτέροις τούτοις παγκρατιαστικός, ὁ δὲ πᾶσι πένταθλος. εὐγηρία δ' ἐστὶν βραδυτὴς γήρως μετ' ἀλυπίας· οὔτε γὰρ εἰ ταχὺ γηράσκει, εὔγηρως, οὔτ' εἰ μόγις μὲν λυπηρῶς δέ. ἔστιν δὲ καὶ ἐκ τῶν τοῦ σώματος ἀρετῶν καὶ τύχης· μὴ ἄνοσος γὰρ ὢν μηδὲ ἰσχυρὸς οὐκ ἔσται ἀπαθὴς οὐδ' ἄλυπος, καὶ πολυχρόνιος [οὔτ'] ἄνευ τύχης διαμείνειεν ἄν. ἔστιν δέ τις καὶ χωρὶς ἰσχύος καὶ ὑγιείας ἄλλη δύναμις μακροβιότητος.	Athletic excellence of body consists of stature and strength [and speed], for the swift man is also strong. Someone who can fling his legs in a certain way and move them quickly and far is a runner; someone who can grip and hold down is a wrestler; someone who can drive an opponent back with a blow is a boxer; someone who can do both of these is a pancratiast; and someone who can do everything is a pentathlete. A good old age is a slow old age free of pain. One does not have a good old age if one ages quickly, nor if one ages slowly but painfully. It comes both from the excellences of the body and from luck. Someone who is not free of illness or not strong will not be free of suffering and pain, and [neither] would he last long without luck. There is also, apart from strength and health, another capacity for long life.[14]
	πολλοὶ γὰρ ἄνευ τῶν τοῦ σώματος ἀρετῶν μακρόβιοί εἰσιν· ἀλλ' οὐδὲν ἡ ἀκριβολογία χρήσιμος ἡ περὶ τούτων εἰς τὰ νῦν. πολυφιλία δὲ καὶ χρηστοφιλία οὐκ ἄδηλα τοῦ	Many people are long-lived without the excellences of the body; but precise discussion of these matters is of no use for present purposes. Many

13 Herodicus was a trainer and physician who, according to Plato, prolonged his life by an endless regimen of medical care.
14 The pancration was a combat sport combining boxing and wrestling.

GREEK

φίλου ὡρισμένου, ὅτι ἔστιν ὁ τοιοῦτος φίλος ὅς τις, ἃ οἴεται ἀγαθὰ εἶναι ἐκείνῳ, πρακτικός ἐστιν αὐτῶν δι' ἐκεῖνον. ᾧ δὴ πολλοὶ τοιοῦτοι, πολύφιλος, ᾧ δὲ καὶ ἐπιεικεῖς ἄνδρες, χρηστόφιλος. εὐτυχία δέ ἐστιν, ὧν ἡ τύχη ἀγαθῶν αἰτία, ταῦτα [1362a] γίγνεσθαι καὶ ὑπάρχειν ἢ πάντα ἢ τὰ πλεῖστα ἢ τὰ μέγιστα. αἰτία δ' ἐστὶν ἡ τύχη ἐνίων μὲν καὶ ὧν αἱ τέχναι, πολλῶν δὲ καὶ ἀτέχνων, οἷον ὅσων ἡ φύσις, ἐνδέχεται δὲ καὶ παρὰ φύσιν εἶναι· ὑγιείας μὲν γὰρ τέχνη αἰτία, κάλλους δὲ καὶ μεγέθους φύσις.

ENGLISH

friends and good friends are clear enough once a friend is defined. A friend is someone who is inclined to do, for the other's sake, whatever he thinks is good for him. Someone who has many such people has many friends; someone who has decent men as such friends has good friends. Good fortune is when the goods of which luck is the cause [1362a] come about and are present, either all of them, or most, or the most important. Luck is the cause of some things that the arts also cause, but also of many that have nothing to do with art, such as those caused by nature; though it can also work contrary to nature. Art is the cause of health, but nature of beauty and stature.

1362a ὅλως δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐστιν ἀπὸ τύχης, ἐφ' οἷς ἐστιν ὁ φθόνος. ἔστιν δὲ καὶ τῶν παρὰ λόγον ἀγαθῶν αἰτία τύχη, οἷον εἰ οἱ ἄλλοι αἰσχροὶ ἀδελφοί, ὁ δὲ καλός, ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι μὴ εἶδον τὸν θησαυρόν, ὁ δ' εὗρεν, ἢ εἰ τοῦ πλησίον ἔτυχεν τὸ βέλος, τούτου δὲ μή, ἢ εἰ μὴ ἦλθε μόνος ἀεὶ φοιτῶν, οἱ δὲ ἅπαξ ἐλθόντες διεφθάρησαν· πάντα γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα εὐτυχήματα δοκεῖ εἶναι. * * * περὶ δὲ ἀρετῆς ἐπείπερ οἰκειότατος ὁ περὶ τοὺς ἐπαίνους τόπος, ὅταν περὶ ἐπαίνου ποιώμεθα τὸν λόγον, τότε διοριστέον.

In general, the goods that come from luck are the kind that arouse envy. Luck is also the cause of goods that defy reason. For instance, the other brothers are ugly but one is handsome; or the others didn't see the treasure but one found it; or the arrow hit the man next to him but not him; or a man who always went somewhere was the only one not to go, while those who went that one time were killed. All such things are thought to be strokes of good fortune. * * * As for excellence, since it belongs most properly to the topic of praise, we must define it when we come to discuss praise.

CHAPTER 6: THE GOOD AND THE ADVANTAGEOUS

What the deliberative speaker aims at: a list of goods and what counts as advantageous.

GREEK

ὧν μὲν οὖν δεῖ στοχάζεσθαι προτρέποντα ὡς ἐσομένων ἢ ὑπαρχόντων, καὶ ὧν ἀποτρέποντα, φανερόν· τὰ γὰρ ἐναντία τούτων ἐστίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρόκειται τῷ συμβουλεύοντι σκοπὸς τὸ συμφέρον, βουλεύονται γὰρ οὐ περὶ τοῦ τέλους ἀλλὰ περὶ τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος, ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶ τὰ συμφέροντα κατὰ τὰς πράξεις, τὸ δὲ συμφέρον ἀγαθόν, ληπτέον ἂν εἴη τὰ στοιχεῖα περὶ ἀγαθοῦ καὶ συμφέροντος ἁπλῶς.

ENGLISH

It is clear, then, what one must aim at, as things that will come about or are present, when urging, and what when dissuading, since these are the opposites. Now, the deliberative speaker's target is the advantageous. People deliberate not about the end but about the means to the end, and these are the things that are advantageous in action, and the advantageous is good. So we should grasp the elements of the good and the advantageous in general.

ἔστω δὴ ἀγαθὸν ὃ ἂν αὐτὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἕνεκα ᾖ αἱρετόν, καὶ οὗ ἕνεκα ἄλλο αἱρούμεθα, καὶ οὗ ἐφίεται πάντα ἢ πάντα τὰ αἴσθησιν ἔχοντα ἢ νοῦν ἢ εἰ λάβοι νοῦν· καὶ ὅσα ὁ νοῦς ἂν ἑκάστῳ ἀποδοίη, καὶ ὅσα ὁ περὶ ἕκαστον νοῦς ἀποδίδωσιν ἑκάστῳ· τοῦτο ⟨γάρ⟩ ἐστιν ἑκάστῳ ἀγαθόν, καὶ οὗ παρόντος εὖ διάκειται καὶ αὐτάρκως ἔχει, καὶ τὸ αὔταρκες, καὶ τὸ ποιητικὸν ἢ φυλακτικὸν τῶν τοιούτων,

Let the good be: whatever is chosen for its own sake; and that for the sake of which we choose something else; and what all things aim at, or all things that have perception or intelligence, or would if they acquired intelligence; and whatever intelligence would assign to each thing, and whatever the intelligence concerned with each

GREEK

καὶ ᾧ ἀκολουθεῖ τὰ τοιαῦτα, καὶ τὰ κωλυτικὰ τῶν ἐναντίων καὶ τὰ φθαρτικά. ἀκολουθεῖ δὲ διχῶς· ἢ γὰρ ἅμα ἢ ὕστερον, οἷον τῷ μὲν μανθάνειν τὸ ἐπίστασθαι ὕστερον, τῷ δὲ ὑγιαίνειν τὸ ζῆν ἅμα.

καὶ τὰ ποιητικὰ τριχῶς, τὰ μὲν ὡς τὸ ὑγιαίνειν ὑγιείας, τὰ δὲ ὡς σιτία ὑγιείας, τὰ δὲ ὡς τὸ γυμνάζεσθαι, ὅτι ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ποιεῖ ὑγίειαν. τούτων δὲ κειμένων ἀνάγκη τάς τε λήψεις τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἀγαθὰς εἶναι καὶ τὰς τῶν κακῶν ἀποβολάς· ἀκολουθεῖ γὰρ τῷ μὲν τὸ μὴ ἔχειν τὸ κακὸν ἅμα, τῷ δὲ τὸ ἔχειν ἀγαθὸν ὕστερον. καὶ ἡ ἀντ' ἐλάττονος ἀγαθοῦ μείζονος λῆψις καὶ ἀντὶ μείζονος κακοῦ ἐλάττονος· 1362b ᾧ γὰρ ὑπερέχει τὸ μεῖζον τοῦ ἐλάττονος, τούτου γίνεται τοῦ μὲν λῆψις τοῦ δ' ἀποβολή. καὶ τὰς ἀρετὰς δὲ ἀνάγκη ἀγαθὸν εἶναι· κατὰ γὰρ ταύτας εὖ τε διάκεινται οἱ ἔχοντες, καὶ ποιητικαὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν εἰσι καὶ πρακτικαί. περὶ ἑκάστης δὲ καὶ τίς καὶ ποία χωρὶς ῥητέον.

1362b καὶ τὴν ἡδονὴν ἀγαθὸν εἶναι· πάντα γὰρ ἐφίεται τὰ ζῷα αὐτῆς τῇ φύσει. ὥστε καὶ τὰ ἡδέα καὶ τὰ καλὰ ἀνάγκη ἀγαθὰ εἶναι· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἡδονῆς ποιητικά, τῶν δὲ καλῶν τὰ μὲν ἡδέα τὰ δὲ αὐτὰ καθ' ἑαυτὰ αἱρετά ἐστιν. ὡς δὲ καθ' ἓν εἰπεῖν, ἀνάγκη ἀγαθὰ εἶναι τάδε. εὐδαιμονία· καὶ γὰρ καθ' αὐτὸ αἱρετὸν καὶ αὔταρκες, καὶ ἕνεκα αὐτοῦ πολλὰ αἱρούμεθα. δικαιοσύνη, ἀνδρία, σωφροσύνη, μεγαλοψυχία, μεγαλοπρέπεια καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι αἱ τοιαῦται ἕξεις· ἀρεταὶ γὰρ ψυχῆς. καὶ ὑγίεια καὶ κάλλος καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα· ἀρεταὶ γὰρ σώματος καὶ ποιητικαὶ πολλῶν, οἷον ἡ ὑγίεια καὶ ἡδονῆς καὶ τοῦ ζῆν, διὸ καὶ ἄριστον δοκεῖ εἶναι, ὅτι δύο τῶν τοῖς πολλοῖς τιμιωτάτων αἴτιόν ἐστιν, ἡδονῆς καὶ τοῦ ζῆν. πλοῦτος· ἀρετὴ γὰρ κτήσεως καὶ ποιητικὸν πολλῶν.

φίλος καὶ φιλία· καὶ γὰρ καθ' αὐτὸν αἱρετὸς ὁ φίλος καὶ ποιητικὸς πολλῶν. τιμή, δόξα· καὶ γὰρ ἡδέα καὶ ποιητικὰ πολλῶν, καὶ ἀκολουθεῖ αὐτοῖς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ τὸ ὑπάρχειν ἐφ' οἷς τιμῶνται. δύναμις τοῦ λέγειν, τοῦ

ENGLISH

thing assigns to it, for this is what is good for each; and that whose presence puts one in a good condition and makes one self-sufficient; and the self-sufficient itself; and what produces or preserves such things; and what such things follow from; and what prevents or destroys their opposites. Things follow in two ways, either at the same time or later. Knowing, for instance, follows learning later, while living follows being healthy at the same time.

And things are productive in three ways: some as being healthy produces health, some as food produces health, and some as exercise does, in that it usually produces health. With these points established, it necessarily follows that acquiring goods is good, and so is getting rid of evils. Not having the evil follows the latter at the same time; having the good follows the former later. So too is acquiring a greater good instead of a lesser, and a lesser evil instead of a greater; 1362b for by however much the greater exceeds the lesser, that much is acquired in the one case and got rid of in the other. The excellences, too, must be good. Through them their possessors are in a good condition, and they produce goods and lead to good action. What each of them is, and of what sort, must be discussed separately.

Pleasure, too, is good, since all living creatures naturally aim at it. So pleasant things and fine things must be good: the former produce pleasure, and of fine things some are pleasant and others are choiceworthy in and of themselves. To list them one by one, the following must be good. Happiness: it is choiceworthy in itself and self-sufficient, and we choose many things for its sake. Justice, courage, moderation, greatness of soul, magnificence and the other such states: they are excellences of the soul. Health, beauty and the like: they are excellences of the body and produce many things. Health, for instance, produces both pleasure and life, which is why it is thought to be the best thing, since it causes the two things most people value most, pleasure and life. Wealth: it is the excellence of possession and produces many things.

A friend and friendship: a friend is choiceworthy in himself and produces many things. Honor and reputation: they are pleasant and produce many things, and they are usually accompanied by actu-

GREEK

πράττειν· ποιητικὰ γὰρ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀγαθῶν. ἔτι εὐφυΐα, μνήμη, εὐμάθεια, ἀγχίνοια, πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα. ποιητικαὶ γὰρ αὗται ἀγαθῶν αἱ δυνάμεις εἰσίν. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ αἱ ἐπιστῆμαι πᾶσαι καὶ αἱ τέχναι. καὶ τὸ ζῆν· εἰ γὰρ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἕποιτο ἀγαθόν, καθ' αὐτὸ αἱρετόν ἐστιν. καὶ τὸ δίκαιον· συμφέρον γάρ τι κοινῇ ἐστιν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν σχεδὸν τὰ ὁμολογούμενα ἀγαθά ἐστιν· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἀμφισβητησίμοις ἐκ τῶνδε οἱ συλλογισμοί. ᾧ τὸ ἐναντίον κακόν, τοῦτ' ἀγαθόν.

καὶ οὗ τὸ ἐναντίον τοῖς ἐχθροῖς συμφέρει· οἷον εἰ τὸ δειλοὺς εἶναι μάλιστα συμφέρει τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, δῆλον ὅτι ἀνδρία μάλιστα ὠφέλιμον τοῖς πολίταις. καὶ ὅλως ὃ οἱ ἐχθροὶ βούλονται ἢ ἐφ' ᾧ χαίρουσι, τοὐναντίον τούτου ὠφέλιμον φαίνεται· διὸ εἴρηται "ἦ κεν γηθήσαι Πρίαμος". ἔστι δ' οὐκ ἀεὶ τοῦτο, ἀλλ' ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ. οὐδὲν γὰρ κωλύει ἐνίοτε ταὐτὸ συμφέρειν τοῖς ἐναντίοις· ὅθεν λέγεται ὡς τὰ κακὰ συνάγει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὅταν ᾖ ταὐτὸ βλαβερὸν ἀμφοῖν. [1363a] καὶ ὃ μή ἐστιν ὑπερβολή, τοῦτο ἀγαθόν, ὃ δ' ἂν ᾖ μεῖζον ἢ δεῖ, κακόν. καὶ οὗ ἕνεκα πολλὰ πεπόνηται ἢ δεδαπάνηται· φαινόμενον γὰρ ἀγαθὸν ἤδη, καὶ ὡς τέλος τὸ τοιοῦτον ὑπολαμβάνεται καὶ τέλος πολλῶν, τὸ δὲ τέλος ἀγαθόν.

1363a ὅθεν ταῦτ' εἴρηται "κἀδ δέ κεν εὐχωλὴν Πριάμῳ" καὶ "αἰσχρόν τοι δηρόν τε μένειν·" καὶ ἡ παροιμία δὲ τὸ ἐπὶ θύραις τὴν ὑδρίαν. καὶ οὗ ⟨οἱ⟩ πολλοὶ ἐφίενται, καὶ τὸ περιμάχητον φαινόμενον· οὗ γὰρ πάντες ἐφίενται, τοῦτ' ἀγαθὸν ἦν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ ὥσπερ πάντες φαίνονται. καὶ τὸ ἐπαινετόν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ τὸ μὴ ἀγαθὸν ἐπαινεῖ. καὶ ὃ οἱ ἐχθροὶ [καὶ οἱ φαῦλοι] ἐπαινοῦσιν· ὥσπερ γὰρ πάντες ἤδη ὁμολογοῦσιν, εἰ καὶ οἱ κακῶς πεπονθότες· διὰ γὰρ τὸ φανερὸν ὁμολογοῖεν ἄν, ὥσπερ καὶ φαῦλοι οὓς οἱ φίλοι ψέγουσι καὶ οὓς οἱ ἐχθροὶ μὴ ψέγουσιν. διὸ λελοιδορῆσθαι ὑπέλαβον Κορίνθιοι ὑπὸ Σιμωνίδου ποιήσαντος Κορινθίοις δ' οὐ μέμφεται τὸ Ἴλιον.

ENGLISH

ally having the qualities for which one is honored. The ability to speak and to act: all such things produce goods. Further, natural talent, memory, readiness to learn, quickness of mind, and all such things, since these capacities produce goods. Likewise all the sciences and arts. And life: even if no other good followed from it, it is choiceworthy in itself. And justice, since it is something advantageous to the community. These, then, are roughly the goods that are agreed upon. In disputed cases, the syllogisms are drawn from the following. A thing whose opposite is bad is good.

So is a thing whose opposite is advantageous to one's enemies. For instance, if it is most advantageous to the enemy that the citizens be cowards, clearly courage is most beneficial to the citizens. In general, the opposite of what one's enemies want or rejoice at appears beneficial; hence the line, "Surely Priam would rejoice." This is not always so, but usually, since nothing prevents the same thing from sometimes being advantageous to opposing sides. Hence the saying that misfortunes bring people together, when the same thing is harmful to both. [1363a] Again, what is not excessive is good, while what is greater than it should be is bad. And so is that for whose sake much labor or money has been spent. It already appears good, and such a thing is taken to be an end, and the end of many efforts, and the end is good.[15]

Hence these lines: "And they would leave Priam something to boast of," and "It is shameful to stay long"; and the proverb about the water jar at the door. Again, what many people desire, and what appears worth fighting over; for what all desire was good, and the many seem like all. And what is praised, since no one praises what is not good. And what one's enemies [and the worthless] praise. It is as if everyone already agrees, if even those who have suffered from it do; they would agree because it is obvious. In the same way, people whom their friends blame and their enemies do not blame are worthless. That is why the Corinthians thought they had been insulted by Simonides when he wrote, "Ilium does not blame the Corinthians."[16]

15 Homer, *Iliad* 1.255: Nestor warns that Priam, king of Troy, would rejoice at the quarrel between Achilles and Agamemnon.
16 The two lines are from *Iliad* 2, where the Greeks are urged not to abandon the war after so much effort. The proverb is about breaking the jar at the very door, that is, failing at the last moment.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	καὶ ὃ τῶν φρονίμων τις ἢ τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἀνδρῶν ἢ γυναικῶν προέκρινεν, οἷον Ὀδυσσέα Ἀθηνᾶ καὶ Ἑλένην Θησεὺς καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον αἱ θεαὶ καὶ Ἀχιλλέα Ὅμηρος. καὶ ὅλως τὰ προαιρετά· προαιροῦνται δὲ πράττειν τά τε εἰρημένα καὶ τὰ τοῖς ἐχθροῖς κακὰ καὶ τὰ τοῖς φίλοις ἀγαθὰ καὶ τὰ δυνατά. ταῦτα δὲ διχῶς ἐστιν τά τε γενόμενα ἂν καὶ τὰ ῥᾳδίως γιγνόμενα. ῥᾴδια δὲ ὅσα ἢ ἄνευ λύπης ἢ ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ· τὸ γὰρ χαλεπὸν ὁρίζεται ἢ λύπῃ ἢ πλήθει χρόνου. καὶ ἐὰν ὡς βούλονται· βούλονται δὲ ἢ μηδὲν κακὸν ἢ ἔλαττον τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ· τοῦτο δὲ ἔσται, ἐὰν ἢ λανθάνῃ ἡ τιμωρία ἢ μικρὰ ᾖ. καὶ τὰ ἴδια, καὶ ἃ μηδείς, καὶ τὰ περιττά· τιμὴ γὰρ οὕτω μᾶλλον.	Again, what someone of practical wisdom, or some good man or woman, has preferred: as Athena preferred Odysseus, Theseus preferred Helen, the goddesses preferred Alexander, and Homer preferred Achilles. And in general, things that are deliberately chosen. People choose to do the things mentioned, things that are bad for their enemies and good for their friends, and things that are possible. Possible things are of two kinds: what could happen, and what happens easily. Easy things are those done without pain or in a short time, since difficulty is defined either by pain or by length of time. Again, things that turn out as people wish. They wish for either no harm at all or less harm than good, which will be the case if the penalty goes unnoticed or is small. And things peculiar to oneself, things no one else has, and the extraordinary, since there is more honor in that.[17]
	καὶ τὰ ἁρμόττοντα αὐτοῖς· τοιαῦτα δὲ τά τε προσήκοντα κατὰ γένος καὶ δύναμιν, καὶ ὧν ἐλλείπειν οἴονται καὶ ἂν μικρὰ ᾖ· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἧττον προαιροῦνται ταῦτα πράττειν. καὶ τὰ εὐκατέργαστα· δυνατὰ γὰρ ὡς ῥᾴδια· εὐκατέργαστα δὲ ἃ πάντες ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ ἢ οἱ ὅμοιοι ἢ οἱ ἧττους κατώρθωσαν. καὶ ἃ χαριοῦνται τοῖς φίλοις, ἢ ἃ ἀπεχθήσονται τοῖς ἐχθροῖς. καὶ ὅσα οὓς θαυμάζουσι προαιροῦνται πράττειν. καὶ πρὸς ἃ εὐφυεῖς εἰσιν καὶ ἔμπειροι· ῥᾷον γὰρ κατορθῶσαι οἴονται. καὶ ἃ μηδεὶς φαῦλος· ἐπαινετὰ γὰρ μᾶλλον. καὶ ὧν ἐπιθυμοῦντες τυγχάνουσιν, οὐ γὰρ μόνον ἡδὺ ἀλλὰ καὶ βέλτιον φαίνεται. καὶ μάλιστα ἕκαστοι πρὸς ἃ τοιοῦτοι, [1363b] οἷον οἱ φιλόνικοι εἰ νίκη ἔσται, οἱ φιλότιμοι εἰ τιμή, οἱ φιλοχρήματοι εἰ χρήματα, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὡσαύτως.	Again, things that suit people: these are what befits their birth and capacity, and things they think they lack, even if small, since they are no less inclined to choose to do these. And things easily accomplished, since they are possible because they are easy. Easily accomplished are the things that everyone, or most people, or one's equals, or one's inferiors have succeeded in. And things by which they will please their friends or vex their enemies. And whatever the people they admire choose to do. And things for which they have a natural gift and experience, since they think they'll succeed more easily. And things no worthless person does, since these are more praiseworthy. And things they happen to desire, since these seem not only pleasant but also better. Above all, each kind of person is drawn to what matches their character: [1363b] lovers of victory, if there will be victory; lovers of honor, if there will be honor; lovers of money, if there will be money; and the rest likewise.
1363b	περὶ μὲν οὖν ἀγαθοῦ καὶ τοῦ συμφέροντος ἐκ τούτων ληπτέον τὰς πίστεις·	These, then, are the sources from which we must draw our proofs about the good and the advantageous.

17 Alexander is Paris, whom the goddesses Hera, Athena and Aphrodite chose to judge their beauty contest.

CHAPTER 7: THE GREATER GOOD

Topics for arguing that one good or advantage is greater than another.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλάκις ὁμολογοῦντες ἄμφω συμφέρειν περὶ τοῦ μᾶλλον ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, ἐφεξῆς ἂν εἴη λεκτέον περὶ τοῦ μείζονος ἀγαθοῦ καὶ τοῦ μᾶλλον συμφέροντος. ἔστω δὴ ὑπερέχον μὲν τὸ τοσοῦτον καὶ ἔτι, ὑπερεχόμενον δὲ τὸ ἐνυπάρχον, καὶ μεῖζον μὲν ἀεὶ καὶ πλεῖον πρὸς ἔλαττον, μέγα δὲ καὶ μικρὸν καὶ πολὺ καὶ ὀλίγον πρὸς τὸ τῶν πολλῶν μέγεθος, καὶ ὑπερέχον μὲν τὸ μέγα, τὸ δὲ ἐλλεῖπον μικρόν, καὶ πολὺ καὶ ὀλίγον ὡσαύτως.	But people often agree that both of two things are advantageous and dispute which is more so. So the next thing to discuss would be the greater good and the more advantageous. Let one thing exceed another when it is as much as the other and more besides, and let it be exceeded when it is contained in the other. “Greater” and “more” are always relative to something less; “great” and “small,” “much” and “little,” are relative to the size of most things. What exceeds is great, what falls short is small, and the same goes for much and little.
ἐπεὶ οὖν ἀγαθὸν λέγομεν τό τε αὐτὸ αὐτοῦ ἕνεκα καὶ μὴ ἄλλου αἱρετόν, καὶ οὗ πάντ’ ἐφίεται, καὶ ὃ νοῦν ἂν καὶ φρόνησιν λαβόντα ἕλοιτο, καὶ τὸ ποιητικὸν καὶ τὸ φυλακτικόν, ἢ ᾧ ἕπεται τὰ τοιαῦτα, τὸ δ’ οὗ ἕνεκα τὸ τέλος ἐστίν, τέλος δέ ἐστιν οὗ ἕνεκα τὰ ἄλλα, αὐτῷ δὲ ἀγαθὸν τὸ πρὸς αὐτὸν ταῦτα πεπονθός, ἀνάγκη τά τε πλείω τοῦ ἑνὸς καὶ τῶν ἐλαττόνων συναριθμουμένου τοῦ ἑνὸς ἢ τῶν ἐλαττόνων μεῖζον ἀγαθὸν εἶναι· ὑπερέχει γάρ, τὸ δὲ ἐνυπάρχον ὑπερέχεται.	Now we call good what is chosen for its own sake and not for the sake of something else. It is what all things aim at, and what anything would choose if it acquired intelligence and practical wisdom. It is also what produces or preserves such things, or what such things follow. That for the sake of which something is done is the end, and the end is that for the sake of which the rest is done. What is good for a particular person is what stands in this relation to him. Given all this, more goods must be a greater good than one, or than fewer, provided the one or the fewer are counted among them. For the more exceed, and what is contained is exceeded.
καὶ ἐὰν τὸ μέγιστον τοῦ μεγίστου ὑπερέχῃ, καὶ αὐτὰ αὐτῶν· καὶ ὅσα αὐτὰ αὐτῶν, καὶ τὸ μέγιστον τοῦ μεγίστου, οἷον εἰ ὁ μέγιστος ἀνὴρ γυναικὸς τῆς μεγίστης μείζων, καὶ ὅλως οἱ ἄνδρες τῶν γυναικῶν μείζους· καὶ εἰ οἱ ἄνδρες ὅλως τῶν γυναικῶν μείζους, καὶ ἀνὴρ ὁ μέγιστος τῆς μεγίστης γυναικὸς μείζων· ἀνάλογον γὰρ ἔχουσιν αἱ ὑπεροχαὶ τῶν γενῶν καὶ τῶν μεγίστων ἐν αὐτοῖς. καὶ ὅταν τόδε μὲν τῷδε ἕπηται, ἐκεῖνο δὲ τούτῳ μή· ἕπεται δὲ ἢ τῷ ἅμα ἢ τῷ ἐφεξῆς ἢ τῇ δυνάμει· ἐνυπάρχει γὰρ ἡ χρῆσις ἡ τοῦ ἑπομένου ἐν τῇ θατέρου. ἕπεται δὲ ἅμα μὲν τῷ ὑγιαίνειν τὸ ζῆν, τούτῳ δὲ ἐκεῖνο οὔ, ὕστερον δὲ τῷ μανθάνειν τὸ ἐπίστασθαι, δυνάμει δὲ τῷ ἱεροσυλεῖν τὸ ἀποστερεῖν· ὁ γὰρ ἱεροσυλήσας κἂν ἀποστερήσειεν.	And if the greatest member of one class exceeds the greatest member of another, the one class exceeds the other. And if one class exceeds another, its greatest member exceeds the other’s greatest. For instance, if the biggest man is bigger than the biggest woman, then men in general are bigger than women; and if men in general are bigger than women, then the biggest man is bigger than the biggest woman. For the superiorities of classes and of the greatest members within them are proportional. And a thing is greater when this follows that, but that does not follow this. One thing follows another either at the same time, or afterwards, or potentially; for the use of the thing that follows is contained in the use of the other. Life follows health at the same time, but health does not follow life. Knowledge follows learning afterwards. And cheating follows temple-robbing potentially, since a man who has robbed a temple would cheat as well.

GREEK

καὶ τὰ ὑπερέχοντα τοῦ αὐτοῦ μείζονι μείζω· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ὑπερέχειν καὶ τοῦ μείζονος. καὶ τὰ μείζονος ἀγαθοῦ ποιητικὰ μείζω· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν τὸ μείζονος ποιητικῷ εἶναι. καὶ οὗ τὸ ποιητικὸν μεῖζον, ὡσαύτως· εἰ γὰρ τὸ ὑγιεινὸν αἱρετώτερον τοῦ ἡδέος καὶ μεῖζον ἀγαθόν, καὶ ἡ ὑγίεια τῆς ἡδονῆς μείζων. [1364a] καὶ τὸ αἱρετὸν καθ' αὐτὸ τοῦ μὴ καθ' αὐτό, οἷον ἰσχὺς ὑγιεινοῦ· τὸ μὲν γὰρ οὐχ αὐτοῦ ἕνεκα, τὸ δὲ αὐτοῦ, ὅπερ ἦν τὸ ἀγαθόν. κἂν ᾖ τὸ μὲν τέλος, τὸ δὲ μὴ τέλος· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλου ἕνεκα, τὸ δὲ αὐτοῦ, οἷον τὸ γυμνάζεσθαι τοῦ εὖ ἔχειν τὸ σῶμα. καὶ τὸ ἧττον προσδεόμενον θατέρου ἢ ἑτέρων· αὐταρκέστερον γάρ· ἧττον δὲ προσδεῖται τὸ ἐλαττόνων ἢ ῥᾳόνων προσδεόμενον.

1364a καὶ ὅταν τόδε μὲν ἄνευ τοῦδε μὴ ᾖ ἢ μὴ δυνατὸν ᾖ γενέσθαι, θάτερον δὲ ἄνευ τούτου· αὐταρκέστερον δὲ τὸ μὴ δεόμενον, ὥστε φαίνεται μεῖζον ἀγαθόν. κἂν ᾖ ἀρχή, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἀρχή, κἂν ᾖ αἴτιον, τὸ δ' οὐκ αἴτιον διὰ τὸ αὐτό· ἄνευ γὰρ αἰτίου καὶ ἀρχῆς ἀδύνατον εἶναι ἢ γενέσθαι. καὶ δυοῖν ἀρχαῖν τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς μείζονος ἀρχῆς μεῖζον, καὶ δυοῖν αἰτίοιν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ μείζονος αἰτίου μεῖζον. καὶ ἀνάπαλιν δὲ δυοῖν ἀρχαῖν ἡ τοῦ μείζονος ἀρχὴ μείζων, καὶ δυοῖν αἰτίοιν τὸ τοῦ μείζονος αἴτιον μεῖζον.

δῆλον οὖν ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων ὅτι ἀμφοτέρως μεῖζόν ἐστιν φαίνεσθαι· καὶ γὰρ εἰ ἀρχή, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἀρχή, δόξει μεῖζον εἶναι, καὶ εἰ μὴ ἀρχή, τὸ δὲ ἀρχή· τὸ γὰρ τέλος μεῖζον καὶ οὐκ ἀρχή, ὥσπερ ὁ Λεωδάμας κατηγορῶν ἔφη Καλλιστράτου τὸν βουλεύσαντα τοῦ πράξαντος μᾶλλον ἀδικεῖν· οὐ γὰρ ἂν πραχθῆναι μὴ βουλευσαμένου· πάλιν δὲ καὶ Χαβρίου, τὸν πράξαντα τοῦ βουλεύσαντος· οὐ γὰρ ἂν γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἦν ὁ πράξων· τούτου γὰρ ἕνεκα ἐπιβουλεύειν, ὅπως πράξωσιν. καὶ τὸ σπανιώτερον τοῦ ἀφθόνου, οἷον χρυσὸς σιδήρου ἀχρηστότερος ὤν· μεῖζον γὰρ ἡ κτῆσις διὰ τὸ χαλεπωτέραν εἶναι. ἄλλον δὲ τρόπον τὸ ἄφθονον τοῦ σπανίου, ὅτι ἡ χρῆσις ὑπερέχει· τὸ γὰρ πολλάκις τοῦ ὀλιγάκις ὑπερέχει, ὅθεν λέγεται ἄριστον μὲν ὕδωρ. καὶ ὅλως τὸ χαλεπώτερον τοῦ ῥᾳόνος· σπανιώτερον γάρ.

ENGLISH

And things that exceed the same thing by a greater amount are greater, since they must also exceed the greater. And things that produce a greater good are greater, since that is what we meant by producing something greater. The same holds for a thing whose producer is greater: if what is healthy is more choiceworthy than what is pleasant and a greater good, then health is also greater than pleasure. [1364a] And what is choiceworthy in itself is greater than what is not, as strength is greater than what is healthy. The healthy is not chosen for its own sake, while strength is, and that, as we saw, is what the good is. And a thing is greater if it is an end and the other is not, since the other is for the sake of something else and it is for its own sake, as exercise is for the sake of physical fitness. And what needs less of another thing, or of other things, is greater, since it is more self-sufficient. A thing needs less when it needs fewer things, or things that are easier to get.

And a thing is greater when another cannot exist or come to be without it, but it can without the other. What does not need the other is more self-sufficient, and so it appears a greater good. The same holds, for the same reason, if one thing is a starting point and the other is not, or if one is a cause and the other is not; for without a cause and a starting point nothing can exist or come to be. And of two starting points, what comes from the greater starting point is greater; and of two causes, what comes from the greater cause is greater. Conversely, of two starting points, the starting point of the greater thing is greater; and of two causes, the cause of the greater thing is greater.

It is clear from what has been said, then, that a thing can be made to appear greater in both ways. If it is a starting point and the other is not, it will seem greater. And it will also seem greater if it is not a starting point and the other is, since the end is greater and is not a starting point. So Leodamas, prosecuting Callistratus, said that the man who planned the deed did more wrong than the man who carried it out, since it would not have been done if he had not planned it. But prosecuting Chabrias, he said the reverse: the man who carried it out did more wrong than the man who planned it, since it would not have happened without someone to carry it out, and the whole point of plotting is to get the thing done. And what

GREEK	ENGLISH
	is rarer is greater than what is plentiful, as gold is greater than iron, though less useful; possessing it is a greater thing because it is harder to get. In another way, what is plentiful is greater than what is rare, because its use goes further; "often" exceeds "seldom," which is why it is said, "Best is water." And in general what is harder is greater than what is easier, since it is rarer.[18]
ἄλλον δὲ τρόπον τὸ ῥᾷον τοῦ χαλεπωτέρου· ἔχει γὰρ ὡς βουλόμεθα. καὶ ᾧ τὸ ἐναντίον μεῖζον, καὶ οὗ ἡ στέρησις μείζων. καὶ ἀρετὴ μὴ ἀρετῆς καὶ κακία μὴ κακίας μείζων· τὰ μὲν γὰρ τέλη, τὰ δ' οὐ τέλη. καὶ ὧν τὰ ἔργα καλλίω ἢ αἰσχίω, μείζω αὐτά καὶ ὧν αἱ κακίαι καὶ αἱ ἀρεταὶ μείζους, καὶ τὰ ἔργα μείζω, ἐπείπερ ὡς τὰ αἴτια καὶ αἱ ἀρχαί, καὶ τὰ ἀποβαίνοντα, καὶ ὡς τὰ ἀποβαίνοντα, καὶ τὰ αἴτια καὶ αἱ ἀρχαί. καὶ ὧν ἡ ὑπεροχὴ αἱρετωτέρα ἢ καλλίων, οἷον τὸ ἀκριβῶς ὁρᾶν αἱρετώτερον τοῦ ὀσφραίνεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ ὄψις ὀσφρήσεως· 1364b καὶ τὸ φιλέταιρον εἶναι τοῦ φιλοχρήματον μᾶλλον κάλλιον, ὥστε καὶ φιλεταιρία φιλοχρηματίας. καὶ ἀντικειμένως δὲ τῶν βελτιόνων αἱ ὑπερβολαὶ βελτίους καὶ καλλιόνων καλλίους.	In another way, what is easier is greater than what is harder, since it is as we want it. And a thing is greater when its opposite is greater, and when its loss is greater. And excellence is greater than what is not excellence, and vice greater than what is not vice, since excellence and vice are ends and the others are not. And things whose works are finer or more shameful are themselves greater. And things whose vices and excellences are greater also have greater works, since results correspond to their causes and starting points, and causes and starting points to their results. And things are greater when superiority in them is more choiceworthy or finer. For example, seeing sharply is more choiceworthy than smelling sharply, since sight is more choiceworthy than smell. 1364b And being exceptionally devoted to one's friends is finer than being exceptionally devoted to money, so love of friends is finer than love of money. And, the other way around, excesses of better things are better, and excesses of finer things finer.
1364b καὶ ὧν αἱ ἐπιθυμίαι καλλίους ἢ βελτίους· αἱ γὰρ μείζους ὀρέξεις μειζόνων εἰσίν. καὶ τῶν καλλιόνων δὲ ἢ καὶ βελτιόνων αἱ ἐπιθυμίαι βελτίους καὶ καλλίους διὰ τὸ αὐτό. καὶ ὧν αἱ ἐπιστῆμαι καλλίους ἢ σπουδαιότεραι, καὶ τὰ πράγματα καλλίω καὶ σπουδαιότερα· ὡς γὰρ ἔχει ἡ ἐπιστήμη, καὶ τὸ ἀληθές· κελεύει δὲ τὸ αὐτῆς ἑκάστη. καὶ τῶν σπουδαιοτέρων δὲ καὶ καλλιόνων αἱ ἐπιστῆμαι ἀνάλογον διὰ ταὐτά. καὶ ὃ κρίνειαν ἂν ἢ κεκρίκασιν οἱ φρόνιμοι ἢ πάντες ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ ἢ οἱ πλείους ἢ οἱ κράτιστοι ἀγαθὸν ἢ μεῖζον, ἀνάγκη οὕτως ἔχειν, ἢ ἁπλῶς ἢ ᾗ κατὰ τὴν φρόνησιν ἔκριναν. ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο κοινὸν καὶ κατὰ τῶν ἄλλων· καὶ γὰρ τὶ καὶ ποσὸν καὶ ποιὸν οὕτως ἔχει ὡς ἂν ἡ ἐπιστήμη καὶ ἡ φρόνησις εἴποι.	And things are greater when the desires for them are finer or better, since greater longings are for greater objects. For the same reason, desires for finer or better things are better and finer. And when the sciences of things are finer or more serious, the things themselves are finer and more serious; for as the science is, so is the truth it studies, and each science commands what belongs to it. By the same reasoning, the sciences of more serious and finer things are correspondingly more serious and finer. And whatever people of practical wisdom, or everyone, or most people, or the majority, or the best people would judge or have judged good or greater must be so, either absolutely or insofar as they judged by their practical wisdom. This applies to other things as well: what a thing

18 Leodamas, an Athenian orator, prosecuted the statesman Callistratus and the general Chabrias, both tried over the loss of Oropus in 366 BC. "Best is water" opens Pindar's First Olympian Ode.

GREEK

ENGLISH

is, how much it is and what sort it is are as knowledge and practical wisdom would say.

ἀλλ' ἐπ' ἀγαθῶν εἰρήκαμεν· ὥρισται γὰρ ἀγαθὸν εἶναι ὃ λαβόντα τὰ πράγματα φρόνησιν ἕλοιτ' ἂν ἕκαστον· δῆλον οὖν ὅτι καὶ μεῖζον, ὃ μᾶλλον ἡ φρόνησις λέγει. καὶ τὸ τοῖς βελτίοσιν ὑπάρχον, ἢ ἁπλῶς ἢ ᾗ βελτίους, οἷον ἡ ἀνδρία ἰσχύος. καὶ ὃ ἕλοιτ' ἂν ὁ βελτίων, ἢ ἁπλῶς ἢ ᾗ βελτίων, οἷον τὸ ἀδικεῖσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ἀδικεῖν· τοῦτο γὰρ ὁ δικαιότερος ἂν ἕλοιτο. καὶ τὸ ἥδιον τοῦ ἧττον ἡδέος· τὴν γὰρ ἡδονὴν πάντα διώκει, καὶ αὐτοῦ ἕνεκα τοῦ ἥδεσθαι ὀρέγονται, ὥρισται δὲ τούτοις τὸ ἀγαθὸν καὶ τὸ τέλος. ἥδιον δὲ τό τε ἀλυπότερον καὶ τὸ πολυχρονιώτερον ἡδύ. καὶ τὸ κάλλιον τοῦ ἧττον καλοῦ· τὸ γὰρ καλόν ἐστιν ἤτοι τὸ ἡδὺ ἢ τὸ καθ' αὐτὸ αἱρετόν.

But we have stated it for goods, since good was defined as what each thing would choose if it acquired practical wisdom. Clearly, then, the greater is what practical wisdom says is more so. And what belongs to better people is greater, either absolutely or insofar as they are better, as courage is greater than strength. And so is what the better person would choose, either absolutely or insofar as he is better, such as suffering wrong rather than doing it, since that is what the more just person would choose. And the more pleasant is greater than the less pleasant, since all things pursue pleasure and desire enjoyment for its own sake, and these are the terms in which the good and the end were defined. The more pleasant is what is freer from pain and what lasts longer. And the finer is greater than the less fine, since the fine is either the pleasant or what is choiceworthy in itself.

καὶ ὅσων αὐτοὶ αὐτοῖς ἢ φίλοις βούλονται αἴτιοι εἶναι μᾶλλον, ταῦτα μείζω ἀγαθά, ὅσων δὲ ἥκιστα, μείζω κακά. καὶ τὰ πολυχρονιώτερα τῶν ὀλιγοχρονιωτέρων καὶ τὰ βεβαιότερα τῶν ἀβεβαιοτέρων· ὑπερέχει γὰρ ἡ χρῆσις τῶν μὲν τῷ χρόνῳ τῶν δὲ τῇ βουλήσει· ὅταν γὰρ βούλωνται, ὑπάρχει μᾶλλον ἡ τοῦ βεβαίου. καὶ ὡς ἂν ἐκ τῶν συστοίχων καὶ τῶν ὁμοίων πτώσεων, καὶ τἆλλ' ἀκολουθεῖ, οἷον εἰ τὸ ἀνδρείως κάλλιον καὶ αἱρετώτερον τοῦ σωφρόνως, καὶ ἀνδρία σωφροσύνης αἱρετωτέρα καὶ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον εἶναι τοῦ σωφρονεῖν. καὶ ὃ πάντες αἱροῦνται τοῦ μὴ ὃ πάντες. καὶ ὃ οἱ πλείους ἢ ⟨ὃ⟩ οἱ ἐλάττους· 1365a ἀγαθὸν γὰρ ἦν οὗ πάντες ἐφίενται, ὥστε καὶ μεῖζον οὗ μᾶλλον.

And the things we most want to bring about for ourselves or our friends are greater goods, and those we least want to bring about are greater evils. And longer-lasting things are greater than shorter-lived ones, and more secure things than less secure ones. The use of the first exceeds in time, and the use of the second in our wishes, since the secure thing is more readily available whenever we want it. And the rest follows the same pattern as related words and their inflected forms. For example, if acting "courageously" is finer and more choiceworthy than acting "moderately," then courage is more choiceworthy than moderation, and being courageous than being moderate. And what everyone chooses is greater than what not everyone chooses, and what more people choose than what fewer choose; 1365a for the good, as we saw, is what all aim at, so the greater is what they aim at more.

1365a καὶ ὃ οἱ ἀμφισβητοῦντες ἢ οἱ ἐχθροὶ ἢ οἱ κρίνοντες ἢ οὓς οὗτοι κρίνουσιν· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ὡς ἂν εἰ πάντες φαῖεν ἐστί, τὸ δὲ οἱ κύριοι καὶ οἱ εἰδότες. καὶ ὁτὲ μὲν οὗ πάντες μετέχουσι μεῖζον· ἀτιμία γὰρ τὸ μὴ μετέχειν· ὁτὲ δὲ οὗ μηδεὶς ἢ οὗ ὀλίγοι. σπανιώτερον γάρ. καὶ τὰ ἐπαινετώτερα· καλλίω γάρ. καὶ ὧν αἱ τιμαὶ μείζους, ὡσαύτως· ἡ γὰρ τιμὴ ὥσπερ ἀξία τίς ἐστιν. καὶ ὧν αἱ ζημίαι μείζους. καὶ τὰ τῶν ὁμολογουμένων ἢ φαινομένων μεγάλων μείζω.

And so is what our opponents or enemies prefer, or the judges, or those whom the judges appoint to judge. The first is as though everyone said so; the second is the verdict of those with authority and knowledge. And sometimes what everyone shares in is greater, since not sharing in it is a disgrace; but at other times what no one or only a few share in, since it is rarer. And what is more praiseworthy is greater, since it is finer. Likewise things that

GREEK

καὶ διαιρούμενα δὲ εἰς τὰ μέρη τὰ αὐτὰ μείζω φαίνεται· πλειόνων γὰρ ὑπερέχειν φαίνεται, ὅθεν καὶ ὁ ποιητής φησι πεῖσαι τὸν Μελέαγρον ἀναστῆναι ὅσσα κάκ' ἀνθρώποισι πέλει τῶν ἄστυ ἁλώῃ·
λαοὶ μὲν φθινύθουσι, πόλιν δέ τε πῦρ ἀμαθύνει,
τέκνα δέ τ' ἄλλοι ἄγουσιν. καὶ τὸ συντιθέναι δὲ καὶ ἐποικοδομεῖν, ὥσπερ Ἐπίχαρμος, διά τε τὸ αὐτὸ τῇ διαιρέσει· (ἡ γὰρ σύνθεσις ὑπεροχὴν δείκνυσι πολλήν) καὶ ὅτι ἀρχὴ φαίνεται μεγάλων καὶ αἴτιον.

ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ χαλεπώτερον καὶ σπανιώτερον μεῖζον, καὶ οἱ καιροὶ καὶ αἱ ἡλικίαι καὶ οἱ τόποι καὶ οἱ χρόνοι καὶ αἱ δυνάμεις ποιοῦσι μεγάλα· εἰ γὰρ παρὰ δύναμιν καὶ παρὰ ἡλικίαν καὶ παρὰ τοὺς ὁμοίους, καὶ εἰ οὕτως ἢ ἐνταῦθα ἢ τότε, ἕξει μέγεθος καὶ καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ δικαίων καὶ τῶν ἐναντίων, ὅθεν καὶ τὸ ἐπίγραμμα τῷ ὀλυμπιονίκῃ· πρόσθε μὲν ἀμφ' ὤμοισιν ἔχων τραχεῖαν ἄσιλλαν / ἰχθῦς ἐξ Ἄργους εἰς Τεγέαν ἔφερον. καὶ ὁ Ἰφικράτης αὐτὸν ἐνεκωμίαζε λέγων ἐξ ὧν ὑπῆρξεν ταῦτα. καὶ τὸ αὐτοφυὲς τοῦ ἐπικτήτου· χαλεπώτερον γάρ. ὅθεν καὶ ὁ ποιητής φησιν αὐτοδίδακτος δ' εἰμί. καὶ τὸ μεγάλου μέγιστον μέρος, οἷον Περικλῆς τὸν ἐπιτάφιον λέγων, τὴν νεότητα ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἀνῃρῆσθαι ὥσπερ τὸ ἔαρ ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ εἰ ἐξαιρεθείη.

καὶ τὰ ἐν χρείᾳ μείζονι χρήσιμα, οἷον τὰ ἐν γήρᾳ καὶ νόσοις. καὶ δυοῖν τὸ ἐγγύτερον τοῦ τέλους. καὶ τὸ αὐτῷ καὶ ἁπλῶς. καὶ τὸ δυνατὸν τοῦ ἀδυνάτου· τὸ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῷ, τὸ δ' οὔ. καὶ τὰ ἐν τέλει τοῦ βίου· τέλη γὰρ μᾶλλον τὰ πρὸς τῷ τέλει. [1365b] καὶ τὰ πρὸς ἀλήθειαν τῶν πρὸς δόξαν. ὅρος δὲ τοῦ πρὸς δόξαν, ὃ λανθάνειν μέλλων οὐκ ἂν ἔλοιτο. διὸ καὶ τὸ εὖ πάσχειν τοῦ εὖ ποιεῖν δόξειεν ἂν αἱρετώτερον εἶναι· τὸ μὲν γὰρ κἂν λανθάνῃ αἱρήσεται, ποιεῖν δ' εὖ λανθάνων οὐ δοκεῖ ἂν ἑλέσθαι. καὶ ὅσα εἶναι μᾶλλον ἢ δοκεῖν βούλονται· πρὸς ἀλήθειαν γὰρ μᾶλλον. διὸ καὶ τὴν δικαιοσύνην φασὶ μικρὸν εἶναι, ὅτι δοκεῖν ἢ εἶναι αἱρετώτερον· τὸ δὲ ὑγιαίνειν οὔ.

ENGLISH

carry greater honors, since honor is a kind of measure of worth; and things that carry greater penalties. And things greater than what is admittedly or apparently great are greater.

And the same things appear greater when divided into their parts, since they seem to exceed more things. That is why the poet says that Meleager was persuaded to rise up by hearing "all the woes that come to men whose city is taken:
the people perish, fire levels the town to dust,
and strangers lead off the children." Combining and building up, as Epicharmus does, works the same way. Partly this is for the same reason as division (since combining shows a great superiority), and partly because the result appears to be the starting point and cause of great things.[19]

Since what is harder and rarer is greater, occasions, ages, places, times and abilities also make things great. If someone acts beyond his ability, beyond his age, beyond what people like him do, and if he acts in this way, or here, or at this time, his deeds will have greatness, whether they are fine, good and just or the opposite. Hence the epigram for the Olympic victor: "Once, with a rough yoke on my shoulders, / I used to carry fish from Argos to Tegea." And Iphicrates praised himself by describing where he had started from. And what is innate is greater than what is acquired, since it is harder. Hence the poet says, "I am self-taught." And the greatest part of something great is greater. So Pericles said in his funeral speech that the city's youth had been taken from it as if the spring had been taken out of the year.[20]

And things useful in greater need are greater, such as those useful in old age and sickness. And of two things, the one nearer the end. And what is good for oneself as well as absolutely. And the possible over the impossible, since the possible is good for oneself and the impossible is not. And things at the end of life, since things near the end are more truly ends. [1365b] And things aimed at reality over things aimed at appearances. The test of what is aimed at appearances is that one would not choose it if no one were going to notice. That is why re-

19 The lines are from Homer's *Iliad* (Book 9), where Phoenix tells how Meleager's wife persuaded him to return to battle. Epicharmus was a Sicilian comic poet of the early fifth century BC.
20 Iphicrates, a famous Athenian general of the fourth century BC, was a shoemaker's son. "I am self-taught" is said by the bard Phemius in Homer's *Odyssey* (Book 22).

GREEK	ENGLISH
	ceiving benefits would seem more choiceworthy than conferring them: a person will choose to receive them even if no one notices, but no one is thought likely to choose to confer them unnoticed. And whatever people want to be rather than to seem is greater, since it is aimed more at reality. That is why some say justice is a small thing, since seeming just is more choiceworthy than being just; but with health that is not so.
1365b καὶ τὸ πρὸς πολλὰ χρησιμώτερον, οἷον τὸ πρὸς τὸ ζῆν καὶ εὖ ζῆν καὶ τὴν ἡδονὴν καὶ τὸ πράττειν τὰ καλά. διὸ [καὶ] ὁ πλοῦτος καὶ ἡ ὑγίεια μέγιστα δοκεῖ εἶναι· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἔχει ταῦτα. καὶ τὸ ἀλυπότερον καὶ τὸ μεθ' ἡδονῆς· πλείω γὰρ ἑνός, ὥστε ὑπάρχει καὶ ἡ ἡδονὴ ἀγαθὸν καὶ ἡ ἀλυπία. καὶ δυοῖν ὃ τῷ αὐτῷ προστιθέμενον μεῖζον τὸ ὅλον ποιεῖ. καὶ ἃ μὴ λανθάνει παρόντα ἢ ἃ λανθάνει· πρὸς ἀλήθειαν γὰρ τείνει ταῦτα. διὸ τὸ πλουτεῖν φανείη ἂν μεῖζον ἀγαθὸν τῷ δοκεῖν. καὶ τὸ ἀγαπητόν, καὶ τοῖς μὲν μόνον τοῖς δὲ μετ' ἄλλων. διὸ καὶ οὐκ ἴση ζημία, ἄν τις τὸν ἑτερόφθαλμον τυφλώσῃ καὶ τὸν δύ' ἔχοντα· ἀγαπητὸν γὰρ ἀφῄρηται.	And what is useful for many purposes is greater, such as what is useful for living, for living well, for pleasure and for doing fine deeds. That is [also] why wealth and health are thought to be the greatest goods: they have all these. And what is freer from pain and what is accompanied by pleasure is greater, since that is more than one thing, so that both pleasure and freedom from pain are present as goods. And of two things, the one that makes a greater whole when added to the same thing. And things whose presence is noticed are greater than those that go unnoticed, since these tend toward reality. That is why being wealthy would appear a greater good than seeming to be. And what is cherished is greater, as when one person has it as his only one and another has it along with others. That is why the penalty is not the same for blinding a one-eyed man and a man with two eyes: the one-eyed man has been robbed of what he cherished.
ἐκ τίνων μὲν οὖν δεῖ τὰς πίστεις φέρειν ἐν τῷ προτρέπειν καὶ ἀποτρέπειν, σχεδὸν εἴρηται·	We have now said, more or less, what sources one must draw proofs from when urging people to do something or dissuading them.

CHAPTER 8: THE CONSTITUTIONS

The speaker must know the ends and characters of democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy and monarchy.

GREEK	ENGLISH
μέγιστον δὲ καὶ κυριώτατον ἁπάντων πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι πείθειν καὶ καλῶς συμβουλεύειν τὰς πολιτείας ἁπάσας λαβεῖν καὶ τὰ ἑκάστης ἤθη καὶ νόμιμα καὶ συμφέροντα διελεῖν. πείθονται γὰρ ἅπαντες τῷ συμφέροντι, συμφέρει δὲ τὸ σῶζον τὴν πολιτείαν. ἔτι δὲ κυρία μέν ἐστιν ἡ τοῦ κυρίου ἀπόφασις, τὰ δὲ κύρια διῄρηται κατὰ τὰς πολιτείας· ὅσαι γὰρ αἱ πολιτεῖαι, τοσαῦτα καὶ τὰ κύριά ἐστιν. εἰσὶν δὲ πολιτεῖαι τέτταρες, δημοκρατία ὀλιγαρχία ἀριστοκρατία μοναρχία, ὥστε τὸ μὲν κύριον καὶ τὸ κρῖνον τούτων τί ἐστιν μόριον ἢ ὅλον τούτων. ἔστιν δὲ δημοκρατία μὲν πολιτεία ἐν ᾗ κλήρῳ διανέμονται τὰς	The greatest and most decisive thing of all for being able to persuade and give good advice is to grasp all the constitutions and to distinguish the character, customs and interests of each. Everyone is persuaded by what is advantageous, and what is advantageous is what preserves the constitution. Further, the decision of the sovereign authority is authoritative, and sovereign authorities differ from one constitution to another; there are as many sovereign authorities as there are constitutions. There are four constitutions: democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy and monarchy. So the sover-

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἀρχάς, ὀλιγαρχία δὲ ἐν ᾗ [οἱ] ἀπὸ τιμημάτων, ἀριστοκρατία δὲ ἐν ᾗ κατὰ τὴν παιδείαν.	eign authority, the one that decides, will be some part of the citizen body or the whole of it. A democracy is a constitution in which offices are distributed by lot; an oligarchy, one in which [those] with a property qualification hold them; an aristocracy, one in which they are assigned according to education.
παιδείαν δὲ λέγω τὴν ὑπὸ τοῦ νόμου κειμένην· οἱ γὰρ ἐμμεμενηκότες ἐν τοῖς νομίμοις ἐν τῇ ἀριστοκρατίᾳ ἄρχουσιν. ἀνάγκη δὲ τούτους φαίνεσθαι ἀρίστους, ὅθεν καὶ τοὔνομα εἴληφεν τοῦτο. μοναρχία δ' ἐστὶν κατὰ τοὔνομα ἐν ᾗ εἷς ἁπάντων κύριός ἐστιν· 1366a τούτων δὲ ἡ μὲν κατὰ τάξιν τινὰ βασιλεία, ἡ δ' ἀόριστος τυραννίς· τὸ δὲ τέλος ἑκάστης πολιτείας οὐ δεῖ λανθάνειν· αἱροῦνται γὰρ τὰ πρὸς τὸ τέλος. ἔστι δὲ δημοκρατίας μὲν τέλος ἐλευθερία, ὀλιγαρχίας δὲ πλοῦτος, ἀριστοκρατίας δὲ τὰ περὶ παιδείαν καὶ τὰ νόμιμα * * * τυραννίδος δὲ φυλακή. δῆλον οὖν ὅτι τὰ πρὸς τὸ τέλος ἑκάστης ἥθη καὶ νόμιμα καὶ συμφέροντα διαιρετέον, εἴπερ αἱροῦνται πρὸς τοῦτο ἐπαναφέροντες.	By education I mean the education laid down by law; for in an aristocracy those who have abided by the established customs hold office. These must appear to be the best people, which is where the constitution got its name. A monarchy, as the name says, is a constitution in which one man has authority over everything. 1366a Of monarchies, the one that follows some order is kingship, and the unlimited one is tyranny. One must not overlook the end of each constitution, since people choose what leads to the end. The end of democracy is freedom, of oligarchy wealth, of aristocracy what concerns education and the established customs * * * of tyranny, self-protection. Clearly, then, one must distinguish the characters, customs and interests that lead to the end of each, since people make their choices by referring to it.[21]
1366a ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ μόνον αἱ πίστεις γίνονται δι' ἀποδεικτικοῦ λόγου ἀλλὰ καὶ δι' ἠθικοῦ· (τῷ γὰρ ποιόν τινα φαίνεσθαι τὸν λέγοντα πιστεύομεν, τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἂν ἀγαθὸς φαίνηται ἢ εὔνους ἢ ἄμφω) δέοι ἂν τὰ ἤθη τῶν πολιτειῶν ἑκάστης ἔχειν ἡμᾶς· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἑκάστης ἦθος πιθανώτατον ἀνάγκη πρὸς ἑκάστην εἶναι. ταῦτα δὲ ληφθήσεται διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἤθη φανερὰ κατὰ τὴν προαίρεσιν, ἡ δὲ προαίρεσις ἀναφέρεται πρὸς τὸ τέλος. ὧν μὲν οὖν δεῖ ὀρέγεσθαι προτρέποντας ὡς ἐσομένων ἢ ὄντων, καὶ ἐκ τίνων δεῖ τὰς περὶ τοῦ συμφέροντος πίστεις λαμβάνειν, ἔτι δὲ περὶ τῶν περὶ τὰς πολιτείας ἠθῶν καὶ νομίμων διὰ τίνων τε καὶ πῶς εὐπορήσομεν, ἐφ' ὅσον ἦν τῷ παρόντι καιρῷ σύμμετρον, εἴρηται· διηκρίβωται γὰρ ἐν τοῖς πολιτικοῖς περὶ τούτων.	But proofs come not only through demonstrative argument but also through argument that reveals character. We trust the speaker because he appears to be a certain sort of person, that is, if he appears good, or well-disposed, or both. So we ought to know the character of each constitution, since the character of each is bound to be the most persuasive with it. These characters will be grasped by the same means; for character is revealed by choice, and choice is directed toward the end. We have now said, as far as suits the present occasion, what people must aim at when urging something as future or present, and what sources to draw proofs about the advantageous from. We have also said how, and by what means, we shall be well supplied regarding the characters and customs of the constitutions. For these matters are discussed in detail in the *Politics*.

21 "Aristocracy" means "rule of the best" (*aristoi*).

CHAPTER 9: THE FINE AND THE EXCELLENCES

Ceremonial speech: the excellences, the fine and the shameful, and how to praise.

GREEK

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα λέγωμεν περὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ κακίας καὶ καλοῦ καὶ αἰσχροῦ· οὗτοι γὰρ σκοποὶ τῷ ἐπαινοῦντι καὶ ψέγοντι· συμβήσεται γὰρ ἅμα περὶ τούτων λέγοντας κἀκεῖνα δηλοῦν ἐξ ὧν ποιοί τινες ὑποληφθησόμεθα κατὰ τὸ ἦθος, ἥπερ ἦν δευτέρα πίστις· ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν γὰρ ἡμᾶς τε καὶ ἄλλον ἀξιόπιστον δυνησόμεθα ποιεῖν πρὸς ἀρετήν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συμβαίνει καὶ χωρὶς σπουδῆς καὶ μετὰ σπουδῆς ἐπαινεῖν πολλάκις οὐ μόνον ἄνθρωπον ἢ θεὸν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄψυχα καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ζῴων τὸ τυχόν, τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καὶ περὶ τούτων ληπτέον τὰς προτάσεις, ὥστε ὅσον παραδείγματος χάριν εἴπωμεν καὶ περὶ τούτων. καλὸν μὲν οὖν ἐστιν ὃ ἂν δι' αὑτὸ αἱρετὸν ὂν ἐπαινετὸν ᾖ, ἢ ὃ ἂν ἀγαθὸν ὂν ἡδὺ ᾖ, ὅτι ἀγαθόν.

εἰ δὲ τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ καλόν, ἀνάγκη τὴν ἀρετὴν καλὸν εἶναι. ἀγαθὸν γὰρ ὂν ἐπαινετόν ἐστιν. ἀρετὴ δ' ἐστὶ μὲν δύναμις ὡς δοκεῖ ποριστικὴ ἀγαθῶν καὶ φυλακτική, καὶ δύναμις εὐεργετικὴ πολλῶν καὶ μεγάλων, καὶ πάντων περὶ πάντα. * * * [1366b] μέρη δὲ ἀρετῆς δικαιοσύνη, ἀνδρία, σωφροσύνη, μεγαλοπρέπεια, μεγαλοψυχία, ἐλευθεριότης, πραότης, φρόνησις, σοφία. ἀνάγκη δὲ μεγίστας εἶναι ἀρετὰς τὰς τοῖς ἄλλοις χρησιμωτάτας, εἴπερ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετὴ δύναμις εὐεργετική. διὰ τοῦτο τοὺς δικαίους καὶ ἀνδρείους μάλιστα τιμῶσιν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ ἐν πολέμῳ ἡ δὲ καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ χρήσιμος ἄλλοις. εἶτα ἡ ἐλευθεριότης· προΐενται γὰρ καὶ οὐκ ἀνταγωνίζονται περὶ τῶν χρημάτων, ὧν μάλιστα ἐφίενται ἄλλοι.

1366b ἔστι δὲ δικαιοσύνη μὲν ἀρετὴ δι' ἣν τὰ αὑτῶν ἕκαστοι ἔχουσι, καὶ ὡς ὁ νόμος, ἀδικία δὲ δι' ἣν τὰ ἀλλότρια, οὐχ ὡς ὁ νόμος. ἀνδρία δὲ δι' ἣν πρακτικοί εἰσι τῶν καλῶν ἔργων ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις, καὶ ὡς ὁ νόμος κελεύει, καὶ ὑπηρετικοὶ τῷ νόμῳ· δειλία δὲ τοὐναντίον. σωφροσύνη δὲ ἀρετὴ δι' ἣν πρὸς τὰς ἡδονὰς τὰς τοῦ σώματος οὕτως ἔχουσιν ὡς ὁ νόμος κελεύει· ἀκολασία δὲ τοὐναντίον. ἐλευθεριότης δὲ περὶ χρήματα εὐποιητική, ἀνελευθερία δὲ τοὐναντίον. μεγαλοψυχία δὲ ἀρετὴ μεγάλων ποιητικὴ εὐεργετημάτων, [μικροψυχία δὲ τοὐναντίον.] μεγαλοπρέπεια δὲ ἀρετὴ ἐν δαπανήμασι μεγέθους ποιητική, μικροψυχία δὲ καὶ μικροπρέπεια τἀναντία.

ENGLISH

After this, let us speak about excellence and vice and the fine and the shameful, since these are what anyone who praises or blames is aiming at. In speaking about them we shall at the same time make clear the means by which we ourselves will be taken to be of a certain character, which was the second kind of proof. By the same means we shall be able to make both ourselves and someone else seem trustworthy with regard to excellence. But people often praise, in jest or in earnest, not only a human being or a god but also lifeless things and any animal at all. So premises must be found about these in the same way, and we should say something about them too, just enough to give an example. The fine, then, is what is chosen for its own sake and is praiseworthy, or what is good and is pleasant because it is good.

If this is what the fine is, then excellence must be fine, since being good, it is praiseworthy. Excellence, it seems, is a capacity for providing and preserving goods, a capacity for conferring many great benefits, indeed all kinds of benefits on all occasions. * * * [1366b] The parts of excellence are justice, courage, moderation, magnificence, greatness of soul, generosity, calmness, practical wisdom and wisdom. The greatest excellences must be those most useful to others, if excellence is a capacity for conferring benefits. That is why people honor the just and the courageous most: courage is useful to others in war, and justice in peace as well as in war. Next comes generosity, since generous people give freely and do not compete over money, which others desire most.

Justice is the excellence through which each person has what is his own, as the law prescribes; injustice is that through which people have what belongs to others, contrary to the law. Courage is the excellence through which people do fine deeds in the face of danger, as the law commands, and in the service of the law; cowardice is the opposite. Moderation is the excellence through which people are disposed toward bodily pleasures as the law commands; self-indulgence is the opposite. Generosity is doing good with money; stinginess is the opposite. Greatness of soul is the excel-

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	φρόνησις δ’ ἐστὶν ἀρετὴ διανοίας, καθ’ ἣν εὖ βουλεύεσθαι δύνανται περὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ κακῶν· τῶν εἰρημένων εἰς εὐδαιμονίαν.	lence that produces great benefits; [smallness of soul is the opposite]. Magnificence is the excellence that produces greatness in expenditure; smallness of soul and shabbiness are the opposites. Practical wisdom is an excellence of thought that enables people to deliberate well about the goods and evils we mentioned as bearing on happiness.
	* * * περὶ μὲν οὖν ἀρετῆς καὶ κακίας καθόλου καὶ περὶ τῶν μορίων εἴρηται κατὰ τὸν ἐνεστῶτα καιρὸν ἱκανῶς, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων οὐ χαλεπὸν ἰδεῖν· φανερὸν γὰρ ὅτι ἀνάγκη τά τε ποιητικὰ τῆς ἀρετῆς εἶναι καλά. (πρὸς ἀρετὴν γάρ) καὶ τὰ ἀπ’ ἀρετῆς γινόμενα, τοιαῦτα δὲ τά τε σημεῖα τῆς ἀρετῆς καὶ τὰ ἔργα· ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ σημεῖα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἅ ἐστιν ἀγαθοῦ ἔργα ἢ πάθη καλά, ἀνάγκη ὅσα τε ἀνδρίας ἔργα ἢ σημεῖα ἀνδρίας ἢ ἀνδρείως πέπρακται καλὰ εἶναι, καὶ τὰ δίκαια καὶ τὰ δικαίως ἔργα (πάθη δὲ οὔ· ἐν μόνῃ γὰρ ταύτῃ τῶν ἀρετῶν οὐκ ἀεὶ τὸ δικαίως καλόν, ἀλλ’ ἐπὶ τοῦ ζημιοῦσθαι αἰσχρὸν τὸ δικαίως μᾶλλον ἢ τὸ ἀδίκως) καὶ κατὰ τὰς ἄλλας δὲ ἀρετὰς ὡσαύτως.	* * * Excellence and vice in general, then, and their parts have been discussed sufficiently for the present occasion, and the rest is not hard to see. Clearly what produces excellence must be fine (since it leads to excellence), and so must what comes from excellence; and of this kind are the signs of excellence and its works. And since signs, and things such as the actions or experiences of a good person, are fine, all deeds of courage, all signs of courage and all things done courageously must be fine. So must just things and things done justly (but not things suffered justly: this is the only excellence in which what is just is not always fine; when it comes to punishment, being punished justly is more shameful than being punished unjustly). And the same goes for the other excellences.
	καὶ ἐφ’ ὅσοις τὰ ἆθλα τιμή, καλά. καὶ ἐφ’ ὅσοις τιμὴ μᾶλλον ἢ χρήματα. καὶ ὅσα μὴ αὑτοῦ ἕνεκα πράττει τις τῶν αἱρετῶν, καὶ τὰ ἁπλῶς ἀγαθά, ὅσα ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος τις ἐποίησεν παριδὼν τὸ αὑτοῦ, καὶ τὰ τῇ φύσει ἀγαθά, καὶ ἃ μὴ αὐτῷ ἀγαθά· 1367a αὑτοῦ γὰρ ἕνεκα τὰ τοιαῦτα. καὶ ὅσα τεθνεῶτι ἐνδέχεται ὑπάρχειν μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶντι· τὸ γὰρ αὑτοῦ ἕνεκα μᾶλλον ἔχει τὰ ζῶντι. καὶ ὅσα ἔργα τῶν ἄλλων ἕνεκα· ἧττον γὰρ αὑτοῦ. καὶ ὅσαι εὐπραγίαι περὶ ἄλλους, ἀλλὰ μὴ περὶ αὑτόν. καὶ περὶ τοὺς εὖ ποιήσαντας· δίκαιον γάρ. καὶ τὰ εὐεργετήματα· οὐ γὰρ εἰς αὑτόν.	And things whose prize is honor are fine, and things done for honor rather than money. And choiceworthy things that someone does not for his own sake are fine; and things good absolutely, such as what someone has done for his country with no thought for his own interest; and things good by nature; and things that are not good for the doer, 1367a since what is good for him is done for his own sake. And things that can belong to a man when he is dead rather than alive, since what belongs to the living is more for their own sake. And deeds done for the sake of others, since they are less for one’s own sake. And successes that concern others rather than oneself. And those that concern one’s benefactors, since that is just. And benefactions, since they are not directed toward oneself.
1367a	καὶ τὰ ἐναντία ἢ ἐφ’ οἷς αἰσχύνονται· τὰ γὰρ αἰσχρὰ αἰσχύνονται καὶ λέγοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες καὶ μέλλοντες, ὥσπερ καὶ Σαπφὼ πεποίηκεν εἰπόντος τοῦ Ἀλκαίου θέλω τι ϝειπῆν, ἀλλά με κωλύει αἰδώς αἰ δ’ ἦχες ἐσθλῶν ἵμερον ἢ καλῶν καὶ μή τι ϝειπῆν γλῶσσ’ ἐκύκα κακόν,	And the opposites of the things people are ashamed of are fine. People are ashamed of shameful things when they say them, do them or are about to do them. So Sappho wrote, when Alcaeus said, “I want to say something, but I am held back by shame”: “If you had a longing for good or fine

GREEK

αἰδώς κέν σε οὐκ εἶχεν ὄμματ',
ἀλλ' ἔλεγες περὶ τῶ δικαίω. καὶ περὶ ὧν ἀγωνιῶσι μὴ φοβούμενοι· περὶ γὰρ τῶν πρὸς δόξαν φερόντων ἀγαθῶν τοῦτο πάσχουσιν. καὶ αἱ τῶν φύσει σπουδαιοτέρων ἀρεταὶ καλλίους καὶ τὰ ἔργα, οἷον ἀνδρὸς ἢ γυναικός. καὶ αἱ ἀπολαυστικαὶ ἄλλοις μᾶλλον ἢ αὐτοῖς· διὸ τὸ δίκαιον καὶ ἡ δικαιοσύνη καλόν.

καὶ τὸ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς τιμωρεῖσθαι μᾶλλον καὶ μὴ καταλλάττεσθαι· τό τε γὰρ ἀνταποδιδόναι δίκαιον, τὸ δὲ δίκαιον καλόν, καὶ ἀνδρείου τὸ μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι. καὶ νίκη καὶ τιμὴ τῶν καλῶν· αἱρετά τε γὰρ ἄκαρπα ὄντα, καὶ ὑπεροχὴν ἀρετῆς δηλοῖ. καὶ τὰ μνημονευτά, καὶ τὰ μᾶλλον μᾶλλον. καὶ ἃ μὴ ζῶντι ἕπεται, καὶ οἷς τιμὴ ἀκολουθεῖ, καὶ τὰ περιττά, καὶ τὰ μόνῳ ὑπάρχοντα καλλίω· εὐμνημονευτότερα γάρ. καὶ κτήματα ἄκαρπα· ἐλευθεριώτερα γάρ. καὶ τὰ παρ' ἑκάστοις δὲ ἴδια καλά, καὶ ὅσα σημεῖά ἐστιν τῶν παρ' ἑκάστοις ἐπαινουμένων, οἷον ἐν Λακεδαίμονι κομᾶν καλόν· ἐλευθέρου γὰρ σημεῖον· οὐ γάρ ἐστιν κομῶντα ῥᾴδιον οὐδὲν ποιεῖν ἔργον θητικόν. καὶ τὸ μηδεμίαν ἐργάζεσθαι βάναυσον τέχνην· ἐλευθέρου γὰρ τὸ μὴ πρὸς ἄλλον ζῆν.

ληπτέον δὲ καὶ τὰ σύνεγγυς τοῖς ὑπάρχουσιν ὡς ταὐτὰ ὄντα καὶ πρὸς ἔπαινον καὶ πρὸς ψόγον, οἷον τὸν εὐλαβῆ ψυχρὸν καὶ ἐπίβουλον καὶ τὸν ἠλίθιον χρηστὸν ἢ τὸν ἀνάλγητον πρᾶον, καὶ ἕκαστον δ' ἐκ τῶν παρακολουθούντων ἀεὶ κατὰ τὸ βέλτιστον, οἷον τὸν ὀργίλον καὶ τὸν μανικὸν ἁπλοῦν καὶ τὸν αὐθάδη μεγαλοπρεπῆ καὶ σεμνόν, [1367b] καὶ τοὺς ἐν ταῖς ὑπερβολαῖς ὡς ἐν ταῖς ἀρεταῖς ὄντας, οἷον τὸν θρασὺν ἀνδρεῖον καὶ τὸν ἄσωτον ἐλευθέριον· δόξει τε γὰρ τοῖς πολλοῖς, καὶ ἅμα παραλογιστικὸν ἐκ τῆς αἰτίας. εἰ γὰρ οὗ μὴ ἀνάγκη κινδυνευτικός, πολλῷ μᾶλλον ἂν δόξειεν

ENGLISH

things,
and your tongue were not stirring up something bad to say,
shame would not have taken hold of your eyes,
but you would speak about what is just." And things people are anxious about without being afraid are fine, since people feel this way about goods that bring a good reputation. And the excellences and deeds of those who are by nature more serious are finer, as a man's are finer than a woman's. And excellences that benefit others more than their possessors are finer; that is why the just and justice are fine.[22]

And taking revenge on one's enemies rather than being reconciled with them is fine. For paying back is just, and the just is fine, and refusing to be beaten is the mark of a courageous man. Victory and honor are also among fine things, since they are worth choosing even when they bring no profit, and they show superior excellence. So are things worth remembering, and the more memorable, the finer. So are things that follow a man after his death, things that honor attends, and things that are extraordinary; and things that belong to one person alone are finer, since they are more easily remembered. And so are possessions that bring in no profit, since they are more fitting for a free man. And what is distinctive of each people is fine, as is whatever is a sign of what each people praises. In Sparta, for example, long hair is fine, since it is a sign of a free man; it is not easy to do a hired laborer's work with long hair. And not practicing any menial craft is fine, since it is the mark of a free man not to live in dependence on another.

For praise and blame alike, one should also treat qualities close to those a person actually has as if they were the same. Call the cautious man cold and scheming, the simpleton good-natured, the unfeeling man calm. In each case draw on the qualities that go along with it, always in the best light: call the hot-tempered and the frenzied man straightforward, and the stubborn man magnificent and dignified; [1367b] and treat those who go to excess as if they had the corresponding excellences, calling the rash man courageous and the spendthrift generous. This will seem right to most

22 Alcaeus and Sappho were lyric poets of Lesbos around 600 BC; the lines are in their native dialect.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ὅπου καλόν, καὶ εἰ προετικὸς τοῖς τυχοῦσι, καὶ τοῖς φίλοις· ὑπερβολὴ γὰρ ἀρετῆς τὸ πάντας εὖ ποιεῖν.	people, and at the same time a fallacious inference can be drawn from the motive. If someone runs risks when there is no need, he will seem all the more likely to do so when it is fine; and if he is lavish with anyone at all, he will be lavish with his friends too, since doing good to everyone is an excess of excellence.
1367b σκοπεῖν δὲ καὶ παρ' οἷς ὁ ἔπαινος· ὥσπερ γὰρ ὁ Σωκράτης ἔλεγεν, οὐ χαλεπὸν Ἀθηναίους ἐν Ἀθηναίοις ἐπαινεῖν. δεῖ δὲ τὸ παρ' ἑκάστοις τίμιον ὂν λέγειν ὡς ὑπάρχει, οἷον ἐν Σκύθαις ἢ Λάκωσιν ἢ φιλοσόφοις. καὶ ὅλως δὲ τὸ τίμιον ἄγειν εἰς τὸ καλόν, ἐπείπερ γε δοκεῖ γειτνιᾶν. καὶ ὅσα κατὰ τὸ προσῆκον, οἷον εἰ ἄξια τῶν προγόνων καὶ τῶν προϋπηργμένων. εὐδαιμονικὸν γὰρ καὶ καλὸν καὶ τὸ προσεπικτᾶσθαι τιμήν. καὶ εἰ παρὰ τὸ προσῆκον δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον καὶ τὸ κάλλιον, οἷον εἰ εὐτυχῶν μὲν μέτριος ἀτυχῶν δὲ μεγαλόψυχος, ἢ μείζων γιγνόμενος βελτίων καὶ καταλλακτικώτερος.	One should also consider the audience before whom the praise is given. As Socrates used to say, it is not hard to praise Athenians in front of Athenians. One should speak of whatever is valued by each audience—among Scythians, say, or Spartans, or philosophers—as being present. In general one should bring what is valued over into the fine, since the two are thought to be neighbors. And whatever is in keeping with what is fitting is fine, for example, if deeds are worthy of one's ancestors and one's earlier achievements; for adding to one's honor brings happiness and is fine. So is going beyond what is fitting toward the better and finer, for example, if someone is moderate in good fortune and great-souled in misfortune, or becomes better and more conciliatory as he rises.[23]
τοιοῦτον δὲ τὸ τοῦ Ἰφικράτους, ἐξ οἵων εἰς οἷα, καὶ τὸ τοῦ ὀλυμπιονίκου πρόσθε μὲν ἀμφ' ὤμοισιν ἔχων τραχεῖαν, καὶ τὸ τοῦ Σιμωνίδου ἢ πατρός τε καὶ ἀνδρὸς ἀδελφῶν τ' οὖσα τυράννων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκ τῶν πράξεων ὁ ἔπαινος, ἴδιον δὲ τοῦ σπουδαίου τὸ κατὰ προαίρεσιν, πειρατέον δεικνύναι πράττοντα κατὰ προαίρεσιν. χρήσιμον δὲ τὸ πολλάκις φαίνεσθαι πεπραχότα. διὸ καὶ τὰ συμπτώματα καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τύχης ὡς ἐν προαιρέσει ληπτέον· ἂν γὰρ πολλὰ καὶ ὅμοια προφέρηται, σημεῖον ἀρετῆς εἶναι δόξει καὶ προαιρέσεως. ἔστιν δ' ἔπαινος λόγος ἐμφανίζων μέγεθος ἀρετῆς. δεῖ οὖν τὰς πράξεις ἐπιδεικνύναι ὡς τοιαῦται. τὸ δ' ἐγκώμιον τῶν ἔργων ἐστίν, (τὰ δὲ κύκλῳ εἰς πίστιν, οἷον εὐγένεια καὶ παιδεία· εἰκὸς γὰρ ἐξ ἀγαθῶν ἀγαθοὺς καὶ τὸν οὕτω τραφέντα τοιοῦτον εἶναι). διὸ καὶ ἐγκωμιάζομεν πράξαντας.	Iphicrates' remark is of this kind: "from what beginnings to what heights." So is the Olympic victor's line, "Before, bearing a rough yoke on my shoulders," and Simonides' "she whose father, husband, and brothers were tyrants." Since praise is based on actions, and acting by choice is characteristic of the good person, we must try to show him acting by choice. It is useful for him to appear to have acted that way many times. That is why coincidences and strokes of luck should also be treated as if they were matters of choice. If many similar cases are brought forward, they will seem to be a sign of excellence and of choice. Praise is speech that brings out the greatness of excellence. So we must show that the actions are of that kind. Encomium is concerned with deeds. (The surrounding circumstances, such as good birth and education, serve to make the case credible: it is probable that good parents have good children, and that someone brought up in a certain way will turn out accordingly.) That is why we compose encomia for people who have actually done something.[24]

23 The saying of Socrates appears in Plato's *Menexenus*.
24 The Simonides line comes from the epitaph of Archedice, daughter of the Athenian tyrant Hippias.

GREEK

τὰ δ' ἔργα σημεῖα τῆς ἕξεως ἐστίν, ἐπεὶ ἐπαινοῖμεν ἂν καὶ μὴ πεπραγότα, εἰ πιστεύοιμεν εἶναι τοιοῦτον. μακαρισμὸς δὲ καὶ εὐδαιμονισμὸς αὐτοῖς μὲν ταὐτά, τούτοις δ' οὐ ταὐτά, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἡ εὐδαιμονία τὴν ἀρετήν, καὶ ὁ εὐδαιμονισμὸς περιέχει ταῦτα. ἔχει δὲ κοινὸν εἶδος ὁ ἔπαινος καὶ αἱ συμβουλαί. ἃ γὰρ ἐν τῷ συμβουλεύειν ὑπόθοιο ἄν, ταῦτα μετατεθέντα τῇ λέξει ἐγκώμια γίγνεται. [1368a] ἐπεὶ οὖν ἔχομεν ἃ δεῖ πράττειν καὶ ποῖόν τινα εἶναι δεῖ, ταῦτα ὡς ὑποθήκας λέγοντας τῇ λέξει μετατιθέναι δεῖ καὶ στρέφειν, οἷον ὅτι οὐ δεῖ μέγα φρονεῖν ἐπὶ τοῖς διὰ τύχην ἀλλὰ τοῖς δι' αὑτόν. οὕτω μὲν οὖν λεχθὲν ὑποθήκην δύναται, ὡδὶ δ' ἔπαινον, μέγα φρονῶν οὐ τοῖς διὰ τύχην [ὑπάρχουσιν] ἀλλὰ τοῖς δι' αὑτόν.

1368a ὥστε ὅταν ἐπαινεῖν βούλῃ, ὅρα τί ἂν ὑπόθοιο, καὶ ὅταν ὑποθέσθαι, ὅρα τί ἂν ἐπαινέσειας. ἡ δὲ λέξις ἔσται ἀντικειμένη ἐξ ἀνάγκης, ὅταν τὸ μὲν κωλῦον τὸ δὲ μὴ κωλῦον μετατεθῇ. χρηστέον δὲ καὶ τῶν αὐξητικῶν πολλοῖς, οἷον εἰ μόνος ἢ πρῶτος ἢ μετ' ὀλίγων ἢ καὶ [ὃ] μάλιστα πεποίηκεν· ἅπαντα γὰρ ταῦτα καλά. καὶ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χρόνων καὶ τῶν καιρῶν· ταῦτα δὲ παρὰ τὸ προσῆκον. καὶ εἰ πολλάκις τὸ αὐτὸ κατώρθωκεν· μέγα γάρ, καὶ οὐκ ἀπὸ τύχης ἀλλὰ δι' αὑτὸν ἂν δόξειεν. καὶ εἰ τὰ προτρέποντα καὶ τιμῶντα διὰ τοῦτον εὕρηται καὶ κατεσκευάσθη. καὶ εἰς ὃν πρῶτον ἐγκώμιον ἐποιήθη, οἷον εἰς Ἱππόλοχον, καὶ ⟨δι'⟩ Ἁρμόδιον καὶ Ἀριστογείτονα τὸ ἐν ἀγορᾷ σταθῆναι. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἐναντίων.

κἂν μὴ καθ' αὑτὸν εὐπορῇς, πρὸς ἄλλους ἀντιπαραβάλλειν, ὅπερ ὁ Ἰσοκράτης ἐποίει διὰ τὴν ἀσυνήθειαν τοῦ δικολογεῖν. δεῖ δὲ πρὸς ἐνδόξους συγκρίνειν· αὐξητικὸν γὰρ καὶ καλόν, εἰ σπουδαίων βελτίων. πίπτει δ' εὐλόγως ἡ αὔξησις εἰς τοὺς ἐπαίνους· ἐν ὑπεροχῇ γάρ ἐστιν, ἡ δ' ὑπεροχὴ τῶν καλῶν. διὸ κἂν μὴ πρὸς τοὺς ἐνδόξους, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους δεῖ

ENGLISH

Deeds are signs of a person's disposition. We would praise even someone who had done nothing, if we were convinced he was that sort of person. Calling someone blessed and calling someone happy are the same as each other, but not the same as praise and encomium. Rather, just as happiness includes excellence, calling someone happy includes them. Praise and counsel have a common form. What you would propose as advice in deliberation becomes encomium when the wording is changed. [1368a] So, since we know what one ought to do and what sort of person one ought to be, we must take what we would say as advice and change and turn its wording. For example, "one should not take pride in what comes from luck, but in what comes from oneself." Said this way, it has the force of advice. Said like this, it has the force of praise: "taking pride not in what [he has] from luck, but in what comes from himself."

So whenever you want to praise, look at what you would advise. Whenever you want to advise, look at what you would praise. The wording will necessarily be reversed when you shift from prohibiting to not prohibiting, or the other way round. You should also make use of many of the devices of amplification: for example, if he alone, or first, or with few others, or more than anyone, has done something. All these are fine. So are points drawn from the times and the occasions, since these go beyond what was to be expected. Likewise if he has often achieved the same success. That is a great thing, and it would seem due not to luck but to himself. Likewise if incentives and honors were devised and established on his account. Likewise if he was the first to have an encomium composed for him, as with Hippolochus, or if he was the reason something was first done, as statues were first set up in the agora because of Harmodius and Aristogeiton. The same goes for the opposites.[25]

If you don't have enough to say about him on his own, compare him with others. Isocrates used to do this because he was unpracticed in forensic pleading. You should compare him with men of repute: it amplifies his merit, and it is fine if he is better than good men. Amplification naturally belongs to speeches of praise, since it consists in su-

25 Harmodius and Aristogeiton killed Hipparchus, brother of the tyrant Hippias, in 514 BC, and were honored as tyrant-slayers with bronze statues in the Athenian agora.

GREEK

παραβάλλειν, ἐπείπερ ἡ ὑπεροχὴ δοκεῖ μηνύειν ἀρετήν. ὅλως δὲ τῶν κοινῶν εἰδῶν ἅπασι τοῖς λόγοις ἡ μὲν αὔξησις ἐπιτηδειοτάτη τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς· τὰς γὰρ πράξεις ὁμολογουμένας λαμβάνουσιν, ὥστε λοιπὸν μέγεθος περιθεῖναι καὶ κάλλος· τὰ δὲ παραδείγματα τοῖς συμβουλευτικοῖς· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν προγεγονότων τὰ μέλλοντα καταμαντευόμενοι κρίνομεν· τὰ δ' ἐνθυμήματα τοῖς δικανικοῖς· αἰτίαν γὰρ καὶ ἀπόδειξιν μάλιστα δέχεται τὸ γεγονὸς διὰ τὸ ἀσαφές.

ἐκ τίνων μὲν οὖν οἱ ἔπαινοι καὶ οἱ ψόγοι λέγονται σχεδὸν πάντες, καὶ πρὸς ποῖα δεῖ βλέποντας ἐπαινεῖν καὶ ψέγειν, καὶ ἐκ τίνων τὰ ἐγκώμια γίγνεται καὶ τὰ ὀνείδη, ταῦτ' ἐστίν· ἐχομένων γὰρ τούτων τὰ ἐναντία τούτοις φανερά· ὁ γὰρ ψόγος ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων ἐστίν.

ENGLISH

periority, and superiority is among fine things. That is why, even if you can't compare him with men of repute, you should compare him with others, since superiority is thought to reveal excellence. In general, of the forms common to all speeches, amplification is best suited to ceremonial speeches. These take the actions as agreed upon, so all that is left is to invest them with greatness and beauty. Examples are best suited to deliberative speeches, since we judge the future by divining it from the past. Enthymemes are best suited to forensic speeches, because what has happened is unclear, and so it most of all admits of causes and demonstration.

These, then, are the sources from which nearly all praise and blame are drawn, the points to keep in view when praising and blaming, and the materials of encomium and reproach. With these in hand, their opposites are evident, since blame is drawn from the opposites.

CHAPTER 10: WHY PEOPLE DO WRONG

Forensic speech begins: wrongdoing defined, and the seven causes of human action.

GREEK

1368b περὶ δὲ κατηγορίας καὶ ἀπολογίας, ἐκ πόσων καὶ ποίων ποιεῖσθαι δεῖ τοὺς συλλογισμούς, ἐχόμενον ἂν εἴη λέγειν. δεῖ δὴ λαβεῖν τρία, ἓν μὲν τίνων καὶ πόσων ἕνεκα ἀδικοῦσι, δεύτερον δὲ πῶς αὐτοὶ διακείμενοι, τρίτον δὲ τοὺς ποίους καὶ πῶς ἔχοντας. διορισάμενοι οὖν τὸ ἀδικεῖν λέγωμεν ἑξῆς. ἔστω δὴ τὸ ἀδικεῖν τὸ βλάπτειν ἑκόντα παρὰ τὸν νόμον. νόμος δ' ἐστὶν ὁ μὲν ἴδιος ὁ δὲ κοινός· λέγω δὲ ἴδιον μὲν καθ' ὃν γεγραμμένον πολιτεύονται, κοινὸν δὲ ὅσα ἄγραφα παρὰ πᾶσιν ὁμολογεῖσθαι δοκεῖ. ἑκόντες δὲ ποιοῦσιν ὅσα εἰδότες καὶ μὴ ἀναγκαζόμενοι. ὅσα μὲν οὖν ἑκόντες, οὐ πάντα προαιρούμενοι, ὅσα δὲ προαιρούμενοι, εἰδότες ἅπαντα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ὃ προαιρεῖται ἀγνοεῖ.

δι' ἃ δὲ προαιροῦνται βλάπτειν καὶ φαῦλα ποιεῖν παρὰ τὸν νόμον, κακία ἐστὶν καὶ ἀκρασία· ἐὰν γάρ τινες ἔχωσιν μοχθηρίαν ἢ μίαν ἢ πλείους, περὶ δὲ τοῦτο ὃ μοχθηροὶ τυγχάνουσιν ὄντες καὶ ἄδικοί εἰσιν, οἷον ὁ μὲν ἀνελεύθερος περὶ χρήματα, ὁ δ' ἀκόλαστος περὶ τὰς τοῦ

ENGLISH

The next thing to discuss would be accusation and defense: from how many and what sort of premises the syllogisms should be constructed. We must grasp three things. First, for what reasons, and for how many, people do wrong. Second, what state they themselves are in. Third, what sort of people they wrong, and what condition those people are in. Let us first define doing wrong and then take these in order. Let doing wrong, then, be voluntarily causing harm contrary to the law. Law is either particular or common. By particular I mean the written law under which each community governs itself. By common I mean the unwritten principles that seem to be agreed upon among all peoples. People act voluntarily when they act knowingly and without compulsion. Not everything done voluntarily is done by choice, but everything done by choice is done knowingly, since no one is ignorant of what he chooses.

The reasons people choose to cause harm and to do bad things contrary to the law are vice and lack of self-control. If people have one vice or several, then it is in the area where they happen to be vicious that they are also unjust. The ungenerous

GREEK

σώματος ἡδονάς, ὁ δὲ μαλακὸς περὶ τὰ ῥάθυμα, ὁ δὲ δειλὸς περὶ τοὺς κινδύνους· (τοὺς γὰρ συγκινδυνεύοντας ἐγκαταλιμπάνουσι διὰ τὸν φόβον), ὁ δὲ φιλότιμος διὰ τιμήν, ὁ δ' ὀξύθυμος δι' ὀργήν, ὁ δὲ φιλόνικος διὰ νίκην, ὁ πικρὸς δὲ διὰ τιμωρίαν, ὁ δ' ἄφρων διὰ τὸ ἀπατᾶσθαι περὶ τὸ δίκαιον καὶ ἄδικον, ὁ δ' ἀναίσχυντος δι' ὀλιγωρίαν δόξης. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἕκαστος περὶ ἕκαστον τῶν ὑποκειμένων.

ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων δῆλον, τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῶν περὶ τὰς ἀρετὰς εἰρημένων, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν περὶ τὰ πάθη ῥηθησομένων· λοιπὸν δ' εἰπεῖν τίνος ἕνεκα καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες ἀδικοῦσι καὶ τίνας. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν διελώμεθα τίνων ὀρεγόμενοι καὶ ποῖα φεύγοντες ἐγχειροῦσιν ἀδικεῖν· δῆλον γὰρ ὡς τῷ μὲν κατηγοροῦντι πόσα καὶ ποῖα τούτων ὑπάρχει τῷ ἀντιδίκῳ σκεπτέον, ὧν ἐφιέμενοι πάντες τοὺς πλησίον ἀδικοῦσι, τῷ δὲ ἀπολογουμένῳ ποῖα καὶ πόσα τούτων οὐχ ὑπάρχει. πάντες δὴ πάντα πράττουσι τὰ μὲν οὐ δι' αὐτοὺς τὰ δὲ δι' αὐτούς.

τῶν μὲν οὖν μὴ δι' αὐτοὺς τὰ μὲν διὰ τύχην πράττουσι τὰ δ' ἐξ ἀνάγκης, τῶν δ' ἐξ ἀνάγκης τὰ μὲν βίᾳ τὰ δὲ φύσει, ὥστε πάντα ὅσα μὴ δι' αὐτοὺς πράττουσι, τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ τύχης τὰ δὲ φύσει τὰ δὲ βίᾳ. ὅσα δὲ δι' αὐτούς, καὶ ὧν αὐτοὶ αἴτιοι, 1369a τὰ μὲν δι' ἔθος τὰ δὲ δι' ὄρεξιν, τὰ μὲν διὰ λογιστικὴν ὄρεξιν τὰ δὲ δι' ἄλογον· ἔστιν δ' ἡ μὲν βούλησις ἀγαθοῦ ὄρεξις· (οὐδεὶς γὰρ βούλεται ἀλλ' ἢ ὅταν οἰηθῇ εἶναι ἀγαθόν), ἄλογοι δ' ὀρέξεις ὀργὴ καὶ ἐπιθυμία, ὥστε πάντα ὅσα πράττουσιν ἀνάγκη πράττειν δι' αἰτίας ἑπτά, διὰ τύχην, διὰ φύσιν, διὰ βίαν, δι' ἔθος, διὰ λογισμόν, διὰ θυμόν, δι' ἐπιθυμίαν.

1369a τὸ δὲ προσδιαιρεῖσθαι καθ' ἡλικίαν ἢ ἕξεις ἢ ἀλλ' ἄττα τὰ πραττόμενα περίεργον· εἰ γὰρ συμβέβηκεν τοῖς νέοις ὀργίλοις εἶναι ἢ ἐπιθυμητικοῖς, οὐ διὰ τὴν νεότητα πράττουσι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀλλὰ δι' ὀργὴν καὶ ἐπιθυμίαν. οὐδὲ διὰ πλοῦτον καὶ πενίαν, ἀλλὰ συμβέβηκε τοῖς μὲν πένησι διὰ τὴν ἔνδειαν ἐπιθυμεῖν χρημάτων, τοῖς δὲ πλουσίοις διὰ τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἐπιθυμεῖν τῶν μὴ ἀναγκαίων ἡδονῶν· ἀλλὰ πράξουσι καὶ οὗτοι οὐ διὰ πλοῦτον καὶ πενίαν ἀλλὰ

ENGLISH

man is unjust about money, the self-indulgent about bodily pleasures, the soft about matters of ease, the coward about dangers (out of fear, cowards abandon those who share the danger with them). The ambitious man does wrong for the sake of honor, the quick-tempered out of anger, the contentious for the sake of victory, the bitter for revenge, the foolish because he is mistaken about what is just and unjust, the shameless out of disregard for reputation. Likewise each of the others with regard to his particular object.

But all this is clear, partly from what was said about the excellences, partly from what will be said about the emotions. What remains is to say for what reasons people do wrong, in what state they are, and whom they wrong. First, then, let us set out what people are seeking and what they are avoiding when they set about doing wrong. Clearly the accuser must consider how many of these things, and which of them, apply to his opponent—the things whose pursuit leads everyone to wrong their neighbors. The defender must consider which of them, and how many, do not apply. Now, everything that anyone does is done either not because of themselves or because of themselves.

Of the things they do not because of themselves, some they do by chance and some by necessity. Of those done by necessity, some are done by force and some by nature. So everything people do not because of themselves is done either by chance or by nature or by force. The things they do because of themselves, and of which they themselves are the cause, 1369a are done either through habit or through desire, and some through rational desire, others through irrational desire. Wish is a desire for the good (no one wishes for anything unless he thinks it is good). The irrational desires are anger and appetite. So everything people do they must do for one of seven causes: chance, nature, force, habit, reasoning, temper, appetite.

To divide actions further by age, or by disposition, or by anything else, is superfluous. If young people happen to be prone to anger or appetite, they do such things not because of their youth but because of anger and appetite. Nor do people act because of wealth and poverty. It does happen that the poor, because of their want, desire money, and that the rich, because they can afford it, desire un-

GREEK

διὰ τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ οἱ δίκαιοι καὶ οἱ ἄδικοι, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ λεγόμενοι κατὰ τὰς ἕξεις πράττειν, διὰ ταῦτα πράξουσιν· ἢ γὰρ διὰ λογισμὸν ἢ διὰ πάθος· ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν διὰ ἤθη καὶ πάθη χρηστά, οἱ δὲ διὰ τἀναντία.

συμβαίνει μέντοι ταῖς μὲν τοιαύταις ἕξεσι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀκολουθεῖν, ταῖς δὲ τοιαῖσδε τὰ τοιάδε· εὐθὺς γὰρ ἴσως τῷ μὲν σώφρονι διὰ τὸ σώφρονα εἶναι δόξαι τε καὶ ἐπιθυμίαι χρηστα ἐπακολουθοῦσι περὶ τῶν ἡδέων, τῷ δ' ἀκολάστῳ αἱ ἐναντίαι περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων. διὸ τὰς μὲν τοιαύτας διαιρέσεις ἐατέον, σκεπτέον δὲ ποῖα ποίοις εἴωθεν ἕπεσθαι· εἰ μὲν γὰρ λευκὸς ἢ μέλας ἢ μέγας ἢ μικρός, οὐδὲν τέτακται τῶν τοιούτων ἀκολουθεῖν, εἰ δὲ νέος ἢ πρεσβύτης ἢ δίκαιος ἢ ἄδικος, ἤδη διαφέρει. καὶ ὅλως ὅσα τῶν συμβαινόντων ποιεῖ διαφέρειν τὰ ἤθη τῶν ἀνθρώπων, οἷον πλουτεῖν δοκῶν ἑαυτῷ ἢ πένεσθαι διοίσει τι, καὶ εὐτυχεῖν ἢ ἀτυχεῖν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἐροῦμεν, νῦν δὲ περὶ τῶν λοιπῶν εἴπωμεν πρῶτον.

ἔστι δ' ἀπὸ τύχης μὲν τὰ τοιαῦτα γιγνόμενα, ὅσων ἥ τε αἰτία ἀόριστος καὶ μὴ ἕνεκά του γίγνεται καὶ μήτε ἀεὶ μήτε ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ μήτε τεταγμένως· δῆλον δ' ἐκ τοῦ ὁρισμοῦ τῆς τύχης περὶ τούτων. φύσει δὲ ὅσων ἥ τ' αἰτία ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ τεταγμένη· 1369b ἢ γὰρ ἀεὶ ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ὡσαύτως ἀποβαίνει. τὰ γὰρ παρὰ φύσιν οὐδὲν δεῖ ἀκριβολογεῖσθαι, πότερα κατὰ φύσιν τινὰ ἢ ἄλλην αἰτίαν γίγνεται· δόξειε δ' ἂν καὶ ἡ τύχη αἰτία εἶναι τῶν τοιούτων. βίᾳ δὲ ὅσα παρ' ἐπιθυμίαν ἢ τοὺς λογισμοὺς γίγνεται δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πραττόντων. ἔθει δὲ ὅ, τι διὰ τὸ πολλάκις πεποιηκέναι ποιοῦσιν.

1369b διὰ λογισμὸν δὲ τὰ δοκοῦντα συμφέρειν ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων ἀγαθῶν ἢ ὡς τέλος ἢ ὡς πρὸς τὸ τέλος, ὅταν διὰ τὸ συμφέρειν πράττηται· ἔνια γὰρ καὶ οἱ ἀκόλαστοι συμφέροντα πράττουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ διὰ τὸ συμφέρειν ἀλλὰ δι' ἡδονήν. διὰ θυμὸν δὲ καὶ ὀργὴν τὰ τιμωρητικά. διαφέρει δὲ τιμωρία καὶ κόλασις· ἡ μὲν γὰρ κόλασις τοῦ πάσχοντος ἕνεκά ἐστιν, ἡ δὲ τιμωρία τοῦ ποιοῦντος, ἵνα

ENGLISH

necessary pleasures. Yet these people too will act not because of wealth and poverty but because of appetite. Likewise the just and the unjust, and all the others who are said to act according to their dispositions, will act for these same causes: either through reasoning or through emotion. But some act from good characters and emotions, others from the opposite.

It does happen, though, that certain consequences follow certain dispositions, and other consequences follow others. Perhaps the moderate person, simply by being moderate, has good beliefs and appetites about pleasures, and the self-indulgent person the opposite about those same pleasures. So such divisions should be set aside, and we should instead consider what usually follows from what. If someone is pale or dark, tall or short, nothing of this kind is fixed to follow. But if he is young or old, just or unjust, it does make a difference. And in general, whatever circumstances make people's characters differ: whether a man thinks himself rich or poor will make some difference, and whether he thinks himself fortunate or unfortunate. We will discuss these later. Now let us first speak about the rest.

Things that come about by chance are those whose cause is indeterminate, which happen for no purpose, and neither always nor for the most part nor in any regular way. This is clear from the definition of chance. Things that come about by nature are those whose cause lies in themselves and is regular, 1369b since they turn out the same way either always or for the most part. As for things contrary to nature, there is no need to go into detail about whether they happen according to some kind of nature or from some other cause. Chance too might seem to be the cause of such things. Things done by force are those that come about against the agents' appetite or reasoning, yet through the agents themselves. Things done by habit are whatever people do because they have done them many times.

Things done through reasoning are those that seem advantageous, on the basis of the goods already discussed, either as an end or as a means to the end, when they are done because they are advantageous. Even the self-indulgent do some advantageous things, but not because they are advantageous—rather, for pleasure. Acts of revenge

GREEK

ENGLISH

ἀποπληρωθῇ. τί μὲν οὖν ἐστιν ἡ ὀργή, δῆλον ἔσται ἐν τοῖς περὶ τῶν παθῶν, δι' ἐπιθυμίαν δὲ πράττεται ὅσα φαίνεται ἡδέα. ἔστιν δὲ καὶ τὸ σύνηθες καὶ τὸ ἐθιστὸν ἐν τοῖς ἡδέσιν· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ τῶν φύσει μὴ ἡδέων, ὅταν συνεθισθῶσιν, ἡδέως ποιοῦσιν.

are done through temper and anger. Revenge and punishment differ: punishment is for the sake of the one who suffers it, revenge for the sake of the one who inflicts it, so that he may get satisfaction. What anger is will become clear in the discussion of the emotions. Done through appetite are whatever things appear pleasant. The familiar and the habitual are also among pleasant things, since people take pleasure in doing many things that are not naturally pleasant once they have grown used to them.

ὥστε συλλαβόντι εἰπεῖν, ὅσα δι' αὑτοὺς πράττουσιν, ἅπαντ' ἐστὶν ἢ ἀγαθὰ ἢ φαινόμενα ἀγαθὰ ἢ ἡδέα ἢ φαινόμενα ἡδέα. ἐπεὶ δ' ὅσα δι' αὑτοὺς, ἑκόντες πράττουσιν, οὐχ ἑκόντες δὲ ὅσα μὴ δι' αὑτούς, πάντ' ἂν εἴη, ὅσα ἑκόντες πράττουσιν, ἢ ἀγαθὰ ἢ φαινόμενα ἀγαθὰ ἢ ἡδέα ἢ φαινόμενα ἡδέα· τίθημι γὰρ καὶ τὴν τῶν κακῶν ἢ φαινομένων κακῶν ἢ ἀπαλλαγὴν ἢ ἀντὶ μείζονος ἐλάττονος μετάληψιν ἐν τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς (αἱρετὰ γάρ πως) καὶ τὴν τῶν λυπηρῶν ἢ φαινομένων ἢ ἀπαλλαγὴν ἢ μετάληψιν ἀντὶ μειζόνων ἐλαττόνων ἐν τοῖς ἡδέσιν ὡσαύτως. ληπτέον ἄρα τὰ συμφέροντα καὶ τὰ ἡδέα, πόσα καὶ ποῖα. περὶ μὲν οὖν τοῦ συμφέροντος ἐν τοῖς συμβουλευτικοῖς εἴρηται πρότερον, περὶ δὲ τοῦ ἡδέος εἴπωμεν νῦν.

So, to sum up, everything people do because of themselves is either good or apparently good, pleasant or apparently pleasant. And since what they do because of themselves they do voluntarily, and what they do not because of themselves they do involuntarily, everything they do voluntarily will be either good or apparently good, pleasant or apparently pleasant. I count among goods also release from evils, or from apparent evils, and taking a lesser evil in place of a greater (these are, in a way, desirable). Likewise I count among pleasant things release from what is painful, or apparently painful, and taking lesser pains in place of greater. So we must grasp the advantageous and the pleasant: how many kinds there are and of what sort. The advantageous was discussed earlier, under deliberative speeches. Let us now discuss the pleasant.

δεῖ δὲ νομίζειν ἱκανοὺς εἶναι τοὺς ὅρους, ἐὰν ὦσι περὶ ἑκάστου μήτε ἀσαφεῖς μήτε ἀκριβεῖς.

We should regard the definitions as adequate if, on each subject, they are neither unclear nor overly precise.

CHAPTER 11: PLEASURE

What is pleasant, since pleasure is a chief motive for doing wrong.

GREEK

ENGLISH

ὑποκείσθω δὴ ἡμῖν εἶναι τὴν ἡδονὴν κίνησίν τινα τῆς ψυχῆς καὶ κατάστασιν ἀθρόαν καὶ αἰσθητὴν εἰς τὴν ὑπάρχουσαν φύσιν, λύπην δὲ τοὐναντίον. εἰ δή ἐστιν ἡδονὴ τὸ τοιοῦτον, [1370a] δῆλον ὅτι καὶ ἡδύ ἐστι τὸ ποιητικὸν τῆς εἰρημένης διαθέσεως, τὸ δὲ φθαρτικὸν ἢ τῆς ἐναντίας καταστάσεως ποιητικὸν λυπηρόν. ἀνάγκη οὖν ἡδὺ εἶναι τό τε εἰς τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἰέναι ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, καὶ μάλιστα ὅταν ἀπειληφότα ᾖ τὴν ἑαυτῶν φύσιν τὰ κατ' αὐτὴν γιγνόμενα, καὶ τὰ ἔθη· καὶ γὰρ τὸ εἰθισμένον ὥσπερ πεφυκὸς ἤδη γίγνεται· ὅμοιον γάρ τι τὸ ἔθος τῇ φύσει· ἐγγὺς γὰρ καὶ τὸ πολλάκις τῷ ἀεί, ἔστιν δ' ἡ μὲν φύσις τοῦ ἀεί, τὸ δὲ ἔθος τοῦ πολλάκις.

Let us assume, then, that pleasure is a kind of movement of the soul, a sudden and perceptible settling back into its natural state, and that pain is the opposite. If pleasure is something of this kind, [1370a] clearly whatever produces the condition just described is pleasant, and whatever destroys it or produces the opposite settling is painful. It follows that moving toward one's natural state is, for the most part, pleasant, especially when the processes that accord with nature have recovered their own nature. Habits are pleasant too, since what is habitual becomes, as it were, natural. Habit is some-

GREEK

ENGLISH

thing like nature: "often" is close to "always," and nature belongs to "always," habit to "often."

1370a καὶ τὸ μὴ βίαιον· παρὰ φύσιν γὰρ ἡ βία, διὸ τὸ ἀναγκαῖον λυπηρὸν καὶ ὀρθῶς εἴρηται πᾶν γὰρ ἀναγκαῖον πρᾶγμ' ἀνιαρὸν ἔφυ. τὰς δ' ἐπιμελείας καὶ τὰς σπουδὰς καὶ τὰς συντονίας λυπηράς· ἀναγκαῖα γὰρ καὶ βίαια ταῦτα, ἐὰν μὴ ἐθισθῶσιν· οὕτω δὲ τὸ ἔθος ποιεῖ ἡδύ. τὰ δ' ἐναντία ἡδέα· διὸ αἱ ῥαθυμίαι καὶ αἱ ἀπονίαι καὶ αἱ ἀμέλειαι καὶ αἱ παιδιαὶ καὶ αἱ ἀναπαύσεις καὶ ὁ ὕπνος τῶν ἡδέων· οὐδὲν γὰρ πρὸς ἀνάγκην τούτων. καὶ οὗ ἂν ἡ ἐπιθυμία ἐνῇ, καὶ ἅπαν ἡδύ· ἡ γὰρ ἐπιθυμία τοῦ ἡδέος ἐστὶν ὄρεξις. τῶν δὲ ἐπιθυμιῶν αἱ μὲν ἄλογοί εἰσιν αἱ δὲ μετὰ λόγου.

What is not forced is also pleasant, since force is contrary to nature. That is why what is compulsory is painful, and it was rightly said, "Every compulsory thing is by nature irksome." Exertions, efforts, and strains are painful, since they are compulsory and forced unless people grow used to them; in that case habit makes them pleasant. Their opposites are pleasant. That is why ease, freedom from toil, carefreeness, amusements, rest, and sleep are among pleasant things: none of them is a matter of compulsion. Whatever we have an appetite for is also pleasant, all of it, since appetite is a desire for the pleasant. Of appetites, some are irrational, others accompanied by reason.

λέγω δὲ ἀλόγους ὅσας μὴ ἐκ τοῦ ὑπολαμβάνειν ἐπιθυμοῦσιν· εἰσὶν δὲ τοιαῦται ὅσαι εἶναι λέγονται φύσει, ὥσπερ αἱ διὰ τοῦ σώματος ὑπάρχουσαι, οἷον ἡ τροφῆς δίψα καὶ πεῖνα, καὶ καθ' ἕκαστον εἶδος τροφῆς εἶδος ἐπιθυμίας, καὶ αἱ περὶ τὰ γευστὰ καὶ ἀφροδίσια καὶ ὅλως τὰ ἁπτά, καὶ περὶ ὀσμὴν [εὐωδίας] καὶ ἀκοὴν καὶ ὄψιν. μετὰ λόγου δὲ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ πεισθῆναι ἐπιθυμοῦσιν· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ θεάσασθαι καὶ κτήσασθαι ἐπιθυμοῦσιν ἀκούσαντες καὶ πεισθέντες. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐστὶν τὸ ἥδεσθαι ἐν τῷ αἰσθάνεσθαί τινος πάθους, ἡ δὲ φαντασία ἐστὶν αἴσθησίς τις ἀσθενής, κἀεὶ ἐν τῷ μεμνημένῳ καὶ τῷ ἐλπίζοντι ἀκολουθοῖ ἂν φαντασία τις οὗ μέμνηται ἢ ἐλπίζει. εἰ δὴ τοῦτο, δῆλον ὅτι καὶ ἡδοναὶ ἅμα μεμνημένοις καὶ ἐλπίζουσιν, ἐπείπερ καὶ αἴσθησις.

By irrational I mean those appetites people have that do not come from forming some belief. Such are the ones called natural, like those that arise through the body: for example, the appetite for nourishment, thirst and hunger, and a particular kind of appetite for each particular kind of nourishment. So too the appetites concerned with taste and sex and in general things of touch, and with smell [of fragrance], hearing, and sight. Accompanied by reason are those that come from being persuaded: people have an appetite to see and to acquire many things after hearing about them and being persuaded. Since taking pleasure consists in perceiving some affection, and imagination is a kind of weak perception, someone who is remembering or hoping will always have some image of what he remembers or hopes for. If so, clearly pleasures also come to those who remember and hope, since there is perception there too.

ὥστ' ἀνάγκη πάντα τὰ ἡδέα ἢ ἐν τῷ αἰσθάνεσθαι εἶναι παρόντα ἢ ἐν τῷ μεμνῆσθαι γεγενημένα ἢ ἐν τῷ ἐλπίζειν μέλλοντα· αἰσθάνονται μὲν γὰρ τὰ παρόντα, μέμνηνται δὲ τὰ γενόμενα, ἐλπίζουσι δὲ τὰ μέλλοντα. 1370b τὰ μὲν οὖν μνημονευτὰ ἡδέα ἐστὶν οὐ μόνον ὅσα ἐν τῷ παρόντι, ὅτε παρῆν, ἡδέα ἦν, ἀλλ' ἔνια καὶ οὐχ ἡδέα, ἂν ᾖ ὕστερον καλὸν καὶ ἀγαθὸν τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο· ὅθεν καὶ τοῦτ' εἴρηται, ἀλλ' ἡδύ τοι σωθέντα μεμνῆσθαι πόνων, καὶ μετὰ γάρ τε καὶ ἄλγεσι τέρπεται ἀνὴρ / μνησάμενος ὅτε πολλὰ πάθῃ καὶ πολλὰ ἐόργῃ. τούτου δ' αἴτιον ὅτι ἡδὺ καὶ τὸ μὴ ἔχειν κακόν. τὰ δ' ἐν ἐλπίδι, ὅσα παρόντα ἢ εὐφραίνειν ἢ ὠφελεῖν φαίνεται μεγάλα, καὶ ἄνευ λύπης ὠφελεῖν.

So all pleasant things must lie either in perceiving what is present, or in remembering what has happened, or in hoping for what is to come. People perceive the present, remember the past, and hope for the future. 1370b Pleasant things to remember are not only those that were pleasant at the time, when they were present, but also some that were not pleasant, if what followed was fine and good. Hence the sayings, "Sweet it is, once safe, to remember toils," and "For afterward a man delights even in his pains, / remembering, when he has suffered much and done much." The reason is that not having an evil is also pleasant. Things

GREEK	ENGLISH
	hoped for are pleasant when, if present, they seem to give great delight or great benefit, and to benefit without pain.[26]
1370b ὅλως δὲ ὅσα παρόντα εὐφραίνει, καὶ ἐλπίζοντας καὶ μεμνημένους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ. διὸ καὶ τὸ ὀργίζεσθαι ἡδύ, ὥσπερ καὶ Ὅμηρος ἐποίησε περὶ τοῦ θυμοῦ ὅς τε πολὺ γλυκίων μέλιτος καταλειβομένοιο· οὐθεὶς γὰρ ὀργίζεται τῷ ἀδυνάτῳ φαινομένῳ τιμωρίας τυχεῖν, οὐδὲ τοῖς πολὺ ὑπὲρ αὐτοὺς τῇ δυνάμει ἢ οὐκ ὀργίζονται ἢ ἧττον. καὶ ἐν ταῖς πλείσταις ἐπιθυμίαις ἀκολουθεῖ τις ἡδονή· ἢ γὰρ μεμνημένοι ὡς ἔτυχον ἢ ἐλπίζοντες ὡς τεύξονται χαίρουσίν τινα ἡδονήν, οἷον οἵ τ' ἐν τοῖς πυρετοῖς ἐχόμενοι ταῖς δίψαις καὶ μεμνημένοι ὡς ἔπιον καὶ ἐλπίζοντες πιεῖσθαι χαίρουσιν, καὶ οἱ ἐρῶντες καὶ διαλεγόμενοι καὶ γράφοντες καὶ ποιοῦντές τι ἀεὶ περὶ τοῦ ἐρωμένου χαίρουσιν· ἐν ἅπασι γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις μεμνημένοι οἷον αἰσθάνεσθαι οἴονται τοῦ ἐρωμένου.	In general, things that delight us when present also delight us, for the most part, when we hope for them or remember them. That is why even being angry is pleasant, as Homer wrote of anger, "far sweeter than honey dripping down." No one is angry with someone on whom it seems impossible to take revenge, and with those far more powerful than themselves people are either not angry or less angry. Some pleasure accompanies most appetites, too. People enjoy a certain pleasure either in remembering how they got something or in hoping they will get it. Those in a fever, gripped by thirst, enjoy remembering how they drank and hoping to drink. Lovers enjoy talking and writing about the beloved, and always doing something connected with him. In all such things, remembering, they think they somehow perceive the beloved.
καὶ ἀρχὴ δὲ τοῦ ἔρωτος αὕτη γίγνεται πᾶσιν, ὅταν μὴ μόνον παρόντος χαίρωσιν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπόντος μεμνημένοις [ἐρῶσιν] λύπη προσγένηται τῷ μὴ παρεῖναι, καὶ ἐν πένθεσι καὶ θρήνοις ὡσαύτως ἐπιγίγνεταί τις ἡδονή· ἡ μὲν γὰρ λύπη ἐπὶ τῷ μὴ ὑπάρχειν, ἡδονὴ δ' ἐν τῷ μεμνῆσθαι καὶ ὁρᾶν πως ἐκεῖνον καὶ ἃ ἔπραττεν καὶ οἷος ἦν, διὸ καὶ τοῦτ' εἰκότως εἴρηται ὧς φάτο, τοῖσι δὲ πᾶσιν ὑφ' ἵμερον ὦρσε γόοιο. καὶ τὸ τιμωρεῖσθαι ἡδύ. οὗ γὰρ τὸ μὴ τυγχάνειν λυπηρόν, τὸ τυγχάνειν ἡδύ· οἱ δ' ὀργιζόμενοι λυποῦνται ἀνυπερβλήτως μὴ τιμωρούμενοι, ἐλπίζοντες δὲ χαίρουσιν. καὶ τὸ νικᾶν ἡδύ, οὐ μόνον τοῖς φιλονίκοις ἀλλὰ πᾶσιν· φαντασία γὰρ ὑπεροχῆς γίγνεται, οὗ πάντες ἔχουσιν ἐπιθυμίαν ἢ ἠρέμα ἢ μᾶλλον.	This is how love begins for everyone: when they not only delight in the beloved's presence but also, [as lovers] remembering him in his absence, feel pain because he is not there. Likewise some pleasure arises in mourning and lamentation. The pain is at the person's no longer being there, but the pleasure lies in remembering him and somehow seeing him—what he did and what he was like. That is why this too was fittingly said: "So he spoke, and stirred in them all a longing for lament." Revenge, too, is pleasant. Where failing to get something is painful, getting it is pleasant. Angry people suffer beyond measure when they don't get revenge, but they rejoice when they hope for it. Winning, too, is pleasant, not only to the contentious but to everyone. There arises an impression of superiority, which everyone desires, some mildly, some more intensely.
ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ νικᾶν ἡδύ, ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰς παιδιὰς ἡδείας, εἶναι τὰς μαχητικὰς καὶ τὰς ἐριστικάς· 1371a (πολλάκις γὰρ ἐν ταύταις γίγνεται τὸ νικᾶν) καὶ ἀστραγαλίσεις καὶ σφαιρίσεις καὶ κυβείας καὶ πεττείας. καὶ περὶ τὰς ἐσπουδασμένας δὲ παιδιὰς ὁμοίως· αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἡδεῖαι γίγνονται, ἄν τις ᾖ συνήθης, αἱ δ' εὐθὺς ἡδεῖαι, οἷον κυνηγία καὶ πᾶσα θηρευτική· ὅπου γὰρ ἅμιλλα, ἐνταῦθα καὶ νίκη ἐστίν. διὸ καὶ ἡ δικανικὴ καὶ [ἡ] ἐριστικὴ ἡδεῖα	Since winning is pleasant, games involving fighting and contest must be pleasant too 1371a (since winning often happens in them), including knucklebones, ball games, dice, and board games. The same goes for serious pastimes: some become pleasant once one is used to them, while others are pleasant from the start, such as hunting with hounds and every kind of hunting. Wherever

26 The first line is from Euripides' lost *Andromeda*; the second adapts Homer, *Odyssey* 15.400–401.

GREEK

ENGLISH

τοῖς εἰθισμένοις καὶ δυναμένοις. καὶ τιμὴ καὶ εὐδοξία τῶν ἡδίστων διὰ τὸ γίγνεσθαι φαντασίαν ἑκάστῳ ὅτι τοιοῦτος οἷος ὁ σπουδαῖος, καὶ μᾶλλον ὅταν φῶσιν οὓς οἴεται ἀληθεύειν.

there is rivalry, there is victory too. That is why forensic pleading and [the] art of disputation are pleasant to those who are used to them and good at them. Honor and good repute are among the most pleasant things, because each person gets the impression that he is like a good person, and all the more so when people he thinks are telling the truth say so.

1371a τοιοῦτοι δ' οἱ ἐγγὺς μᾶλλον τῶν πόρρω, καὶ οἱ συνήθεις καὶ οἱ πολῖται τῶν ἄπωθεν, καὶ οἱ ὄντες τῶν μελλόντων, καὶ οἱ φρόνιμοι ἀφρόνων, καὶ πολλοὶ ὀλίγων· μᾶλλον γὰρ εἰκὸς ἀληθεύειν τοὺς εἰρημένους τῶν ἐναντίων· ἐπεὶ ὧν τις πολὺ καταφρονεῖ, ὥσπερ παιδίων ἢ θηρίων, οὐδὲν μέλει τῆς τούτων τιμῆς ἢ τῆς δόξης αὐτῆς γε τῆς δόξης χάριν, ἀλλ' εἴπερ, δι' ἄλλο τι. καὶ ὁ φίλος τῶν ἡδέων· τό τε γὰρ φιλεῖν ἡδύ (οὐδεὶς γὰρ φίλοινος μὴ χαίρων οἴνῳ) καὶ τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ἡδύ· φαντασία γὰρ καὶ ἐνταῦθα τοῦ ὑπάρχειν αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν εἶναι, οὗ πάντες ἐπιθυμοῦσιν οἱ αἰσθανόμενοι· τὸ δὲ φιλεῖσθαι ἀγαπᾶσθαί ἐστιν αὐτὸν δι' αὐτόν. καὶ τὸ θαυμάζεσθαι ἡδὺ δι' αὐτὸ τὸ τιμᾶσθαι.

Such people are those close at hand rather than those far off, acquaintances and fellow citizens rather than strangers, contemporaries rather than posterity, the sensible rather than the foolish, the many rather than the few. Those just mentioned are more likely to tell the truth than their opposites. When someone feels great contempt for people—small children or animals, say—he cares nothing for the honor or esteem they give, at least not for the sake of the esteem itself, but, if at all, for some other reason. A friend, too, is among pleasant things. Loving is pleasant (no one is a wine-lover without enjoying wine), and being loved is pleasant. Here too one gets the impression of being good oneself, which everyone capable of feeling desires. Being loved is being cherished oneself, for one's own sake. Being admired is pleasant because of the honor itself.

καὶ τὸ κολακεύεσθαι καὶ ὁ κόλαξ ἡδύς· φαινόμενος γὰρ θαυμαστὴς καὶ φαινόμενος φίλος ὁ κόλαξ ἐστίν. καὶ τὸ ταὐτὰ πράττειν πολλάκις ἡδύ· τὸ γὰρ σύνηθες ἡδὺ ἦν. καὶ τὸ μεταβάλλειν ἡδύ· εἰς φύσιν γὰρ γίγνεται μεταβάλλειν· τὸ γὰρ αὐτὸ ἀεὶ ὑπερβολὴν ποιεῖ τῆς καθεστώσης ἕξεως, ὅθεν εἴρηται μεταβολὴ πάντων γλυκύ. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ τὰ διὰ χρόνου ἡδέα ἐστίν, καὶ ἄνθρωποι καὶ πράγματα· μεταβολὴ γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ παρόντος ἐστίν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ σπάνιον τὸ διὰ χρόνου. καὶ τὸ μανθάνειν καὶ τὸ θαυμάζειν ἡδὺ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ· ἐν μὲν γὰρ τῷ θαυμάζειν τὸ ἐπιθυμεῖν [μαθεῖν] ἐστιν, ὥστε τὸ θαυμαστὸν ἐπιθυμητόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ μανθάνειν ⟨τὸ⟩ εἰς τὸ κατὰ φύσιν καθίστασθαι.

Being flattered is pleasant, and so is the flatterer, since the flatterer is an apparent admirer and an apparent friend. Doing the same things often is pleasant, since the habitual, as we said, is pleasant. Change is pleasant too, since change means a return to nature; sameness all the time pushes a settled condition to excess. Hence the saying, "Change in all things is sweet." For this reason things that come at intervals are pleasant, both people and things: they are a change from the present, and at the same time what comes at intervals is rare. Learning and wondering are also pleasant, for the most part. In wondering there is the desire [to learn], so the object of wonder is something desired; and in learning there is a settling into one's natural state.

καὶ τὸ εὖ ποιεῖν καὶ τὸ εὖ πάσχειν τῶν ἡδέων· τὸ μὲν γὰρ εὖ πάσχειν τυγχάνειν ὧν ἐπιθυμοῦσι, [1371b] τὸ δὲ εὖ ποιεῖν ἔχειν καὶ ὑπερέχειν, ὧν ἀμφοτέρων ἐφίενται. διὰ δὲ τὸ ἡδὺ εἶναι τὸ εὐποιητικόν, καὶ τὸ ἐπανορθοῦν ἡδὺ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐστὶν τοὺς πλησίον, καὶ τὸ τὰ ἐλλιπῆ ἐπιτελεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ μανθάνειν τε ἡδὺ καὶ τὸ θαυμάζειν, καὶ τὰ τοιάδε ἀνάγκη ἡδέα εἶναι οἷον τό τε μιμητικόν,

Doing good and receiving good are among pleasant things. Receiving good is getting what one desires, [1371b] and doing good is having and having more, both of which people aim at. Because doing good is pleasant, it is also pleasant for people to set their neighbors back on their feet and to complete what is lacking. Since learning and wonder-

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	ὥσπερ γραφικὴ καὶ ἀνδριαντοποιία καὶ ποιητική, καὶ πᾶν ὃ ἂν εὖ μεμιμημένον ᾖ, κἂν ᾖ μὴ ἡδὺ αὐτὸ τὸ μεμιμημένον· οὐ γὰρ ἐπὶ τούτῳ χαίρει, ἀλλὰ συλλογισμός ἐστιν ὅτι τοῦτο ἐκεῖνο, ὥστε μανθάνειν τι συμβαίνει. καὶ αἱ περιπέτειαι καὶ τὸ παρὰ μικρὸν σώζεσθαι ἐκ τῶν κινδύνων· πάντα γὰρ θαυμαστὰ ταῦτα.	ing are pleasant, things of the following sort must be pleasant too: imitation, as in painting, sculpture, and poetry, and anything that has been well imitated, even if the thing imitated is not itself pleasant. One doesn't delight in the thing itself; rather, there is an inference that this is that, so that one comes to learn something. Reversals of fortune and narrow escapes from danger are pleasant too, since all these are wondrous.
1371b	καὶ ἐπεὶ τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἡδύ, τὰ συγγενῆ δὲ κατὰ φύσιν ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν, πάντα τὰ συγγενῆ καὶ ὅμοια ἡδέα ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, οἷον ἄνθρωπος ἀνθρώπῳ ἵππος ἵππῳ καὶ νέος νέῳ, ὅθεν καὶ αἱ παροιμίαι εἴρηνται, ὡς ἧλιξ ἥλικα τέρπει, καὶ ὡς αἰεὶ τὸν ὁμοῖον, καὶ ἔγνω δὲ θὴρ θῆρα, καὶ γὰρ κολοιὸς παρὰ κολοιόν, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ ὅμοιον καὶ τὸ συγγενὲς ἡδὺ ἑαυτῷ ἅπαν, μάλιστα δὲ αὐτὸς πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἕκαστος τοῦτο πέπονθεν, ἀνάγκη πάντας φιλαύτους εἶναι ἢ μᾶλλον ἢ ἧττον· πάντα γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα ὑπάρχει πρὸς αὐτὸν μάλιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ φίλαυτοι πάντες, καὶ τὰ αὑτῶν ἀνάγκη ἡδέα εἶναι πᾶσιν, οἷον ἔργα καὶ λόγους.	Since what is natural is pleasant, and things akin are natural to one another, all things akin and alike are, for the most part, pleasant to one another: human to human, horse to horse, young to young. Hence the proverbs, "Peer delights peer," "Always like to like," "Beast knows beast," "Jackdaw by jackdaw," and all the others of this sort. Since everything alike and akin is pleasant to itself, and each person stands in this relation most of all to himself, everyone must be a self-lover, more or less. All these things hold most of all in one's relation to oneself. Since everyone is a self-lover, their own things must also be pleasant to everyone, such as their deeds and words.
	διὸ καὶ φιλοκόλακες ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ [καὶ φιλερασταὶ] καὶ φιλότιμοι καὶ φιλότεκνοι· αὐτῶν γὰρ ἔργον τὰ τέκνα. καὶ τὰ ἐλλιπῆ ἐπιτελεῖν ἡδύ· αὐτῶν γὰρ ἔργον ἤδη γίγνεται. καὶ ἐπεὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἥδιστον, καὶ τὸ σοφὸν δοκεῖν εἶναι ἡδύ· ἀρχικὸν γὰρ τὸ φρονεῖν, ἔστιν δ' ἡ σοφία πολλῶν καὶ θαυμαστῶν ἐπιστήμη. ἔτι ἐπεὶ φιλότιμοι ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, ἀνάγκη καὶ τὸ ἐπιτιμᾶν τοῖς πέλας ἡδὺ εἶναι [καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν.] καὶ τὸ ἐν ᾧ δοκεῖ βέλτιστος αὐτὸς αὑτοῦ εἶναι, ἐνταῦθα διατρίβειν, ὥσπερ καὶ ὁ ποιητής φησι κἀπὶ τοῦτ' ἐπείγεται, νέμων ἑκάστης ἡμέρας πλεῖστον μέρος, ἵν' αὐτὸς αὑτοῦ τυγχάνει βέλτιστος ὤν.	That is why people are, for the most part, fond of flatterers [and fond of lovers], fond of honor, and fond of their children, since their children are their own work. Completing what is incomplete is pleasant, since the result then becomes their own work. Since ruling is most pleasant, seeming to be wise is also pleasant, since practical wisdom fits one to rule, and wisdom is knowledge of many wondrous things. Further, since people are for the most part ambitious, it must also be pleasant to rebuke one's neighbors [and to rule]. And it is pleasant to spend one's time on whatever one thinks one does best, as the poet says: "and to this he hurries, giving the greatest part of every day, to where he happens to be at his best."
	ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡ παιδιὰ τῶν ἡδέων καὶ πᾶσα ἄνεσις, καὶ ὁ γέλως τῶν ἡδέων, ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰ γελοῖα ἡδέα εἶναι, καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ λόγους καὶ ἔργα· 1372a διώρισται δὲ περὶ γελοίων χωρὶς ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιητικῆς. περὶ μὲν οὖν ἡδέων εἰρήσθω ταῦτα, τὰ δὲ λυπηρὰ ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τούτοις φανερά.	Likewise, since play and every kind of relaxation are pleasant, and laughter is pleasant, laughable things must be pleasant too—people, words, and deeds alike. 1372a The laughable has been treated separately in the work on poetics. So much, then, for pleasant things. Painful things are evident from their opposites.[27]

27 Aristotle's treatment of comedy and the laughable does not survive; it probably belonged to a lost part of the *Poetics*.

CHAPTER 12: WRONGDOERS AND THEIR VICTIMS

The state of mind in which people do wrong, and whom they wrong.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
1372a	ὧν μὲν οὖν ἕνεκα ἀδικοῦσιν, ταῦτ' ἐστίν· πῶς δὲ ἔχοντες καὶ τίνας, λέγωμεν νῦν. αὐτοὶ μὲν οὖν ὅταν οἴωνται δυνατὸν εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα πραχθῆναι καὶ αὐτοῖς δυνατόν, εἴτε ἂν λαθεῖν πράξαντες, ἢ μὴ λαθόντες μὴ δοῦναι δίκην, ἢ δοῦναι μὲν ἀλλ' ἐλάττω τὴν ζημίαν εἶναι τοῦ κέρδους αὑτοῖς ἢ ὧν κήδονται. ποῖα μὲν οὖν δυνατὰ φαίνεται καὶ ποῖα ἀδύνατα, ἐν τοῖς ὕστερον ῥηθήσεται· κοινὰ γὰρ ταῦτα πάντων τῶν λόγων, αὐτοὶ δ' οἴονται δυνατοὶ εἶναι μάλιστα ἀζήμιοι ἀδικεῖν οἱ εἰπεῖν δυνάμενοι καὶ οἱ πρακτικοὶ καὶ οἱ ἔμπειροι πολλῶν ἀγώνων, κἂν πολύφιλοι ὦσιν, κἂν πλούσιοι.	So much for the motives for which people do wrong. Let us now say in what state of mind they do it, and to whom. People themselves do wrong when they think the thing can be done, and can be done by them. They think either that they'll escape notice in doing it, or that if they don't escape notice they won't pay the penalty, or that they'll pay it but the loss will be smaller than the gain for themselves or for those they care about. What sorts of things appear possible and what impossible will be discussed later, since these points are common to all kinds of speech. Those who think they're best able to do wrong with impunity are good speakers, people of practical ability, and those with experience of many lawsuits. The same goes for those who have many friends, or who are rich.
	καὶ μάλιστα μὲν ἂν αὐτοὶ ὦσιν ἐν τοῖς εἰρημένοις, οἴονται δύνασθαι, εἰ δὲ μή, κἂν ὑπάρχωσιν αὐτοῖς τοιοῦτοι φίλοι ἢ ὑπηρέται ἢ κοινωνοί· διὰ γὰρ ταῦτα δύνανται καὶ πράττειν καὶ λανθάνειν καὶ μὴ δοῦναι δίκην. καὶ ἐὰν φίλοι ὦσιν τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις ἢ τοῖς κριταῖς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ φίλοι ἀφύλακτοί τε πρὸς τὸ ἀδικεῖσθαι καὶ προσκαταλλάττονται πρὶν ἐπεξελθεῖν, οἱ δὲ κριταὶ χαρίζονται οἷς ἂν φίλοι ὦσι, καὶ ἢ ὅλως ἀφιᾶσιν ἢ μικροῖς ζημιοῦσιν. λαθητικοὶ δ' εἰσὶν οἵ τ' ἐναντίοι τοῖς ἐγκλήμασιν, οἷον ἀσθενεῖς περὶ αἰκίας καὶ ὁ πένης καὶ [ὁ] αἰσχρὸς περὶ μοιχείας. καὶ τὰ λίαν ἐν φανερῷ καὶ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς· ἀφύλακτα γὰρ διὰ τὸ ὅλως μηδένα ἂν οἴεσθαι.	They think they can manage it most of all if they themselves have the qualities just mentioned. Failing that, they think so if they have friends or servants or partners of this kind, since through these they can act, escape notice, and avoid paying the penalty. They think so too if they are friends of their victims or of the judges. Friends are off their guard against being wronged, and they make it up before taking legal action. Judges do favors to their friends, and either let them off altogether or punish them lightly. Those likely to escape notice are people whose character is the opposite of the charge: for example, the weak on a charge of assault, and the poor and [the] ugly man on a charge of adultery. Also things done very openly and before everyone's eyes, because no one guards against them, since nobody would ever think it possible.
	καὶ τὰ τηλικαῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα οἷα μηδ' ἂν εἷς· ἀφύλακτα γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα· πάντες γὰρ τὰ εἰωθότα ὥσπερ ἀρρωστήματα φυλάττονται [καὶ τἀδικήματα], ὃ δὲ μηδείς πω ἠρρώστηκεν, οὐδεὶς εὐλαβεῖται. καὶ οἷς μηδεὶς ἐχθρὸς ἢ πολλοί· οἱ μὲν γὰρ οἴονται λήσειν διὰ τὸ μὴ φυλάττεσθαι, οἱ δὲ λανθάνουσι διὰ τὸ μὴ δοκεῖν ἂν ἐπιχειρῆσαι φυλαττομένοις, καὶ διὰ τὸ ἀπολογίαν ἔχειν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ἐνεχείρησαν. καὶ οἷς ὑπάρχει κρύψις ἢ τρόποις ἢ τόποις ἢ διαθέσεις εὔποροι. καὶ ὅσοις μὴ λανθάνουσιν ἔστιν δίωσις δίκης ἢ ἀναβολὴ χρόνου ἢ διαφθοραὶ	Also things so great, and of such a kind, that no one at all would do them. These too go unguarded, because everyone guards against the usual ones, as with illnesses [and wrongs], but no one takes precautions against an illness nobody has ever yet had. Also those who have no enemy, or many. The first think they'll escape notice because no one is on guard against them. The second do escape notice, because it seems they would never make an attempt on people who are on their guard, and be-

GREEK

κριτῶν. καὶ οἷς, ἐὰν γένηται ζημία, ἔστιν δίωσις τῆς ἐκτίσεως ἢ ἀναβολὴ χρόνιος. ἢ δι' ἀπορίαν μηδὲν ἕξει ὅ τι ἀπολέσῃ.

καὶ οἷς τὰ μὲν κέρδη φανερὰ ἢ μεγάλα ἢ ἐγγύς, αἱ δὲ ζημίαι μικραὶ ἢ ἀφανεῖς ἢ πόρρω. [1372b] καὶ ᾧ μή ἐστιν τιμωρία ἴση τῇ ὠφελείᾳ, οἷον δοκεῖ ἡ τυραννίς. καὶ ὅσοις τὰ μὲν ἀδικήματα λήμματα, αἱ δὲ ζημίαι ὀνείδη μόνον. καὶ οἷς τοὐναντίον τὰ μὲν ἀδικήματα εἰς ἔπαινόν τινα, οἷον εἰ συνέβη ἅμα τιμωρήσασθαι ὑπὲρ πατρὸς ἢ μητρός, ὥσπερ Ζήνωνι, αἱ δὲ ζημίαι εἰς χρήματα ἢ φυγὴν ἢ τοιοῦτόν τι· δι' ἀμφότερα γὰρ ἀδικοῦσι καὶ ἀμφοτέρως ἔχοντες, πλὴν οὐχ οἱ αὐτοὶ ἀλλ' οἱ ἐναντίοι τοῖς ἤθεσιν. καὶ οἱ πολλάκις ἢ λεληθότες ἢ μὴ ἐζημιωμένοι, καὶ οἱ πολλάκις ἀποτετυχηκότες· εἰσὶ γάρ τινες καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οἷοι ἀναμάχεσθαι.

1372b καὶ οἷς ἂν παραχρῆμα ᾖ τὸ ἡδύ, τὸ δὲ λυπηρὸν ὕστερον, ἢ τὸ κέρδος, ἡ δὲ ζημία ὕστερον· οἱ γὰρ ἀκρατεῖς τοιοῦτοι, ἔστιν δὲ ἀκρασία περὶ πάντα ὅσων ὀρέγονται. καὶ οἷς ἂν τοὐναντίον τὸ μὲν λυπηρὸν ἤδη ᾖ ἢ ἡ ζημία, τὸ δὲ ἡδὺ καὶ ὠφέλιμον ὕστερα καὶ χρονιώτερα· οἱ γὰρ ἐγκρατεῖς καὶ φρονιμώτεροι τὰ τοιαῦτα διώκουσιν. καὶ οἷς ἂν ἐνδέχηται διὰ τύχην δόξαι πρᾶξαι ἢ δι' ἀνάγκην ἢ διὰ φύσιν ἢ δι' ἔθος, καὶ ὅλως ἁμαρτεῖν ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀδικεῖν. καὶ οἷς ἂν ᾖ τοῦ ἐπιεικοῦς τυχεῖν. καὶ ὅσοι ἂν ἐνδεεῖς ὦσιν. διχῶς δέ εἰσιν ἐνδεεῖς· ἢ γὰρ ὡς ἀναγκαίου, ὥσπερ οἱ πένητες, ἢ ὡς ὑπερβολῆς, ὥσπερ οἱ πλούσιοι.

καὶ οἱ σφόδρα εὐδοκιμοῦντες καὶ οἱ σφόδρα ἀδοξοῦντες, οἱ μὲν ὡς οὐ δόξοντες, οἱ δ' ὡς οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἀδοξοῦντες. αὐτοὶ μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔχοντες ἐπιχειροῦσιν ⟨ἀδικεῖν⟩, ἀδικοῦσι δὲ τοὺς τοιούτους καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα, τοὺς ἔχοντας ὧν αὐτοὶ ἐνδεεῖς ἢ εἰς τἀναγκαῖα ἢ εἰς ὑπεροχὴν ἢ εἰς

ENGLISH

cause they have the defense that they would not have attempted it. Also those who have means of concealment, whether contrivances or hiding places, or easy ways of disposing of things. Also those who, if they don't escape notice, have ways of getting the case thrown out, or postponed, or of bribing the judges. Also those who, if a penalty is imposed, have ways of evading payment or putting it off for a long time. Or those who, through poverty, will have nothing to lose.

Also those for whom the gains are evident, or large, or near at hand, while the penalties are small, or invisible, or remote. [1372b] Also the person for whom no punishment can match the benefit, as seems to be the case with tyranny. Also those for whom the wrongs bring profit, while the penalties bring only disgrace. Also those for whom, conversely, the wrongs lead to some praise, while the penalties are a fine or exile or something of that kind. An example is if one happened in the same act to avenge one's father or mother, as with Zeno. People do wrong for both reasons and in both conditions, though it is not the same people, but those of opposite characters. Also those who have often escaped notice or gone unpunished, and those who have often failed. In these matters too, as in war, there are some who are the sort to return to the fight.

Also those for whom the pleasure comes at once and the pain later, or the gain at once and the penalty later. People who lack self-control are like this, and lack of self-control concerns everything people desire. Also those for whom, conversely, the pain or the penalty is immediate, while the pleasure and the benefit come later and last longer. The self-controlled and the more sensible pursue things like this. Also those who can seem to have acted by chance, or under compulsion, or by nature, or by habit, and in general to have made a mistake rather than done wrong. Also those who can expect equitable treatment. Also those who are in need. There are two ways of being in need: of what is necessary, like the poor, or of excess, like the rich.

Also those of very high repute and those of very low repute. The first act as if they won't be suspected, the second as if they can't be any more disreputable than they already are. In this state of mind, then, people set about ⟨doing wrong⟩. They wrong

GREEK

ἀπόλαυσιν, καὶ τοὺς πόρρω καὶ τοὺς ἐγγύς· τῶν μὲν γὰρ ἡ λῆψις ταχεῖα, τῶν δ' ἡ τιμωρία βραδεῖα, οἷον οἱ συλῶντες τοὺς Καρχηδονίους· καὶ τοὺς μὴ εὐλαβεῖς μηδὲ φυλακτικοὺς ἀλλὰ πιστευτικούς· ῥᾴδιον γὰρ πάντας λαθεῖν. καὶ τοὺς ῥαθύμους· ἐπιμελοῦς γὰρ τὸ ἐπεξελθεῖν. καὶ τοὺς αἰσχυντηλούς· οὐ γὰρ μαχητικοὶ περὶ κέρδους. καὶ τοὺς ὑπὸ πολλῶν ἀδικηθέντας καὶ μὴ ἐπεξελθόντας ὡς ὄντας κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν τούτους Μυσῶν λείαν.

καὶ τοὺς μηδεπώποτε καὶ τοὺς πολλάκις· ἀμφότεροι γὰρ ἀφύλακτοι, οἱ μὲν ὡς οὐδέποτε, οἱ δ' ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἔτι. καὶ τοὺς διαβεβλημένους ἢ εὐδιαβόλους· οἱ τοιοῦτοι γὰρ οὔτε προαιροῦνται ⟨ἐπεξιέναι⟩ φοβούμενοι τοὺς κριτάς, οὔτε δύνανται πείθειν ὡς μισούμενοι καὶ φθονούμενοι. 1373a καὶ πρὸς οὓς ἔχουσι πρόφασιν ἢ προγόνων ἢ αὐτῶν ἢ φίλων ἢ ποιησάντων κακῶς ἢ μελλησάντων ἢ αὐτοὺς ἢ προγόνους ἢ ὧν κήδονται· ὥσπερ γὰρ ἡ παροιμία, προφάσεως δεῖται μόνον ἡ πονηρία. καὶ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς καὶ τοὺς φίλους· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ῥᾴδιον, τοὺς δὲ ἡδύ. καὶ τοὺς ἀφίλους καὶ τοὺς μὴ δεινοὺς εἰπεῖν ἢ πρᾶξαι· ἢ γὰρ οὐκ ἐγχειροῦσιν ἐπεξιέναι, ἢ καταλλάττονται, ἢ οὐδὲν περαίνουσιν. καὶ οἷς μὴ λυσιτελεῖ διατρίβειν ἐπιτηροῦσιν ἢ δίκην ἢ ἔκτισιν, οἷον οἱ ξένοι καὶ αὐτουργοί.

1373a ἐπὶ μικρῷ τε γὰρ διαλύονται καὶ ῥᾳδίως καταπαύονται. καὶ τοὺς πολλὰ ἠδικηκότας, ἢ τοιαῦτα οἷα ἀδικοῦνται· ἐγγὺς γάρ τι δοκεῖ τοῦ μὴ ἀδικεῖν εἶναι, ὅταν τι τοιοῦτον ἀδικηθῇ τις οἷον εἰώθει καὶ αὐτὸς ἀδικεῖν· λέγω δ' οἷον εἴ τις τὸν εἰωθότα ὑβρίζειν αἰκίσαιτο. καὶ τοὺς ἢ πεποιηκότας κακῶς ἢ βουληθέντας ἢ βουλομένους ἢ ποιήσοντας. ἔχει γὰρ καὶ τὸ ἡδὺ καὶ τὸ καλόν, καὶ ἐγγὺς τοῦ μὴ ἀδικεῖν φαίνεται. καὶ οἷς χαριοῦνται ἢ φίλοις ἢ θαυμαζομένοις ἢ ἐρωμένοις ἢ κυρίοις ἢ ὅλως πρὸς οὓς ζῶσιν αὐτοί. καὶ πρὸς οὓς ἔστιν ἐπιεικείας τυχεῖν. καὶ οἷς

ENGLISH

people and things of the following kinds. They wrong those who have what they themselves lack, whether for necessities, for superiority, or for enjoyment. They wrong both those far away and those near at hand: with the near the taking is quick, and with the far the retaliation is slow, as with those who plunder the Carthaginians. They wrong those who are trusting rather than cautious or watchful, since it's easy to escape the notice of all such people. They wrong the easygoing, since it takes diligence to prosecute. They wrong the bashful, since they won't fight over gain. They wrong those who have been wronged by many and have not prosecuted, since these are, as the proverb has it, "Mysian plunder."[28]

They wrong those who have never been wronged and those who often have been. Both are off their guard, the first because it has never happened, the second because they think it won't happen again. They wrong those who have been slandered or are easy to slander. Such people neither choose ⟨to prosecute⟩, for fear of the judges, nor can they persuade them, since they are hated and envied. 1373a They wrong those against whom they have a pretext: that these people's ancestors, or they themselves, or their friends did harm, or meant to, to the wrongdoers themselves, or their ancestors, or those they care about. As the proverb says, "Wickedness needs only a pretext." They wrong both enemies and friends, since wronging the one is easy and the other pleasant. They wrong those without friends, and those not clever at speaking or acting. These either don't attempt to prosecute, or they settle, or they get nowhere. They wrong those for whom it doesn't pay to spend time waiting for a trial or for compensation, such as foreigners and those who work their own land.

These people settle for little and are easily put off. They wrong those who have done many wrongs, or wrongs of the same kind they are now suffering. It seems almost not to be wrongdoing when someone suffers the kind of wrong he used to commit himself. I mean, for example, if someone assaulted a man who habitually treats others with insolence. They wrong those who have done harm, or wished to, or wish to, or will. This is both

28 "Mysian plunder" was proverbial for easy prey: it was said that when the Mysians' king was away, their neighbors plundered them with impunity.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἂν ἐγκεκληκότες ὦσιν καὶ προδιακεχωρηκότες, οἷον Κάλλιππος ἐποίησεν τὰ περὶ Δίωνα· καὶ γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγγὺς τοῦ μὴ ἀδικεῖν φαίνεται.	pleasant and fine, and it appears close to not doing wrong. They wrong those by whose wronging they will gratify friends, or people they admire, or their beloveds, or their masters, or in general those they live their lives by. They wrong those in whose case they can expect equitable treatment. They wrong those against whom they have already brought complaints and with whom they have already broken, as Callippus did in the affair of Dion. Such acts too appear close to not doing wrong.[29]
καὶ τοὺς ὑπ' ἄλλων μέλλοντας, ἂν μὴ αὐτοί, ὡς οὐκέτι ἐνδεχόμενον βουλεύσασθαι, ὥσπερ λέγεται Αἰνεσίδημος Γέλωνι πέμψαι κοττάβια ἀνδραποδισαμένῳ * * *, ὅτι ἔφθασεν, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸς μέλλων. καὶ οὓς ἀδικήσαντες δυνήσονται πολλὰ δίκαια πράττειν, ὡς ῥᾳδίως ἰασόμενοι, ὥσπερ ἔφη Ἰάσων ὁ Θετταλὸς δεῖν ἀδικεῖν ἔνια, ὅπως δύνηται καὶ δίκαια πολλὰ ποιεῖν. καὶ ἃ πάντες ἢ πολλοὶ ἀδικεῖν εἰώθασιν· συγγνώμης γὰρ οἴονται τεύξεσθαι. καὶ τὰ ῥᾴδια κρύψαι· τοιαῦτα δὲ ὅσα ταχὺ ἀναλίσκεται, οἷον τὰ ἐδώδιμα. ἢ τὰ εὐμετάβλητα σχήμασιν ἢ χρώμασιν ἢ κράσεσιν, ἢ ἃ πολλαχοῦ ἀφανίσαι εὔπορον· τοιαῦτα δὲ τὰ εὐβάστακτα καὶ ἐν μικροῖς τόποις ἀφανιζόμενα. καὶ οἷς ἀδιάφορα καὶ ὅμοια πολλὰ προϋπῆρχεν τῷ ἀδικοῦντι. καὶ ὅσα αἰσχύνονται οἱ ἀδικηθέντες λέγειν, οἷον γυναικῶν οἰκείων ὕβρεις ἢ εἰς αὐτοὺς ἢ [εἰς] υἱεῖς.	They wrong those who are about to be wronged by others if not by themselves, since there is no longer time to deliberate. So Aenesidemus is said to have sent cottabus prizes to Gelon, who had enslaved * * *, because Gelon had got there first, when Aenesidemus himself had been about to do it. They wrong those by whose wronging they will be able to do many just acts, thinking they will easily make amends. Jason of Thessaly said this, that one must do some wrongs in order to be able to do many just things as well. People also commit the wrongs that everyone, or many, are accustomed to commit, since they think they'll be pardoned. They commit wrongs that are easy to hide. Such are things quickly consumed, like food. Or things easily altered in shape or color or by mixing. Or things easy to make disappear in many places, which are things easily carried and hidden in small spaces. And things of which the wrongdoer already had many that were similar and indistinguishable. And wrongs the victims are ashamed to mention, such as insolent assaults on the women of their household, or on themselves, or [on] their sons.[30]
καὶ ὅσα φιλοδικεῖν δόξειεν ἂν ὁ ἐπεξιών· τοιαῦτα δὲ τὰ μικρὰ καὶ ἐφ' οἷς συγγνώμη. ὡς μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες ἀδικοῦσι, καὶ ποῖα καὶ ποίους καὶ διὰ τί, σχεδὸν ταῦτ' ἐστίν.	And wrongs over which the prosecutor would seem litigious, which are small matters and those that are pardonable. These, then, are roughly the states of mind in which people do wrong, the kinds of wrongs they do, the kinds of people they wrong, and why.

29 Callippus, an Athenian follower of Dion of Syracuse, fell out with him and had him murdered in 354 BC.
30 Aenesidemus was tyrant of Leontini and Gelon tyrant of Gela, later of Syracuse. Cottabus was a drinking game in which the winner received a prize.

CHAPTER 13: LAW, JUSTICE AND EQUITY

Particular and common law, the kinds of wrong, and equity as justice beyond the written law.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
1373b	τὰ δ' ἀδικήματα πάντα καὶ τὰ δικαιώματα διέλωμεν ἀρξάμενοι πρῶτον ἐντεῦθεν. ὥρισται δὴ τὰ δίκαια καὶ τὰ ἄδικα πρός τε νόμους δύο καὶ πρὸς οὕς ἐστι διχῶς. λέγω δὲ νόμον τὸν μὲν ἴδιον τὸν δὲ κοινόν, ἴδιον μὲν τὸν ἑκάστοις ὡρισμένον πρὸς αὐτούς, καὶ τοῦτον τὸν μὲν ἄγραφον τὸν δὲ γεγραμμένον, κοινὸν δὲ τὸν κατὰ φύσιν. ἔστι γὰρ ὃ μαντεύονταί τι πάντες, φύσει κοινὸν δίκαιον καὶ ἄδικον, κἂν μηδεμία κοινωνία πρὸς ἀλλήλους ᾖ μηδὲ συνθήκη, οἷον καὶ ἡ Σοφοκλέους Ἀντιγόνη φαίνεται λέγουσα, ὅτι δίκαιον ἀπειρημένον θάψαι τὸν Πολυνείκη, ὡς φύσει ὂν τοῦτο δίκαιον· οὐ γάρ τι νῦν γε κἀχθές, ἀλλ' ἀεί ποτε / ζῇ τοῦτο, κοὐδεὶς οἶδεν ἐξ ὅτου φάνη.	Let us now classify all wrongs and all just acts, starting from this point. Just and unjust acts have been defined in relation to two kinds of law, and in relation to the persons affected in two ways. By law I mean particular law on the one hand and common law on the other. Particular law is what each people has defined for itself, and it is partly unwritten and partly written. Common law is law according to nature. For there is, as everyone in some way divines, a justice and injustice that is by nature common to all, even when there is no association or agreement between them. Sophocles' Antigone clearly means this when she says that burying Polynices is just, though it has been forbidden, because it is just by nature: "Not of today or yesterday, but always / this lives, and no one knows when it first appeared."[31]
	καὶ ὡς Ἐμπεδοκλῆς λέγει περὶ τοῦ μὴ κτείνειν τὸ ἔμψυχον· τοῦτο γὰρ οὐ τισὶ μὲν δίκαιον τισὶ δ' οὐ δίκαιον, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν πάντων νόμιμον διά τ' εὐρυμέδοντος / αἰθέρος ἠνεκέως τέταται διά τ' ἀπλέτου αὖ γῆς καὶ ὡς ἐν τῷ Μεσσηνιακῷ λέγει Ἀλκιδάμας * * *, πρὸς οὓς δέ, διώρισται δίχα· ὥρισται γὰρ πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν ἢ πρὸς ἕνα τῶν κοινωνούντων ἃ δεῖ πράττειν καὶ μὴ πράττειν. διὸ καὶ τἀδικήματα καὶ τὰ δικαιώματα διχῶς ἔστιν ἀδικεῖν καὶ δικαιοπραγεῖν· ἢ γὰρ πρὸς ἕνα καὶ ὡρισμένον ἢ πρὸς τὸ κοινόν· ὁ γὰρ μοιχεύων καὶ τύπτων ἀδικεῖ τινα τῶν ὡρισμένων, ὁ δὲ μὴ στρατευόμενος τὸ κοινόν.	Empedocles says the same about not killing living things. This is not just for some and unjust for others, "but what is lawful for all stretches unbroken through the wide-ruling / upper air and through the boundless earth." Alcidamas says it too in his *Messenian Speech* * * *. As for the persons concerned, the distinction is twofold. What one must and must not do is defined either in relation to the community or in relation to one of its members. That is why there are two ways of doing wrong and doing right: either toward one definite person or toward the community. The adulterer and the man who strikes someone wrong a definite person, while the man who doesn't serve in the army wrongs the community.[32]
	ἁπάντων δὴ τῶν ἀδικημάτων διῃρημένων, καὶ τῶν μὲν ὄντων πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν τῶν δὲ πρὸς ἄλλον καὶ πρὸς ἄλλους, ἀναλαβόντες τί ἐστιν τὸ ἀδικεῖσθαι, λέγωμεν. ἔστι δὴ τὸ ἀδικεῖσθαι τὸ ὑπὸ ἑκόντος τὰ ἄδικα πάσχειν· τὸ γὰρ ἀδικεῖν ὥρισται πρότερον ἑκούσιον εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀνάγκη τὸν ἀδικούμενον βλάπτεσθαι καὶ ἀκουσίως βλάπτεσθαι, αἱ μὲν βλάβαι ἐκ τῶν πρότερον φανεραί εἰσιν· τὰ γὰρ ἀγαθὰ καὶ τὰ κακὰ εἴρηται καθ' αὑτὰ πρότερον καὶ τὰ ἑκούσια, ὅτι ἔστιν ὅσα εἰδότες, ὥστ' ἀνάγκη πάντα τὰ ἐγκλήματα ἢ πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν ἢ πρὸς τὸ	Now that all wrongs have been classified, some against the community and some against one or more others, let us go back and say what being wronged is. Being wronged is suffering unjust treatment from someone acting voluntarily, since doing wrong was defined earlier as voluntary. The person wronged must be harmed, and harmed against his will. The kinds of harm are clear from what was said before, since good and bad things in

31 In Sophocles' *Antigone,* Antigone buries her brother Polynices in defiance of King Creon's decree.
32 Alcidamas was a fourth-century BC rhetorician. His *Messenian Speech* reportedly said, "God has left all men free; nature has made no one a slave."

GREEK

ἴδιον εἶναι, καὶ ἢ ἀγνοοῦντος καὶ ἄκοντος ἢ ἑκόντος καὶ εἰδότος, καὶ τούτων τὰ μὲν προελομένου τὰ δὲ διὰ πάθος.

περὶ μὲν οὖν θυμοῦ ῥηθήσεται ἐν τοῖς περὶ τὰ πάθη, ποῖα δὲ προαιροῦνται καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες, εἴρηται πρότερον. ἐπεὶ δ' ὁμολογοῦντες πολλάκις πεπραχέναι [1374a] ἢ τὸ ἐπίγραμμα οὐχ ὁμολογοῦσιν ἢ περὶ ὃ τὸ ἐπίγραμμα, οἷον λαβεῖν μὲν ἀλλ' οὐ κλέψαι, καὶ πατάξαι πρότερον ἀλλ' οὐχ ὑβρίσαι, καὶ συγγενέσθαι ἀλλ' οὐ μοιχεῦσαι, ἢ κλέψαι μὲν ἀλλ' οὐχ ἱεροσυλῆσαι (οὐ γὰρ θεοῦ τι) ἢ ἐπεργάσασθαι μὲν ἀλλ' οὐ δημοσίαν, ἢ διειλέχθαι μὲν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀλλ' οὐ προδοῦναι, διὰ ταῦτα δέοι ἂν καὶ περὶ τούτων διωρίσθαι, τί κλοπή, τί ὕβρις, τί μοιχεία, ὅπως ἐάν τε ὑπάρχειν ἐάν τε μὴ ὑπάρχειν βουλώμεθα δεικνύναι, ἔχωμεν ἐμφανίζειν τὸ δίκαιον.

1374a ἔστι δὲ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα περὶ τοῦ ἄδικον εἶναι καὶ φαῦλον ἢ μὴ ἄδικον ἡ ἀμφισβήτησις· ἐν γὰρ τῇ προαιρέσει ἡ μοχθηρία καὶ τὸ ἀδικεῖν, τὰ δὲ τοιαῦτα τῶν ὀνομάτων προσσημαίνει τὴν προαίρεσιν, οἷον ὕβρις καὶ κλοπή· οὐ γὰρ εἰ ἐπάταξεν πάντως ὕβρισεν, ἀλλ' εἰ ἕνεκά του, οἷον τοῦ ἀτιμάσαι ἐκεῖνον ἢ αὐτὸς ἡσθῆναι. οὐδὲ πάντως, εἰ λάθρᾳ ἔλαβεν, ἔκλεψεν, ἀλλ' εἰ ἐπὶ βλάβῃ ⟨τούτου, ἀφ' οὗ ἔλαβε⟩ καὶ σφετερισμῷ ἑαυτοῦ. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔχει, ὥσπερ καὶ περὶ τούτων.

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῶν δικαίων καὶ τῶν ἀδίκων ἦν δύο εἴδη· (τὰ μὲν γὰρ γεγραμμένα τὰ δ' ἄγραφα), περὶ ὧν μὲν οἱ νόμοι ἀγορεύουσιν εἴρηται, τῶν δ' ἀγράφων δύο ἐστὶν εἴδη· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν τὰ μὲν καθ' ὑπερβολὴν ἀρετῆς καὶ κακίας, ἐφ' οἷς ὀνείδη καὶ ἔπαινοι καὶ ἀτιμίαι καὶ τιμαὶ καὶ δωρεαί, οἷον τὸ χάριν ἔχειν τῷ ποιήσαντι εὖ καὶ ἀντευποιεῖν τὸν εὖ ποιήσαντα καὶ βοηθητικὸν εἶναι τοῖς φίλοις καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, τὰ δὲ τοῦ ἰδίου νόμου καὶ γεγραμμένου ἔλλειμμα. τὸ γὰρ ἐπιεικὲς δοκεῖ δίκαιον εἶναι, ἔστιν δὲ ἐπιεικὲς τὸ παρὰ τὸν γεγραμμένον νόμον δίκαιον.

ENGLISH

themselves were discussed earlier. Voluntary acts were also discussed, as those done knowingly. So all charges must concern either the community or the individual. And the act must be done either by someone ignorant and unwilling or by someone willing and knowing. Of the latter, some acts are done by choice and others from emotion.

Anger will be discussed in the treatment of the emotions. What people choose to do, and in what state of mind, has been discussed earlier. But people often admit to an act [1374a] without admitting the name of the charge, or what the name refers to. For instance, they admit taking something but not stealing it, or striking first but not acting with insolence, or having intercourse but not committing adultery. Or they admit stealing but not committing sacrilege, since the thing wasn't the god's. Or they admit farming land, but not public land, or talking with the enemy, but not committing treason. For this reason we should define these things too: what theft is, what insolence is, what adultery is. Then, whether we want to show that the charge applies or that it doesn't, we can bring out what is just.

In all such cases the dispute is about whether the act is unjust and bad, or not unjust. Wickedness and wrongdoing lie in the choice, and names like these, such as insolence and theft, also indicate the choice. If a man struck someone, he did not necessarily act with insolence. He did so only if he struck for some purpose, for example to dishonor the other man or for his own pleasure. Nor, if he took something secretly, did he necessarily steal it. He stole it only if he took it to harm ⟨the person he took it from⟩ and to appropriate it for himself. The other cases work the same way as these.

There were two kinds of just and unjust acts, some written and some unwritten. We have spoken about those the laws declare, and there are two kinds of the unwritten. One kind concerns an excess of excellence and of vice, which earns reproach and praise, dishonor and honor and rewards. Examples are being grateful to a benefactor, returning kindness for kindness, being ready to help one's friends, and all such things. The other kind makes up for what is missing in the particular, written law. Equity seems to be just, and equity is what is just beyond the written law.

GREEK	ENGLISH
συμβαίνει δὲ τοῦτο τὰ μὲν ἑκόντων τὰ δὲ ἀκόντων τῶν νομοθετῶν, ἀκόντων μὲν ὅταν λάθῃ, ἑκόντων δ' ὅταν μὴ δύνωνται διορίσαι, ἀλλ' ἀναγκαῖον μὲν ᾖ καθόλου εἰπεῖν, μὴ ᾖ δέ, ἀλλ' ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ. καὶ ὅσα μὴ ῥᾴδιον διορίσαι δι' ἀπειρίαν, οἷον τὸ τρῶσαι σιδήρῳ πηλίκῳ καὶ ποίῳ τινί· ὑπολείποι γὰρ ἂν ὁ αἰὼν διαριθμοῦντα. ἂν οὖν ᾖ ἀόριστον, δέῃ δὲ νομοθετῆσαι, ἀνάγκη ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν, ὥστε κἂν δακτύλιον ἔχων ἐπάρηται τὴν χεῖρα ἢ πατάξῃ, κατὰ μὲν τὸν γεγραμμένον νόμον ἔνοχός ἔσται καὶ ἀδικεῖ, [1374b] κατὰ δὲ τὸ ἀληθὲς οὐκ ἀδικεῖ, καὶ τὸ ἐπιεικὲς τοῦτο ἐστίν.	This happens partly with the lawgivers' intent and partly without it. It happens without it when something escapes their notice. It happens with it when they cannot define precisely, but must speak universally, though the rule holds not universally but only for the most part. It also happens with things that are hard to define because they are endless, for example wounding with an iron instrument of what size and what kind. A lifetime would run out before one finished listing them. So if the matter is indeterminate, yet a law must be made, the lawgiver has to speak in general terms. As a result, if someone raises his hand while wearing a ring, or strikes with it, he will be liable and in the wrong under the written law. [1374b] But in truth he is not in the wrong, and this is what equity is.
1374b εἰ δὲ ἐστὶ τὸ εἰρημένον τὸ ἐπιεικές, φανερὸν ποῖά ἐστι τὰ ἐπιεικῆ καὶ οὐκ ἐπιεικῆ, καὶ ποῖοι οὐκ ἐπιεικεῖς ἄνθρωποι· ἐφ' οἷς τε γὰρ δεῖ συγγνώμην ἔχειν, ἐπιεικῆ ταῦτα, καὶ τὸ τὰ ἁμαρτήματα καὶ τὰ ἀδικήματα μὴ τοῦ ἴσου ἀξιοῦν, μηδὲ τὰ ἀτυχήματα· ἔστιν ἀτυχήματα μὲν ὅσα παράλογα καὶ μὴ ἀπὸ μοχθηρίας, ἁμαρτήματα δὲ ὅσα μὴ παράλογα καὶ μὴ ἀπὸ πονηρίας, ἀδικήματα δὲ ὅσα μήτε παράλογα ἀπὸ πονηρίας τε ἐστίν· τὰ γὰρ δι' ἐπιθυμίαν ἀπὸ πονηρίας. καὶ τὸ τοῖς ἀνθρωπίνοις συγγινώσκειν ἐπιεικές.	If equity is as described, it's clear what sorts of things are equitable and not equitable, and what sort of people are not equitable. Things that call for pardon are equitable. It is equitable not to treat mistakes and wrongs as equal, nor misfortunes either. Misfortunes are what is unexpected and does not come from wickedness. Mistakes are what is not unexpected but does not come from wickedness. Wrongs are what is neither unexpected nor free of wickedness, since acts done from desire come from wickedness. It is equitable, too, to pardon human failings.
καὶ τὸ μὴ πρὸς τὸν νόμον ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν νομοθέτην, καὶ μὴ πρὸς τὸν λόγον ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὴν διάνοιαν τοῦ νομοθέτου σκοπεῖν, καὶ μὴ πρὸς τὴν πρᾶξιν ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὴν προαίρεσιν, καὶ μὴ πρὸς τὸ μέρος ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸ ὅλον, μηδὲ ποῖός τις νῦν, ἀλλὰ ποῖός τις ἦν ἀεὶ ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ. καὶ τὸ μνημονεύειν μᾶλλον ὧν ἔπαθεν ἀγαθῶν ἢ κακῶν, καὶ ἀγαθῶν ὧν ἔπαθε μᾶλλον ἢ ἐποίησεν. καὶ τὸ ἀνέχεσθαι ἀδικούμενον. καὶ τὸ μᾶλλον λόγῳ ἐθέλειν κρίνεσθαι ἢ ἔργῳ. καὶ τὸ εἰς δίαιταν μᾶλλον ἢ εἰς δίκην βούλεσθαι ἰέναι· ὁ γὰρ διαιτητὴς τὸ ἐπιεικὲς ὁρᾷ, ὁ δὲ δικαστὴς τὸν νόμον· καὶ τούτου ἕνεκα διαιτητὴς εὑρέθη, ὅπως τὸ ἐπιεικὲς ἰσχύῃ. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἐπιεικῶν διωρίσθω τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον.	Equity looks not to the law but to the lawgiver, and not to the letter but to the lawgiver's intention. It looks not to the act but to the choice, and not to the part but to the whole. It asks not what sort of person someone is now, but what sort he has always been, or usually. It also means remembering good treatment received rather than bad, and good received rather than good done. It means putting up with being wronged. It means being willing to settle a matter by words rather than by deeds. And it means preferring arbitration to the courts, since the arbitrator looks to equity and the juror to the law. Indeed, the arbitrator was invented for this purpose, so that equity might prevail. That will do for our account of what is equitable.

CHAPTER 14: GREATER AND LESSER WRONGS

Topics for arguing that one wrong is greater than another.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἀδίκημα δὲ μεῖζον, ὅσῳ ἂν ἀπὸ μείζονος ᾖ ἀδικίας· διὸ τὰ ἐλάχιστα μέγιστα, οἷον ὃ Μελανώπου Καλλίστρατος κατηγόρει, ὅτι παρελογίσατο τρία ἡμιωβέλια ἱερὰ τοὺς ναοποιούς· ἐπὶ δικαιοσύνης δὲ τοὐναντίον. ἔστιν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκ τοῦ ἐνυπάρχειν τῇ δυνάμει· ὁ γὰρ τρία ἡμιωβέλια ἱερὰ κλέψας κἂν ὁτιοῦν ἀδικήσειεν. ὁτὲ μὲν δὴ οὕτω τὸ μεῖζον, ὁτὲ δ' ἐκ τοῦ βλάβους κρίνεται. καὶ οὗ μή ἐστιν ἴσῃ τιμωρία, ἀλλὰ πᾶσα ἐλάττων. καὶ οὗ μή ἐστιν ἴασις· χαλεπὸν γὰρ καὶ ἀδύνατον. καὶ οὗ μὴ ἔστιν δίκην λαβεῖν τὸν παθόντα· ἀνίατον γάρ· ἡ γὰρ δίκη καὶ κόλασις ἴασις.	A wrong is greater the greater the injustice it springs from. That is why the smallest wrongs can be the greatest. An example is Callistratus's charge against Melanopus, that he had cheated the temple builders of three sacred half-obols. With just acts it is the reverse. This is because the greater is contained in them potentially: a man who stole three sacred half-obols would commit any wrong at all. Sometimes, then, the greater is judged this way, and sometimes by the harm done. A wrong is greater when no punishment is equal to it, but every punishment falls short. It is greater when there is no remedy for it, since that makes it hard, indeed impossible to set right. It is greater when the victim cannot obtain justice, since then it is irremediable, for justice and punishment are a remedy.[33]
καὶ εἰ ὁ παθὼν καὶ ἀδικηθεὶς αὐτὸς αὑτὸν μεγάλως ἐκόλασεν· ἔτι γὰρ μείζονι ὁ ποιήσας δίκαιος κολασθῆναι, οἷον Σοφοκλῆς ὑπὲρ Εὐκτήμονος συνηγορῶν, ἐπεὶ ἀπέσφαξεν ἑαυτὸν ὑβρισθείς, [1375a] οὐ τιμήσειν ἔφη ἐλάττονος ἢ ὁ παθὼν ἑαυτῷ ἐτίμησεν. καὶ ὃ μόνος ἢ πρῶτος ἢ μετ' ὀλίγων πεποίηκεν. καὶ τὸ πολλάκις τὸ αὐτὸ ἁμαρτάνειν [μέγα]. καὶ δι' ὃ ἂν ζητηθῇ καὶ εὑρεθῇ τὰ κωλύοντα καὶ ζημιοῦντα, οἷον ἐν Ἄργει ζημιοῦται δι' ὃν ἂν νόμος τεθῇ καὶ δι' οὓς τὸ δεσμωτήριον ᾠκοδομήθη. καὶ τὸ θηριωδέστερον ἀδίκημα μεῖζον. καὶ ὃ ἐκ προνοίας μᾶλλον. καὶ ὃ οἱ ἀκούοντες φοβοῦνται μᾶλλον ἢ ἐλεοῦσιν. καὶ τὰ μὲν ῥητορικά ἐστι τοιαῦτα, ὅτι πολλὰ ἀνῄρηκεν ἢ ὑπερβέβηκεν, οἷον ὅρκους δεξιὰς πίστεις ἐπιγαμίας· πολλῶν γὰρ ἀδικημάτων ὑπεροχή.	A wrong is also greater if the victim, having been wronged, punished himself severely, since then the doer deserves a still greater punishment. Sophocles, speaking on behalf of Euctemon, who had cut his own throat after being treated with insolence, [1375a] said he would not assess the penalty at less than the victim had assessed against himself. A wrong is greater when someone committed it alone, or first, or with few others. Committing the same offense many times [is great]. So is a wrong that led people to seek and find measures to prevent and punish it. In Argos, for example, a man is punished on whose account a law was made, and so are those on whose account the prison was built. The more brutal wrong is greater, and so is the more premeditated one. So is the one that people who hear of it fear more than they pity. The rhetorical points are these: that the man has destroyed or overstepped many things, such as oaths, handshakes, pledges, rights of intermarriage. This makes it an accumulation of many wrongs.[34]
1375a καὶ τὸ ἐνταῦθα οὗ κολάζονται οἱ ἀδικοῦντες, ὅπερ ποιοῦσιν οἱ ψευδομαρτυροῦντες· ποῦ γὰρ οὐκ ἂν	A wrong is also greater when it is committed in the very place where wrongdoers are punished, as perjured witnesses do. Where would a man not do

33 Melanopus was an Athenian politician of the fourth century BC. The temple builders were officials in charge of building a temple.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἀδικήσειεν, εἴ γε καὶ ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ; καὶ ἐφ' οἷς αἰσχύνη μάλιστα. καὶ εἰ τοῦτον ὑφ' οὗ εὖ πέπονθεν· πλείω γὰρ ἀδικεῖ, ὅτι τε κακῶς ποιεῖ καὶ ὅτι οὐκ εὖ. καὶ ὃ παρὰ τὰ ἄγραφα δίκαια· ἀμείνονος γὰρ μὴ δι' ἀνάγκην δίκαιον εἶναι· τὰ μὲν οὖν γεγραμμένα ἐξ ἀνάγκης, τὰ δ' ἄγραφα οὔ. ἄλλον δὲ τρόπον, εἰ παρὰ τὰ γεγραμμένα. ὁ γὰρ τὰ φοβερὰ ἀδικῶν καὶ τὰ ἐπιζήμια καὶ τὰ ἀζήμια ἀδικήσειεν ἄν. περὶ μὲν οὖν ἀδικήματος μείζονος καὶ ἐλάττονος εἴρηται.	wrong, if he does it even in the courtroom? Wrongs that bring the most shame are greater. So is wronging someone from whom one has received benefits, since one does more wrong, both by doing harm and by not doing good. So is a wrong that violates unwritten justice, since it takes a better man to be just without compulsion. The written laws compel, the unwritten do not. In another way, a wrong is greater if it violates the written laws, since a man who commits wrongs that are feared and carry penalties would also commit those that carry none. So much for greater and lesser wrongs.

CHAPTER 15: THE NON-TECHNICAL PROOFS

How to use laws, witnesses, contracts, evidence from torture and oaths.

GREEK	ENGLISH
περὶ δέ τῶν ἀτέχνων καλουμένων πίστεων ἐχόμενόν ἐστι τῶν εἰρημένων ἐπιδραμεῖν. ἴδιαι γὰρ αὗται τῶν δικανικῶν. εἰσὶν δὲ πέντε τὸν ἀριθμόν, νόμοι μάρτυρες συνθῆκαι βάσανοι ὅρκος. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν περὶ νόμων εἴπωμεν, πῶς χρηστέον [καὶ προτρέποντα καὶ ἀποτρέποντα] καὶ κατηγοροῦντα καὶ ἀπολογούμενον. φανερὸν γὰρ ὅτι, ἐὰν μὲν ἐναντίος ᾖ ὁ γεγραμμένος τῷ πράγματι, τῷ κοινῷ χρηστέον καὶ τοῖς ἐπιεικεστέροις καὶ δικαιοτέροις. καὶ ὅτι τὸ γνώμῃ τῇ ἀρίστῃ τοῦτ' ἐστίν τὸ μὴ παντελῶς χρῆσθαι τοῖς γεγραμμένοις.	Next after what has been said comes a quick survey of the so-called non-technical proofs, since these belong specifically to forensic speeches. They are five in number: laws, witnesses, contracts, tortures, oath. Let us first speak about laws and how one should use them [both when urging and when dissuading, and] when accusing and when defending. Clearly, if the written law is against our case, we must appeal to the common law and to what is more equitable and more just. We should argue that "to the best of one's judgment" means precisely not following the written laws to the letter in every case.[35]
καὶ ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἐπιεικὲς ἀεὶ μένει καὶ οὐδέποτε μεταβάλλει, οὐδ' ὁ κοινός (κατὰ φύσιν γάρ ἐστιν), οἱ δὲ γεγραμμένοι πολλάκις, ὅθεν εἴρηται τὰ ἐν τῇ Σοφοκλέους Ἀντιγόνῃ· ἀπολογεῖται γὰρ ὅτι ἔθαψε παρὰ τὸν τοῦ Κρέοντος νόμον, ἀλλ' οὐ παρὰ τὸν ἄγραφον, [1375b] οὐ γάρ τι νῦν γε κἀχθές, ἀλλ' ἀεί ποτε… / ταῦτ' οὖν ἐγὼ οὐκ ἔμελλον ἀνδρὸς οὐδενός. καὶ ὅτι τὸ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ἀληθές τε καὶ συμφέρον, ἀλλ' οὐ τὸ δοκοῦν, ὥστ' οὐ νόμος ὁ γεγραμμένος· οὐ γὰρ ποιεῖ τὸ ἔργον τὸ τοῦ νόμου. καὶ ὅτι ὥσπερ ἀργυρογνώμων ὁ κριτής ἐστιν, ὅπως διακρίνῃ τὸ κίβδηλον δίκαιον καὶ τὸ ἀληθές. καὶ ὅτι βελτίονος ἀνδρὸς τὸ τοῖς ἀγράφοις ἢ τοῖς γεγραμμένοις χρῆσθαι καὶ ἐμμένειν.	We should argue that equity always remains and never changes, nor does the common law, since it is according to nature, while the written laws often change. Hence the lines in Sophocles' *Antigone*. She defends herself by saying that she buried her brother contrary to Creon's law but not contrary to the unwritten law: [1375b] "Not of today or yesterday, but always . . . / These, then, I was not going to break for any man." We should argue that the just is what is true and beneficial, not what merely seems so, so the written law is not law, since it doesn't do the work of law. We should argue that the judge is like an assayer of silver, there to tell counterfeit justice from the genuine. And we

34 This is probably Sophocles the Athenian politician, not the tragedian. In some Athenian trials the prosecutor proposed a penalty after the verdict.

35 "To the best of one's judgment" is a phrase from the Athenian jurors' oath, which bound them to follow the laws and, where the laws were silent, their best judgment.

GREEK

ENGLISH

should argue that it takes a better man to use and abide by the unwritten laws than the written ones.

1375b καὶ εἴ που ἐναντίος νόμῳ εὐδοκιμοῦντι ἢ καὶ αὐτὸς αὑτῷ, οἷον ἐνίοτε ὁ μὲν κελεύει κύρια εἶναι ἅττ' ἂν συνθῶνται, ὁ δ' ἀπαγορεύει μὴ συντίθεσθαι παρὰ τὸν νόμον. καὶ εἰ ἀμφίβολος, ὥστε στρέφειν καὶ ὁρᾶν ἐπὶ ποτέραν τὴν ἀγωγὴν ἢ τὸ δίκαιον ἐφαρμόσει ἢ τὸ συμφέρον, εἶτα τούτῳ χρῆσθαι. καὶ εἰ τὰ μὲν πράγματα ἐφ' οἷς ἐτέθη ὁ νόμος μηκέτι μένει, ὁ δὲ νόμος, πειρατέον τοῦτο δηλοῦν καὶ μάχεσθαι ταύτῃ πρὸς τὸν νόμον. ἐὰν δὲ ὁ γεγραμμένος ᾖ πρὸς τὸ πρᾶγμα, τό τε γνώμῃ τῇ ἀρίστῃ λεκτέον ὅτι οὐ τοῦ παρὰ τὸν νόμον ἕνεκα δικάζειν ἐστίν, ἀλλ' ἵνα, ἐὰν ἀγνοήσῃ τί λέγει ὁ νόμος, μὴ ἐπιορκῇ· καὶ ὅτι οὐ τὸ ἁπλῶς ἀγαθὸν αἱρεῖται οὐδείς, ἀλλὰ τὸ αὑτῷ.

We should point out if the law contradicts a law of good repute, or even contradicts itself. For example, sometimes one law orders that whatever agreements people make are binding, while another forbids making agreements contrary to the law. If the law is ambiguous, we should turn it about and see which interpretation fits justice or advantage, and then use that one. If the circumstances for which the law was enacted no longer hold but the law still does, we should try to make this clear and fight the law on that ground. But if the written law favors our case, we should say that "to the best of one's judgment" is not there so that jurors may judge against the law. It is there so that a juror won't perjure himself if he doesn't know what the law says. We should also say that nobody chooses what is good absolutely, but what is good for himself.

καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲν διαφέρει ἢ μὴ κεῖσθαι ἢ μὴ χρῆσθαι. καὶ ὅτι ἐν ταῖς ἄλλαις τέχναις οὐ λυσιτελεῖ παρασοφίζεσθαι τὸν ἰατρόν· οὐ γὰρ τοσοῦτο βλάπτει ἡ ἁμαρτία τοῦ ἰατροῦ ὅσον τὸ ἐθίζεσθαι ἀπειθεῖν τῷ ἄρχοντι. καὶ ὅτι τὸ τῶν νόμων σοφώτερον ζητεῖν εἶναι, τοῦτ' ἐστὶν ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἐπαινουμένοις νόμοις ἀπαγορεύεται. καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν νόμων οὕτως διωρίσθω. περὶ δὲ μαρτύρων, μάρτυρές εἰσιν διττοί, οἱ μὲν παλαιοὶ οἱ δὲ πρόσφατοι, καὶ τούτων οἱ μὲν μετέχοντες τοῦ κινδύνου οἱ δ' ἐκτός. λέγω δὲ παλαιοὺς μὲν τούς τε ποιητὰς καὶ ὅσων ἄλλων γνωρίμων εἰσὶν κρίσεις φανεραί, οἷον Ἀθηναῖοι Ὁμήρῳ μάρτυρι ἐχρήσαντο περὶ Σαλαμῖνος καὶ Τενέδιοι ἔναγχος Περιάνδρῳ τῷ Κορινθίῳ πρὸς Σιγειεῖς.

We should argue that there is no difference between a law not existing and its not being used. We should say that, as in the other arts, it doesn't pay to try to outsmart the doctor, since a doctor's mistake does less harm than getting used to disobeying authority. And we should say that seeking to be wiser than the laws is exactly what the laws people praise forbid. So much for laws. As for witnesses, they are of two kinds, ancient and recent, and of the recent, some share the risk and some stand outside it. By ancient witnesses I mean the poets and any other well-known people whose judgments are on record. For example, the Athenians used Homer as a witness about Salamis, and the people of Tenedos recently used Periander of Corinth against the people of Sigeum.[36]

καὶ Κλεοφῶν κατὰ Κριτίου τοῖς Σόλωνος ἐλεγείοις ἐχρήσατο, λέγων ὅτι πάλαι ἀσελγὴς ἡ οἰκία· οὐ γὰρ ἄν ποτε ἐποίησε Σόλων εἰπεῖν μοι Κριτίᾳ πυρρότριχι πατρὸς ἀκούειν. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν γενομένων οἱ τοιοῦτοι μάρτυρες, [1376a] περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐσομένων καὶ οἱ χρησμολόγοι, οἷον Θεμιστοκλῆς, ὅτι ναυμαχητέον, τὸ ξύλινον τεῖχος λέγων. ἔτι καὶ αἱ παροιμίαι ὥσπερ εἴρηται, μαρτύρια ἐστίν, οἷον εἴ τις συμβουλεύει μὴ ποιεῖσθαι φίλον γέροντα, τούτῳ μαρτυρεῖ ἡ παροιμία, μήποτ' εὖ ἔρδειν

Cleophon, too, used Solon's elegiac verses against Critias, saying that the family had long been dissolute. Otherwise Solon would never have written, "Tell red-haired Critias to listen to his father." Witnesses of this kind, then, concern past events. [1376a] For the future there are also the interpreters of oracles. Themistocles was one, when he said the wooden wall meant they must fight at sea. Further, proverbs too, as has been said, are testimonies. For example, if someone advises against mak-

36 The Athenians cited Homer's *Iliad* in their dispute with Megara over Salamis. Periander, tyrant of Corinth about 600 BC, had once arbitrated a territorial dispute in that region.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	γέροντα, καὶ τὸ τοὺς υἱοὺς ἀναιρεῖν ὧν καὶ τοὺς πατέρας, νήπιος ὃς πατέρα κτείνας υἱοὺς καταλείπει.	ing a friend of an old man, the proverb bears him witness: "Never do good to an old man." Another proverb supports killing the sons of those whose fathers one has also killed: "Fool, who kills the father and leaves the sons."[37]
1376a	πρόσφατοι δὲ ὅσοι γνώριμοί τι κεκρίκασιν· χρήσιμοι γὰρ αἱ τούτων κρίσεις τοῖς περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, οἷον Εὔβουλος ἐν τοῖς δικαστηρίοις ἐχρήσατο κατὰ Χάρητος ὃ Πλάτων εἶπε πρὸς Ἀρχίβιον, ὅτι ἐπιδέδωκεν ἐν τῇ πόλει τὸ ὁμολογεῖν πονηροὺς εἶναι. καὶ οἱ μετέχοντες τοῦ κινδύνου, ἂν δόξωσι ψεύδεσθαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν τοιοῦτοι τούτων μόνον μάρτυρές εἰσιν, εἰ γέγονεν [ἢ μή], εἰ ἔστιν ἢ μή, περὶ δὲ τοῦ ποῖον οὐ μάρτυρες, οἷον εἰ δίκαιον ἢ ἄδικον, εἰ συμφέρον ἢ ἀσύμφορον· οἱ δ' ἄπωθεν καὶ περὶ τοιούτων πιστότατοι. πιστότατοι δ' οἱ παλαιοί· ἀδιάφθοροι γάρ.	Recent witnesses are well-known people who have given a judgment on something. Their judgments are useful to those disputing about the same matters. Eubulus, for example, used against Chares in the courts what Plato said to Archibius, that admitting to being wicked had become common in the city. Recent witnesses also include those who share the risk if they are judged to be lying. Witnesses like these testify only to whether something has happened [or not], or whether it is so or not. They are not witnesses to its quality, for example whether it is just or unjust, advantageous or not. But witnesses from outside are the most credible even about such matters. The ancient ones are the most credible of all, since they cannot be corrupted.[38]
	πιστώματα δὲ περὶ μαρτυριῶν μάρτυρας μὲν μὴ ἔχοντι, ὅτι ἐκ τῶν εἰκότων δεῖ κρίνειν καὶ τοῦτ' ἐστὶ τὸ γνώμῃ τῇ ἀρίστῃ, καὶ ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἐξαπατῆσαι τὰ εἰκότα ἐπὶ ἀργυρίῳ, καὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἁλίσκεται τὰ εἰκότα ψευδομαρτυριῶν· ἔχοντι δὲ πρὸς μὴ ἔχοντα, ὅτι οὐχ ὑπόδικα τὰ εἰκότα, καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει μαρτυριῶν, εἰ ἐκ τῶν λόγων ἱκανὸν ἦν θεωρῆσαι. εἰσὶ δὲ αἱ μαρτυρίαι αἱ μὲν περὶ αὑτοῦ αἱ δὲ περὶ τοῦ ἀμφισβητοῦντος, καὶ αἱ μὲν περὶ τοῦ πράγματος αἱ δὲ περὶ τοῦ ἤθους, ὥστε φανερὸν ὅτι οὐδέποτ' ἔστιν ἀπορῆσαι μαρτυρίας χρησίμης· εἰ μὴ γὰρ κατὰ τοῦ πράγματος ἢ αὐτῷ ὁμολογουμένης ἢ τῷ ἀμφισβητοῦντι ἐναντίας, ἀλλὰ περὶ τοῦ ἤθους ἢ αὐτοῦ εἰς ἐπιείκειαν ἢ τοῦ ἀμφισβητοῦντος εἰς φαυλότητα.	As for arguments about testimony, someone who has no witnesses should argue that the case must be judged from probabilities, and that this is what "to the best of one's judgment" means. He should argue that probabilities can't be bribed to deceive, and that probabilities can't be convicted of false testimony. Someone who has witnesses, against an opponent who doesn't, should argue that probabilities can't be put on trial. He should add that there would be no need of testimony if it were enough to examine the matter from arguments. Testimony may be about oneself or about one's opponent, and about the facts or about character. So clearly one can never be at a loss for useful testimony. If there is none about the facts, either supporting oneself or against one's opponent, there will still be testimony about character. It can show either that one is decent oneself or that one's opponent is bad.
	τὰ δ' ἄλλα περὶ μάρτυρος ἢ φίλου ἢ ἐχθροῦ ἢ μεταξύ, ἢ εὐδοκιμοῦντος ἢ ἀδοξοῦντος ἢ μεταξύ, καὶ ὅσαι ἄλλαι τοιαῦται διαφοραί, ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τόπων λεκτέον ἐξ οἵων περ καὶ τὰ ἐνθυμήματα λέγομεν. περὶ δὲ τῶν συνθηκῶν τοσαύτη τῶν λόγων χρῆσίς ἐστιν ὅσον αὔξειν ἢ καθαιρεῖν	Other points about a witness must be argued from the same topics we use for enthymemes. These include whether he is a friend, an enemy, or neither, whether he is of good repute, ill repute, or neither,

37 Cleophon, an Athenian politician, attacked the oligarch Critias, a descendant of Solon's family. Before the battle of Salamis in 480 BC, the Delphic oracle told the Athenians to trust a "wooden wall," which Themistocles took to mean the fleet.
38 Eubulus and Chares were Athenian politicians of the fourth century BC. The Plato quoted is probably the comic poet, not the philosopher.

GREEK

ἢ πιστὰς ποιεῖν ἢ ἀπίστους, [1376b] ἐὰν μὲν αὐτῷ ὑπάρχῃ, πιστὰς καὶ κυρίας, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ ἀμφισβητοῦντος τοὐναντίον. πρὸς μὲν οὖν τὸ πιστὰς ἢ ἀπίστους κατασκευάζειν οὐδὲν διαφέρει τῆς περὶ τοὺς μάρτυρας πραγματείας· ὁποῖοι γὰρ ἄν τινες ὦσιν οἱ ἐπιγεγραμμένοι ἢ φυλάττοντες, τούτοις αἱ συνθῆκαι πισταί εἰσιν.

1376b ὁμολογουμένης δ' εἶναι τῆς συνθήκης, οἰκείας μὲν οὔσης αὐξητέον· ἡ γὰρ συνθήκη νόμος ἐστὶν ἴδιος καὶ κατὰ μέρος, καὶ αἱ μὲν συνθῆκαι οὐ ποιοῦσι τὸν νόμον κύριον, οἱ δὲ νόμοι τὰς κατὰ νόμους συνθήκας. καὶ ὅλως αὐτὸς ὁ νόμος συνθήκη τις ἐστίν, ὥστε ὅς τις ἀπιστεῖ ἢ ἀναιρεῖ συνθήκην, τοὺς νόμους ἀναιρεῖ. ἔτι δὲ πράττεται τὰ πολλὰ τῶν συναλλαγμάτων καὶ τὰ ἑκούσια κατὰ συνθήκας, ὥστε ἀκύρων γιγνομένων ἀναιρεῖται ἡ πρὸς ἀλλήλους χρεία τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ τἆλλα δὲ ὅσα ἁρμόττει, ἐπιπολῆς ἰδεῖν ἔστιν. ἂν δ' ἐναντία ᾖ καὶ μετὰ τῶν ἀμφισβητούντων, πρῶτον μέν, ἅπερ ἄν τις πρὸς νόμον ἐναντίον μαχέσαιτο, ταῦτα ἁρμόττει· ἄτοπον γὰρ εἰ τοῖς μὲν νόμοις, ἂν μὴ ὀρθῶς κείμενοι ὦσιν ἀλλ' ἐξαμάρτωσιν οἱ τιθέμενοι, οὐκ οἰόμεθα δεῖν πείθεσθαι, ταῖς δὲ συνθήκαις ἀναγκαῖον.

εἶτα ὅτι τοῦ δικαίου ἐστὶ βραβευτὴς ὁ δικαστής· οὔκουν τοῦτο σκεπτέον, ἀλλ' ὡς δικαιότερον. καὶ τὸ μὲν δίκαιον οὐκ ἔστιν μεταστρέψαι οὔτ' ἀπάτῃ οὔτ' ἀνάγκῃ (πεφυκὸς γάρ ἐστιν), συνθῆκαι δὲ γίγνονται καὶ ἐξαπατηθέντων καὶ ἀναγκασθέντων. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις σκοπεῖν εἰ ἐναντία ἐστί τινι τῶν γεγραμμένων νόμων ἢ τῶν κοινῶν, καὶ τῶν γεγραμμένων ἢ τοῖς οἰκείοις ἢ τοῖς ἀλλοτρίοις, ἔπειτα εἰ ἢ ἄλλαις συνθήκαις ὑστέραις ἢ προτέραις· αἱ γὰρ ὕστεραι κύριαι, ἢ αἱ πρότεραι ὀρθαί, αἱ δ' ὕστεραι ἠπατήκασιν, ὁποτέρως ἂν ᾖ χρήσιμον. ἔτι δὲ τὸ συμφέρον ὁρᾶν, εἴ που ἐναντιοῦται τοῖς κριταῖς, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα· καὶ γὰρ ταῦτα εὐθεώρητα ὁμοίως. αἱ δὲ βάσανοι μαρτυρίαι τινές εἰσιν, ἔχειν δὲ δοκοῦσι τὸ πιστόν, ὅτι ἀνάγκη τις πρόσεστιν.

ENGLISH

and all other such differences. As for contracts, argument is useful to the extent of amplifying or minimizing them, or making them credible or not. [1376b] If they are on our side, we make them credible and binding, and if they are on our opponent's side, the opposite. To establish their credibility or lack of it, the procedure is no different from the treatment of witnesses. Contracts are as credible as the people whose names are on them or who keep them in custody.

If the contract is admitted to exist and is on our side, we should amplify it. A contract is a private and particular law. Contracts do not make the law authoritative, but the laws make contracts authoritative when they are made in accordance with the laws. And in general the law itself is a kind of contract, so whoever distrusts or annuls a contract annuls the laws. Further, most transactions, and the voluntary ones in particular, are carried out by contract, so that if contracts lose their force, people's dealings with one another are destroyed. The other points that fit here are plain to see. But if the contract is against us and on our opponents' side, then first, the arguments one would use to fight a law that is against us apply. It is absurd if we think we need not obey laws that were not rightly laid down, where their makers went wrong, and yet must obey contracts.

Next, the juror is the umpire of what is just. So it is not the contract he should consider but what is more just. What is just cannot be perverted by deceit or by compulsion, since it is natural, whereas contracts are made even by people who have been deceived or compelled. In addition, one should consider whether the contract runs contrary to any of the written laws or the common ones, and among the written laws, to our own or to foreign ones. Then consider whether it runs contrary to other contracts, later or earlier. Either the later ones are authoritative, or the earlier ones were right and the later ones are a fraud, whichever line is useful. Further, look at advantage: does the contract somehow run counter to the judges' interest? And there are other points of this kind, which are just as easy to see. Testimony under torture is a kind of testimony. It is thought to be credible because a kind of compulsion is involved.[39]

39 In Athens a slave's evidence was admissible only if taken under torture, usually at the challenge of one of the parties.

GREEK

οὔκουν χαλεπὸν οὐδὲ περὶ τούτων εἰπεῖν τὰ ἐνδεχόμενα, ἐξ ὧν ἐάν τε ὑπάρχωσιν οἰκεῖαι αὔξειν ἔστιν, ὅτι ἀληθεῖς μόναι τῶν μαρτυριῶν εἰσιν αὗται. [1377a] ἐάν τε ὑπεναντίαι ὦσι καὶ μετὰ τοῦ ἀμφισβητοῦντος, διαλύοι ἄν τις τἀληθῆ λέγων καθ' ὅλου τοῦ γένους τῶν βασάνων· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἧττον ἀναγκαζόμενοι τὰ ψευδῆ λέγουσιν ἢ τἀληθῆ, καὶ διακαρτεροῦντες μὴ λέγειν τἀληθῆ, καὶ ῥᾳδίως καταψευδόμενοι ὡς παυσόμενοι θᾶττον. δεῖ δὲ ἔχειν ἐπαναφέρειν ἐπὶ τοιαῦτα γεγενημένα παραδείγματα ἃ ἴσασιν οἱ κρίνοντες.

1377a [δεῖ δὲ λέγειν ὡς οὐκ εἰσὶν ἀληθεῖς αἱ βάσανοι· πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ παχύφρονες οἱ καὶ λιθόδερμοι καὶ ταῖς ψυχαῖς ὄντες δυνατοὶ γενναίως ἐγκαρτεροῦσι ταῖς ἀνάγκαις, οἱ δὲ δειλοὶ καὶ εὐλαβεῖς πρὸ τοῦ τὰς ἀνάγκας ἰδεῖν αὐτῶν καταθαρροῦσιν, ὥστε οὐδέν ἐστι πιστὸν ἐν βασάνοις.] περὶ δ' ὅρκων τετραχῶς ἔστι διελεῖν· ἢ γὰρ δίδωσι καὶ λαμβάνει, ἢ οὐδέτερον, ἢ τὸ μὲν τὸ δ' οὔ, καὶ τούτων ἢ δίδωσιν [μὲν] οὐ λαμβάνει δέ, ἢ λαμβάνει μὲν δίδωσιν δὲ οὔ. ἔτι ἄλλως παρὰ ταῦτα, εἰ ὀμώμοσται οὗτος ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἢ ὑπ' ἐκείνου. οὐ δίδωσιν μὲν οὖν, ὅτι ῥᾳδίως ἐπιορκοῦσιν, καὶ διότι ὁ μὲν ὀμόσας οὐκ ἀποδίδωσιν, τοὺς δὲ μὴ ὀμόσαντος οἴεται καταδικάσειν, [καὶ] ὡς οὗτος ὁ κίνδυνος κρείττων ὁ ἐν τοῖς δικασταῖς· τοῖς μὲν γὰρ πιστεύει τῷ δ' οὔ.

οὐ λαμβάνει δ', ὅτι ἀντὶ χρημάτων ὅρκος, καὶ ὅτι εἰ ἦν φαῦλος, κατωμόσατο ἄν· κρεῖττον γὰρ ἂν ἕνεκά του φαῦλον εἶναι ἢ μηδενός· ὀμόσας μὲν οὖν ἕξει, μὴ ὀμόσας δ' οὔ. οὕτως δὲ δι' ἀρετὴν ἂν εἴη, ἀλλ' οὐ δι' ἐπιορκίαν τὸ μή. καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ξενοφάνους ἁρμόττει, ὅτι οὐκ ἴση πρόκλησις αὕτη ἀσεβεῖ πρὸς εὐσεβῆ, ἀλλ' ὁμοία καὶ εἰ ἰσχυρὸς ἀσθενῆ πατάξαι ἢ πληγῆναι προκαλέσαιτο. εἰ δὲ λαμβάνει, ὅτι πιστεύει αὑτῷ, ἐκείνῳ δ' οὔ. καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ξενοφάνους μεταστρέψαντα φατέον οὕτως ἴσον εἶναι ἂν ὁ μὲν ἀσεβὴς διδῷ, ὁ δ' εὐσεβὴς ὀμνύῃ· δεινόν τε τὸ μὴ θέλειν αὐτόν, ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐκείνους ἀξιοῖ ὀμόσαντας δικάζειν.

ENGLISH

So it is not hard to say what can be said about this as well. If such testimony is on our side, we can amplify it by saying that it is the only true kind of testimony. [1377a] If it goes against us and favors our opponent, one could refute it by telling the truth about the whole class of tortures. People under compulsion say what is false no less than what is true: some hold out stubbornly against telling the truth, and others lie readily so that it will stop sooner. One should be able to point to examples of such things having happened that the judges know of.

[One must say that testimony under torture is not true. Many who are thick-witted, thick-skinned and strong in soul hold out nobly under compulsion, while cowards and the timid turn on themselves before they have even seen the instruments of compulsion. So there is nothing trustworthy in tortures.] Oaths can be divided in four ways. One either offers an oath and accepts one, or does neither, or does one but not the other, and in the last case either offers but does not accept, or accepts but does not offer. Besides these there is a further question: whether an oath has already been sworn, by oneself or by the other party. You decline to offer the oath because people readily perjure themselves. Also, once your opponent has sworn he won't pay back, whereas if he doesn't swear you expect the jurors to condemn him, [and] the risk you run before the jurors is preferable, since you trust them but not him.[40]

You decline to accept because the oath is taken in exchange for money. And if you were a bad man you would have sworn it, since it is better to be bad for the sake of something than for nothing: by swearing you would have the money, and by not swearing you won't. Your refusal, then, would come from excellence, not from fear of perjury. Xenophanes' saying fits here: this challenge is not fair when an impious man makes it to a pious one. It is like a strong man challenging a weak one to strike or be struck. If you accept, it is because you trust yourself and not him. Reversing Xenophanes' saying, you should say that the fair way is this: the impious man offers and the pious one swears. And it is outrageous for him to be unwilling to swear

40 A litigant could challenge his opponent to swear to his claim and let the oath settle the matter. To "offer" is to tender the oath to the other side, and to "accept" is to swear it oneself.

GREEK

εἰ δὲ δίδωσιν, ὅτι εὐσεβὲς τὸ θέλειν τοῖς θεοῖς ἐπιτρέπειν, καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲν δεῖ αὐτὸν ἄλλων δικαστῶν δεῖσθαι· τούτῳ γὰρ δίδωσι κρίσιν. καὶ ὅτι ἄτοπον τὸ μὴ θέλειν ὀμνύναι περὶ ὧν ἄλλους ἀξιοῦσιν ὀμνύναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ καθ' ἕκαστον δῆλον ὅπως λεκτέον, καὶ συνδυαζομένων πῶς λεκτέον δῆλον, οἷον εἰ αὐτὸς μὲν θέλει λαμβάνειν διδόναι δὲ μή, καὶ εἰ δίδωσι μὲν λαμβάνειν δὲ μὴ θέλει, καὶ εἰ λαμβάνειν καὶ διδόναι θέλει εἴτε μηδέτερον· [1377b] ἐκ γὰρ τῶν εἰρημένων ἀνάγκη συγκεῖσθαι, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς λόγους συγκεῖσθαι ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων. ἐὰν δὲ ᾖ γεγενημένος ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐναντίος, ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιορκία· ἑκούσιον γὰρ τὸ ἀδικεῖν, τὸ δ' ἐπιορκεῖν ἀδικεῖν ἐστί, τὰ δὲ βίᾳ καὶ ἀπάτῃ ἀκούσια.

ENGLISH

himself about matters on which he expects the jurors to swear before they give judgment.[41]

If you offer the oath, it is because it is pious to be willing to entrust the matter to the gods, and because your opponent has no need of any other judges, since you are handing the decision to him. Also, it is absurd to be unwilling to swear about matters on which they expect others to swear. Since it is clear how to argue each case singly, it is also clear how to argue when they are combined. Take the cases where one is willing to accept but not to offer, or offers but is unwilling to accept, or is willing both to accept and to offer, or neither. [1377b] These must be composed of the cases already stated, so the arguments must also be composed of those already stated. If you yourself have sworn an oath that conflicts with your present case, say that this is not perjury. Wrongdoing is voluntary, and perjury is wrongdoing, but what is done through force or deceit is involuntary.

1377b ἐνταῦθα οὖν συνακτέον καὶ τὸ ἐπιορκεῖν, ὅτι ἔστι τὸ τῇ διανοίᾳ ἀλλ' οὐ τῷ στόματι. ἐὰν δὲ τῷ ἀντιδίκῳ ᾖ ὑπεναντίος καὶ ὀμωμοσμένος, ὅτι πάντα ἀναιρεῖ μὴ ἐμμένων οἷς ὤμοσεν· διὰ γὰρ τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς νόμοις χρῶνται ὀμόσαντες. καὶ ὑμᾶς μὲν ἀξιοῦσιν ἐμμένειν οἷς ὀμόσαντες δικάζετε, αὐτοὶ δὲ οὐκ ἐμμένουσιν; καὶ ὅσα ἂν ἄλλα αὔξων τις εἴπειεν. [περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἀτέχνων πίστεων εἰρήσθω τοσαῦτα.]

Here, then, you should also conclude that perjury lies in the mind and not in the mouth. If your opponent has sworn an oath that conflicts with his case, say that by not abiding by what he swore he overturns everything. That is the very reason people swear an oath before they administer the laws. "They expect you to abide by the oaths you swore before judging, and yet they themselves do not abide by theirs?" And so on, whatever else one might say by way of amplification. [So much, then, for the non-technical proofs.]

41 Xenophanes of Colophon (sixth century BC) was a poet and philosopher.

Book II

Proof through the hearer: the emotions and the characters of youth, age and fortune; then examples, maxims, enthymemes and their topics.

CHAPTER 1: CHARACTER AND EMOTION

The speaker must seem to have good sense, excellence and goodwill, and must move the hearer's emotions.

GREEK

Ἐκ τίνων μὲν οὖν δεῖ καὶ προτρέπειν καὶ ἀποτρέπειν καὶ ἐπαινεῖν καὶ ψέγειν καὶ κατηγορεῖν καὶ ἀπολογεῖσθαι, καὶ ποῖαι δόξαι καὶ προτάσεις χρήσιμοι πρὸς τὰς τούτων πίστεις, ταῦτ' ἐστίν· περὶ γὰρ τούτων καὶ ἐκ τούτων τὰ ἐνθυμήματα, ὡς περὶ ἕκαστον εἰπεῖν ἰδίᾳ τὸ γένος τῶν λόγων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἕνεκα κρίσεώς ἐστιν ἡ ῥητορική (καὶ γὰρ τὰς συμβουλὰς κρίνουσι καὶ ἡ δίκη κρίσις ἐστίν), ἀνάγκη μὴ μόνον πρὸς τὸν λόγον ὁρᾶν, ὅπως ἀποδεικτικὸς ἔσται καὶ πιστός, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸν ποιόν τινα καὶ τὸν κριτὴν κατασκευάζειν· πολὺ γὰρ διαφέρει πρὸς πίστιν, μάλιστα μὲν ἐν ταῖς συμβουλαῖς, εἶτα καὶ ἐν ταῖς δίκαις, τό τε ποιόν τινα φαίνεσθαι τὸν λέγοντα καὶ τὸ πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὑπολαμβάνειν πως διακεῖσθαι αὐτόν, πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἐὰν καὶ αὐτοὶ διακείμενοί πως τυγχάνωσιν.

τὸ μὲν οὖν ποιόν τινα φαίνεσθαι τὸν λέγοντα χρησιμώτερον εἰς τὰς συμβουλάς ἐστιν, τὸ δὲ διακεῖσθαί πως τὸν ἀκροατὴν εἰς τὰς δίκας· οὐ γὰρ ταὐτὰ φαίνεται φιλοῦσι καὶ μισοῦσιν, οὐδ' ὀργιζομένοις καὶ πράως ἔχουσιν, [1378a] ἀλλ' ἢ τὸ παράπαν ἕτερα ἢ κατὰ μέγεθος ἕτερα· τῷ μὲν γὰρ φιλοῦντι, περὶ οὗ ποιεῖται τὴν κρίσιν, ἢ οὐκ ἀδικεῖν ἢ μικρὰ δοκεῖ ἀδικεῖν, τῷ δὲ μισοῦντι τοὐναντίον· καὶ τῷ μὲν ἐπιθυμοῦντι καὶ εὐέλπιδι ὄντι, ἐὰν ᾖ τὸ ἐσόμενον ἡδύ, καὶ ἔσεσθαι καὶ ἀγαθὸν ἔσεσθαι φαίνεται, τῷ δ' ἀπαθεῖ καὶ δυσχεραίνοντι τοὐναντίον. τοῦ μὲν οὖν αὐτοὺς εἶναι πιστοὺς τοὺς λέγοντας τρία ἐστὶ τὰ αἴτια· τοσαῦτα γάρ ἐστι δι' ἃ πιστεύομεν ἔξω τῶν ἀποδείξεων.

ENGLISH

These, then, are the materials from which one should urge and dissuade, praise and blame, accuse and defend, and these are the opinions and premises useful for proofs in these cases. Enthymemes are about these things and drawn from them, taking each kind of speech separately. But rhetoric exists for the sake of a judgment: people judge the advice they are given, and a lawsuit is a judgment. So one must look not only to the argument, to make it demonstrative and persuasive, but also present oneself as a certain kind of person and put the judge in a certain frame of mind. It makes a great difference to persuasion, most of all in deliberation but in lawsuits too, that the speaker should appear to be a certain kind of person, and that the hearers should suppose him to be disposed toward them in a certain way. It matters, moreover, whether they themselves happen to be in a certain state of mind.

The speaker's appearing to be a certain kind of person is more useful in deliberation, and the hearer's being in a certain state of mind is more useful in lawsuits. Things do not look the same to those who love and those who hate, or to those who are angry and those who are calm. [1378a] They look either altogether different or different in degree. To someone who loves the person he is judging, that person seems to do either no wrong or only a small one, and to someone who hates him it seems the opposite. To someone who desires something and is hopeful, if what is coming is pleasant, it appears both that it will happen and that it will be good. To someone who is indifferent or disgruntled, the opposite appears. There are three reasons why speakers themselves are believed, for there are three things, apart from demonstrations, that make us believe.

GREEK	ENGLISH
1378a ἔστι δὲ ταῦτα φρόνησις καὶ ἀρετὴ καὶ εὔνοια· διαψεύδονται γὰρ περὶ ὧν λέγουσιν ἢ συμβουλεύουσιν ἢ δι' ἅπαντα ταῦτα ἢ διὰ τούτων τι· ἢ γὰρ δι' ἀφροσύνην οὐκ ὀρθῶς δοξάζουσιν, ἢ δοξάζοντες ὀρθῶς διὰ μοχθηρίαν οὐ τὰ δοκοῦντα λέγουσιν, ἢ φρόνιμοι μὲν καὶ ἐπιεικεῖς εἰσιν ἀλλ' οὐκ εὖνοι, διόπερ ἐνδέχεται μὴ τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλεύειν γιγνώσκοντας. καὶ παρὰ ταῦτα οὐδέν. ἀνάγκη ἄρα τὸν ἅπαντα δοκοῦντα ταῦτ' ἔχειν εἶναι τοῖς ἀκροωμένοις πιστόν.	These are practical wisdom, excellence and goodwill. When speakers mislead us about what they say or advise, it is because they lack all of these or one of them. Either through folly they do not form correct opinions. Or they form correct opinions but through wickedness do not say what they think. Or they have practical wisdom and are decent but are not well disposed, so it is possible for them to know the best course and not advise it. There is nothing besides these. So the speaker who seems to have all three must be believed by his hearers.
ὅθεν μὲν οὖν φρόνιμοι καὶ σπουδαῖοι φανεῖεν ἄν, ἐκ τῶν περὶ τὰς ἀρετὰς διῃρημένων ληπτέον· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν αὐτῶν κἂν ἕτερόν τις κἂν ἑαυτὸν κατασκευάσειε τοιοῦτον· περὶ δ' εὐνοίας καὶ φιλίας ἐν τοῖς περὶ τὰ πάθη λεκτέον· ἔστι δὲ τὰ πάθη δι' ὅσα μεταβάλλοντες διαφέρουσι πρὸς τὰς κρίσεις, οἷς ἕπεται λύπη καὶ ἡδονή, οἷον ὀργὴ ἔλεος φόβος καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, καὶ τὰ τούτοις ἐναντία. δεῖ δὲ διαιρεῖν περὶ ἕκαστον εἰς τρία, λέγω δ' οἷον περὶ ὀργῆς, πῶς τε διακείμενοι ὀργίλοι εἰσί, καὶ τίσιν εἰώθασιν ὀργίζεσθαι, καὶ ἐπὶ ποίοις· εἰ γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἓν ἢ τὰ δύο ἔχοιμεν τούτων, ἅπαντα δὲ μή, ἀδύνατον ἂν εἴη τὴν ὀργὴν ἐμποιεῖν· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων.	How people might appear to have practical wisdom and to be good must be drawn from the analysis of the excellences, since the same sources would let one present either another person or oneself in that light. Goodwill and friendship must be discussed in the treatment of the emotions. The emotions are the things that change people so that they differ in their judgments, and that are accompanied by pain and pleasure: anger, pity, fear and all others like them, and their opposites. For each one we must make a threefold division. Take anger: we must ask in what state people are irascible, with whom they usually get angry, and over what sorts of things. If we had one or two of these but not all, it would be impossible to arouse anger, and the same goes for the other emotions.
ὥσπερ οὖν καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν προειρημένων διεγράψαμεν τὰς προτάσεις, οὕτω καὶ περὶ τούτων ποιήσωμεν καὶ διέλωμεν τὸν εἰρημένον τρόπον.	So just as we set out the premises for the subjects discussed earlier, let us do the same for these, dividing them in the way described.

CHAPTER 2: ANGER

Anger is defined; who gets angry, at whom and for what reasons.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστω δὴ ὀργὴ ὄρεξις μετὰ λύπης τιμωρίας φαινομένης διὰ φαινομένην ὀλιγωρίαν τῶν εἰς αὐτὸν ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ, τοῦ ὀλιγωρεῖν μὴ προσήκοντος. εἰ δὴ τοῦτ' ἐστὶν ἡ ὀργή, ἀνάγκη τὸν ὀργιζόμενον ὀργίζεσθαι ἀεὶ τῶν καθ' ἕκαστόν τινι, οἷον Κλέωνι ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀνθρώπῳ, [1378b] καὶ ὅτι αὐτὸν ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ τι πεποίηκεν ἢ ἤμελλεν, καὶ πάσῃ ὀργῇ ἕπεσθαί τινα ἡδονὴν τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐλπίδος τοῦ τιμωρήσασθαι· ἡδὺ μὲν γὰρ τὸ οἴεσθαι τεύξεσθαι ὧν ἐφίεται, οὐδεὶς δὲ τῶν φαινομένων ἀδυνάτων ἐφίεται αὐτῷ, ὁ δὲ ὀργιζόμενος ἐφίεται δυνατῶν αὐτῷ.	Let anger, then, be a desire, accompanied by pain, for revenge for an apparent slight. The revenge is a conspicuous one, and the slight is against oneself or one's own, by someone who has no business slighting. If this is what anger is, then the angry person must always be angry with some particular individual, with Cleon, say, but not with human beings in general. [1378b] He is angry because that person has done or was going to do something to him or to one of his own. And every instance of anger must be followed by a certain pleasure, the pleasure that comes from the hope of

GREEK	ENGLISH
	revenge. It is pleasant to think one will get what one is aiming at, and no one aims at what appears impossible for him, but the angry person aims at what is possible for him.[1]
1378b διὸ καλῶς εἴρηται περὶ θυμοῦ ὅς τε πολὺ γλυκίων μέλτιος καταλειβομένοιο / ἀνδρῶν ἐν στήθεσσιν ἀέξεται· ἀκολουθεῖ γὰρ καὶ ἡδονή τις διά τε τοῦτο καὶ διότι διατρίβουσιν ἐν τῷ τιμωρεῖσθαι τῇ διανοίᾳ· ἡ οὖν τότε γιγνομένη φαντασία ἡδονὴν ἐμποιεῖ, ὥσπερ ἡ τῶν ἐνυπνίων.	That is why it was well said of rage: "far sweeter than trickling honey, / it swells up in the breasts of men." A kind of pleasure follows on anger, both for this reason and because people dwell in their minds on taking revenge. The picture that comes to them then produces pleasure, as dreams do.[2]
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ ὀλιγωρία ἐστὶν ἐνέργεια δόξης περὶ τὸ μηδενὸς ἄξιον φαινόμενον· καὶ γὰρ τὰ κακὰ καὶ τἀγαθὰ ἄξια οἰόμεθα σπουδῆς εἶναι, καὶ τὰ συντείνοντα πρὸς αὐτά· ὅσα δὲ μηδέν τι ἢ μικρόν, οὐδενὸς ἄξια ὑπολαμβάνομεν· τρία δ' ἐστὶν εἴδη ὀλιγωρίας, καταφρόνησίς τε καὶ ἐπηρεασμὸς καὶ ὕβρις· ὅ τε γὰρ καταφρονῶν ὀλιγωρεῖ (ὅσα γὰρ οἴονται μηδενὸς ἄξια, τούτων καταφρονοῦσιν, τῶν δὲ μηδενὸς ἀξίων ὀλιγωροῦσιν) καὶ ὁ ἐπηρεάζων [φαίνεται καταφρονεῖν·] ἔστιν γὰρ ὁ ἐπηρεασμὸς ἐμποδισμὸς ταῖς βουλήσεσιν μὴ ἵνα τι αὐτῷ ἀλλ' ἵνα μὴ ἐκείνῳ. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐχ ἵνα αὐτῷ τι, ὀλιγωρεῖ· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι οὔτε βλάψειν ὑπολαμβάνει, ἐφοβεῖτο γὰρ ἂν καὶ οὐκ ὠλιγώρει, οὔτ' ὠφελῆσαι ἂν οὐδὲν ἄξιον λόγου, ἐφρόντιζε γὰρ ἂν ὥστε φίλος εἶναι.	Slighting is an active opinion about something that appears worth nothing. We think bad and good things, and whatever contributes to them, worth taking seriously, but whatever is nothing or slight we take to be worth nothing. There are three kinds of slighting: contempt, spite and insolence. The contemptuous person slights, since people despise whatever they think worth nothing, and they slight what is worth nothing. And the spiteful person [appears to show contempt]. Spite is obstructing someone's wishes, not to get something for oneself but so that the other won't get it. Since he does it not to get something for himself, he is slighting. Clearly he supposes that the other will not harm him, or he would be afraid and would not slight him. Nor does he suppose that the other could benefit him in any way worth mentioning, or he would take care to be his friend.
καὶ ὁ ὑβρίζων δὲ ὀλιγωρεῖ· ἔστι γὰρ ὕβρις τὸ πράττειν καὶ λέγειν ἐφ' οἷς αἰσχύνη ἐστὶν τῷ πάσχοντι, μὴ ἵνα τι γίγνηται αὐτῷ ἄλλο ἢ ὅτι ἐγένετο, ἀλλ' ὅπως ἡσθῇ· οἱ γὰρ ἀντιποιοῦντες οὐχ ὑβρίζουσιν ἀλλὰ τιμωροῦνται. αἴτιον δὲ τῆς ἡδονῆς τοῖς ὑβρίζουσιν, ὅτι οἴονται κακῶς δρῶντες αὐτοὺς ὑπερέχειν μᾶλλον. διὸ οἱ νέοι καὶ οἱ πλούσιοι ὑβρισταί· ὑπερέχειν γὰρ οἴονται ὑβρίζοντες. ὕβρεως δὲ ἀτιμία, ὁ δ' ἀτιμάζων ὀλιγωρεῖ· τὸ γὰρ μηδενὸς ἄξιον οὐδεμίαν ἔχει τιμήν, οὔτε ἀγαθοῦ οὔτε κακοῦ. διὸ λέγει ὀργιζόμενος ὁ Ἀχιλλεύς ἠτίμησεν· ἑλὼν γὰρ ἔχει γέρας αὐτὸς καὶ ὡς εἴ τιν' ἀτίμητον μετανάστην, ὡς διὰ ταῦτα ὀργιζόμενος.	The insolent person slights too. Insolence is doing and saying things that bring shame on the victim, not to gain anything for oneself beyond the act itself, but for the pleasure of it. Those who retaliate are not being insolent; they are taking revenge. The insolent take pleasure in it because they think that by treating others badly they show themselves all the more superior. That is why the young and the rich are insolent: they think insolence shows their superiority. Dishonor is part of insolence, and whoever dishonors someone slights him, because what is worth nothing has no value, good or bad. That is why Achilles says in his anger, "he has dishonored me; for he has taken my prize and keeps it himself," and "as if I were some dishonored vagrant," implying that this is why he is angry.[3]

1 Cleon was a leading Athenian politician of the 420s BC.
2 Homer, *Iliad* 18.109–110, spoken by Achilles.
3 Homer, *Iliad* 1.356 and 9.648.

GREEK

προσήκειν δὲ οἴονται πολυωρεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν ἡττόνων κατὰ γένος, κατὰ δύναμιν, κατ' ἀρετήν, [1379a] καὶ ὅλως ἐν ᾧ ἂν ταῦτα ὑπερέχῃ πολύ, οἷον ἐν χρήμασιν ὁ πλούσιος πένητος καὶ ἐν τῷ λέγειν ῥητορικὸς ἀδυνάτου εἰπεῖν καὶ ἄρχων ἀρχομένου καὶ ἄρχειν ἄξιος οἰόμενος τοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ἀξίου. διὸ εἴρηται θυμὸς δὲ μέγας ἐστὶ διοτρεφέων βασιλήων καὶ ἀλλά τε καὶ μετόπισθεν ἔχει κότον· ἀγανακτοῦσι γὰρ διὰ τὴν ὑπεροχήν. ἔτι ὑφ' ὧν τις οἴεται εὖ πάσχειν δεῖν· οὗτοι δ' εἰσὶν οὓς εὖ πεποίηκεν ἢ ποιεῖ, αὐτὸς ἢ δι' αὐτόν τις ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ τις, ἢ βούλεται ἢ ἐβουλήθη. φανερὸν οὖν ἐκ τούτων ἤδη πῶς τε ἔχοντες ὀργίζονται αὐτοὶ καὶ τίσιν καὶ διὰ ποῖα.

ENGLISH

People think they deserve to be highly regarded by those inferior to them in birth, power and excellence, [1379a] and in general in whatever they greatly surpass them. In money, for instance, the rich man expects it of the poor man, in speaking the orator of someone who cannot speak, the ruler of the ruled, and the man who thinks himself fit to rule of the man fit to be ruled. That is why it has been said, "great is the rage of Zeus-nurtured kings," and "but even afterwards he nurses his grudge." They resent it because of their superiority. Further, they are angry at slights from those by whom they think they ought to be well treated. These are the people whom they have benefited or are benefiting, either themselves or through someone acting for them or one of their own, or whom they wish or once wished to benefit. From this, then, it is already clear in what state people get angry, with whom, and over what.[4]

1379a αὐτοὶ μὲν γάρ, ὅταν λυπῶνται· ἐφίεται γάρ τινος ὁ λυπούμενος· ἐάν τε οὖν κατ' εὐθυωρίαν ὁτιοῦν ἀντικρούσῃ τις, οἷον τῷ διψῶντι πρὸς τὸ πιεῖν, ἐάν τε μή, ὁμοίως ταὐτὸ φαίνεται ποιεῖν· καὶ ἐάν τε ἀντιπράττῃ τις ἐάν τε μὴ συμπράττῃ ἐάν τε ἄλλο τι ἐνοχλῇ οὕτως ἔχοντα, πᾶσιν ὀργίζεται.

People get angry themselves when they are in pain, because someone in pain desires something. Suppose someone directly opposes him in anything, as when someone stops a thirsty man from drinking. If the opposition is indirect, it appears to do the same thing. Whether someone works against him, or fails to help him, or annoys him in some other way while he is in that state, he gets angry with all of them.

διὸ κάμνοντες, πενόμενοι, ⟨πολεμοῦντες⟩, ἐρῶντες, διψῶντες, ὅλως ἐπιθυμοῦντές τι καὶ μὴ κατορθοῦντες ὀργίλοι εἰσὶ καὶ εὐπαρόρμητοι, μάλιστα μὲν πρὸς τοὺς τοῦ παρόντος ὀλιγωροῦντας, οἷον κάμνων μὲν τοῖς πρὸς τὴν νόσον, πενόμενος δὲ τοῖς πρὸς τὴν πενίαν, πολεμῶν δὲ τοῖς πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον, ἐρῶν δὲ τοῖς πρὸς τὸν ἔρωτα, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις, ⟨εἰ δὲ μή, κἂν ὁτιοῦν ἄλλο ὀλιγωρῇ τις⟩· προωδοποίηται γὰρ ἕκαστος πρὸς τὴν ἑκάστου ὀργὴν ὑπὸ τοῦ ὑπάρχοντος πάθους· ἔτι δ' ἐὰν τἀναντία τύχῃ προσδεχόμενος· λυπεῖ γὰρ μᾶλλον τὸ πολὺ παρὰ δόξαν, ὥσπερ καὶ τέρπει τὸ πολὺ παρὰ δόξαν, ἐὰν γένηται ὃ βούλεται. διὸ καὶ ὧραι καὶ χρόνοι καὶ διαθέσεις καὶ ἡλικίαι ἐκ τούτων φανεραί, ποῖαι εὐκίνητοι πρὸς ὀργὴν καὶ ποῦ καὶ πότε, καὶ ὅτε μᾶλλον ἐν τούτοις εἰσί, μᾶλλον καὶ εὐκίνητοι.

That is why the sick, the poor, ⟨those at war⟩, lovers and the thirsty, and in general anyone who desires something and doesn't get it, are irascible and easily roused. They are roused most of all against those who slight their present condition. The sick man is roused against those who slight his illness, the poor man against those who slight his poverty, the man at war against those who slight the war, the lover against those who slight his love, and so on with the others, ⟨or failing that, against anyone who slights anything else at all⟩. The emotion each one already has paves the way for his particular anger. People also get angry if they happen to have been expecting the opposite. What is very contrary to expectation pains us more, just as what is very contrary to expectation delights us more if what we want happens. This also makes clear which seasons, times, dispositions and ages are easily moved to anger, and

4 Homer, *Iliad* 2.196 and 1.82.

GREEK

ENGLISH

where and when. The more people are in these states, the more easily they are moved.

αὐτοὶ μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔχοντες εὐκίνητοι πρὸς ὀργήν, ὀργίζονται δὲ τοῖς τε καταγελῶσι καὶ χλευάζουσιν καὶ σκώπτουσιν· ὑβρίζουσι γάρ. καὶ τοῖς τὰ τοιαῦτα βλάπτουσιν ὅσα ὕβρεως σημεῖα. ἀνάγκη δὲ τοιαῦτα εἶναι ἃ μήτε ἀντί τινος μήτ' ὠφέλιμα τοῖς ποιοῦσιν· ἤδη γὰρ δοκεῖ δι' ὕβριν. καὶ τοῖς κακῶς λέγουσι καὶ καταφρονοῦσι περὶ ὧν αὐτοὶ μάλιστα σπουδάζουσιν, οἷον οἱ ἐπὶ φιλοσοφίᾳ φιλοτιμούμενοι ἐάν τις εἰς τὴν φιλοσοφίαν, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ ἰδέᾳ ἐάν τις εἰς τὴν ἰδέαν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων. ταῦτα δὲ πολλῷ μᾶλλον, ἐὰν ὑποπτεύσωσι μὴ ὑπάρχειν αὐτοῖς, ἢ ὅλως ἢ μὴ ἰσχυρῶς, ἢ μὴ δοκεῖν· 1379b ἐπειδὰν γὰρ σφόδρα οἴωνται ὑπερέχειν ἐν τούτοις, ἐν οἷς σκώπτονται, οὐ φροντίζουσιν.

People in this state, then, are easily moved to anger. They get angry with those who laugh at them, mock them and jeer at them, because such people are being insolent. They are angry with those who harm them in ways that are signs of insolence. Such harms must be ones done neither in return for anything nor for any benefit to those who do them, since then they seem to be done out of insolence. They are also angry with those who speak ill of, and show contempt for, the things they themselves care most about. People who pride themselves on philosophy, for instance, are angry if someone disparages philosophy, those who pride themselves on their looks if someone disparages their looks, and so on with the rest. They are much angrier if they suspect that they do not have these qualities, either at all or not to any great degree, or are not thought to have them. 1379b When they think they greatly excel in the things they are mocked for, they don't care.

1379b καὶ τοῖς φίλοις μᾶλλον ἢ τοῖς μὴ φίλοις· οἴονται γὰρ προσήκειν μᾶλλον πάσχειν εὖ ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἢ μή. καὶ τοῖς εἰθισμένοις τιμᾶν ἢ φροντίζειν, ἐὰν πάλιν μὴ οὕτως ὁμιλῶσιν· καὶ γὰρ ὑπὸ τούτων οἴονται καταφρονεῖσθαι· ταὐτὰ γὰρ ἂν ποιεῖν. καὶ τοῖς μὴ ἀντιποιοῦσιν εὖ μηδὲ τὴν ἴσην ἀνταποδιδοῦσιν. καὶ τοῖς τἀναντία ποιοῦσιν αὐτοῖς, ἐὰν ἥττους ὦσιν. καταφρονεῖν γὰρ πάντες οἱ τοιοῦτοι φαίνονται, καὶ οἱ μὲν ὡς ἡττόνων οἱ δ' ὡς παρὰ ἡττόνων.

They are angrier with friends than with those who are not friends, since they think they have more right to good treatment from friends. They are angry with those who usually honor them or pay them attention, if they stop behaving that way. They think they are being despised by these people too, since otherwise they would be doing the same as before. They are angry with those who do not return a kindness or do not repay in equal measure, and with those who act against them, if these are their inferiors. All such people appear to despise them. Some treat them as inferiors, and others treat what they received as though it came from inferiors.

καὶ τοῖς ἐν μηδενὶ λόγῳ οὖσιν, ἄν τι ὀλιγωρῶσι, μᾶλλον· ὑπόκειται γὰρ ἡ ὀργὴ τῆς ὀλιγωρίας πρὸς τοὺς μὴ προσήκοντας, προσήκει δὲ τοῖς ἥττοσι μὴ ὀλιγωρεῖν· τοῖς δὲ φίλοις, ἐάν τε μὴ εὖ λέγωσιν ἢ ποιῶσιν, καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐὰν τἀναντία, καὶ ἐὰν μὴ αἰσθάνωνται δεομένων, ὥσπερ ὁ Ἀντιφῶντος Πλήξιππος τῷ Μελεάγρῳ· ὀλιγωρίας γὰρ τὸ μὴ αἰσθάνεσθαι σημεῖον· ὧν γὰρ φροντίζομεν, οὐ λανθάνει. καὶ τοῖς ἐπιχαίρουσι ταῖς ἀτυχίαις καὶ ὅλως εὐθυμουμένοις ἐν ταῖς αὐτῶν ἀτυχίαις· ἢ γὰρ ἐχθροῦ ἢ ὀλιγωροῦντος σημεῖον. καὶ τοῖς μὴ φροντίζουσιν ἐὰν λυπήσωσιν· διὸ καὶ τοῖς κακὰ ἀγγέλλουσιν ὀργίζονται. καὶ τοῖς ἢ ἀκούουσι περὶ αὐτῶν ἢ θεωμένοις τὰ αὐτῶν φαῦλα· ὅμοιοι γάρ εἰσιν ἢ ὀλιγωροῦσιν ἢ ἐχθροῖς· οἱ γὰρ

They are angrier with people of no account if these slight them at all. Anger at a slight is assumed to be directed at those who have no business slighting, and inferiors have no business slighting. With friends, they are angry if their friends do not speak well of them or treat them well, still more if they do the opposite, and also if they fail to notice that they need something, as Antiphon's Plexippus is angry with Meleager. Failing to notice is a sign of slighting, because what we care about does not escape us. They are angry with those who rejoice at their misfortunes, or are cheerful in the middle of their misfortunes, since

GREEK	ENGLISH
φίλοι συναλγοῦσιν, θεώμενοι δὲ τὰ οἰκεῖα φαῦλα πάντες ἀλγοῦσιν.	that is a sign either of an enemy or of someone who slights them. They are angry with those who don't care if they cause them pain, which is why people get angry with bearers of bad news. And they are angry with those who listen to talk about their failings or watch them, because such people are like those who slight them or like enemies. Friends share our pain, and everyone feels pain when looking at his own failings.[5]
ἔτι τοῖς ὀλιγωροῦσι πρὸς πέντε, πρὸς οὓς φιλοτιμοῦνται, [πρὸς] οὓς θαυμάζουσιν, ὑφ' ὧν βούλονται θαυμάζεσθαι, ἢ οὓς αἰσχύνονται, ἢ ἐν τοῖς αἰσχυνομένοις αὐτούς· ἄν τις ἐν τούτοις ὀλιγωρῇ, ὀργίζονται μᾶλλον. καὶ τοῖς εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ὀλιγωροῦσιν ὑπὲρ ὧν αὐτοῖς αἰσχρὸν μὴ βοηθεῖν, οἷον γονεῖς, τέκνα, γυναῖκας, ἀρχομένους. καὶ τοῖς χάριν μὴ ἀποδιδοῦσιν· παρὰ τὸ προσῆκον γὰρ ἡ ὀλιγωρία. καὶ τοῖς εἰρωνευομένοις πρὸς σπουδάζοντας· καταφρονητικὸν γὰρ ἡ εἰρωνεία. καὶ τοῖς τῶν ἄλλων εὐποιητικοῖς, ἐὰν μὴ καὶ αὐτῶν· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο καταφρονητικόν, τὸ μὴ ἀξιοῦν ὧν πάντας καὶ αὐτόν. ποιητικὸν δ' ὀργῆς καὶ ἡ λήθη, οἷον καὶ ἡ τῶν ὀνομάτων οὕτως οὖσα περὶ μικρόν· ὀλιγωρίας γὰρ δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ λήθη σημεῖον εἶναι· δι' ἀμέλειαν μὲν γὰρ ἡ λήθη γίγνεται, ἡ δ' ἀμέλεια ὀλιγωρία τίς ἐστιν.	Further, people are angry with those who slight them in front of five groups: their rivals, those they admire, those by whom they want to be admired, those before whom they feel shame, and those who feel shame before them. If anyone slights them in front of these, they are angrier. They are angry with those who slight what it would be shameful for them not to defend: parents, children, wives, subjects. They are angry with those who do not return a kindness, since such a slight goes against what is fitting. They are angry with those who use irony on people who are in earnest, since irony is contemptuous. They are angry with those who do good to others but not to them as well. This too is contemptuous: not thinking someone worthy of what one thinks everyone else worthy of. Forgetting also produces anger, even forgetting names, small as that is. Forgetting too seems to be a sign of slighting, because forgetting comes from neglect, and neglect is a kind of slighting.
1380a οἷς μὲν οὖν ὀργίζονται καὶ ὡς ἔχοντες καὶ διὰ ποῖα, ἅμα εἴρηται· δῆλον δ' ὅτι δέοι ἂν κατασκευάζειν τῷ λόγῳ τοιούτους οἵοι ὄντες ὀργίλως ἔχουσιν, καὶ τοὺς ἐναντίους τούτοις ἐνόχους ὄντας ἐφ' οἷς ὀργίζονται, καὶ τοιούτους οἵοις ὀργίζονται.	We have now covered, all together, with whom people get angry, in what state and for what reasons. Clearly one would need to use one's speech to put the hearers into the state of people who are angry, and to show one's opponents guilty of the things people get angry about, and as the sort of people they get angry with.

CHAPTER 3: CALMNESS

How people are calmed, toward whom, and in what state.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ ὀργίζεσθαι ἐναντίον τὸ πραΰνεσθαι καὶ ὀργὴ πραότητι, ληπτέον πῶς ἔχοντες πρᾶοί εἰσι καὶ πρὸς τίνας πράως ἔχουσι καὶ διὰ τίνων πραΰνονται. ἔστω δὴ πράυνσις κατάστασις καὶ ἠρέμησις ὀργῆς. εἰ οὖν ὀργίζονται τοῖς ὀλιγωροῦσιν, ὀλιγωρία δ' ἑκούσιον,	Since growing calm is the opposite of getting angry, and calmness the opposite of anger, we must consider in what state people are calm, toward whom they are calm, and by what means they are calmed. Let calming, then, be the settling

5 Antiphon the tragic poet wrote a *Meleager*, now lost. In the story Plexippus is Meleager's uncle.

GREEK

φανερὸν ὅτι καὶ τοῖς μηδὲν τούτων ποιοῦσιν ἢ ἀκουσίως ποιοῦσιν ἢ φαινομένοις τοιούτοις πρᾶοι εἰσίν. καὶ τοῖς τἀναντία ὧν ἐποίησαν βουλομένοις. καὶ ὅσοι καὶ αὐτοὶ εἰς αὐτοὺς τοιοῦτοι· οὐδεὶς γὰρ αὐτὸς αὐτοῦ δοκεῖ ὀλιγωρεῖν. καὶ τοῖς ὁμολογοῦσι καὶ μεταμελομένοις· ὡς γὰρ ἔχοντες δίκην τὸ λυπεῖσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς πεποιημένοις παύονται τῆς ὀργῆς. σημεῖον δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς τῶν οἰκετῶν κολάσεως· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ἀντιλέγοντας καὶ ἀρνουμένους μᾶλλον κολάζομεν, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς ὁμολογοῦντας δικαίως κολάζεσθαι παυόμεθα θυμούμενοι.

αἴτιον δ' ὅτι ἀναισχυντία τὸ τὰ φανερὰ ἀρνεῖσθαι, ἡ δ' ἀναισχυντία ὀλιγωρία καὶ καταφρόνησις· ὧν γοῦν πολὺ καταφρονοῦμεν, οὐκ αἰσχυνόμεθα. καὶ τοῖς ταπεινουμένοις πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ μὴ ἀντιλέγουσιν· φαίνονται γὰρ ὁμολογεῖν ἥττους εἶναι, οἱ δ' ἥττους φοβοῦνται, φοβούμενος δὲ οὐδεὶς ὀλιγωρεῖ. ὅτι δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ταπεινουμένους παύεται ἡ ὀργή, καὶ οἱ κύνες δηλοῦσιν οὐ δάκνοντες τοὺς καθίζοντας. καὶ τοῖς σπουδάζουσι πρὸς τοὺς σπουδάζοντας· δοκεῖ γὰρ σπουδάζεσθαι ἀλλ' οὐ καταφρονεῖσθαι. καὶ τοῖς μείζω κεχαρισμένοις. καὶ τοῖς δεομένοις καὶ παραιτουμένοις· ταπεινότεροι γάρ· καὶ τοῖς μὴ ὑβρισταῖς μηδὲ χλευασταῖς μηδ' ὀλιγώροις εἰς μηδένα ἢ μὴ εἰς χρηστοὺς μηδ' εἰς τοιούτους οἷοί περ αὐτοί. ὅλως δ' ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων δεῖ σκοπεῖν τὰ πραΰνοντα.

καὶ οὓς φοβοῦνται ἢ αἰσχύνονται, ἕως ἂν οὕτως ἔχωσιν, οὐκ ὀργίζονται· ἀδύνατον γὰρ ἅμα φοβεῖσθαι καὶ ὀργίζεσθαι. καὶ τοῖς δι' ὀργὴν ποιήσασιν ἢ οὐκ ὀργίζονται ἢ ἧττον ὀργίζονται· οὐ γὰρ δι' ὀλιγωρίαν φαίνονται πρᾶξαι· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ὀργιζόμενος ὀλιγωρεῖ· ἡ μὲν γὰρ ὀλιγωρία ἄλυπον, [1380b] ἡ δ' ὀργὴ μετὰ λύπης. καὶ τοῖς αἰσχυνομένοις αὐτούς. καὶ ἔχοντες δὲ ἐναντίως τῷ ὀργίζεσθαι δῆλον ὅτι πρᾶοι εἰσίν, οἷον ἐν παιδιᾷ, ἐν γέλωτι, ἐν ἑορτῇ, ἐν εὐημερίᾳ, ἐν κατορθώσει, ἐν πληρώσει, ὅλως ἐν ἀλυπίᾳ καὶ ἡδονῇ μὴ ὑβριστικῇ καὶ ἐν ἐλπίδι ἐπιεικεῖ. ἔτι κεχρονικότες καὶ μὴ ὑπόγυιοι τῇ ὀργῇ ὄντες· παύει γὰρ ὀργὴν ὁ χρόνος. παύει δὲ καὶ ἑτέρου ὀργὴν μείζω ἡ παρ' ἄλλου ληφθεῖσα τιμωρία πρότερον·

ENGLISH

and quieting of anger. If people get angry with those who slight them, and slighting is voluntary, then clearly they are calm toward those who do none of these things, or do them involuntarily, or appear to. They are also calm toward those who meant the opposite of what they did, and toward those who treat themselves the same way, since no one is thought to slight himself. They are calm toward those who admit their fault and are sorry. They take the offender's pain over what he has done as satisfaction, and so their anger stops. A sign of this can be seen in the punishment of slaves. We punish those who talk back and deny it more severely, but we stop being angry with those who admit that they deserve their punishment.

The reason is that denying what is obvious is shamelessness, and shamelessness is slighting and contempt. At any rate, we feel no shame before those we thoroughly despise. People are calm toward those who humble themselves before them and do not contradict them. Such people appear to admit that they are inferior, inferiors are afraid, and no one who is afraid slights. That anger stops toward those who humble themselves is shown even by dogs, which do not bite people who sit down. People are calm toward those who are serious with them when they are serious, since they feel taken seriously and not despised. They are calm toward those who have done them greater kindnesses, and toward those who beg and plead, since these are humbler. They are calm toward those who are not insolent, or mocking, or slighting toward anyone, or at least not toward good people or people like themselves. In general, one should look for what calms people by considering the opposites.

People are not angry with those they fear or feel shame before, as long as they feel that way, since it is impossible to be afraid and angry at the same time. With those who acted out of anger they are either not angry or less angry, because these do not appear to have acted out of slighting. No one who is angry slights, since slighting involves no pain, [1380b] whereas anger is accompanied by pain. People are also calm toward those who feel shame before them. Clearly people are calm when they are in a state opposite to anger: in play, in laughter, at a festival, in good times, in success, in fulfillment, and in general in freedom from pain,

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	διὸ εὖ Φιλοκράτης, εἰπόντος τινὸς ὀργιζομένου τοῦ δήμου τί οὐκ ἀπολογεῖ;	in pleasure that is not insolent, and in reasonable hope. Further, they are calm when time has passed and their anger is no longer fresh, because time stops anger. Revenge taken earlier on someone else also stops even greater anger against another person. That is why Philocrates answered well when the people were angry with him and someone asked, "Why don't you defend yourself?"[6]
1380b	"οὔπω γε," ἔφη. "ἀλλὰ πότε;" "ὅταν ἴδω ἄλλον διαβεβλημένον·" πρᾶοι γὰρ γίγνονται ὅταν εἰς ἄλλον τὴν ὀργὴν ἀναλώσωσιν, ὃ συνέβη ἐπὶ Ἐργοφίλου· μᾶλλον γὰρ χαλεπαίνοντες ἢ Καλλισθένει ἀφεῖσαν διὰ τὸ Καλλισθένους τῇ προτεραίᾳ καταγνῶναι θάνατον. καὶ ἐὰν ἕλωσιν. καὶ ἐὰν μεῖζον κακὸν πεπονθότες ὦσιν ἢ οἱ ὀργιζόμενοι ἂν ἔδρασαν· ὥσπερ εἰληφέναι γὰρ οἴονται τιμωρίαν. καὶ ἐὰν ἀδικεῖν οἴωνται αὐτοὶ καὶ δικαίως πάσχειν· [οὐ γίγνεται ἡ ὀργὴ πρὸς τὸ δίκαιον·] οὐ γὰρ ἔτι παρὰ τὸ προσῆκον νομίζουσι πάσχειν, ἡ δ' ὀργὴ τοῦτο ἦν. διὸ δεῖ τῷ λόγῳ προκολάζειν· ἀγανακτοῦσιν γὰρ ἧττον κολαζόμενοι καὶ οἱ δοῦλοι. καὶ ἐὰν μὴ αἰσθήσεσθαι οἴωνται ὅτι δι' αὐτοὺς καὶ ἀνθ' ὧν ἔπαθον· ἡ γὰρ ὀργὴ πρὸς τὸν καθ' ἕκαστον ἐστίν. δῆλον δ' ἐκ τοῦ ὁρισμοῦ.	"Not yet," he said. "When, then?" "When I see someone else slandered." People become calm once they have spent their anger on someone else, as happened with Ergophilus. They were more incensed with him than with Callisthenes, but they acquitted him because they had condemned Callisthenes to death the day before. People are calm if they have convicted the offender. They are calm if the offenders have suffered a greater harm than the angry people would have done to them, since they feel they have, as it were, had their revenge. They are calm if they think they themselves are in the wrong and are suffering justly. [Anger does not arise against what is just.] They no longer think they are suffering contrary to what is fitting, and that, we said, is what anger was. That is why one should punish in words first, since even slaves are less resentful when punished after that. People are also calm if they think the offender won't perceive that the punishment comes from them and is in return for what they suffered, because anger is directed at the individual. This is clear from the definition.[7]
	διὸ ὀρθῶς πεποίηται φάσθαι Ὀδυσσῆα πτολιπόρθιον, ὡς οὐ τετιμωρημένος εἰ μὴ ᾔσθετο καὶ ὑφ' ὅτου καὶ ἀνθ' ὅτου. ὥστε οὔτε τοῖς ἄλλοις ὅσοι μὴ αἰσθάνονται ὀργίζονται, οὔτε τοῖς τεθνεῶσιν ἔτι, ὡς πεπονθόσι τε τὸ ἔσχατον καὶ οὐκ ἀλγήσουσιν οὐδ' αἰσθησομένοις, οὗ οἱ ὀργιζόμενοι ἐφίενται. διὸ εὖ περὶ τοῦ Ἕκτορος ὁ ποιητής, παῦσαι βουλόμενος τὸν Ἀχιλλέα τῆς ὀργῆς τεθνεῶτος, κωφὴν γὰρ δὴ γαῖαν ἀεικίζει μενεαίνων. * * * δῆλον οὖν ὅτι τοῖς καταπραΰνειν βουλομένοις ἐκ τούτων τῶν τόπων λεκτέον, αὐτοὺς μὲν παρασκευάζουσι τοιούτους, οἷς δ' ὀργίζονται, ἢ φοβεροὺς ἢ αἰσχύνης ἀξίους ἢ κεχαρισμένους ἢ ἄκοντας ἢ ὑπεραλγοῦντας τοῖς πεποιημένοις.	That is why the poet was right to have Odysseus say, "Tell him it was Odysseus, sacker of cities," as though he would not have been avenged unless his victim had perceived both by whom and for what. So people are not angry with others who cannot perceive it. Nor are they angry any longer with the dead, since the dead have suffered the ultimate and will neither feel pain nor perceive, and that is what angry people aim at. That is why the poet spoke well about Hector, when he wanted to stop Achilles' anger at the dead man: "for it is senseless earth he outrages in his fury." * * * Clearly, then, those who want to calm people must argue from these topics. They must put the hearers themselves into this state, and present those the

6 Philocrates negotiated the peace of 346 BC with Philip of Macedon. He was later impeached and fled Athens.
7 Ergophilus and Callisthenes were Athenian generals tried in the 360s BC after military failures.

GREEK	ENGLISH
	hearers are angry with as people to be feared or felt shame before, or as having done them kindnesses, or as having acted unwillingly, or as being deeply pained at what they have done.[8]

CHAPTER 4: FRIENDSHIP AND ENMITY

Friendship and enmity are defined, with whom people love and whom they hate.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τίνας δὲ φιλοῦσι καὶ μισοῦσι, καὶ διὰ τί, * * * τὴν φιλίαν καὶ τὸ φιλεῖν ὁρισάμενοι λέγωμεν. ἔστω δὴ τὸ φιλεῖν τὸ βούλεσθαί τινι ἃ οἴεται ἀγαθά, ἐκείνου ἕνεκα ἀλλὰ μὴ αὐτοῦ, [1381a] καὶ τὸ κατὰ δύναμιν πρακτικὸν εἶναι τούτων. φίλος δέ ἐστιν ὁ φιλῶν καὶ ἀντιφιλούμενος. οἴονται δὲ φίλοι εἶναι οἱ οὕτως ἔχειν οἰόμενοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους. τούτων δὲ ὑποκειμένων ἀνάγκη φίλον εἶναι τὸν συνηδόμενον τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς καὶ συναλγοῦντα τοῖς λυπηροῖς μὴ διά τι ἕτερον ἀλλὰ δι' ἐκεῖνον. γιγνομένων γὰρ ὧν βούλονται χαίρουσιν πάντες, τῶν ἐναντίων δὲ λυποῦνται, ὥστε τῆς βουλήσεως σημεῖον αἱ λῦπαι καὶ αἱ ἡδοναί.	Whom people love and hate, and why, * * * let us discuss once we have defined friendship and loving. Let loving, then, be wishing for someone what you think good, for his sake and not your own, [1381a] and being disposed to bring those things about as far as you can. A friend is someone who loves and is loved in return. People consider themselves friends when they think they stand this way toward each other. Given these assumptions, a friend must be someone who shares your pleasure in good things and your pain in painful ones, not for some other reason but for your sake. Everyone is glad when what they wish for happens and pained at the opposite, so pains and pleasures are a sign of what someone wishes.
1381a καὶ οἷς δὴ ταὐτὰ ἀγαθὰ καὶ κακά, καὶ οἱ τοῖς αὐτοῖς φίλοι καὶ οἱ τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἐχθροί· ταὐτὰ γὰρ τούτοις βούλεσθαι ἀνάγκη, ὥστε ἅ περ αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλῳ βουλόμενος, τούτῳ φαίνεται φίλος εἶναι. καὶ τοὺς πεποιηκότας εὖ φιλοῦσιν ἢ αὐτοὺς ἢ ὧν κήδονται· ἢ εἰ μεγάλα, ἢ εἰ προθύμως, ἢ εἰ ἐν τοιούτοις καιροῖς, καὶ αὐτῶν ἕνεκα, ἢ οὓς ἂν οἴωνται βούλεσθαι ποιεῖν εὖ. καὶ τοὺς τῶν φίλων φίλους καὶ φιλοῦντας οὓς αὐτοὶ φιλοῦσιν. καὶ τοὺς φιλουμένους ὑπὸ τῶν φιλουμένων αὐτοῖς. καὶ τοὺς τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἐχθροὺς καὶ μισοῦντας οὓς αὐτοὶ μισοῦσιν, καὶ τοὺς μισουμένους ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτοῖς μισουμένων· πᾶσιν γὰρ τούτοις τὰ αὐτὰ ἀγαθὰ φαίνεται εἶναι καὶ αὐτοῖς, ὥστε βούλεσθαι τὰ αὐτοῖς ἀγαθά, ὅ περ ἦν τοῦ φίλου.	Friends, too, are those for whom the same things are good and bad, and those who are friends of the same people and enemies of the same people. They necessarily wish for the same things, so whoever wishes for another what he wishes for himself is evidently that person's friend. People also love those who have done good to them or to those they care about, if the benefits were great, or given eagerly, or at critical moments of that sort, and for their own sake. They also love those they think want to do them good. And their friends' friends, and those who love the people they themselves love. And those who are loved by the people they love. And those who are enemies of the same people, who hate those they themselves hate, and who are hated by those they hate. All these evidently take the same things to be good as they do themselves, and so wish what is good for them, which, as we said, is the mark of a friend.
ἔτι τοὺς εὐποιητικοὺς εἰς χρήματα καὶ εἰς σωτηρίαν· διὸ τοὺς ἐλευθερίους καὶ ἀνδρείους τιμῶσι καὶ τοὺς δικαίους. τοιούτους δ' ὑπολαμβάνουσι τοὺς μὴ ἀφ' ἑτέρων ζῶντας· τοιοῦτοι δ' οἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐργάζεσθαι, καὶ τούτων οἱ ἀπὸ	Further, people love those who are ready to do them good with money or with protection. That is why they honor the generous and the brave, and the just. They take as just those who do not live off

8 Homer, *Odyssey* 9.504, Odysseus taunting the blinded Cyclops; and *Iliad* 24.54, spoken by Apollo.

GREEK

γεωργίας καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οἱ αὐτουργοὶ μάλιστα. καὶ τοὺς σώφρονας, ὅτι οὐκ ἄδικοι. καὶ τοὺς ἀπράγμονας διὰ τὸ αὐτό. καὶ οἷς βουλόμεθα φίλοι εἶναι, ἂν φαίνωνται βουλόμενοι· εἰσὶ δὲ τοιοῦτοι οἵ τ' ἀγαθοὶ κατ' ἀρετὴν καὶ οἱ εὐδόκιμοι ἢ ἐν ἅπασιν ἢ ἐν τοῖς βελτίστοις ἢ ἐν τοῖς θαυμαζομένοις ὑφ' αὐτῶν ἢ ἐν τοῖς θαυμάζουσιν αὐτούς. ἔτι τοὺς ἡδεῖς συνδιαγαγεῖν καὶ συνδιημερεῦσαι· τοιοῦτοι δ' οἱ εὔκολοι καὶ μὴ ἐλεγκτικοὶ τῶν ἁμαρτανομένων καὶ μὴ φιλόνεικοι μηδὲ δυσέριδες· πάντες γὰρ οἱ τοιοῦτοι μαχητικοί, οἱ δὲ μαχόμενοι τἀναντία φαίνονται βούλεσθαι.

καὶ οἱ ἐπιδέξιοι καὶ τῷ παῖσαι καὶ τῷ ὑπομεῖναι· ἐπὶ ταὐτὸ γὰρ ἀμφότεροι σπεύδουσι τῷ πλησίον, δυνάμενοί τε σκώπτεσθαι καὶ ἐμμελῶς σκώπτοντες. καὶ τοὺς ἐπαινοῦντας τὰ ὑπάρχοντα ἀγαθά, καὶ τούτων ἃ μάλιστα φοβοῦνται μὴ ὑπάρχειν αὐτοῖς. 1381b καὶ τοὺς καθαρίους περὶ ὄψιν, περὶ ἀμπεχόνην, περὶ ὅλον τὸν βίον. καὶ τοὺς μὴ ὀνειδιστὰς μήτε τῶν ἁμαρτημάτων μήτε τῶν εὐεργετημάτων· ἀμφότεροι γὰρ ἐλεγκτικοί. καὶ τοὺς μὴ μνησικακοῦντας, μηδὲ φυλακτικοὺς τῶν ἐγκλημάτων, ἀλλ' εὐκαταλλάκτους· οἵους γὰρ ἂν ὑπολαμβάνωσιν εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, καὶ πρὸς αὐτοὺς οἴονται. καὶ τοὺς μὴ κακολόγους μηδὲ εἰδότας μήτε τὰ τῶν πλησίον κακὰ μήτε τὰ αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ τἀγαθά· ὁ γὰρ ἀγαθὸς ταῦτα δρᾷ. καὶ τοὺς μὴ ἀντιτείνοντας τοῖς ὀργιζομένοις ἢ σπουδάζουσιν· μαχητικοὶ γὰρ οἱ τοιοῦτοι.

1381b καὶ τοὺς πρὸς αὐτοὺς σπουδαίως πως ἔχοντας, οἷον θαυμάζοντας αὐτοὺς καὶ σπουδαίους ὑπολαμβάνοντας καὶ χαίροντας αὐτοῖς, καὶ ταῦτα μάλιστα πεπονθότας, περὶ ἃ μάλιστα βούλονται αὐτοὶ ἢ θαυμάζεσθαι ἢ σπουδαῖοι δοκεῖν εἶναι ἢ ἡδεῖς. καὶ τοὺς ὁμοίους καὶ ταὐτὰ ἐπιτηδεύοντας, ἐὰν μὴ παρενοχλῶσι μηδ' ἀπὸ ταὐτοῦ ᾖ ὁ βίος· γίγνεται γὰρ οὕτω καὶ κεραμεὺς κεραμεῖ. καὶ τοὺς τῶν αὐτῶν ἐπιθυμοῦντας, ὧν ἐνδέχεται ἅμα μετέχειν αὐτούς· εἰ δὲ μή, ταὐτὸ καὶ οὕτω συμβαίνει. καὶ πρὸς οὓς οὕτως ἔχουσιν ὥστε μὴ αἰσχύνεσθαι τὰ πρὸς δόξαν, μὴ καταφρονοῦντες. καὶ πρὸς οὓς αἰσχύνονται τὰ πρὸς ἀλήθειαν. καὶ πρὸς οὓς φιλοτιμοῦνται, ἢ ὑφ' ὧν ζηλοῦσθαι βούλονται καὶ μὴ φθονεῖσθαι, τούτους ἢ

ENGLISH

others. That means those who live by working, and among these especially farmers, and among the rest especially those who work with their own hands. And the moderate, because they do no wrong. And those who mind their own business, for the same reason. And those we want to be friends with, if they evidently want it too. Such are those who are good in excellence, and those who are well thought of by everyone, or by the best people, or by those we admire, or by those who admire us. Again, people love those who are pleasant to pass the time and spend the day with. Such are the good-tempered, who don't point out our mistakes and are neither contentious nor quarrelsome, since all contentious people are combative, and combatants evidently want the opposite of what we want.

And those who are deft both at making a joke and at taking one. Both kinds are after the same thing as the person they are with, since they can take teasing and they tease in good taste. And those who praise the good qualities we have, especially those we are most afraid we lack. 1381b And those who are neat in their appearance, their dress, their whole way of life. And those who don't throw in our faces either our mistakes or their own favors, since both are ways of censuring. And those who don't bear grudges or keep a record of grievances, but are easy to make up with. People suppose that others will treat them the way they see them treating everyone else. And those who don't speak ill of others, and who notice the good points of their neighbors and of ourselves rather than the bad, since that is what a good person does. And those who don't resist us when we are angry or in earnest, since people who do that are combative.

And those who take us seriously in some way: who admire us, think us people of worth, and enjoy our company. This applies especially when they feel this way about the very things for which we most want to be admired, or thought worthy, or found pleasant. And those like us, who pursue the same activities, provided they don't get in our way and don't make their living from the same source. Otherwise it becomes "potter against potter." And those who desire the same things as we do, if it is possible for both to share in them at once; if not, the same thing happens here too. And those with whom we are on such terms that we are not

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	φιλοῦσιν ἢ βούλονται φίλοι εἶναι. καὶ οἷς ἂν τἀγαθὰ συμπράττωσιν, ἐὰν μὴ μέλλῃ αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθαι μείζω κακά.	ashamed before them of things that are matters of mere opinion, provided this isn't from contempt. And those before whom we are ashamed of things that are truly shameful. And those we compete with for honor, or by whom we want to be emulated and not envied: these we either love or want to be friends with. And those we help to gain good things, unless greater harm is going to come to us from it.[9]
	καὶ τοῖς ὁμοίως καὶ τοὺς ἀπόντας καὶ τοὺς παρόντας φιλοῦσιν· διὸ καὶ τοὺς περὶ τοὺς τεθνεῶτας τοιούτους πάντες φιλοῦσιν. καὶ ὅλως τοὺς σφόδρα φιλοφίλους καὶ μὴ ἐγκαταλείποντας· μάλιστα γὰρ φιλοῦσι τῶν ἀγαθῶν τοὺς φιλεῖν ἀγαθούς. καὶ τοὺς μὴ πλαττομένους πρὸς αὐτούς· τοιοῦτοι δὲ οἱ καὶ τὰ φαῦλα τὰ ἑαυτῶν λέγοντες. εἴρηται γὰρ ὅτι πρὸς τοὺς φίλους τὰ πρὸς δόξαν οὐκ αἰσχυνόμεθα· εἰ οὖν ὁ αἰσχυνόμενος μὴ φιλεῖ, ὁ μὴ αἰσχυνόμενος φιλοῦντι ἔοικεν. καὶ τοὺς μὴ φοβερούς, καὶ οὓς θαρροῦμεν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ὃν φοβεῖται φιλεῖ. εἴδη δὲ φιλίας ἑταιρεία οἰκειότης συγγένεια καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα. ποιητικὰ δὲ φιλίας χάρις, καὶ τὸ μὴ δεηθέντος ποιῆσαι, καὶ τὸ ποιήσαντα μὴ δηλῶσαι· αὐτοῦ γὰρ οὕτως ἕνεκα φαίνεται καὶ οὐ διά τι ἕτερον.	And those who love their friends equally whether they are absent or present. That is why everyone loves those who are like this toward the dead. And, in general, those who are deeply devoted to their friends and don't abandon them, since of good people, the ones people love most are those who are good at loving. And those who don't put on an act with us. Such are those who tell us even their own weaknesses. We said that before our friends we are not ashamed of what is a matter of opinion. So if the one who feels shame does not love, the one who doesn't feel it seems to be one who loves. And those who are not frightening, and those we feel confident with, since no one loves someone he fears. Kinds of friendship are companionship, intimacy, kinship, and the like. What produces friendship is doing a kindness, doing it unasked, and not making a show of it once it is done. Then it seems to be done for the person's own sake and not for some other reason.
1382a	περὶ δ' ἔχθρας καὶ τοῦ μισεῖν φανερὸν ὡς ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων ἐστὶ θεωρεῖν. ποιητικὰ δὲ ἔχθρας ὀργή, ἐπηρεασμός, διαβολή. ὀργὴ μὲν οὖν ἐστιν ἐκ τῶν πρὸς αὐτόν, ἔχθρα δὲ καὶ ἄνευ τοῦ πρὸς αὐτόν· ἂν γὰρ ὑπολαμβάνωμεν εἶναι τοιόνδε, μισοῦμεν. καὶ ἡ μὲν ὀργὴ ἀεὶ περὶ τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα, οἷον Καλλίαν ἢ Σωκράτην, τὸ δὲ μῖσος καὶ πρὸς τὰ γένη· τὸν γὰρ κλέπτην μισεῖ καὶ τὸν συκοφάντην ἅπας. καὶ τὸ μὲν ἰατὸν χρόνῳ, τὸ δ' ἀνίατον. καὶ τὸ μὲν λύπης ἔφεσις, τὸ δὲ κακοῦ· αἴσθεσθαι γὰρ βούλεται ὁ ὀργιζόμενος, τῷ δ' οὐδὲν διαφέρει. ἔστι δὲ τὰ μὲν λυπηρὰ αἰσθητὰ πάντα, τὰ δὲ μάλιστα κακὰ ἥκιστα αἰσθητά, ἀδικία καὶ ἀφροσύνη· οὐδὲν γὰρ λυπεῖ ἡ παρουσία τῆς κακίας.	As for enmity and hating, clearly they can be studied from the opposites. What produces enmity is anger, spite, and slander. Anger arises from things done to oneself, but enmity can arise even without that. We hate someone simply if we suppose him to be a certain kind of person. Anger is always directed at individuals, such as Callias or Socrates, while hatred is directed at whole classes too: everyone hates a thief or a malicious prosecutor. Anger can be cured by time; hatred cannot. Anger aims at causing pain, hatred at causing harm. The angry person wants the other to feel it; to the one who hates, it makes no difference. Now, painful things can all be felt, while the greatest evils, injustice and folly, are the least felt, since the presence of vice causes no pain.
	καὶ τὸ μὲν μετὰ λύπης, τὸ δ' οὐ μετὰ λύπης· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ὀργιζόμενος λυπεῖται, ὁ δὲ μισῶν οὔ. καὶ ὁ μὲν πολλῶν	Anger is accompanied by pain, hatred is not. The angry person is pained, the one who hates is not.

9 An allusion to Hesiod, *Works and Days* 25: "potter is angry with potter, and builder with builder."

GREEK

ἂν γενομένων ἐλεήσειεν, ὁ δ' οὐδενός· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἀντιπαθεῖν βούλεται ᾧ ὀργίζεται, ὁ δὲ μὴ εἶναι. * * * φανερὸν οὖν ἐκ τούτων ὅτι ἐνδέχεται ἐχθροὺς καὶ φίλους καὶ ὄντας ἀποδεικνύναι καὶ μὴ ὄντας ποιεῖν καὶ φάσκοντας διαλύειν, καὶ δι' ὀργὴν ἢ δι' ἔχθραν ἀμφισβητοῦντας ἐφ' ὁπότερ' ἂν προαιρῆταί τις ἄγειν.

ENGLISH

And the angry person might feel pity once many things have happened, the one who hates under no circumstances. The one wants the object of his anger to suffer in return, the other wants him not to exist. * * * It is clear from all this that one can show people to be enemies or friends when they are, make them so when they are not, and refute them when they claim to be. When they are in dispute through anger or enmity, one can bring them over to whichever side one chooses.

CHAPTER 5: FEAR AND CONFIDENCE

What people fear, whom, and in what state; and the opposite, confidence.

GREEK

ποῖα δὲ φοβοῦνται καὶ τίνας καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες, ὦδ' ἔσται φανερόν. ἔστω δὴ φόβος λύπη τις ἢ ταραχὴ ἐκ φαντασίας μέλλοντος κακοῦ φθαρτικοῦ ἢ λυπηροῦ· οὐ γὰρ πάντα τὰ κακὰ φοβοῦνται, οἷον εἰ ἔσται ἄδικος ἢ βραδύς, ἀλλ' ὅσα λύπας μεγάλας ἢ φθορὰς δύναται, καὶ ταῦτα ἐὰν μὴ πόρρω ἀλλὰ σύνεγγυς φαίνηται ὥστε μέλλειν. τὰ γὰρ πόρρω σπόδρα οὐ φοβοῦνται· ἴσασι γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἀποθανοῦνται, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐκ ἐγγύς, οὐδὲν φροντίζουσιν. εἰ δὴ ὁ φόβος τοῦτ' ἐστίν, ἀνάγκη τὰ τοιαῦτα φοβερὰ εἶναι ὅσα φαίνεται δύναμιν ἔχειν μεγάλην τοῦ φθείρειν ἢ βλάπτειν βλάβας εἰς λύπην μεγάλην συντεινούσας. διὸ καὶ τὰ σημεῖα τῶν τοιούτων φοβερά· ἐγγὺς γὰρ φαίνεται τὸ φοβερόν· τοῦτο γάρ ἐστι κίνδυνος, φοβεροῦ πλησιασμός.

τοιαῦτα δὲ ἔχθρα τε καὶ ὀργὴ δυναμένων ποιεῖν τι· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι βούλονται, ὥστε ἐγγύς εἰσιν τοῦ ποιεῖν. καὶ ἀδικία δύναμιν ἔχουσα. τῷ προαιρεῖσθαι γὰρ ὁ ἄδικος ἄδικος. [1382b] καὶ ἀρετὴ ὑβριζομένη δύναμιν ἔχουσα· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι προαιρεῖται μὲν ὅταν ὑβρίζηται, ἀεί, δύναται δὲ νῦν. καὶ φόβος τῶν δυναμένων τι ποιῆσαι· ἐν παρασκευῇ γὰρ ἀνάγκη εἶναι καὶ τὸν τοιοῦτον. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ πολλοὶ χείρους καὶ ἥττους τοῦ κερδαίνειν καὶ δειλοὶ ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις, φοβερὸν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ τὸ ἐπ' ἄλλῳ αὐτὸν εἶναι, ὥστε οἱ συνειδότες πεποιηκότι δεινὸν φοβεροὶ ἢ κατειπεῖν ἢ ἐγκαταλιπεῖν. καὶ οἱ δυνάμενοι ἀδικεῖν τοῖς δυναμένοις ἀδικεῖσθαι· ὡς γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀδικοῦσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὅταν δύνωνται. καὶ οἱ ἠδικημένοι ἢ νομίζοντες ἀδικεῖσθαι· ἀεὶ γὰρ τηροῦσι καιρόν.

ENGLISH

What sorts of things people fear, whom they fear, and in what state of mind will become clear as follows. Let fear be a kind of pain or disturbance arising from the imagination of a future evil that is destructive or painful. People don't fear every evil, such as becoming unjust or slow-witted. They fear only those evils that can bring great pain or destruction, and these only if they appear not far off but close, so that they are about to happen. What is very far off people don't fear. Everyone knows he will die, but because it isn't near, people give it no thought. If this is what fear is, then frightening things must be whatever appears to have great power to destroy, or to do harm that leads to great pain. That is why even the signs of such things are frightening: the frightening thing seems near. For that is what danger is, the approach of something frightening.

Such things include the enmity and anger of people able to do something, since clearly they want to, and so they are close to doing it. Injustice that has power is another, since the unjust person is unjust by choice. [1382b] So is outraged excellence that has power. Clearly it always chooses to retaliate when it is subjected to insolence, and now it is able to. So is the fear felt by people able to do something, since such a person too must be ready to act. Most people are rather bad, unable to resist gain, and cowardly in danger. So it is generally frightening to be at someone else's mercy, and those who share the secret of a terrible deed are frightening to the one who did it, since they may inform on him or desert him. Those able to do wrong are frightening to those who can be

GREEK

ENGLISH

wronged, since as a rule people do wrong whenever they can. So are those who have been wronged, or think they have, since they are always watching for their chance.

1382b καὶ οἱ ἠδικηκότες, ἂν δύναμιν ἔχωσι, φοβεροί, δεδιότες τὸ ἀντιπαθεῖν· ὑπέκειτο γὰρ τὸ τοιοῦτο φοβερόν. καὶ οἱ τῶν αὐτῶν ἀνταγωνισταί, ὅσα μὴ ἐνδέχεται ἅμα ὑπάρχειν ἀμφοῖν· ἀεὶ γὰρ πολεμοῦσι πρὸς τοὺς τοιούτους. καὶ οἱ τοῖς κρείττοσιν αὐτῶν φοβεροί· μᾶλλον γὰρ ἂν δύναιντο βλάπτειν αὐτούς, εἰ καὶ τοὺς κρείττους. καὶ οὓς φοβοῦνται οἱ κρείττους αὐτῶν, διὰ ταὐτό. καὶ οἱ τοὺς κρείττους αὐτῶν ἀνῃρηκότες. καὶ οἱ τοῖς ἥττοσιν αὐτῶν ἐπιτιθέμενοι· ἢ γὰρ ἤδη φοβεροὶ ἢ αὐξηθέντες. καὶ τῶν ἠδικημένων καὶ ἐχθρῶν ἢ ἀντιπάλων οὐχ οἱ ὀξύθυμοι καὶ παρρησιαστικοί, ἀλλὰ οἱ πρᾶοι καὶ εἴρωνες καὶ πανοῦργοι· ἄδηλοι γὰρ εἰ ἐγγύς, ὥστε οὐδέποτε φανεροὶ ὅτι πόρρω. πάντα δὲ τὰ φοβερὰ φοβερώτερα ὅσα ἁμαρτάνουσιν ἐπανορθώσασθαι μὴ ἐνδέχεται, ἀλλ' ἢ ὅλως ἀδύνατα, ἢ μὴ ἐπ' αὐτοῖς ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις.

Those who have done wrong are frightening too, if they have power, since they fear retaliation, and we assumed that this sort of thing is frightening. So are rivals for the same things, where it is impossible for both to have them at once, since people are always at war with such rivals. So are those who are frightening to people stronger than ourselves, since if they can harm the stronger they could harm us all the more. So are those whom people stronger than us fear, for the same reason. So are those who have destroyed people stronger than us. So are those who attack people weaker than us: they are either frightening already or will be once they have grown stronger. Among those who have been wronged, and among enemies or rivals, it is not the hot-tempered and outspoken who are frightening, but the calm, the dissemblers, and the unscrupulous. With them you can't tell whether they are close to acting, so you can never be sure they are far from it. All frightening things are more frightening when a mistake cannot be put right. That may be because it is altogether impossible, or because it lies not in our power but in our opponents'.

καὶ ὧν βοήθειαι μή εἰσιν ἢ μὴ ῥᾴδιαι. ὡς δ' ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν, φοβερά ἐστιν ὅσα ἐφ' ἑτέρων γιγνόμενα ἢ μέλλοντα ἐλεεινά ἐστιν. τὰ μὲν οὖν φοβερὰ καὶ ἃ φοβοῦνται, σχεδὸν ὡς εἰπεῖν τὰ μέγιστα ταῦτ' ἐστίν, ὡς δὲ διακείμενοι αὐτοὶ φοβοῦνται, νῦν λέγωμεν. εἰ δή ἐστιν ὁ φόβος μετὰ προσδοκίας τινὸς τοῦ πείσεσθαί τι φθαρτικὸν πάθος, φανερὸν ὅτι οὐδεὶς φοβεῖται τῶν οἰομένων μηδὲν ἂν παθεῖν, οὐδὲ ταῦτα ἃ μὴ οἴονται παθεῖν οὐδὲ τούτους ὑφ' ὧν μὴ οἴονται, οὐδὲ τότε ὅτε μὴ οἴονται. ἀνάγκη τοίνυν φοβεῖσθαι τοὺς οἰομένους τι παθεῖν ἄν, καὶ τοὺς ὑπὸ τούτων καὶ ταῦτα καὶ τότε.

So are things against which there is no help, or none easily had. To put it simply, things are frightening when they would be pitiable if they happened, or were about to happen, to others. These, then, roughly speaking, are the chief things that are frightening and that people fear. Now let us say in what state of mind people themselves feel fear. If fear is accompanied by an expectation of suffering something destructive, it is clear that no one who thinks nothing could happen to him feels fear. Nor do people fear things they don't think they will suffer, or people they don't think will make them suffer, or at a time when they don't think so. Those who feel fear, then, must be those who think they might suffer something, from these particular people, these particular things, at this particular time.

οὐκ οἴονται δὲ παθεῖν ἂν οὔτε οἱ ἐν εὐτυχίαις μεγάλαις ὄντες καὶ δοκοῦντες, 1383a διὸ ὑβρισταὶ καὶ ὀλίγωροι καὶ θρασεῖς, (ποιεῖ δὲ τοιούτους πλοῦτος ἰσχὺς πολυφιλία δύναμις,) οὔτε οἱ ἤδη πεπονθέναι πάντα νομίζοντες τὰ

People don't think they might suffer when they are, and seem to be, in great good fortune. 1383a That is why such people are insolent, contemptuous, and reckless; wealth, strength, plenty of

GREEK

δεινὰ καὶ ἀπεψυγμένοι πρὸς τὸ μέλλον, ὥσπερ οἱ ἀποτυμπανιζόμενοι ἤδη· ἀλλὰ δεῖ τινα ἐλπίδα ὑπεῖναι σωτηρίας, περὶ οὗ ἀγωνιῶσιν. σημεῖον δέ· ὁ γὰρ φόβος βουλευτικοὺς ποιεῖ, καίτοι οὐδεὶς βουλεύεται περὶ τῶν ἀνελπίστων. ὥστε δεῖ τοιούτους παρασκευάζειν, ὅταν ᾖ βέλτιον τὸ φοβεῖσθαι αὐτούς, ὅτι τοιοῦτοί εἰσιν οἷοι παθεῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἄλλοι μείζους ἔπαθον· καὶ τοὺς τοιούτους δεικνύναι πάσχοντας ἢ πεπονθότας, καὶ ὑπὸ τοιούτων ὑφ' ὧν οὐκ ᾤοντο, καὶ ταῦτα καὶ τότε ὅτε οὐκ ᾤοντο.

1383a ἐπεὶ δὲ περὶ φόβου φανερὸν τί ἐστιν, καὶ τῶν φοβερῶν, καὶ ὡς ἔκαστοι ἔχοντες δεδίασι, φανερὸν ἐκ τούτων καὶ τὸ θαρρεῖν τί ἐστι, καὶ περὶ ποῖα θαρραλέοι εἰσὶ καὶ πῶς διακείμενοι θαρραλέοι εἰσίν· * * * τό τε γὰρ θάρσος τὸ ἐναντίον τῷ ⟨φόβῳ καὶ τὸ θαρραλέον τῷ⟩ φοβερῷ, ὥστε μετὰ φαντασίας ἡ ἐλπὶς τῶν σωτηρίων ὡς ἐγγὺς ὄντων, τῶν δὲ φοβερῶν ἢ μὴ ὄντων ἢ πόρρω ὄντων. ἔστι δὲ θαρραλέα τά τε δεινὰ πόρρω ὄντα καὶ τὰ θαρραλέα ἐγγύς. καὶ ἐπανορθώσεις ἂν ὦσι καὶ βοήθειαι πολλαὶ ἢ μεγάλαι ἢ ἄμφω, καὶ μήτε ἠδικημένοι μήτε ἠδικηκότες ὦσιν, ἀνταγωνισταί τε ἢ μὴ ὦσιν ὅλως, ἢ μὴ ἔχωσιν δύναμιν, ἢ δύναμιν ἔχοντες ὦσι φίλοι ἢ πεποιηκότες εὖ ἢ πεπονθότες.

ἢ ἂν πλείους ὦσιν οἷς ταὐτὰ συμφέρει, ἢ κρείττους, ἢ ἄμφω. αὐτοὶ δ' οὕτως ἔχοντες θαρραλέοι εἰσίν, ἂν πολλὰ κατωρθωκέναι οἴωνται καὶ μὴ πεπονθέναι, ἢ ἐὰν πολλάκις ἐληλυθότες εἰς τὰ δεινὰ καὶ διαπεφευγότες ὦσι· διχῶς γὰρ ἀπαθεῖς γίγνονται οἱ ἄνθρωποι, ἢ τῷ μὴ πεπειρᾶσθαι ἢ τῷ βοηθείας ἔχειν, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς κατὰ θάλατταν κινδύνοις οἵ τε ἄπειροι χειμῶνος θαρροῦσι τὰ μέλλοντα καὶ οἱ βοηθείας ἔχοντες διὰ τὴν ἐμπειρίαν. καὶ ὅταν τοῖς ὁμοίοις φοβερὸν μὴ ᾖ, μηδὲ τοῖς ἥττοσι καὶ ὧν κρείττους οἴονται εἶναι· οἴονται δὲ ὧν κεκρατήκασιν ἢ αὐτῶν ἢ τῶν κρειττόνων ἢ τῶν ὁμοίων.

ENGLISH

friends, and power make people like this. Nor do they think so when they believe they have already suffered every terrible thing and have grown numb to the future, like those already being put to death on the plank. There must be some lingering hope of rescue from what they are anxious about. Here is a sign of this: fear makes people deliberate, yet no one deliberates about hopeless matters. So when it is better that your audience feel fear, you must put them in the frame of mind of people who might suffer, since others greater than they have suffered. Show them people like themselves suffering or having suffered at the hands of those they never expected, suffering things they never expected, at a time they never expected.[10]

Since it is clear what fear is, what things are frightening, and in what state of mind people are afraid, it is also clear from this what confidence is, what people are confident about, and in what state of mind they are confident. * * * Confidence is the opposite of ⟨fear, and what inspires confidence the opposite of⟩ what is frightening. So confidence is a hope, accompanied by imagination, that the things that keep us safe are near, and that frightening things are either absent or far away. People are confident when dangers are far off and sources of confidence are near. They are also confident when there are ways of putting things right and means of help, many or great or both. They are confident when they have neither been wronged nor done wrong, and when they either have no rivals at all, or their rivals have no power, or, having power, are friends, or have done them good or received good from them.

They are confident, too, when those whose interests are the same as theirs are more numerous, or stronger, or both. As for their own state of mind, people are confident if they think they have often succeeded and not suffered, or if they have often faced danger and escaped. People become unaffected by danger in two ways: either by never having been tested, or by having resources to help them. In dangers at sea, those with no experience of storms are confident about what is coming, and so are those who have resources thanks to their experience. People are also confident when something holds no terror for their equals, or for their

10 An Athenian form of execution in which the condemned was fastened to a plank and left to die.

GREEK

ENGLISH

inferiors and those they think themselves superior to. They think themselves superior to those they have beaten, or whose superiors or equals they have beaten.

καὶ ἂν ὑπάρχειν αὐτοῖς οἴωνται πλείω καὶ μείζω, οἷς ὑπερέχοντες φοβεροί εἰσιν· 1383b ταῦτα δὲ ἐστὶ πλῆθος χρημάτων καὶ ἰσχὺς σωμάτων καὶ φίλων καὶ χώρας καὶ τῶν πρὸς πόλεμον παρασκευῶν, ἢ πασῶν ἢ τῶν μεγίστων. καὶ ἐὰν μὴ ἠδικηκότες ὦσιν μηδένα ἢ μὴ πολλοὺς ἢ μὴ τούτους παρ' ὧν φοβοῦνται. καὶ ὅλως ἂν πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς αὐτοῖς καλῶς ἔχῃ, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ σημείων καὶ λογίων· θαρραλέον γὰρ ἡ ὀργή, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖν ἀλλ' ἀδικεῖσθαι ὀργῆς ποιητικόν, τὸ δὲ θεῖον ὑπολαμβάνεται βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις. καὶ ὅταν ἐπιχειροῦντες ἢ μηδὲν ἂν παθεῖν μηδὲ πείσεσθαι ἢ κατορθώσειν οἴωνται. καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν φοβερῶν καὶ θαρραλέων εἴρηται·

They are also confident if they think they possess more, and greater, of the advantages that make people formidable when they have the upper hand in them. 1383b These are plenty of money, physical strength, strength in friends, in territory, and in military resources, either all of them or the most important. They are confident, too, if they have wronged no one, or not many, or not those they fear. And, in general, they are confident if things stand well with them in relation to the gods, especially as shown by signs and oracles. Anger inspires confidence; being wronged rather than doing wrong produces anger; and the divine is supposed to help those who are wronged. Finally, they are confident when, as they undertake something, they think they cannot come to harm and will not, or that they will succeed. So much for what is frightening and what inspires confidence.

CHAPTER 6: SHAME AND SHAMELESSNESS

What people are ashamed of, before whom, and in what state of mind.

GREEK

ENGLISH

1383b ποῖα δ' αἰσχύνονται καὶ ἀναισχυντοῦσιν, καὶ πρὸς τίνας καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες, ἐκ τῶνδε δῆλον. ἔστω δὴ αἰσχύνη λύπη τις ἢ ταραχὴ περὶ τὰ εἰς ἀδοξίαν φαινόμενα φέρειν τῶν κακῶν, ἢ παρόντων ἢ γεγονότων ἢ μελλόντων, ἡ δ' ἀναισχυντία ὀλιγωρία τις καὶ ἀπάθεια περὶ τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα. εἰ δή ἐστιν αἰσχύνη ἡ ὁρισθεῖσα, ἀνάγκη αἰσχύνεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις τῶν κακῶν ὅσα αἰσχρὰ δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ αὐτῷ ἢ ὧν φροντίζει· τοιαῦτα δ' ἐστὶν ὅσα ἀπὸ κακίας ἔργα ἐστίν, οἷον τὸ ἀποβαλεῖν ἀσπίδα ἢ φυγεῖν· ἀπὸ δειλίας γάρ. καὶ τὸ ἀποστερῆσαι παρακαταθήκην ἢ ἀδικῆσαι· ἀπὸ ἀδικίας γάρ. καὶ τὸ συγγενέσθαι οἷς οὐ δεῖ ἢ οὗ οὐ δεῖ ἢ ὅτε μὴ δεῖ· ἀπὸ ἀκολασίας γάρ.

What people are ashamed and unashamed of, before whom, and in what state of mind will be clear from what follows. Let shame be a kind of pain or disturbance concerning bad things, present, past, or future, that appear to bring disgrace. Let shamelessness be a kind of disregard and indifference concerning these same things. If shame is as defined, then one must feel shame at those bad things that seem disgraceful either to oneself or to those one cares about. Such are all actions that come from vice. Examples are throwing away one's shield or running away, which come from cowardice. Others are withholding a deposit or doing wrong, which come from injustice. Another is having sex with people one shouldn't, or where one shouldn't, or when one shouldn't, which comes from self-indulgence.

καὶ τὸ κερδαίνειν ἀπὸ μικρῶν ἢ αἰσχρῶν ἢ ἀπὸ ἀδυνάτων, οἷον πενήτων ἢ τεθνεώτων, ὅθεν καὶ ἡ παροιμία τὸ ἀπὸ νεκροῦ φέρειν· ἀπὸ αἰσχροκερδείας γὰρ καὶ ἀνελευθερίας. καὶ τὸ μὴ βοηθεῖν δυνάμενον εἰς χρήματα, ἢ ἧττον βοηθεῖν. καὶ τὸ βοηθεῖσθαι παρὰ τῶν

So is making a profit from petty or disgraceful things, or from the helpless, such as the poor or the dead. Hence the proverb "to rob even a corpse"; this comes from sordid greed and meanness. So is failing to help with money when one

GREEK

ENGLISH

ἧττον εὐπόρων. καὶ δανείζεσθαι ὅτε δόξει αἰτεῖν, καὶ αἰτεῖν ὅτε ἀπαιτεῖν, καὶ ἀπαιτεῖν ὅτε αἰτεῖν, καὶ ἐπαινεῖν ἵνα δόξῃ αἰτεῖν, καὶ τὸ ἀποτετυχηκότα μηδὲν ἧττον· πάντα γὰρ ἀνελευθερίας ταῦτα σημεῖα. τὸ δ' ἐπαινεῖν παρόντας κολακείας καὶ τὸ τἀγαθὰ μὲν ὑπερεπαινεῖν τὰ δὲ φαῦλα συναλείφειν, καὶ τὸ ὑπεραλγεῖν ἀλγοῦντι παρόντα, καὶ τἆλλα πάντα ὅσα τοιαῦτα· κολακείας γὰρ σημεῖα. καὶ τὸ μὴ ὑπομένειν πόνους οὓς οἱ πρεσβύτεροι [1384a] ἢ τρυφῶντες ἢ ἐν ἐξουσίᾳ μᾶλλον ὄντες ἢ ὅλως οἱ ἀδυνατώτεροι· πάντα γὰρ μαλακίας σημεῖα.

can, or helping less than one can, and accepting help from those less well off. So is borrowing when it will look like begging; begging when it will look like demanding repayment; demanding repayment when it will look like begging; praising so as to seem to be asking for something; and persisting all the same after being refused. All these are signs of meanness. Then there is praising people to their face, overpraising their good points and glossing over their faults, showing excessive grief in the presence of someone who grieves, and everything else of that kind, since these are signs of flattery. And there is failing to endure hardships that older people endure, [1384a] or the pampered, or those in greater power, or in general those less capable, since all these are signs of softness.

1384a καὶ τὸ ὑφ' ἑτέρου εὖ πάσχειν, καὶ τὸ πολλάκις, καὶ ὃ εὖ ἐποίησεν ὀνειδίζειν· μικροψυχίας γὰρ πάντα καὶ ταπεινότητος σημεῖα. καὶ τὸ περὶ αὐτοῦ πάντα λέγειν καὶ ἐπαγγέλλεσθαι, καὶ τὸ τἀλλότρια αὐτοῦ φάσκειν· ἀλαζονείας γάρ. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων ἑκάστης τῶν τοῦ ἤθους κακιῶν τὰ ἔργα καὶ τὰ σημεῖα καὶ τὰ ὅμοια αἰσχρὰ γὰρ καὶ ἀναίσχυντα. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις τὸ τῶν καλῶν ὧν πάντες μετέχουσιν ἢ οἱ ὅμοιοι πάντες ἢ οἱ πλεῖστοι, μὴ μετέχειν, — ὁμοίους δὲ λέγω ὁμοεθνεῖς, πολίτας, ἡλικιώτας, συγγενεῖς, ὅλως τοὺς ἐξ ἴσου· — αἰσχρὸν γὰρ ἤδη τὸ μὴ μετέχειν οἷον παιδεύσεως ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὁμοίως.

So is accepting benefits from another, and doing so often, and reproaching someone with the good one has done him. All these are signs of smallness of soul and abjectness. So is talking about oneself all the time and making grand claims about oneself, and claiming what others have done as one's own, which is boastfulness. The same goes for the actions, signs, and the like that come from each of the other vices of character, since they are disgraceful and shameless. In addition, it is shameful not to share in the fine things that everyone shares in, or all or most of one's peers. (By "peers" I mean people of the same nation, fellow citizens, people of the same age, relatives, in general those on an equal footing.) For it is already disgraceful not to share, for example, in education to the same degree, and likewise with other things.

πάντα δὲ ταῦτα μᾶλλον, ἂν δι' ἑαυτὸν φαίνηται· οὕτω γὰρ ἤδη ἀπὸ κακίας μᾶλλον, ἂν αὐτὸς ᾖ αἴτιος τῶν ὑπαρξάντων ἢ ὑπαρχόντων ἢ μελλόντων. πάσχοντες δὲ ἢ πεπονθότες ἢ πεισόμενοι τὰ τοιαῦτα αἰσχύνονται ὅσα εἰς ἀτιμίαν φέρει καὶ ὀνείδη· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶ τὰ εἰς ὑπηρετήσεις ἢ σώματος ἢ ἔργων αἰσχρῶν, ὧν ἐστιν τὸ ὑβρίζεσθαι. καὶ τὰ μὲν εἰς ἀκολασίαν καὶ ἑκόντα καὶ ἄκοντα· (τὰ δ' εἰς βίαν ἄκοντα)· ἀπὸ ἀνανδρίας γὰρ ἢ δειλίας ἡ ὑπομονὴ καὶ τὸ μὴ ἀμύνεσθαι. ἃ μὲν οὖν αἰσχύνονται, ταῦτ' ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα· ἐπεὶ δὲ περὶ ἀδοξίας φαντασία ἐστὶν ἡ αἰσχύνη, καὶ ταύτης αὐτῆς χάριν ἀλλὰ μὴ τῶν ἀποβαινόντων, οὐδεὶς δὲ τῆς δόξης φροντίζει ἀλλ' ἢ διὰ τοὺς δοξάζοντας, ἀνάγκη τούτους αἰσχύνεσθαι ὧν λόγον ἔχει.

All these are more shameful if they appear to be one's own fault. They then seem more to come from vice, if one is oneself responsible for what was, is, or will be the case. People are also ashamed when they are suffering, have suffered, or are going to suffer things that bring dishonor and reproach. These are things that involve putting one's body at another's service, or lending oneself to disgraceful acts, among them being subjected to insolent abuse. Those that involve self-indulgence are shameful whether one is willing or unwilling. Those that involve force are shameful when one is unwilling, since submitting and not defending oneself come from unmanliness or cowardice. These and things like them, then, are

GREEK

ENGLISH

what people are ashamed of. Shame is an imagining of disgrace, felt for the disgrace itself and not for its consequences. And no one cares about reputation except because of the people who hold the opinion. So it follows that one feels shame before those whose opinion one takes into account.

λόγον δὲ ἔχει τῶν θαυμαζόντων, καὶ οὓς θαυμάζει, καὶ ὑφ' ὧν βούλεται θαυμάζεσθαι, καὶ πρὸς οὓς φιλοτιμεῖται, καὶ ὧν μὴ καταφρονεῖ τῆς δόξης. θαυμάζεσθαι μὲν οὖν βούλονται ὑπὸ τούτων καὶ θαυμάζουσι τούτους ὅσοι τι ἔχουσιν ἀγαθὸν τῶν τιμίων, ἢ παρ' ὧν τυγχάνουσιν δεόμενοι σφόδρα τινὸς ὧν ἐκεῖνοι κύριοι, οἷον οἱ ἐρῶντες· φιλοτιμοῦνται δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ὁμοίους, φροντίζουσι δ' ὡς ἀληθευόντων τῶν φρονίμων, τοιοῦτοι δ' οἵ τε πρεσβύτεροι καὶ οἱ πεπαιδευμένοι. καὶ τὰ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς καὶ τὰ ἐν φανερῷ μᾶλλον· ὅθεν καὶ ἡ παροιμία τὸ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς εἶναι αἰδῶ. διὰ τοῦτο τοὺς ἀεὶ παρεσομένους μᾶλλον αἰσχύνονται καὶ τοὺς προσέχοντας αὐτοῖς, [1384b] διὰ τὸ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς ἀμφότερα. καὶ τοὺς μὴ περὶ ταὐτὰ ἐνόχους· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι τἀναντία δοκεῖ τούτοις.

One takes into account those who admire one, those one admires, those by whom one wants to be admired, those one competes with for honor, and those whose opinion one does not despise. People want to be admired by, and admire, those who have some good thing that is held in honor. They also want this from those who control something they badly need, as lovers do. They compete for honor with their equals. And they heed people of practical wisdom, as likely to speak the truth; such are older people and educated people. People feel more shame at things done before their eyes and in the open. Hence the proverb "shame dwells in the eyes." That is why people feel more shame before those who will always be around them and those who pay attention to them, [1384b] since in both cases they are under their eyes. They also feel shame before those who are not guilty of the same faults, since clearly these people take the opposite view.

1384b καὶ τοὺς μὴ συγγνωμονικοὺς τοῖς φαινομένοις ἁμαρτάνειν· ἃ γάρ τις αὐτὸς ποιεῖ, ταῦτα λέγεται τοῖς πέλας οὐ νεμεσᾶν, ὥστε ἃ μὴ ποιεῖ, δῆλον ὅτι νεμεσᾷ. καὶ τοὺς ἐξαγγελτικοὺς πολλοῖς· οὐδὲν γὰρ διαφέρει μὴ δοκεῖν ἢ μὴ ἐξαγγέλλειν. ἐξαγγελτικοὶ δὲ οἵ τε ἠδικημένοι διὰ τὸ παρατηρεῖν καὶ οἱ κακολόγοι· εἴπερ γὰρ καὶ τοὺς μὴ ἁμαρτάνοντας, ἔτι μᾶλλον τοὺς ἁμαρτάνοντας. καὶ οἷς ἡ διατριβὴ ἐπὶ ταῖς τῶν πέλας ἁμαρτίαις, οἷον χλευασταῖς καὶ κωμῳδοποιοῖς· κακολόγοι γάρ πως οὗτοι καὶ ἐξαγγελτικοί. καὶ ἐν οἷς μηδὲν ἀποτετυχήκασιν· ὥσπερ γὰρ θαυμαζόμενοι διάκεινται. διὸ καὶ τοὺς πρῶτον δεηθέντας τι αἰσχύνονται ὡς οὐδέν πω ἠδοξηκότες ἐν αὐτοῖς· τοιοῦτοι δὲ οἱ ἄρτι βουλόμενοι φίλοι εἶναι· (τὰ γὰρ βέλτιστα τεθέανται.

They feel shame, too, before those who are unforgiving toward people who appear to do wrong. It is said that people don't feel indignation at their neighbors for what they do themselves, so evidently they do feel indignation at what they don't do. And before those who tell tales to many people, since it makes no difference whether a thing isn't known or simply isn't reported. Tale-tellers include those who have been wronged, because they keep an eye on us, and slanderers. If they slander even people who do no wrong, they will slander all the more those who do. Shame is also felt before those who spend their time on other people's faults, like mockers and comic poets, since these are in a way slanderers and tale-tellers. It is felt before those in whose eyes one has never yet failed, since one is in the position of being admired. That is why people feel shame before those who ask them for something for the first time, since they have not yet lost face with them in any way. Such are those who have just begun wanting to be friends (they have seen only our best side;

GREEK

διὸ εὖ ἔχει ἡ τοῦ Εὐριπίδου ἀπόκρισις πρὸς τοὺς Συρακοσίους) καὶ τῶν πάλαι γνωρίμων οἱ μηδὲν συνειδότες. αἰσχύνονται δὲ οὐ μόνον αὐτὰ τὰ ῥηθέντα αἰσχυντηλὰ ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ σημεῖα, οἷον οὐ μόνον ἀφροδισιάζοντες ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ σημεῖα αὐτοῦ. καὶ οὐ μόνον ποιοῦντες τὰ αἰσχρά, ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγοντες. ὁμοίως δὲ οὐ τοὺς εἰρημένους μόνον αἰσχύνονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς δηλώσοντας αὐτοῖς, οἷον θεράποντας καὶ φίλους τούτων. ὅλως δὲ οὐκ αἰσχύνονται οὗθ' ὧν πολὺ καταφρονοῦσι τῆς δόξης τοῦ ἀληθεύειν (οὐδεὶς γὰρ παιδία καὶ θηρία αἰσχύνεται) οὔτε ταὐτὰ τοὺς γνωρίμους καὶ τοὺς ἀγνῶτας, ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν γνωρίμους τὰ πρὸς ἀλήθειαν δοκοῦντα τοὺς δ' ἄπωθεν τὰ πρὸς τὸν νόμον. αὐτοὶ δὲ ὧδε διακείμενοι αἰσχυνθεῖεν ἄν, πρῶτον μὲν εἰ ὑπάρχοιεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἔχοντες οὕτως τινὲς οἵους ἔφαμεν εἶναι οὓς αἰσχύνονται.

ENGLISH

that is why Euripides' reply to the Syracusans was apt). So too are old acquaintances who know nothing against us. People are ashamed not only of the shameful things themselves, but also of their signs: not only of having sex, for example, but also of the signs of it. They are ashamed not only of doing disgraceful things, but also of talking about them. Likewise, they feel shame not only before the people mentioned, but also before those who will report to them, such as their servants and friends. In general, people feel no shame before those whose opinion, as to its truth, they utterly despise; no one feels shame before small children or animals. Nor are they ashamed of the same things before acquaintances and strangers. Before acquaintances they are ashamed of what seems truly shameful, before outsiders of what is shameful by convention. As for their own state of mind, people would feel shame, first, if there are people related to them in the way we described those before whom they feel shame.[11]

ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι ἢ θαυμαζόμενοι ἢ θαυμάζοντες ἢ ὑφ' ὧν βούλονται θαυμάζεσθαι, ἢ ὧν δέονταί τινα χρείαν ὧν μὴ τεύξονται ἄδοξοι ὄντες, καὶ οὗτοι ἢ ὁρῶντες, ὥσπερ Κυδίας περὶ τῆς Σάμου κληρουχίας ἐδημηγόρησεν· ἠξίου γὰρ ὑπολαβεῖν τοὺς Ἀθηναίους περιεστάναι κύκλῳ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὡς ὁρῶντας καὶ μὴ μόνον ἀκουσομένους ἃ ἂν ψηφίσωνται, ἢ ἂν πλησίον ὦσιν οἱ τοιοῦτοι, ἢ μέλλωσιν αἰσθήσεσθαι. διὸ καὶ ὁρᾶσθαι ἀτυχοῦντες ὑπὸ τῶν ζηλούντων ποτὲ οὐ βούλονται· 1385a θαυμασταὶ γὰρ οἱ ζηλωταί. καὶ ὅταν ἔχωσιν ἃ καταισχύνουσιν ἔργα καὶ πράγματα ἢ αὐτῶν ἢ προγόνων ἢ ἄλλων τινῶν πρὸς οὓς ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς ἀγχιστεία τις.

These, as we said, were those they admire, or who admire them, or by whom they want to be admired, or from whom they need some service they won't get if they are in disgrace. And these people are either watching (as in the speech Cydias made to the assembly about the settlement on Samos, where he asked the Athenians to imagine the Greeks standing in a circle around them, seeing, and not merely going to hear about, whatever they voted), or near, or going to find out. That is why people in misfortune don't want to be seen by those who once emulated them, 1385a since those who emulate are admirers. People also feel shame when they have deeds and circumstances to their name that disgrace them. These may be their own, or their ancestors', or those of others with whom they have some close tie.[12]

1385a καὶ ὅλως ὑπὲρ ὧν αἰσχύνονται αὐτοί· εἰσὶ δ' οὗτοι οἱ εἰρημένοι καὶ οἱ εἰς αὐτοὺς ἀναφερόμενοι, ἢ ὧν διδάσκαλοι ἢ σύμβουλοι γεγόνασιν, ἢ ἐὰν ὦσιν ἕτεροι ὅμοιοι, πρὸς οὓς φιλοτιμοῦνται· πολλὰ γὰρ αἰσχυνόμενοι διὰ τοὺς τοιούτους καὶ ποιοῦσι καὶ οὐ ποιοῦσιν. καὶ μέλλοντες ὁρᾶσθαι καὶ ἐν φανερῷ ἀναστρέφεσθαι τοῖς συνειδόσιν αἰσχυντηλοὶ μᾶλλον εἰσίν. ὅθεν καὶ Ἀντιφῶν

And, in general, those of people for whom they themselves feel shame. These are the people mentioned, and those whose conduct reflects on them: those whose teachers or advisers they have been, or, if there are others like themselves, those with whom they compete for honor. Out of shame be-

11 An ancient commentator reports that Euripides, as an Athenian envoy, told the Syracusans they should grant his request if only because Athens was asking for the first time.

12 In 365 BC Athens expelled the Samians and sent Athenian settlers to the island; Cydias, an Athenian orator, apparently spoke against the plan.

GREEK

ὁ ποιητὴς μέλλων ἀποτυμπανίζεσθαι ὑπὸ Διονυσίου εἶπεν, ἰδὼν τοὺς συναποθνήσκειν μέλλοντας ἐγκαλυπτομένους ὡς ἤεσαν διὰ τῶν πυλῶν, "τί ἐγκαλύπτεσθε" ἔφη· "ἢ μὴ αὔριόν τις ὑμᾶς ἴδῃ τούτων;" περὶ μὲν οὖν αἰσχύνης ταῦτα· περὶ δὲ ἀναισχυντίας δῆλον ὡς ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων εὐπορήσομεν.

ENGLISH

fore such people they do many things and refrain from many. And they are more prone to shame when they are going to be seen by, and move about in public among, those who know. That is why the poet Antiphon, when he was about to be put to death on the plank by Dionysius, spoke as he did. He saw those who were to die with him covering their faces as they went through the gates. "Why are you covering your faces?" he said. "Is it for fear one of these people will see you tomorrow?" So much for shame. On shamelessness, clearly we shall be well supplied from the opposites.[13]

CHAPTER 7: KINDNESS

Kindness is defined as help given to someone in need, for that person's sake.

GREEK

τίσιν δὲ χάριν ἔχουσι καὶ ἐπὶ τίσιν καὶ πῶς αὐτοὶ ἔχοντες, ὁρισαμένοις τὴν χάριν δῆλον ἔσται. ἔστω δὴ χάρις, καθ' ἣν ὁ ἔχων λέγεται χάριν ἔχειν, ὑπουργία δεομένῳ μὴ ἀντί τινος, μηδ' ἵνα τι αὐτῷ τῷ ὑπουργοῦντι ἀλλ' ἵνα τι ἐκείνῳ· μεγάλη δὲ ἂν ᾖ σφόδρα δεομένῳ, ἢ μεγάλων καὶ χαλεπῶν, ἢ ἐν καιροῖς τοιούτοις, ἢ μόνος ἢ πρῶτος ἢ μάλιστα. δεήσεις δὲ εἰσὶν αἱ ὀρέξεις, καὶ τούτων μάλιστα αἱ μετὰ λύπης τοῦ μὴ γιγνομένου. τοιαῦται δὲ αἱ ἐπιθυμίαι, οἷον ἔρως. καὶ αἱ ἐν ταῖς τοῦ σώματος κακώσεσιν καὶ ἐν κινδύνοις· καὶ γὰρ ὁ κινδυνεύων ἐπιθυμεῖ καὶ ὁ λυπούμενος. διὸ οἱ ἐν πενίᾳ παριστάμενοι καὶ φυγαῖς, κἂν μικρὰ ὑπηρετήσωσιν, διὰ τὸ μέγεθος τῆς δεήσεως καὶ τὸν καιρὸν κεχαρισμένοι, οἷον ὁ ἐν Λυκείῳ τὸν φορμὸν δούς.

ENGLISH

Toward whom people feel kindness, for what, and in what state of mind will be clear once we have defined kindness. Kindness, in the sense in which someone who has it is said to "be kind," is helpfulness toward someone in need. It is not in return for anything, nor for the benefit of the helper, but for the benefit of the one helped. It is a great kindness if the person is in great need, or the things needed are great and hard to come by, or the moment is critical. It is also great if the helper is the only one, or the first, or the one who helps most. Needs are desires, and especially those accompanied by pain when the thing does not come about. Such are the appetites, love for instance. So are the desires felt in bodily suffering and in dangers, since someone in danger feels desire, and so does someone in pain. That is why those who stand by people in poverty or exile have done a kindness, even if the service is small, because of the greatness of the need and the occasion. An example is the man in the Lyceum who gave the mat.[14]

GREEK

ἀνάγκη οὖν μάλιστα μὲν εἰς ταὐτὰ ἔχειν τὴν ὑπουργίαν, εἰ δὲ μή, εἰς ἴσα ἢ μείζω, ὥστε ἐπεὶ φανερὸν καὶ οἷς καὶ ἐφ' οἷς γίγνεται χάρις καὶ πῶς ἔχουσι, δῆλον ὅτι ἐκ τούτων παρασκευαστέον, τοὺς μὲν δεικνύντας ἢ ὄντας ἢ γεγενημένους ἐν τοιαύτῃ λύπῃ καὶ δεήσει, τοὺς δὲ ὑπηρετηκότας ἐν τοιαύτῃ χρείᾳ τοιοῦτόν τι ἢ ὑπηρετοῦντας. φανερὸν δὲ καὶ ὅθεν ἀφαιρεῖσθαι

ENGLISH

The help, then, must above all meet that same need, or failing that, an equal or greater one. It is clear to whom kindness is shown, for what, and in what state of mind. So it is clear that the speaker must work from these points. On one side, he shows that people are or have been in such pain

13 Antiphon the tragic poet was put to death by Dionysius I of Syracuse.
14 The story is unknown. The Lyceum was a gymnasium outside Athens, later the home of Aristotle's school; the mat was a rush mat for sleeping on.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐνδέχεται τὴν χάριν καὶ ποιεῖν ἀχαρίστους· 1385b ἢ γὰρ ὅτι αὐτῶν ἕνεκα ὑπηρετοῦσιν ἢ ὑπηρέτησαν (τοῦτο δ' οὐκ ἦν χάρις) ἢ ὅτι ἀπὸ τύχης συνέπεσεν ἢ συνηναγκάσθησαν, ἢ ὅτι ἀπέδωκαν ἀλλ' οὐκ ἔδωκαν, εἴτε εἰδὼς εἴτε μὴ εἰδώς· ἀμφοτέρως γὰρ τὸ ἀντί τινος, ὥστε οὐδ' οὕτως ἂν εἴη χάρις.	and need. On the other, he shows that people have rendered, or are rendering, such a service in such a need. It is also clear how one can remove the kindness and make people out to be unkind. 1385b One can argue that they are helping, or helped, for their own sake (and that, we said, was not kindness), or that it happened by chance, or that they were forced into it. Or one can argue that they were paying back rather than giving, whether knowingly or not. Either way it is something in return for something, so in this case too it would not be kindness.
1385b καὶ περὶ ἁπάσας τὰς κατηγορίας σκεπτέον· ἡ γὰρ χάρις ἐστὶν ἢ ὅτι τοδὶ ἢ τοσόνδε ἢ τοιόνδε ἢ πότε ἢ ποῦ. σημεῖον δὲ εἰ ἔλαττον μὴ ὑπηρέτησαν, καὶ εἰ τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἢ ταὐτὰ ἢ ἴσα ἢ μείζω· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι οὐδὲ ταῦτα ἡμῶν ἕνεκα. ἢ εἰ φαῦλα εἰδώς· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ὁμολογεῖ δεῖσθαι φαύλων.	One should also consider the matter under all the categories. Something is a kindness because it is this particular thing, or of this quantity, or of this quality, or at this time, or in this place. It is a sign of unkindness if they did not render a smaller service. So is rendering the same, equal, or greater services to our enemies, since clearly these services too were not for our sake. So is knowingly giving something worthless, since no one admits to needing worthless things.

CHAPTER 8: PITY

What is pitiable, whom people pity, and in what state.

GREEK	ENGLISH
καὶ περὶ μὲν τοῦ χαρίζεσθαι καὶ ἀχαριστεῖν εἴρηται· ποῖα δ' ἐλεεινὰ καὶ τίνας ἐλεοῦσι, καὶ πῶς αὐτοὶ ἔχοντες, λέγωμεν. ἔστω δὴ ἔλεος λύπη τις ἐπὶ φαινομένῳ κακῷ φθαρτικῷ ἢ λυπηρῷ τοῦ ἀναξίου τυγχάνειν, ὃ κἂν αὐτὸς προσδοκήσειεν ἂν παθεῖν ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ τινα, καὶ τοῦτο ὅταν πλησίον φαίνηται· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἀνάγκη τὸν μέλλοντα ἐλεήσειν ὑπάρχειν τοιοῦτον οἷον οἴεσθαι παθεῖν ἄν τι κακὸν ἢ αὐτὸν ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ τινα, καὶ τοιοῦτο κακὸν οἷον εἴρηται ἐν τῷ ὅρῳ ἢ ὅμοιον ἢ παραπλήσιον, διὸ οὔτε οἱ παντελῶς ἀπολωλότες ἐλεοῦσιν (οὐδὲν γὰρ ἂν ἔτι παθεῖν οἴονται· πεπόνθασι γάρ) οὔτε οἱ ὑπερευδαιμονεῖν οἰόμενοι, ἀλλ' ὑβρίζουσιν· εἰ γὰρ ἅπαντα οἴονται ὑπάρχειν τἀγαθά, δῆλον ὅτι καὶ τὸ μὴ ἐνδέχεσθαι παθεῖν μηδὲν κακόν· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο τῶν ἀγαθῶν.	So much for being kind and unkind. Let us now say what things are pitiable, whom people pity, and in what state of mind. Let pity be a kind of pain at an apparent evil, destructive or painful, befalling someone who does not deserve it. It is an evil that one might expect to suffer oneself, or one of one's own might, and this when it appears near. Clearly someone who is going to feel pity must be the sort of person who thinks that he, or one of his own, might suffer some evil. It must be an evil of the kind stated in the definition, or one like it or close to it. That is why the utterly ruined don't feel pity: they think they can suffer nothing more, since they have suffered already. Nor do those who think themselves supremely happy; they are insolent instead. If they think they have every good thing, clearly they think they have this one too: being unable to suffer any evil, for this too is one of the goods.
εἰσὶ δὲ τοιοῦτοι οἷοι νομίζειν παθεῖν ἂν οἵ τε πεπονθότες ἤδη καὶ διαπεφευγότες, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι καὶ διὰ τὸ φρονεῖν καὶ δι' ἐμπειρίαν, καὶ οἱ ἀσθενεῖς, καὶ οἱ	Those inclined to think they might suffer include people who have already suffered and escaped. They include older people, because of their good

GREEK

δειλότεροι μᾶλλον, καὶ οἱ πεπαιδευμένοι· εὐλόγιστοι γάρ. καὶ οἷς ὑπάρχουσι γονεῖς ἢ τέκνα ἢ γυναῖκες· αὐτοῦ τε γὰρ ταῦτα, καὶ οἷα παθεῖν τὰ εἰρημένα. καὶ οἱ μήτε ἐν ἀνδρίας πάθει ὄντες, οἷον ἐν ὀργῇ ἢ θάρρει (ἀλόγιστα γὰρ τοῦ ἐσομένου ταῦτα) μήτε ἐν ὑβριστικῇ διαθέσει (καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι ἀλόγιστοι τοῦ πείσεσθαί τι) μήτ' αὖ φοβούμενοι σφόδρα· οὐ γὰρ ἐλεοῦσιν οἱ ἐκπεπληγμένοι διὰ τὸ εἶναι πρὸς τῷ οἰκείῳ πάθει, ἀλλ' οἱ μεταξὺ τούτων. κἂν οἴωνταί τινας εἶναι τῶν ἐπιεικῶν· ὁ γὰρ μηδένα οἰόμενος πάντας οἰήσεται ἀξίους εἶναι κακοῦ.

1386a καὶ ὅλως δὴ ὅταν ἔχῃ οὕτως ὥστ' ἀναμνησθῆναι τοιαῦτα συμβεβηκότα ἢ αὐτῷ ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ, ἢ ἐλπίσαι γενέσθαι αὐτῷ ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ. ὡς μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες ἐλεοῦσιν, εἴρηται, ἃ δ' ἐλεοῦσιν, ἐκ τοῦ ὁρισμοῦ δῆλον· ὅσα τε γὰρ τῶν λυπηρῶν καὶ ὀδυνηρῶν φθαρτικά, πάντα ἐλεεινά, καὶ ὅσα ἀναιρετικά, καὶ ὅσων ἡ τύχη αἰτία κακῶν μέγεθος ἐχόντων. ἔστι δὲ ὀδυνηρὰ μὲν καὶ φθαρτικὰ θάνατοι καὶ αἰκίαι σωμάτων καὶ κακώσεις καὶ γῆρας καὶ νόσοι καὶ τροφῆς ἔνδεια, ὧν δ' ἡ τύχη αἰτία κακῶν, ἀφιλία, ὀλιγοφιλία (διὸ καὶ τὸ διασπᾶσθαι ἀπὸ φίλων καὶ συνήθων ἐλεεινόν), αἶσχος, ἀσθένεια, ἀναπηρία, καὶ τὸ ὅθεν προσῆκεν ἀγαθόν τι ὑπάρξαι, κακόν τι συμβῆναι. καὶ τὸ πολλάκις τοιοῦτον.

καὶ τὸ πεπονθότος γενέσθαι τι ἀγαθόν, οἷον Διοπείθει τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως τεθνεῶτι κατεπέμφθη, καὶ τὸ ἢ μηδὲν γεγενῆσθαι ἀγαθόν, ἢ γενομένων μὴ εἶναι ἀπόλαυσιν. ἐφ' οἷς μὲν οὖν ἐλεοῦσι, ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτά ἐστιν· ἐλεοῦσι δὲ τούς τε γνωρίμους, ἂν μὴ σφόδρα ἐγγὺς ὦσιν οἰκειότητι· περὶ δὲ τούτους ὥσπερ περὶ αὐτοὺς μέλλοντας ἔχουσιν. διὸ καὶ ὁ Ἄμασις ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ υἱεῖ ἀγομένῳ ἐπὶ τὸ ἀποθανεῖν οὐκ ἐδάκρυσεν, ὡς φασίν, ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ φίλῳ προσαιτοῦντι· τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ ἐλεεινόν, ἐκεῖνο δὲ δεινόν· τὸ γὰρ δεινὸν ἕτερον τοῦ ἐλεεινοῦ καὶ ἐκκρουστικὸν τοῦ ἐλέου καὶ πολλάκις τῷ ἐναντίῳ χρήσιμον· ⟨οὐ γὰρ⟩ ἔτι ἐλεοῦσιν ἐγγὺς αὐτοῖς τοῦ δεινοῦ ὄντος.

ENGLISH

sense and their experience. They also include the weak, those who are rather cowardly, and educated people, since they reason well. Others are those who have parents, children, or wives, since these are one's own and liable to suffer the evils mentioned. People feel pity when they are not in an emotion of courage, such as anger or confidence, since these take no account of what is to come. Nor can they be in an insolent frame of mind, since such people too take no account of the chance of suffering anything. Nor, on the other hand, can they be in great fear. The terrified do not pity, because they are absorbed in their own experience; it is those in between who pity. People also pity if they think some people are decent. Someone who thinks no one is will think everyone deserves misfortune.

And in general, people feel pity when they are in a state to remember such things having happened to themselves or their own, or to expect them to happen to themselves or their own. That covers the state people are in when they feel pity. What they pity is clear from the definition. All painful and distressing things that are destructive are pitiable, and all that are ruinous, and all evils of some magnitude for which chance is responsible. The distressing and destructive ones are deaths, bodily torments and injuries, old age, diseases, and lack of food. The evils for which chance is responsible are friendlessness and having few friends (which is why being torn away from friends and companions is pitiable), ugliness, weakness, deformity, and when something bad comes from a quarter where something good ought to have come. And when this happens often.

Also when some good comes after one has already suffered, as when the gifts from the king were sent down to Diopeithes after he was dead. And when no good has come at all, or when it has come there is no enjoying it. These, then, and things like them, are what people pity. They pity people they know, provided they are not very closely related to them; toward those who are, they feel as they would about themselves in danger. That is why Amasis, so they say, did not weep when his son was led away to be executed, but did weep for his friend who was begging. The second was pitiable, the first terrible. For the terrible is different from the pitiable: it drives out pity and is often useful

GREEK	ENGLISH
	for producing the opposite. 〈For people do not〉 feel pity any longer when the terrible is close to themselves.[15]
καὶ τοὺς ὁμοίους ἐλεοῦσιν κατὰ ἡλικίαν, κατὰ ἦθη, κατὰ ἕξεις, κατὰ ἀξιώματα, κατὰ γένη· ἐν πᾶσι γὰρ τούτοις μᾶλλον φαίνεται καὶ αὐτῷ ἂν ὑπάρξαι· ὅλως γὰρ καὶ ἐνταῦθα δεῖ λαβεῖν ὅτι, ὅσα ἐφ' αὑτῶν φοβοῦνται, ταῦτα ἐπ' ἄλλων γιγνόμενα ἐλεοῦσιν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς φαινόμενα τὰ πάθη ἐλεεινά ἐστιν, τὰ δὲ μυριοστὸν ἔτος γενόμενα ἢ ἐσόμενα οὔτε ἐλπίζοντες οὔτε μεμνημένοι ἢ ὅλως οὐκ ἐλεοῦσιν ἢ οὐχ ὁμοίως, ἀνάγκη τοὺς συναπεργαζομένους σχήμασι καὶ φωναῖς καὶ ἐσθῆσι καὶ ὅλως ἐν ὑποκρίσει ἐλεεινοτέρους εἶναι· ἐγγὺς γὰρ ποιοῦσι φαίνεσθαι [τὸ κακὸν] πρὸ ὀμμάτων ποιοῦντες, ἢ ὡς μέλλοντα ἢ ὡς γεγονότα.	People also pity those like themselves in age, character, dispositions, rank, or birth, because in all these cases it seems more likely that the same thing could happen to them too. In general, here too we should take it that whatever people fear for themselves, they pity when it happens to others. Sufferings that appear close at hand are pitiable. Things that happened ten thousand years ago or will happen ten thousand years from now people neither expect nor remember, so they either do not pity them at all or not in the same way. It follows that those who heighten the effect with gestures, voice, dress, and acting in general are more pitiable. They make [the evil] appear close by putting it before our eyes, either as about to happen or as having happened.
1386b καὶ γεγονότα ἄρτι ἢ μέλλοντα διὰ ταχέων ἐλεεινότερα· διὰ τοῦτο καὶ τὰ σημεῖα, οἷον ἐσθῆτάς τε τῶν πεπονθότων καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα, καὶ τὰς πράξεις καὶ λόγους καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τῶν ἐν τῷ πάθει ὄντων, οἷον ἤδη τελευτώντων. καὶ μάλιστα τὸ σπουδαίους εἶναι ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις καιροῖς ὄντας ἐλεεινόν· ἅπαντα γὰρ ταῦτα διὰ τὸ ἐγγὺς φαίνεσθαι μᾶλλον ποιεῖ τὸν ἔλεον, καὶ ὡς ἀναξίου ὄντος καὶ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς φαινομένου τοῦ πάθους.	Things that have just happened, or are about to happen soon, are more pitiable. That is also why signs move pity: the clothes of those who have suffered and things like that, and the actions and words and everything else of those in the midst of suffering, for instance of those already dying. Most pitiable of all is when good people are caught in such moments. All these things increase pity because they make the suffering seem close, and because it is undeserved and appears before our eyes.

CHAPTER 9: INDIGNATION

Indignation is pain at someone's undeserved good fortune.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἀντίκειται δὲ τῷ ἐλεεῖν μάλιστα μὲν ὃ καλοῦσι νεμεσᾶν· τῷ γὰρ λυπεῖσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀναξίαις κακοπραγίαις ἀντικείμενόν ἐστι τρόπον τινὰ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἤθους τὸ λυπεῖσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀναξίαις εὐπραγίαις. καὶ ἄμφω τὰ πάθη ἤθους χρηστοῦ· δεῖ γὰρ ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς ἀναξίως πράττουσι κακῶς συνάχθεσθαι καὶ ἐλεεῖν, τοῖς δὲ εὖ νεμεσᾶν· ἄδικον γὰρ τὸ παρὰ τὴν ἀξίαν γιγνόμενον, διὸ καὶ τοῖς θεοῖς ἀποδίδομεν τὸ νεμεσᾶν. δόξειε δ' ἂν καὶ ὁ φθόνος τῷ ἐλεεῖν τὸν αὐτὸν ἀντικεῖσθαι τρόπον ὡς σύνεγγυς ὢν καὶ ταὐτὸν τῷ νεμεσᾶν, ἔστι δ' ἕτερον· λύπη	Opposed to pity is, above all, what is called indignation. Being pained at undeserved good fortune is in a way the opposite of being pained at undeserved misfortune, and it comes from the same character. Both emotions belong to a good character. We ought to share the distress of those who fare badly undeservedly and pity them, and to feel indignation at those who fare well undeservedly. Whatever happens contrary to desert is unjust, which is why we attribute indignation even to the gods. Envy too might seem to be opposed to pity in

15 Diopeithes was an Athenian general (c. 340 BC); "the king" is the king of Persia. Herodotus (3.14) tells the Amasis story of the Egyptian king Psammenitus, Amasis' son.

GREEK	ENGLISH
μὲν γὰρ ταραχώδης καὶ ὁ φθόνος ἐστὶν καὶ ἐπὶ εὐπραγίᾳ, ἀλλ' οὐ τοῦ ἀναξίου ἀλλὰ τοῦ ἴσου καὶ ὁμοίου.	the same way, being closely akin to indignation, even the same thing. But it is different. Envy is also a disturbing pain, and at good fortune, but not the good fortune of someone undeserving. It is the good fortune of an equal, someone like oneself.[16]
τὸ δὲ μὴ ὅτι αὐτῷ τι συμβήσεται ἕτερον, ἀλλὰ δι' αὐτὸν τὸν πλησίον, ἅπασιν ὁμοίως δεῖ ὑπάρχειν· οὐ γὰρ ἔτι ἔσται τὸ μὲν φθόνος, τὸ δὲ νέμεσις, ἀλλὰ φόβος, ἐὰν διὰ τοῦτο ἡ λύπη ὑπάρχῃ καὶ ἡ ταραχή, ὅτι αὐτῷ τι ἔσται φαῦλον ἀπὸ τῆς ἐκείνου εὐπραξίας. φανερὸν δ' ὅτι ἀκολουθήσει καὶ τὰ ἐναντία πάθη τούτοις· ὁ μὲν γὰρ λυπούμενος ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀναξίως κακοπραγοῦσιν ἡσθήσεται ἢ ἄλυπος ἔσται ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐναντίως κακοπραγοῦσιν, οἷον τοὺς πατραλοίας καὶ μιαιφόνους, ὅταν τύχωσι τιμωρίας, οὐδεὶς ἂν λυπηθείη χρηστός· δεῖ γὰρ χαίρειν ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις, ὡς δ' αὕτως καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς εὖ πράττουσι κατ' ἀξίαν· ἄμφω γὰρ δίκαια, καὶ ποιεῖ χαίρειν τὸν ἐπιεικῆ· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἐλπίζειν ὑπάρξαι ἂν ἅπερ τῷ ὁμοίῳ καὶ αὐτῷ.	In all these cases alike, the feeling must arise not because something different will happen to oneself, but on account of the neighbor himself. If the pain and disturbance arise because something bad will come to oneself from the other's good fortune, it will no longer be envy in the one case and indignation in the other, but fear. The opposite emotions will clearly go along with these. The person who is pained at those who fare badly undeservedly will be pleased, or at least not pained, at those who fare badly in the opposite way. No decent person, for instance, would be pained when parricides and murderers meet their punishment. One ought to rejoice at such things, and likewise at those who fare well deservedly. Both are just, and both make the decent person glad, since he can't help hoping that what has come to someone like him might come to him too.
καὶ ἔστιν τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἤθους ἅπαντα ταῦτα, τὰ δ' ἐναντία τοῦ ἐναντίου· ὁ γὰρ αὐτός ἐστιν ἐπιχαιρέκακος καὶ φθονερός· 1387a ἐφ' ᾧ γάρ τις λυπεῖται γιγνομένῳ καὶ ὑπάρχοντι, ἀναγκαῖον τοῦτον ἐπὶ τῇ στερήσει καὶ τῇ φθορᾷ τῇ τούτου χαίρειν. διὸ κωλυτικὰ μὲν ἐλέου πάντα ταῦτ' ἐστί, διαφέρει δὲ διὰ τὰς εἰρημένας αἰτίας, ὥστε πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἐλεεινὰ ποιεῖν ἅπαντα ὁμοίως χρήσιμα. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν περὶ τοῦ νεμεσᾶν λέγωμεν, τίσιν τε νεμεσῶσι καὶ ἐπὶ τίσι καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες αὐτοί, εἶτα μετὰ ταῦτα περὶ τῶν ἄλλων.	All these feelings belong to the same character, and their opposites to the opposite character. The same person both gloats over others' misfortunes and envies. 1387a If someone is pained when a thing comes to be and is present, he must be glad at its loss and destruction. So all these feelings are obstacles to pity. They differ for the reasons given, but all are equally useful for making things seem not pitiable. First, then, let us discuss indignation: at whom people feel it, at what, and in what state they themselves are. After that we will discuss the others.
1387a φανερὸν δ' ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων· εἰ γάρ ἐστι τὸ νεμεσᾶν λυπεῖσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ φαινομένῳ ἀναξίως εὐπραγεῖν, πρῶτον μὲν δῆλον ὅτι οὐχ οἷόν τ' ἐπὶ πᾶσι τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς νεμεσᾶν· οὐ γὰρ εἰ δίκαιος ἢ ἀνδρεῖος, ἢ εἰ ἀρετὴν λήψεται, νεμεσήσει τούτῳ (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔλεοι ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις τούτων εἰσίν), ἀλλὰ ἐπὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δυνάμει καὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις, ὅσων ὡς ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἄξιοί εἰσιν οἱ ἀγαθοὶ καὶ οἱ τὰ φύσει ἔχοντες ἀγαθά, οἷον εὐγένειαν καὶ κάλλος καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα.	This is clear from what has been said. If indignation is being pained at someone's apparently undeserved good fortune, then first of all it is clear that one cannot feel indignation at every good. No one will feel indignation at a man because he is just or brave, or because he acquires excellence (nor is pity felt at the opposites of these). People feel it at wealth, power, and the like, the things that, roughly speaking, are deserved by good people and by those who have the natural goods, such as good birth, beauty, and the like.

16 The Greek word for indignation, *nemesis*, is also the name of the goddess of retribution.

GREEK

ENGLISH

ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐγγύς τι φαίνεται τοῦ φύσει, ἀνάγκη τοῖς ταὐτὸ ἔχουσιν ἀγαθόν, ἐὰν νεωστὶ ἔχοντες τυγχάνωσι καὶ διὰ τοῦτο εὐπραγῶσι, μᾶλλον νεμεσᾶν· μᾶλλον γὰρ λυποῦσιν οἱ νεωστὶ πλουτοῦντες τῶν πάλαι καὶ διὰ γένος· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἄρχοντες καὶ δυνάμενοι καὶ πολύφιλοι καὶ εὔτεκνοι καὶ ὁτιοῦν τῶν τοιούτων. καὶ ἂν διὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο τι ἀγαθὸν γίγνηται αὐτοῖς, ὡσαύτως· καὶ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα μᾶλλον λυποῦσιν οἱ νεόπλουτοι ἄρχοντες διὰ τὸν πλοῦτον ἢ οἱ ἀρχαιόπλουτοι. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων. αἴτιον δ' ὅτι οἱ μὲν δοκοῦσι τὰ αὐτῶν ἔχειν οἱ δ' οὔ· τὸ γὰρ ἀεὶ οὕτω φαινόμενον ἔχειν ἀληθὲς δοκεῖ, ὥστε οἱ ἕτεροι οὐ τὰ αὐτῶν ἔχειν.

Since what is long-established seems close to what is natural, people must feel more indignation at those who have the same good if they happen to have it newly and are prospering because of it. The newly rich give more offense than those who have been rich a long time and by inheritance. The same goes for those who hold office, have power, have many friends, have fine children, and anything of that sort. The same is true if some other good comes to them because of these. Here too the newly rich who hold office because of their wealth give more offense than those of old wealth. And similarly in the other cases. The reason is that the old rich seem to have what is their own and the new rich do not. What has always appeared to be so seems to be truly so, and so the others seem not to have what is their own.

καὶ ἐπεὶ ἕκαστον τῶν ἀγαθῶν οὐ τοῦ τυχόντος ἄξιον, ἀλλά τις ἔστιν ἀναλογία καὶ τὸ ἁρμόττον, οἷον ὅπλων κάλλος οὐ τῷ δικαίῳ ἁρμόττει ἀλλὰ τῷ ἀνδρείῳ, καὶ γάμοι διαφέροντες οὐ τοῖς νεωστὶ πλουσίοις ἀλλὰ τοῖς εὐγενέσιν ἂν οὖν ἀγαθὸς ὢν μὴ τοῦ ἁρμόττοντος τυγχάνῃ, νεμεσητόν. καὶ τὸν ἥττω τῷ κρείττονι ἀμφισβητεῖν, μάλιστα μὲν οὖν τοὺς ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, ὅθεν καὶ τοῦτ' εἴρηται Αἴαντος δ' ἀλέεινε μάχην Τελαμωνιάδαο· / Ζεὺς γάρ οἱ νεμέσασχ', ὅτ' ἀμείνονι φωτὶ μάχοιτο. [1387b] εἰ δὲ μή, κἂν ὁπωσοῦν ὁ ἥττων τῷ κρείττονι, οἷον εἰ ὁ μουσικὸς τῷ δικαίῳ· βέλτιον γὰρ ἡ δικαιοσύνη τῆς μουσικῆς. οἷς μὲν οὖν νεμεσῶσι καὶ διὰ τί, ἐκ τούτων δῆλον· ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτά ἐστιν.

Each good is not deserved by just anyone; there is a certain proportion and fitness. Beautiful arms, for instance, befit not the just man but the brave one, and distinguished marriages befit not the newly rich but the well-born. So if a good man fails to get what befits him, this provokes indignation. So does an inferior contending with a superior, especially within the same field. Hence the lines: "He shunned battle with Ajax, son of Telamon; / for Zeus would be indignant with him if he fought a better man." [1387b] Even outside the same field, it provokes indignation when the inferior contends with the superior in any way at all, as when the musician contends with the just man, since justice is better than music. At whom people feel indignation, then, and why, is clear from this: these people and those like them.[17]

1387b αὐτοὶ δὲ νεμεσητικοί εἰσιν, ἐὰν ἄξιοι τυγχάνωσιν ὄντες τῶν μεγίστων ἀγαθῶν καὶ ταῦτα κεκτημένοι· τὸ γὰρ τῶν ὁμοίων ἠξιῶσθαι τοὺς μὴ ὁμοίους οὐ δίκαιον. δεύτερον δέ, ἂν ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ καὶ σπουδαῖοι τυγχάνωσιν· κρίνουσί τε γὰρ εὖ, καὶ τὰ ἄδικα μισοῦσι. καὶ ἐὰν φιλότιμοι καὶ ὀρεγόμενοί τινων πραγμάτων, καὶ μάλιστα περὶ ταῦτα φιλότιμοι ὦσιν ὧν ἕτεροι ἀνάξιοι ὄντες τυγχάνουσιν. καὶ ὅλως οἱ ἀξιοῦντες αὐτοὶ αὑτοὺς ὧν ἑτέρους μὴ ἀξιοῦσι, νεμεσητικοὶ τούτοις καὶ τούτων. διὸ καὶ οἱ ἀνδραποδώδεις καὶ φαῦλοι καὶ ἀφιλότιμοι οὐ νεμεσητικοί· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐστιν οὗ ἑαυτοὺς οἴονται ἀξίους εἶναι.

People themselves are prone to indignation if they happen to deserve the greatest goods and also possess them, since it is not just for those who are not alike to be thought worthy of the same things. Second, if they happen to be good and excellent people, because they judge well and hate what is unjust. They are also prone to it if they are ambitious and want certain things, especially if their ambition is for things that others, undeserving, are getting. In general, those who think themselves worthy of what they think others unworthy of are prone to indignation at those others and over those things. That is why the servile, the

17 *Iliad* 11.542, of Hector; the second line is not found in our texts of Homer.

GREEK

ENGLISH

base, and the unambitious are not prone to indignation: there is nothing they think themselves worthy of.

φανερὸν δ' ἐκ τούτων ἐπὶ ποίοις ἀτυχοῦσι καὶ κακοπραγοῦσιν ἢ μὴ τυγχάνουσι χαίρειν ἢ ἀλύπως ἔχειν δεῖ· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν εἰρημένων τὰ ἀντικείμενά ἐστιν δῆλα, ὥστ' ἐὰν τούς τε κριτὰς τοιούτους παρασκευάσῃ ὁ λόγος, καὶ τοὺς ἀξιοῦντας ἐλεεῖσθαι, καὶ ἐφ' οἷς ἐλεεῖσθαι, δείξῃ ἀναξίους ὄντας τυγχάνειν ἀξίους δὲ μὴ τυγχάνειν, ἀδύνατον ἐλεεῖν.

From this it is clear at whose misfortunes, failures, or lack of success one should be glad, or at least not pained, since the opposites are clear from what has been said. So if the speech puts the judges into such a state, and shows that those who claim to be pitied, and the things they claim pity for, are undeserving of it and deserve not to get it, then pity is impossible.

CHAPTER 10: ENVY

Envy is pain at the good fortune of one's equals.

GREEK

ENGLISH

δῆλον δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τίσι φθονοῦσι καὶ τίσι καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες, εἴπερ ἐστὶν ὁ φθόνος λύπη τις ἐπὶ εὐπραγίᾳ φαινομένῃ τῶν εἰρημένων ἀγαθῶν περὶ τοὺς ὁμοίους, μὴ ἵνα τι αὐτῷ, ἀλλὰ δι' ἐκείνους· φθονήσουσι μὲν γὰρ οἱ τοιοῦτοι οἷς εἰσί τινες ὅμοιοι ἢ φαίνονται. ὁμοίους δὲ λέγω κατὰ γένος, κατὰ συγγένειαν, καθ' ἡλικίας, κατὰ ἕξεις, κατὰ δόξαν, κατὰ τὰ ὑπάρχοντα. καὶ οἷς μικροῦ ἐλλείπει τὸ μὴ πάντα ὑπάρχειν· (διὸ οἱ μεγάλα πράττοντες καὶ οἱ εὐτυχοῦντες φθονεροί εἰσιν) πάντας γὰρ οἴονται τὰ αὐτῶν φέρειν. καὶ οἱ τιμώμενοι ἐπί τινι διαφερόντως, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ ἢ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. καὶ οἱ φιλότιμοι φθονερώτεροι τῶν ἀφιλοτίμων. καὶ οἱ δοξόσοφοι· φιλότιμοι γὰρ ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ. καὶ ὅλως οἱ φιλόδοξοι περί τι φθονεροὶ περὶ τοῦτο.

It is also clear at what people feel envy, at whom, and in what state, if envy is a kind of pain at the apparent good fortune of one's equals in the goods we have mentioned, felt not in order to gain something for oneself but because of the others. People will feel envy if there are others who are like them, or seem to be. By "like" I mean in birth, kinship, age, disposition, reputation, and possessions. Also those who fall only a little short of having everything (which is why those who achieve great things and the fortunate are envious), for they think everyone is carrying off what is theirs. Also those who are exceptionally honored for something, especially for wisdom or happiness. The ambitious are more envious than the unambitious. So are those who fancy themselves wise, since their ambition is for wisdom. In general, those eager for reputation in some field are envious in that field.

καὶ οἱ μικρόψυχοι· πάντα γὰρ μεγάλα δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς εἶναι. ἐφ' οἷς δὲ φθονοῦσι, τὰ μὲν ἀγαθὰ εἴρηται· [1388a] ἐφ' οἷς γὰρ φιλοδοξοῦσι καὶ φιλοτιμοῦνται ἔργοις ἢ κτήμασι καὶ ὀρέγονται δόξης, καὶ ὅσα εὐτυχήματά ἐστιν, σχεδὸν περὶ πάντα φθόνος ἐστί, καὶ μάλιστα ὧν αὐτοὶ ἢ ὀρέγονται ἢ οἴονται δεῖν αὐτοὺς ἔχειν, ἢ ὧν τῇ κτήσει μικρῷ ὑπερέχουσιν ἢ μικρῷ ἐλλείπουσιν. φανερὸν δὲ καὶ οἷς φθονοῦσιν· ἅμα γὰρ εἴρηται· τοῖς γὰρ ἐγγὺς καὶ χρόνῳ καὶ τόπῳ καὶ ἡλικίᾳ καὶ δόξῃ ⟨καὶ γένει⟩ φθονοῦσιν. ὅθεν εἴρηται τὸ συγγενὲς γὰρ καὶ φθονεῖν ἐπίσταται. καὶ πρὸς οὓς φιλοτιμοῦνται· φιλοτιμοῦνται γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς εἰρημένους, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς μυριοστὸν ἔτος ὄντας ἢ πρὸς τοὺς ἐσομένους ἢ τεθνεῶτας οὐδείς, οὐδὲ πρὸς τοὺς ἐφ' Ἡρακλείαις στήλαις.

So are the small-souled, since everything seems great to them. As for what people envy, the goods have already been stated. [1388a] Nearly everything over which people seek reputation and honor, in deeds or in possessions, and crave glory, and all the gifts of good fortune, are objects of envy. This is especially true of the things they themselves desire or think they ought to have, or the possession of which puts them a little ahead or a little behind. Whom people envy is also clear, since it has been said along the way. They envy those close to them in time, place, age, reputation, and ⟨birth⟩. Hence the line: "Kinship knows how to envy too." They also envy those they compete with for honor. They

GREEK	ENGLISH
	compete with the people just mentioned. No one competes with those who lived ten thousand years ago, or with those yet to be born or the dead, or with those who live at the Pillars of Heracles.[18]
1388a οὐδ' ὧν πολὺ οἴονται παρ' αὐτοῖς ἢ παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις λείπεσθαι, οὐδ' ὧν πολὺ ὑπερέχειν, ὡσαύτως καὶ πρὸς τοὺς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ἀνταγωνιστὰς καὶ ἀντεραστὰς καὶ ὅλως τοὺς τῶν αὐτῶν ἐφιεμένους φιλοτιμοῦνται, ἀνάγκη μάλιστα τούτοις φθονεῖν, διόπερ εἴρηται καὶ κεραμεὺς κεραμεῖ. καὶ ὧν ἢ κεκτημένων ἢ κατορθούντων ὄνειδος αὐτοῖς· εἰσὶν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ⟨οἱ⟩ ἐγγὺς καὶ ὅμοιοι· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι παρ' αὐτοὺς οὐ τυγχάνουσι τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ, ὥστε τοῦτο λυποῦν ποιεῖ τὸν φθόνον. καὶ τοῖς ἢ ἔχουσι ταῦτα ἢ κεκτημένοις ὅσα αὐτοῖς προσῆκεν ἢ κέκτηντό ποτε· διὸ πρεσβύτεροί τε νεωτέροις, καὶ οἱ πολλὰ δαπανήσαντες εἰς ταὐτὸ τοῖς ὀλίγα φθονοῦσιν. καὶ τοῖς ταχὺ οἱ μήπω τυχόντες ἢ μὴ τυχόντες φθονοῦσιν.	Nor do they compete with those they think they fall far short of, in their own eyes or in others', or with those they far surpass. The same holds for those concerned with such things. People compete for honor with their rivals in contests and in love, and in general with those who aim at the same things, so they must envy these most of all. Hence the saying, "Potter against potter." They also envy those whose possessions or successes are a reproach to them. These too are people close to them and like them, since it is clear that it is their own fault they do not have the good, and the pain of this produces envy. They also envy those who have or have acquired what properly belonged to them, or what they once had. That is why older people envy younger ones, and those who have spent a lot envy those who spent little on the same thing. And those who have not yet got something, or have not got it at all, envy those who got it quickly.
δῆλον δὲ καὶ ἐφ' οἷς χαίρουσιν οἱ τοιοῦτοι καὶ ἐπὶ τίσι καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες· ὡς γὰρ ἔχοντες λυποῦνται, οὕτως ἔχοντες ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἡσθήσονται, ὥστε ἂν αὐτοὶ μὲν παρασκευασθῶσιν οὕτως ἔχειν, οἱ δ' ἐλεεῖσθαι ἢ τυγχάνειν τινὸς ἀγαθοῦ ἀξιούμενοι ὧσιν οἷοι οἱ εἰρημένοι, δῆλον ὡς οὐ τεύξονται ἐλέου παρὰ τῶν κυρίων.	It is also clear at what such people are glad, over whom, and in what state. In whatever state they are pained, in that same state they will be pleased at the opposite things. So if these people themselves are put into such a state, and those who claim to deserve pity or some good are such as described, it is clear that they will get no pity from those who have the power to decide.

CHAPTER 11: EMULATION

Emulation is pain at lacking goods that others like oneself have, and that one could obtain.

GREEK	ENGLISH
πῶς δὲ ἔχοντες ζηλοῦσι καὶ τὰ ποῖα καὶ ἐπὶ τίσιν, ἐνθένδ' ἐστὶ δῆλον· εἰ γάρ ἐστιν ζῆλος λύπη τις ἐπὶ φαινομένῃ παρουσίᾳ ἀγαθῶν ἐντίμων καὶ ἐνδεχομένων αὐτῷ λαβεῖν περὶ τοὺς ὁμοίους τῇ φύσει, οὐχ ὅτι ἄλλῳ ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐχὶ καὶ αὐτῷ ἔστιν, (διὸ καὶ ἐπιεικής ἐστιν ὁ ζῆλος καὶ ἐπιεικῶν, τὸ δὲ φθονεῖν φαῦλον καὶ φαύλων· ὁ μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸν παρασκευάζει διὰ τὸν ζῆλον τυγχάνειν τῶν ἀγαθῶν, ὁ δὲ τὸν πλησίον μὴ ἔχειν διὰ τὸν φθόνον), 1388b ἀνάγκη δὴ ζηλωτικοὺς μὲν εἶναι τοὺς ἀξιοῦντας αὐτοὺς	In what state people feel emulation, at what, and toward whom, is clear from the following. Emulation is a pain at the apparent presence, in people naturally like oneself, of goods that are honored and that one could obtain oneself. The pain is felt not because another has them, but because one does not have them too. (That is why emulation is a decent feeling and belongs to decent people, while envy is base and belongs to the base. Through emulation one prepares oneself to get the

18 The Pillars of Heracles are the Strait of Gibraltar, at the western edge of the world the Greeks knew.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	ἀγαθῶν ὧν μὴ ἔχουσιν·... οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀξιοῖ τὰ φαινόμενα ἀδύνατα. διὸ οἱ νέοι καὶ οἱ μεγαλόψυχοι τοιοῦτοι.	goods; through envy one tries to keep one's neighbor from having them.) [1388b] If this is emulation, then those who think they deserve goods they do not have must be prone to it... for no one thinks he deserves what appears impossible. That is why the young and the great-souled are like this.
1388b	καὶ οἷς ὑπάρχει τοιαῦτα ἀγαθὰ ἃ τῶν ἐντίμων ἄξιά ἐστιν ἀνδρῶν· ἔστι δὲ ταῦτα πλοῦτος καὶ πολυφιλία καὶ ἀρχαὶ καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα· ὡς γὰρ προσῆκον αὐτοῖς ἀγαθοῖς εἶναι, ὅτι προσῆκε τοῖς ἀγαθῶς ἔχουσι, ζηλοῦσι τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ἀγαθῶν. καὶ οὓς οἱ ἄλλοι ἀξιοῦσιν. καὶ ὧν πρόγονοι ἢ συγγενεῖς ἢ οἰκεῖοι ἢ τὸ ἔθνος ἢ ἡ πόλις ἔντιμοι, ζηλωτικοὶ περὶ ταῦτα· οἰκεῖα γὰρ οἴονται αὐτοῖς εἶναι, καὶ ἄξιοι τούτων. εἰ δ' ἐστὶν ζηλωτὰ τὰ ἔντιμα ἀγαθά, ἀνάγκη τάς τε ἀρετὰς εἶναι τοιαύτας, καὶ ὅσα τοῖς ἄλλοις ὠφέλιμα καὶ εὐεργετικά· τιμῶσι γὰρ τοὺς εὐεργετοῦντας καὶ τοὺς ἀγαθούς· καὶ ὅσων ἀγαθῶν ἀπόλαυσις τοῖς πλησίον ἐστίν, οἷον πλοῦτος καὶ κάλλος μᾶλλον ὑγιείας. φανερὸν δὲ καὶ οἱ ζηλωτοὶ τίνες· οἱ γὰρ ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα κεκτημένοι ζηλωτοί.	So are those who have the kinds of goods that befit men held in honor: wealth, many friends, offices, and the like. Since they think it fitting for them to be good, because it is fitting for those who are well provided with goods, they emulate goods of this kind. So are those whom others think deserving. So are those whose ancestors, relatives, household, people, or city are held in honor; they are prone to emulation in these things, since they think these things belong to them and that they deserve them. If honored goods are objects of emulation, then the excellences must be so too, and everything that benefits others and does them good, since people honor benefactors and the good. So are the goods whose enjoyment extends to one's neighbors, such as wealth and beauty rather than health. Who are the objects of emulation is also clear: those who possess these things and things like them are emulated.
	ἔστι δὲ ταῦτα τὰ εἰρημένα, οἷον ἀνδρία σοφία ἀρχή· οἱ γὰρ ἄρχοντες πολλοὺς δύνανται εὖ ποιεῖν, στρατηγοί, ῥήτορες, πάντες οἱ τὰ τοιαῦτα δυνάμενοι. καὶ οἷς πολλοὶ ὅμοιοι βούλονται εἶναι, ἢ πολλοὶ γνώριμοι, ἢ φίλοι πολλοί. ἢ οὓς πολλοὶ θαυμάζουσιν, ἢ οὓς αὐτοὶ θαυμάζουσιν. καὶ ὧν ἔπαινοι καὶ ἐγκώμια λέγονται ἢ ὑπὸ ποιητῶν ἢ λογογράφων. καταφρονοῦσιν δὲ τῶν ἐναντίων· ἐναντίον γὰρ ζήλῳ καταφρόνησίς ἐστι, καὶ τὸ ζηλοῦν τῷ καταφρονεῖν. ἀνάγκη δὲ τοὺς οὕτως ἔχοντας ὥστε ζηλῶσαί τινας ἢ ζηλοῦσθαι, καταφρονητικοὺς εἶναι τούτων τε καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὅσοι τὰ ἐναντία κακὰ ἔχουσι τῶν ἀγαθῶν τῶν ζηλωτῶν. διὸ πολλάκις καταφρονοῦσιν τῶν εὐτυχούντων, ὅταν ἄνευ τῶν ἐντίμων ἀγαθῶν ὑπάρχῃ αὐτοῖς ἡ τύχη. δι' ὧν μὲν οὖν τὰ πάθη ἐγγίγνεται καὶ διαλύεται, ἐξ ὧν αἱ πίστεις γίγνονται περὶ αὐτῶν, εἴρηται·	These are the things we have mentioned, such as courage, wisdom, and office. Those in office, such as generals and orators and all who have that kind of power, can do good to many. People also emulate those whom many want to resemble, or to know, or to have as friends. They emulate those whom many admire, or whom they themselves admire. They emulate those about whom praises and encomia are composed by poets or prose writers. People feel contempt for the opposites of these, since contempt is the opposite of emulation, and despising of emulating. Those disposed to emulate others or to be emulated must be inclined to despise those who have the evils opposite to the goods that are emulated, and to despise them for those evils. That is why people often despise the fortunate, when their good fortune comes without the honored goods. We have now stated what makes the emotions arise and what dissolves them, and these are the sources from which proofs concerning them are drawn.

CHAPTER 12: THE CHARACTER OF THE YOUNG

Character by age: the young are passionate, hopeful, trusting and given to excess.

GREEK

τὰ δὲ ἤθη ποῖοί τινες κατὰ τὰ πάθη καὶ τὰς ἕξεις καὶ τὰς ἡλικίας καὶ τὰς τύχας, διέλθωμεν μετὰ ταῦτα. λέγω δὲ πάθη μὲν ὀργὴν ἐπιθυμίαν καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα, περὶ ὧν εἰρήκαμεν πρότερον, ἕξεις δὲ ἀρετὰς καὶ κακίας, εἴρηται δὲ περὶ τούτων πρότερον, καὶ ποῖα προαιροῦνται ἕκαστοι, καὶ ποίων πρακτικοί. ἡλικίαι δέ εἰσι νεότης καὶ ἀκμὴ καὶ γῆρας. [1389a] τύχην δὲ λέγω εὐγένειαν καὶ πλοῦτον καὶ δυνάμεις καὶ τἀναντία τούτοις καὶ ὅλως εὐτυχίαν καὶ δυστυχίαν. οἱ μὲν οὖν νέοι τὰ ἤθη εἰσὶν ἐπιθυμητικοί, καὶ οἷοι ποιεῖν ἃ ἂν ἐπιθυμήσωσι. καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸ σῶμα ἐπιθυμιῶν μάλιστα ἀκολουθητικοί εἰσι ταῖς περὶ τὰ ἀφροδίσια καὶ ἀκρατεῖς ταύτης.

ENGLISH

Next let us go through what sorts of characters people have according to their emotions, dispositions, ages, and fortunes. By emotions I mean anger, desire, and the like, which we discussed earlier. By dispositions I mean excellences and vices, which have also been discussed earlier, along with what sorts of things each type of person chooses and is apt to do. The ages are youth, the prime of life, and old age. [1389a] By fortune I mean good birth, wealth, power, and their opposites, and in general good and bad fortune. The young, then, are in character given to desire and apt to do whatever they desire. Of the bodily desires, they are most inclined to follow sexual desire, and in this they lack self-control.

1389a εὐμετάβολοι δὲ καὶ ἀψίκοροι πρὸς τὰς ἐπιθυμίας, καὶ σφόδρα μὲν ἐπιθυμοῦσι ταχέως δὲ παύονται· ὀξεῖαι γὰρ αἱ βουλήσεις καὶ οὐ μεγάλαι, ὥσπερ αἱ τῶν καμνόντων δίψαι καὶ πεῖναι. καὶ θυμικοὶ καὶ ὀξύθυμοι καὶ οἷοι ἀκολουθεῖν τῇ ὀργῇ. καὶ ἥττους εἰσὶ τοῦ θυμοῦ· διὰ γὰρ φιλοτιμίαν οὐκ ἀνέχονται ὀλιγωρούμενοι, ἀλλ᾽ ἀγανακτοῦσιν ἂν οἴωνται ἀδικεῖσθαι. καὶ φιλότιμοι μέν εἰσιν, μᾶλλον δὲ φιλόνικοι· ὑπεροχῆς γὰρ ἐπιθυμεῖ ἡ νεότης, ἡ δὲ νίκη ὑπεροχή τις. καὶ ἄμφω ταῦτα μᾶλλον ἢ φιλοχρήματοι· φιλοχρήματοι δὲ ἥκιστα διὰ τὸ μήπω ἐνδείας πεπειρᾶσθαι, ὥσπερ τὸ Πιττακοῦ ἔχει ἀπόφθεγμα εἰς Ἀμφιάραον. καὶ οὐ κακοήθεις ἀλλ᾽ εὐήθεις διὰ τὸ μήπω τεθεωρηκέναι πολλὰς πονηρίας· καὶ εὔπιστοι διὰ τὸ μήπω πολλὰ ἐξηπατῆσθαι.

They are changeable in their desires and quickly sated. They desire intensely but soon stop, because their wishes are sharp but not great, like the thirst and hunger of the sick. They are passionate and quick-tempered and apt to follow their anger. Their temper gets the better of them. Because they love honor, they cannot bear being slighted, and they are aggrieved if they think they are wronged. They love honor, but they love victory more, since youth desires superiority and victory is a kind of superiority. They are both of these rather than lovers of money. They care least of all for money because they have not yet experienced want, as Pittacus' saying about Amphiaraus has it. They are not ill-natured but good-natured, because they have not yet seen much wickedness. They are trusting, because they have not yet been deceived often.[19]

καὶ εὐέλπιδες· ὥσπερ γὰρ οἱ οἰνωμένοι, οὕτω διάθερμοί εἰσιν οἱ νέοι ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως· ἅμα δὲ καὶ διὰ τὸ μὴ πολλὰ ἀποτετυχηκέναι. καὶ ζῶσι τὰ πλεῖστα ἐλπίδι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ ἐλπὶς τοῦ μέλλοντός ἐστιν ἡ δὲ μνήμη τοῦ παροιχομένου, τοῖς δὲ νέοις τὸ μὲν μέλλον πολὺ τὸ δὲ παρεληλυθὸς βραχύ· τῇ γὰρ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ μεμνῆσθαι μὲν οὐδὲν οἷόν τε, ἐλπίζειν δὲ πάντα. καὶ εὐεξαπάτητοί εἰσι διὰ τὸ εἰρημένον· ἐλπίζουσι γὰρ ῥᾳδίως. καὶ ἀνδρειότεροι· θυμώδεις γὰρ καὶ εὐέλπιδες, ὧν τὸ μὲν μὴ φοβεῖσθαι τὸ δὲ θαρρεῖν ποιεῖ· οὔτε γὰρ ὀργιζόμενος οὐδεὶς φοβεῖται,

They are hopeful. The young are heated by nature, as people are by wine, and at the same time they have not yet failed much. They live mostly in hope, since hope is of the future and memory of the past, and for the young the future is long and the past short. On the first day of life one can remember nothing but can hope for everything. They are easily deceived for the reason given, since they hope readily. They are braver, because they are hot-tempered and hopeful. The first

19 Pittacus of Mytilene was one of the Seven Sages; his saying about the seer Amphiaraus is lost.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τό τε ἐλπίζειν ἀγαθόν τι θαρραλέον ἐστίν. καὶ αἰσχυντηλοί· οὐ γάρ πω καλὰ ἕτερα ὑπολαμβάνουσιν, ἀλλὰ πεπαίδευνται ὑπὸ τοῦ νόμου μόνον.	makes them unafraid and the second makes them confident, since no one is afraid while angry, and hoping for some good gives confidence. They are prone to shame, because they do not yet suppose that other things are fine; convention alone has educated them.
καὶ μεγαλόψυχοι· οὔτε γὰρ ὑπὸ τοῦ βίου πω τεταπείνωνται, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἄπειροί εἰσιν, καὶ τὸ ἀξιοῦν αὐτὸν μεγάλων μεγαλοψυχία· τοῦτο δ' εὐέλπιδος. καὶ μᾶλλον αἱροῦνται πράττειν τὰ καλὰ τῶν συμφερόντων· τῷ γὰρ ἤθει ζῶσι μᾶλλον ἢ τῷ λογισμῷ, ἔστι δὲ ὁ μὲν λογισμὸς τοῦ συμφέροντος ἡ δὲ ἀρετὴ τοῦ καλοῦ. καὶ φιλόφιλοι καὶ φιλέταιροι μᾶλλον τῶν ἄλλων ἡλικιῶν [1389b] διὰ τὸ χαίρειν τῷ συζῆν καὶ μήπω πρὸς τὸ συμφέρον κρίνειν μηδέν, ὥστε μηδὲ τοὺς φίλους. καὶ ἅπαντα ἐπὶ τὸ μᾶλλον καὶ σφοδρότερον ἁμαρτάνουσι παρὰ τὸ Χιλώνειον· πάντα γὰρ ἄγαν πράττουσιν· φιλοῦσι γὰρ ἄγαν καὶ μισοῦσιν ἄγαν καὶ τἆλλα πάντα ὁμοίως. καὶ εἰδέναι ἅπαντα οἴονται καὶ διισχυρίζονται· τοῦτο γὰρ αἴτιόν ἐστιν καὶ τοῦ πάντα ἄγαν. καὶ τὰ ἀδικήματα ἀδικοῦσιν εἰς ὕβριν, οὐ κακουργίαν.	They are great-souled. Life has not yet humbled them, and they have no experience of its necessities. Greatness of soul is thinking oneself worthy of great things, and that is the mark of a hopeful person. They prefer to do fine deeds rather than advantageous ones, because they live by character more than by calculation; calculation aims at the advantageous, excellence at the fine. They are fonder of their friends and companions than people of other ages are, [1389b] because they enjoy spending time together and do not yet judge anything by advantage, and so they do not judge their friends that way either. In everything they err on the side of excess and vehemence, against Chilon's maxim. They do everything too much: they love too much, hate too much, and the same with everything else. They think they know everything, and they insist on it, and this is also why they do everything too much. The wrongs they commit come from insolence, not villainy.[20]
1389b καὶ ἐλεητικοὶ διὰ τὸ πάντας χρηστοὺς καὶ βελτίους ὑπολαμβάνειν· τῇ γὰρ αὐτῶν ἀκακίᾳ τοὺς πέλας μετροῦσιν, ὥστε ἀνάξια πάσχειν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν αὐτούς. καὶ φιλογέλωτες, διὸ καὶ εὐτράπελοι· ἡ γὰρ εὐτραπελία πεπαιδευμένη ὕβρις ἐστίν.	They are inclined to pity, because they assume everyone is decent and better than they really are. They measure their neighbors by their own innocence, and so they suppose that their neighbors suffer undeservedly. They love laughter, which is why they are also witty, for wit is educated insolence.

CHAPTER 13: THE CHARACTER OF THE OLD

The old are cautious, distrustful, small-minded and fond of themselves.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὸ μὲν οὖν τῶν νέων τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν ἦθος, οἱ δὲ πρεσβύτεροι καὶ παρηκμακότες σχεδὸν ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τούτοις τὰ πλεῖστα ἔχουσιν ἤθη· διὰ γὰρ τὸ πολλὰ ἔτη βεβιωκέναι καὶ πλείω ἐξηπατῆσθαι καὶ ἐξημαρτηκέναι, καὶ τὰ πλείω φαῦλα εἶναι τῶν πραγμάτων, οὔτε διαβεβαιοῦνται οὐδέν, ἧττόν τε ἄγαν ἅπαντα ἢ δεῖ. καὶ οἴονται, ἴσασι δ' οὐδέν, καὶ ἀμφιδοξοῦντες προστιθέασιν ἀεὶ τὸ ἴσως καὶ τάχα, καὶ πάντα λέγουσιν οὕτως, παγίως δ' οὐδέν. καὶ κακοήθεις εἰσίν· ἔστι γὰρ κακοήθεια τὸ ἐπὶ	Such, then, is the character of the young. Older people, those past their prime, have characters made up mostly of the opposites of these. They have lived many years, been deceived more often and made more mistakes, and most things turn out badly, so they are positive about nothing and do everything with less vigor than they should. They "think," but they never "know." In two minds about everything, they always add "perhaps" and

20 Chilon of Sparta, one of the Seven Sages, was credited with the maxim "Nothing too much."

GREEK

τὸ χεῖρον ὑπολαμβάνειν πάντα. ἔτι δὲ καχύποπτοί εἰσι διὰ τὴν ἀπιστίαν, ἄπιστοι δὲ δι' ἐμπειρίαν. καὶ οὔτε φιλοῦσιν σφόδρα οὔτε μισοῦσι διὰ ταῦτα, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὴν Βίαντος ὑποθήκην καὶ φιλοῦσιν ὡς μισήσοντες καὶ μισοῦσιν ὡς φιλήσοντες.

καὶ μικρόψυχοι διὰ τὸ τεταπεινῶσθαι ὑπὸ τοῦ βίου· οὐδενὸς γὰρ μεγάλου οὐδὲ περιττοῦ, ἀλλὰ τῶν πρὸς τὸν βίον ἐπιθυμοῦσι. καὶ ἀνελεύθεροι· ἓν γάρ τι τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἡ οὐσία, ἅμα δὲ καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐμπειρίαν ἴσασιν ὡς χαλεπὸν τὸ κτήσασθαι καὶ ῥᾴδιον τὸ ἀποβαλεῖν. καὶ δειλοὶ καὶ πάντα προφοβητικοί· ἐναντίως γὰρ διάκεινται τοῖς νέοις· κατεψυγμένοι γάρ εἰσιν, οἱ δὲ θερμοί, ὥστε προωδοπεποίηκε τὸ γῆρας τῇ δειλίᾳ· καὶ γὰρ ὁ φόβος κατάψυξίς ἐστιν. καὶ φιλόζωοι, καὶ μᾶλλον ἐπὶ τῇ τελευταίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ διὰ τὸ τοῦ ἀπόντος εἶναι τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν, καὶ οὗ δὲ ἐνδεεῖς, τούτου μάλιστα ἐπιθυμεῖν. καὶ φίλαυτοι μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ· μικροψυχία γάρ τις καὶ αὕτη.

καὶ πρὸς τὸ συμφέρον ζῶσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ πρὸς τὸ καλόν, μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ διὰ τὸ φίλαυτοι εἶναι· 1390a τὸ μὲν γὰρ συμφέρον αὐτῷ ἀγαθόν ἐστι, τὸ δὲ καλὸν ἁπλῶς. καὶ ἀναίσχυντοι μᾶλλον ἢ αἰσχυντηλοί· διὰ γὰρ τὸ μὴ φροντίζειν ὁμοίως τοῦ καλοῦ καὶ συμφέροντος ὀλιγωροῦσι τοῦ δοκεῖν. καὶ δυσέλπιδες διὰ τὴν ἐμπειρίαν· τὰ γὰρ πλείω τῶν γιγνομένων φαῦλά ἐστιν· ἀποβαίνει γὰρ τὰ πολλὰ ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον· καὶ ἔτι διὰ τὴν δειλίαν. καὶ ζῶσι τῇ μνήμῃ μᾶλλον ἢ τῇ ἐλπίδι· τοῦ γὰρ βίου τὸ μὲν λοιπὸν ὀλίγον τὸ δὲ παρεληλυθὸς πολύ, ἔστι δὲ ἡ μὲν ἐλπὶς τοῦ μέλλοντος ἡ δὲ μνήμη τῶν παροιχομένων. ὅπερ αἴτιον καὶ τῆς ἀδολεσχίας αὐτοῖς· διατελοῦσι γὰρ τὰ γενόμενα λέγοντες· ἀναμιμνησκόμενοι γὰρ ἥδονται.

1390a καὶ οἱ θυμοὶ ὀξεῖς μὲν ἀσθενεῖς δέ εἰσιν, καὶ ἐπιθυμίαι αἱ μὲν ἐκλελοίπασιν αἱ δὲ ἀσθενεῖς εἰσιν, ὥστε οὔτ' ἐπιθυμητικοὶ οὔτε πρακτικοὶ κατὰ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὸ κέρδος. διὸ σωφρονικοὶ φαίνονται οἱ τηλικοῦτοι· αἵ τε γὰρ ἐπιθυμίαι ἀνείκασι καὶ δουλεύουσι τῷ κέρδει. καὶ μᾶλλον ζῶσι κατὰ λογισμὸν ἢ κατὰ τὸ ἦθος· ὁ μὲν γὰρ λογισμὸς τοῦ συμφέροντος τὸ δ' ἦθος τῆς ἀρετῆς ἐστιν.

ENGLISH

"possibly." They say everything this way and nothing definitely. They are ill-natured, for ill-nature is assuming the worst about everything. Further, they are suspicious because they are distrustful, and distrustful because of experience. For these reasons they neither love nor hate intensely. Following the advice of Bias, they love as though they will one day hate, and hate as though they will one day love.[21]

They are small-souled, because life has humbled them. They desire nothing great or out of the ordinary, only what they need to live. They are ungenerous, because property is one of the necessities, and at the same time experience has taught them how hard it is to acquire and how easy to lose. They are cowardly and fearful of everything in advance, because their condition is the opposite of the young: they are chilled, while the young are hot. So old age has paved the way for cowardice, since fear is a kind of chilling. They love life, and all the more on their last day, because desire is for what is absent and people desire most what they lack. They are more self-loving than they should be, since this too is a kind of smallness of soul.

They live for the advantageous and not for the fine, more than they should, because they are self-loving. 1390a The advantageous is good for oneself; the fine is good without qualification. They are shameless rather than prone to shame. Because they do not care for the fine as much as for the advantageous, they think little of how things look. They are despondent because of their experience, since most things that happen are bad and most things turn out for the worse; and also because of their cowardice. They live by memory rather than by hope, since what remains of their life is short and what is past is long, and hope is of the future, memory of the past. This is also why they are garrulous: they keep talking about what has happened, because they enjoy remembering.

Their fits of temper are sharp but weak. Some of their desires have failed and the rest are weak, so they are neither given to desire nor apt to act on their desires, but rather for the sake of gain. That is why people of that age appear moderate: their desires have slackened, and they are slaves to gain. They live by calculation more than by char-

21 Bias of Priene was another of the Seven Sages.

GREEK	ENGLISH
καὶ τἀδικήματα ἀδικοῦσιν εἰς κακουργίαν, οὐχ ὕβριν. ἐλεητικοὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ γέροντές εἰσιν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ διὰ ταὐτὰ τοῖς νέοις· οἱ μὲν γὰρ διὰ φιλανθρωπίαν, οἱ δὲ δι᾽ ἀσθένειαν· πάντα γὰρ οἴονται ἐγγὺς εἶναι αὐτοῖς παθεῖν, τοῦτο δ᾽ ἦν ἐλεητικόν, ὅθεν ὀδυρτικοί εἰσι, καὶ οὐκ εὐτράπελοι οὐδὲ φιλογέλοιοι· ἐναντίον γὰρ τὸ ὀδυρτικὸν τῷ φιλογέλωτι.	acter, since calculation is of the advantageous and character of excellence. The wrongs they commit come from villainy, not insolence. The old are inclined to pity too, but not for the same reasons as the young. The young pity out of humanity, the old out of weakness. They think every suffering is close at hand for them, and this, as we saw, is what makes people inclined to pity. So they are given to lamenting, and they are neither witty nor fond of laughter, since lamenting is the opposite of loving laughter.
τῶν μὲν οὖν νέων καὶ τῶν πρεσβυτέρων τὰ ἤθη τοιαῦτα, ὥστ᾽ ἐπεὶ ἀποδέχονται πάντες τοὺς τῷ σφετέρῳ ἤθει λεγομένους λόγους καὶ τοὺς ὁμοίους, οὐκ ἄδηλον πῶς χρώμενοι τοῖς λόγοις τοιοῦτοι φανοῦνται καὶ αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ λόγοι.	Such, then, are the characters of the young and the old. Everyone accepts speeches spoken in their own character, and speakers who are like themselves. So it is not hard to see how we should use our speeches so that both we and our speeches appear to be of that kind.

CHAPTER 14: THE CHARACTER OF THOSE IN THEIR PRIME

Those in their prime hold the mean between the young and the old.

GREEK	ENGLISH
οἱ δ᾽ ἀκμάζοντες φανερὸν ὅτι μεταξὺ τούτων τὸ ἦθος ἔσονται ἑκατέρων ἀφαιροῦντες τὴν ὑπερβολήν, καὶ οὔτε σφόδρα θαρροῦντες (θρασύτης γὰρ τὸ τοιοῦτον) οὔτε λίαν φοβούμενοι, καλῶς δὲ πρὸς ἄμφω ἔχοντες, οὔτε πᾶσι πιστεύοντες οὔτε πᾶσιν ἀπιστοῦντες, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὸ ἀληθὲς κρίνοντες μᾶλλον, καὶ οὔτε πρὸς τὸ καλὸν ζῶντες μόνον οὔτε πρὸς τὸ συμφέρον 1390b ἀλλὰ πρὸς ἄμφω, καὶ οὔτε πρὸς φειδὼ οὔτε πρὸς ἀσωτίαν ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸ ἁρμόττον. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ πρὸς θυμὸν καὶ πρὸς ἐπιθυμίαν. καὶ σώφρονες μετ᾽ ἀνδρίας καὶ ἀνδρεῖοι μετὰ σωφροσύνης. ἐν γὰρ τοῖς νέοις καὶ τοῖς γέρουσι διῄρηται ταῦτα· εἰσὶν γὰρ οἱ μὲν νέοι ἀνδρεῖοι καὶ ἀκόλαστοι, οἱ δὲ πρεσβύτεροι σώφρονες καὶ δειλοί.	Those in their prime will clearly have a character between these two, removing the excess of each. They are neither too confident (that would be rashness) nor too fearful, but in a good state toward both. They neither trust everyone nor distrust everyone, but judge rather by what is true. They live neither for the fine alone nor for the advantageous alone 1390b but for both, and incline neither to stinginess nor to extravagance but to what is fitting. Likewise with temper and desire. They are moderate with courage and courageous with moderation. In the young and the old these qualities are split apart: the young are courageous and self-indulgent, the older moderate and cowardly.
1390b ὡς δὲ καθόλου εἰπεῖν, ὅσα μὲν διῄρηται ἡ νεότης καὶ τὸ γῆρας τῶν ὠφελίμων, ταῦτα ἄμφω ἔχουσιν, ὅσα δὲ ὑπερβάλλουσιν ἢ ἐλλείπουσιν, τούτων τὸ μέτριον καὶ τὸ ἁρμόττον. ἀκμάζει δὲ τὸ μὲν σῶμα ἀπὸ τῶν τριάκοντα ἐτῶν μέχρι τῶν πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα, ἡ δὲ ψυχὴ περὶ τὰ ἐνὸς δεῖν πεντήκοντα. περὶ μὲν οὖν νεότητος καὶ γήρως καὶ ἀκμῆς, ποίων ἠθῶν ἕκαστόν ἐστιν, εἰρήσθω τοσαῦτα·	To put it generally, whatever advantages youth and age have divided between them, those in their prime have both. Where the young and the old exceed or fall short, those in their prime have the moderate and fitting amount. The body is in its prime from thirty to thirty-five, the soul at about forty-nine. So much for youth, old age and the prime of life, and the kind of character that goes with each.

CHAPTER 15: GOOD BIRTH

The character that goes with good birth: ambition, and contempt for others.

GREEK

περὶ δὲ τῶν ἀπὸ τύχης γιγνομένων ἀγαθῶν, δι' ὅσα αὐτῶν καὶ τὰ ἤθη ποιὰ ἄττα συμβαίνει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, λέγωμεν ἐφεξῆς. εὐγενείας μὲν οὖν ἦθός ἐστι τὸ φιλοτιμότερον εἶναι τὸν κεκτημένον αὐτήν· ἅπαντες γάρ, ὅταν ὑπάρχῃ τι, πρὸς τοῦτο σωρεύειν εἰώθασιν, ἡ δ' εὐγένεια ἐντιμότης προγόνων ἐστίν. καὶ καταφρονητικὸν καὶ τῶν ὁμοίων ἐστὶν τοῖς προγόνοις αὐτῶν, διότι πόρρω ταὐτὰ μᾶλλον ἢ ἐγγὺς γιγνόμενα ἐντιμότερα καὶ εὐαλαζόνευτα.

ἔστι δὲ εὐγενὲς μὲν κατὰ τὴν τοῦ γένους ἀρετήν, γενναῖον δὲ κατὰ τὸ μὴ ἐξίστασθαι τῆς φύσεως· ὅπερ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οὐ συμβαίνει τοῖς εὐγενέσιν, ἀλλ' εἰσὶν οἱ πολλοὶ εὐτελεῖς· φορὰ γὰρ τίς ἐστιν ἐν τοῖς γένεσιν ἀνδρῶν ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς κατὰ τὰς χώρας γιγνομένοις, καὶ ἐνίοτε ἂν ᾖ ἀγαθὸν τὸ γένος, ἐγγίνονται διά τινος χρόνου ἄνδρες περιττοί, κἄπειτα πάλιν ἀναδίδωσιν. ἐξίσταται δὲ τὰ μὲν εὐφυᾶ γένη εἰς μανικώτερα ἤθη, οἷον οἱ ἀπ' Ἀλκιβιάδου καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ Διονυσίου τοῦ προτέρου, τὰ δὲ στάσιμα εἰς ἀβελτερίαν καὶ νωθρότητα, οἷον οἱ ἀπὸ Κίμωνος καὶ Περικλέους καὶ Σωκράτους.

ENGLISH

Next let us speak about the goods that come from fortune, and which of them give rise to particular kinds of character in people. The character of good birth is that whoever has it is more ambitious. Everyone who has something tends to heap more on top of it, and good birth is the honor of one's ancestors. It also tends to look down even on people who are like one's own ancestors, because the same things are more honored, and easier to boast about, when they are far off than when they are close.

To be well-born is a matter of the excellence of one's family; to be noble is a matter of not degenerating from one's nature. For the most part this does not happen with the well-born: most of them are worthless. There is a kind of harvest in families of men, as there is in what the land produces. Sometimes, if the family is good, exceptional men are born in it for a while, and then it falls off again. Gifted families degenerate into rather manic characters, like the descendants of Alcibiades and of the elder Dionysius; steady ones into stupidity and sluggishness, like the descendants of Cimon, Pericles and Socrates.[22]

CHAPTER 16: WEALTH

The character of the rich, newly rich and long rich.

GREEK

τῷ δὲ πλούτῳ ἃ ἕπεται ἤθη, ἐπιπολῆς ἔστιν ἰδεῖν ἅπασιν· ὑβρισταὶ γὰρ καὶ ὑπερήφανοι, πάσχοντές τι ὑπὸ τῆς κτήσεως τοῦ πλούτου· ὥσπερ γὰρ ἔχοντες ἅπαντα τἀγαθὰ οὕτω διάκεινται· [1391a] ὁ δὲ πλοῦτος οἷον τιμή τις τῆς ἀξίας τῶν ἄλλων, διὸ φαίνεται ὤνια ἅπαντα εἶναι αὐτοῦ. καὶ τρυφεροὶ καὶ σαλάκωνες, τρυφεροὶ μὲν διὰ τὴν τρυφὴν καὶ τὴν ἔνδειξιν τῆς εὐδαιμονίας, σαλάκωνες δὲ καὶ σόλοικοι διὰ τὸ πάντας εἰωθέναι διατρίβειν περὶ τὸ ἐρώμενον καὶ θαυμαζόμενον ὑπ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τὸ οἴεσθαι ζηλοῦν τοὺς ἄλλους ἃ καὶ αὐτοί. ἅμα δὲ καὶ εἰκότως τοῦτο πάσχουσιν· πολλοὶ γάρ εἰσιν οἱ δεόμενοι τῶν ἐχόντων.

ENGLISH

The traits of character that go with wealth lie on the surface for anyone to see. The rich are insolent and arrogant, since the possession of wealth affects them somehow; they are disposed as though they had every good thing. [1391a] Wealth is a sort of standard for the value of everything else, which is why everything seems to be for sale to it. They are also luxurious and ostentatious: luxurious because of their luxury and the display of their happiness, ostentatious and vulgar because everyone is used to spending their time on what they love and admire, and because they think others covet what they themselves covet. At the same time, it's

22 Cimon and Pericles were leading Athenian statesmen of the fifth century BC.

GREEK

ENGLISH

natural for them to feel this way, since many people do need those who have money.

1391a ὅθεν καὶ τὸ Σιμωνίδου εἴρηται περὶ τῶν σοφῶν καὶ πλουσίων πρὸς τὴν γυναῖκα τὴν Ἱέρωνος ἐρομένην πότερον γενέσθαι κρεῖττον πλούσιον ἢ σοφόν· πλούσιον εἰπεῖν· "τοὺς σοφοὺς γάρ, ἔφη, ἔστιν ὁρᾶν ἐπὶ ταῖς τῶν πλουσίων θύραις διατρίβοντας·" καὶ τὸ οἴεσθαι ἀξίους εἶναι ἄρχειν· ἔχειν γὰρ οἴονται ὧν ἕνεκεν ἄρχειν ἄξιον. καὶ ὡς ἐν κεφαλαίῳ, ἀνοήτου εὐδαίμονος ἦθος πλούτου ἐστίν. διαφέρει δὲ τοῖς νεωστὶ κεκτημένοις καὶ τοῖς πάλαι τὰ ἤθη τῷ ἅπαντα μᾶλλον καὶ φαυλότερα τὰ κακὰ ἔχειν τοὺς νεοπλούτους· ὥσπερ γὰρ ἀπαιδευσία πλούτου ἐστὶ τὸ νεόπλουτον εἶναι. καὶ ἀδικήματα ἀδικοῦσιν οὐ κακουργικά, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν ὑβριστικὰ τὰ δὲ ἀκρατευτικά, οἷον εἰς αἰκίαν καὶ μοιχείαν.

Hence the remark of Simonides about the wise and the rich, made to Hiero's wife when she asked whether it was better to become rich or wise. "Rich," he said, "for one can see the wise spending their time at the doors of the rich." The rich also think themselves worthy to rule, because they think they have what makes one worthy of ruling. In sum, the character of wealth is that of a fortunate fool. The characters of the newly rich and of those rich for a long time differ in that the newly rich have all the faults to a greater and worse degree; being newly rich is a sort of lack of education in wealth. The wrongs they commit are not malicious but either insolent or due to lack of self-control, such as assault and adultery.[23]

CHAPTER 17: POWER AND GOOD FORTUNE

The character that power and good fortune produce.

GREEK

ENGLISH

ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ δυνάμεως σχεδὸν τὰ πλεῖστα φανερά ἐστιν ἤθη· τὰ μὲν γὰρ τὰ αὐτὰ ἔχει δύναμις τῷ πλούτῳ τὰ δὲ βελτίω· φιλοτιμότεροι γὰρ καὶ ἀνδρωδέστεροί εἰσιν τὰ ἤθη οἱ δυνάμενοι τῶν πλουσίων διὰ τὸ ἐφίεσθαι ἔργων ὅσα ἐξουσία αὐτοῖς πράττειν διὰ τὴν δύναμιν. καὶ σπουδαστικώτεροι διὰ τὸ ἐν ἐπιμελείᾳ εἶναι, ἀναγκαζόμενοι σκοπεῖν τὰ περὶ τὴν δύναμιν. καὶ σεμνότεροι ἢ βαρύτεροι· ποιεῖ γὰρ σεμνοτέρους τὸ ἀξίωμα, διὸ μετριάζουσιν· ἔστι δὲ ἡ σεμνότης μαλακὴ καὶ εὐσχήμων βαρύτης. κἂν ἀδικῶσιν, οὐ μικραδικηταί εἰσιν ἀλλὰ μεγαλάδικοι. ἡ δ' εὐτυχία κατὰ μόριά τε τῶν εἰρημένων ἔχει τὰ ἤθη· εἰς γὰρ ταῦτα συντείνουσιν αἱ μέγισται δοκοῦσαι εἶναι εὐτυχίαι· καὶ ἔτι εἰς εὐτεκνίαν καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ἀγαθὰ παρασκευάζει ἡ εὐτυχία πλεονεκτεῖν.

With power, similarly, most of the traits of character are fairly obvious. Power has some of the same traits as wealth and some better ones. The powerful are more ambitious and more manly in character than the rich, because they aim at deeds that their power gives them the license to perform. They are more serious, because they are in a position of responsibility and are compelled to keep an eye on whatever concerns their power. And they are dignified rather than severe; their rank makes them more dignified, which is why they act with moderation, and dignity is a mild and graceful severity. If they do wrong, they are not petty wrongdoers but great ones. Good fortune has traits corresponding to parts of those just described, since what are thought to be the greatest kinds of good fortune tend toward these things. Besides, good fortune also gives people an advantage in good children and in the goods of the body.

1391b ὑπερηφανώτεροι μὲν οὖν καὶ ἀλογιστότεροι διὰ τὴν εὐτυχίαν εἰσίν, ἓν δὲ ἀκολουθεῖ βέλτιστον ἦθος τῇ εὐτυχίᾳ, ὅτι φιλόθεοί εἰσι καὶ ἔχουσιν πρὸς τὸ θεῖόν πως, πιστεύοντες διὰ τὰ γιγνόμενα ἀπὸ τῆς τύχης. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν καθ' ἡλικίαν καὶ τύχην ἠθῶν εἴρηται· τὰ γὰρ ἐναντία

Good fortune makes people more arrogant and more thoughtless, but one excellent trait of character does go with it: the fortunate love the gods and stand in a certain relation to the divine, trusting in it because of what fortune has brought them. So much for the characters that go with age

23 Simonides was a lyric poet who lived at the court of Hiero, tyrant of Syracuse (478–467 BC).

GREEK	ENGLISH
τῶν εἰρημένων ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων φανερά ἐστιν, οἷον πένητος καὶ ἀτυχοῦς ἦθος καὶ ἀδυνάτου·	and fortune. The opposite characters are clear from the opposites of what has been said, such as the character of the poor, the unfortunate and the powerless.

CHAPTER 18: WHAT ALL KINDS OF SPEECH SHARE

Summary of the characters, and the common topics every kind of speech uses.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ τῶν πιθανῶν λόγων χρῆσις πρὸς κρίσιν ἐστί (περὶ ὧν γὰρ ἴσμεν καὶ κεκρίκαμεν, οὐδὲν ἔτι δεῖ λόγου) ἔστι δ' ἐάν τε πρὸς ἕνα τις τῷ λόγῳ χρώμενος προτρέπῃ ἢ ἀποτρέπῃ, οἷον οἱ νουθετοῦντες ποιοῦσιν ἢ πείθοντες (οὐδὲν γὰρ ἧττον κριτὴς ὁ εἷς· ὃν γὰρ δεῖ πεῖσαι, οὗτός ἐστιν ὡς εἰπεῖν ἁπλῶς κριτής) ἐάν τε πρὸς ἀμφισβητοῦντα ἐάν τε πρὸς ὑπόθεσιν λέγῃ τις, ὁμοίως· τῷ γὰρ λόγῳ ἀνάγκη χρῆσθαι καὶ ἀναιρεῖν τὰ ἐναντία, πρὸς ἃ ὥσπερ ἀμφισβητοῦντα τὸν λόγον ποιεῖται. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς· ὥσπερ γὰρ πρὸς κριτὴν τὸν θεωρὸν ὁ λόγος συνέστηκεν. ὅλως δὲ μόνος ἐστὶν ἁπλῶς κριτὴς ἐν τοῖς πολιτικοῖς ἀγῶσιν ὁ τὰ ζητούμενα κρίνων· τά τε γὰρ ἀμφισβητούμενα ζητεῖται πῶς ἔχει, καὶ περὶ ὧν βουλεύονται.	Now the use of persuasive speech is aimed at a judgment (about what we already know and have judged there is no further need of speech). This holds when someone uses speech to exhort or dissuade a single person, as people do when admonishing or persuading; the single person is no less a judge, since whoever you have to persuade is, so to speak, simply a judge. It holds equally whether one speaks against an opponent or against a proposed thesis: one has to use speech and refute the opposing arguments, against which one directs the speech as if against an opponent. The same goes for ceremonial speeches, where the speech is composed for the spectator as if he were a judge. But generally speaking, the only judge in the strict sense in political contests is the one who decides the questions under inquiry; what is inquired into is how the disputed points stand and what is being deliberated about.
περὶ δὲ τῶν κατὰ τὰς πολιτείας ἠθῶν ἐν τοῖς συμβουλευτικοῖς εἴρηται πρότερον, ὥστε διωρισμένον ἂν εἴη πῶς τε καὶ διὰ τίνων τοὺς λόγους ἠθικοὺς ποιητέον. ἐπεὶ δὲ περὶ ἕκαστον μὲν γένος τῶν λόγων ἕτερον ἦν τὸ τέλος, περὶ ἁπάντων δ' αὐτῶν εἰλημμέναι δόξαι καὶ προτάσεις εἰσὶν ἐξ ὧν τὰς πίστεις φέρουσιν καὶ συμβουλεύοντες καὶ ἐπιδεικνύμενοι καὶ ἀμφισβητοῦντες, ἔτι δὲ ἐξ ὧν ἠθικοὺς τοὺς λόγους ἐνδέχεται ποιεῖν, καὶ περὶ τούτων διώρισται, λοιπὸν ἡμῖν διελθεῖν περὶ τῶν κοινῶν· πᾶσι γὰρ ἀναγκαῖον τὸ περὶ τοῦ δυνατοῦ καὶ ἀδυνάτου προσχρῆσθαι ἐν τοῖς λόγοις, καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὡς ἔσται τοὺς δὲ ὡς γέγονε πειρᾶσθαι δεικνύναι.	The characters that go with the different constitutions were discussed earlier, in the treatment of deliberative speeches, so it should now be settled how, and by what means, we are to make our speeches reveal character. Each kind of speech, as we saw, had a different end. For all of them we have covered the opinions and premises from which people draw their proofs when deliberating, when giving displays and when disputing, as well as those from which it is possible to make speeches reveal character. It remains for us to go through what is common to all of them. Everyone must make additional use in their speeches of the possible and the impossible, and try to show, some that a thing will be, others that it has happened.
ἔτι δὲ περὶ μεγέθους κοινὸν ἁπάντων ἐστὶ τῶν λόγων· χρῶνται γὰρ πάντες τῷ μειοῦν καὶ αὔξειν καὶ συμβουλεύοντες καὶ ἐπαινοῦντες ἢ ψέγοντες καὶ κατηγοροῦντες ἢ ἀπολογούμενοι. [1392a] τούτων δὲ διορισθέντων περὶ τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων κοινῇ πειραθῶμεν	Further, magnitude is common to all speeches: everyone diminishes and amplifies, whether deliberating, praising or blaming, accusing or defending. [1392a] Once these have been defined, let us try to say something about enthymemes in gener-

GREEK	ENGLISH
εἰπεῖν, εἴ τι ἔχομεν, καὶ περὶ παραδειγμάτων, ὅπως τὰ λοιπὰ προσθέντες ἀποδῶμεν τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς πρόθεσιν. ἔστιν δὲ τῶν κοινῶν τὸ μὲν αὔξειν οἰκειότατον τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, τὸ δὲ γεγονὸς τοῖς δικανικοῖς (περὶ τούτων γὰρ ἡ κρίσις), τὸ δὲ δυνατὸν καὶ ἐσόμενον τοῖς συμβουλευτικοῖς.	al, if we have anything to say, and about examples, so that by adding what remains we may complete our original plan. Of the common elements, amplification is most at home in ceremonial speeches, as has been said; the past in forensic ones (since the judgment is about past events); and the possible and the future in deliberative ones.

CHAPTER 19: THE POSSIBLE, FACT, AND MAGNITUDE

Common topics: possible and impossible, past and future fact, greatness and smallness.

GREEK	ENGLISH
1392a πρῶτον μὲν οὖν περὶ δυνατοῦ καὶ ἀδυνάτου λέγωμεν. ἂν δὴ τὸ ἐναντίον ᾖ δυνατὸν ἢ εἶναι ἢ γενέσθαι, καὶ τὸ ἐναντίον δόξειεν ἂν εἶναι δυνατόν, οἷον εἰ δυνατὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑγιασθῆναι, καὶ νοσῆσαι· ἡ γὰρ αὐτὴ δύναμις τῶν ἐναντίων, ᾗ ἐναντία. καὶ εἰ τὸ ὅμοιον δυνατόν, καὶ τὸ ὅμοιον. καὶ εἰ τὸ χαλεπώτερον δυνατόν, καὶ τὸ ῥᾷον. καὶ εἰ τὸ σπουδαῖον καὶ καλὸν γενέσθαι δυνατόν, καὶ ὅλως δυνατὸν γενέσθαι· χαλεπώτερον γὰρ καλὴν οἰκίαν ἢ οἰκίαν εἶναι. καὶ οὗ ἡ ἀρχὴ δύναται γενέσθαι, καὶ τὸ τέλος· οὐδὲν γὰρ γίγνεται οὐδ' ἄρχεται γίγνεσθαι τῶν ἀδυνάτων, οἷον τὸ σύμμετρον τὴν διάμετρον εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν ἄρξαιτο γίγνεσθαι οὔτε γίγνεται. καὶ οὗ τὸ τέλος, καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ δυνατή· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἐξ ἀρχῆς γίγνεται.	Let us speak first about the possible and the impossible. If one of a pair of opposites can be or come to be, the other would also seem to be possible: if a person can be cured, he can also fall ill, since the same capacity covers opposites, insofar as they are opposites. If one of two similar things is possible, so is the other. If the harder thing is possible, so is the easier. If something can come into being as a good and fine thing, it can come into being at all, since a fine house is harder to achieve than a house. Whatever can have its beginning come to be can have its end come to be too; nothing impossible comes to be or even begins to come to be. For the diagonal to be commensurable, for instance, would neither begin to come to be nor does it come to be. And whatever can have its end can have its beginning, since everything comes from a beginning.[24]
καὶ εἰ τὸ ὕστερον τῇ οὐσίᾳ ἢ τῇ γενέσει δυνατὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ τὸ πρότερον, οἷον εἰ ἄνδρα γενέσθαι δυνατόν, καὶ παῖδα· (πρότερον γὰρ ἐκεῖνο γίγνεται), καὶ εἰ παῖδα, καὶ ἄνδρα· (καὶ ἀρχὴ γὰρ ἐκείνη). καὶ ὧν ἢ ἔρως ἢ ἐπιθυμία φύσει ἐστίν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀδυνάτων ἐρᾷ οὐδὲ ἐπιθυμεῖ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ. καὶ ὧν ἐπιστῆμαί εἰσι καὶ τέχναι, δυνατὰ ταῦτα καὶ ἔστι καὶ γίγνεται. καὶ ὅσων ἡ ἀρχὴ τῆς γενέσεως ἐν τούτοις ἐστὶν ἃ ἡμεῖς ἀναγκάσαιμεν ἂν ἢ πείσαιμεν· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν ὧν κρείττους ἢ κύριοι ἢ φίλοι.	If what is later in being or in coming-to-be can come to be, so can what is earlier: if a man can come to be, so can a boy, since the boy comes first; and if a boy, then a man, since the boy is a beginning too. Things for which there is a natural love or desire are possible, since as a rule nobody loves or desires what is impossible. Things that are the objects of sciences and arts are possible: they both are and come to be. So are things whose coming-to-be begins with what we could compel or persuade, that is, with people we are stronger than, or masters of, or friends with.
καὶ ὧν τὰ μέρη δυνατά, καὶ τὸ ὅλον, καὶ ὧν τὸ ὅλον δυνατόν, καὶ τὰ μέρη ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ· εἰ γὰρ πρόσχισμα καὶ κεφαλὶς καὶ χιτὼν δύναται γενέσθαι, καὶ ὑποδήματα δυνατὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ εἰ ὑποδήματα, καὶ πρόσχισμα καὶ κεφαλίς, καὶ εἰ τὸ γένος ὅλον 1392b τῶν δυνατῶν	Where the parts are possible, so is the whole; and where the whole is possible, so, as a rule, are the parts. If a vamp, a toecap and an upper can be made, shoes can be made; and if shoes, then vamp and toecap. If the whole genus 1392b is among the

24 That is, commensurable with the side of the square, a standard example of a mathematical impossibility.

GREEK

γενέσθαι, καὶ τὸ εἶδος, καὶ εἰ τὸ εἶδος, καὶ τό γένος, οἷον εἰ πλοῖον γενέσθαι δυνατόν, καὶ τριήρη, καὶ εἰ τριήρη, καὶ πλοῖον. καὶ εἰ θάτερον τῶν πρὸς ἄλληλα πεφυκότων, καὶ θάτερον, οἷον εἰ διπλάσιον, καὶ ἥμισυ, καὶ εἰ ἥμισυ, διπλάσιον. καὶ εἰ ἄνευ τέχνης καὶ παρασκευῆς δυνατὸν γίγνεσθαι, μᾶλλον διὰ τέχνης καὶ ἐπιμελείας δυνατόν, ὅθεν καὶ Ἀγάθωνι εἴρηται καὶ μὴν τὰ μέν γε τῇ τέχνῃ πράσσει, τὰ δὲ / ἡμῖν ἀνάγκῃ καὶ τύχῃ προσγίγνεται.

1392b καὶ εἰ τοῖς χείροσι καὶ ἥττοσι καὶ ἀφρονεστέροις δυνατόν, καὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις μᾶλλον, ὥσπερ καὶ Ἰσοκράτης ἔφη δεινὸν εἶναι εἰ ὁ μὲν Εὔθυνος ἔμαθεν, αὐτὸς δὲ μὴ δυνήσεται εὑρεῖν. περὶ δὲ ἀδυνάτου δῆλον ὅτι ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τοῖς εἰρημένοις ὑπάρχει. εἰ δὲ γέγονεν, ἐκ τῶνδε σκεπτέον. πρῶτον μὲν γάρ, εἰ τὸ ἧττον γίγνεσθαι πεφυκὸς γέγονεν, γεγονὸς ἂν εἴη καὶ τὸ μᾶλλον. καὶ εἰ τὸ ὕστερον εἰωθὸς γίγνεσθαι γέγονεν, καὶ τὸ πρότερον γέγονεν, οἷον εἰ ἐπιλέλησται, καὶ ἔμαθέ ποτε τοῦτο. καὶ εἰ ἐδύνατο καὶ ἐβούλετο, πέπραχε· πάντες γάρ, ὅταν δυνάμενοι βουληθῶσι, πράττουσιν· ἐμποδὼν γὰρ οὐδέν.

ἔτι εἰ ἐβούλετο καὶ μηδὲν τῶν ἔξω ἐκώλυεν, καὶ εἰ δυνατὸν καὶ ὠργίζετο, καὶ εἰ ἐδύνατο καὶ ἐπεθύμει· ὡς γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, ὧν ὀρέγονται, ἂν δύνωνται, ποιοῦσιν, οἱ μὲν φαῦλοι δι' ἀκρασίαν, οἱ δ' ἐπιεικεῖς ὅτι τῶν ἐπιεικῶν ἐπιθυμοῦσιν. καὶ εἰ ἔμελλε γίγνεσθαι καὶ ποιεῖν· εἰκὸς γὰρ τὸν μέλλοντα καὶ ποιῆσαι. καὶ εἰ γέγονεν ὅσα ἢ πεφύκει πρὸ ἐκείνου ἢ ἕνεκα ἐκείνου, οἷον εἰ ἤστραψε, καὶ ἐβρόντησεν, καὶ εἰ ἐπείρασε, καὶ ἔπραξεν. καὶ εἰ ὅσα ὕστερον πεφύκει γίγνεσθαι ἢ οὗ ἕνεκα γίγνεται γέγονε, καὶ τὸ πρότερον καὶ τὸ τούτου ἕνεκα γέγονεν, οἷον εἰ ἐβρόντησε, καὶ ἤστραψεν, καὶ εἰ ἔπραξεν, ἐπείρασεν. ἔστι δὲ τούτων ἁπάντων τὰ μὲν ἐξ ἀνάγκης τὰ δ' ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οὕτως ἔχοντα.

περὶ δὲ τοῦ μὴ γεγονέναι φανερὸν ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τοῖς εἰρημένοις. 1393a καὶ περὶ τοῦ ἐσομένου ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν

ENGLISH

things that can come into being, so is the species; and if the species, the genus: if a boat can come into being, so can a trireme, and if a trireme, a boat. If one of two naturally correlated things is possible, so is the other: if double, then half, and if half, then double. And if something can come about without art or preparation, it is all the more possible through art and care. Hence Agathon's lines: "Indeed, some things are achieved by art, while others / come to us by necessity and chance."[25]

If something is possible for people who are worse, weaker and more foolish, it is all the more possible for their opposites. As Isocrates said, it would be outrageous if Euthynus had learned something and he himself couldn't discover it. As for the impossible, it obviously follows from the opposites of what has been said. Whether something has happened is to be examined from the following. First, if what is less naturally likely to happen has happened, then what is more likely would have happened too. If what usually happens later has happened, what comes earlier has happened too: if someone has forgotten something, he also once learned it. If he was able and wanted to, he did it; everyone acts when they are able and want to, since nothing stands in the way.

Again, if he wanted to and nothing outside him prevented him; if it was possible and he was angry; if he was able and had the desire. As a rule people do what they long for, if they can: bad people from lack of self-control, decent people because what they desire is decent. Also if something was about to happen, or he was about to do it, since it is probable that someone who was about to do something did it. Also if what naturally comes before something, or is for its sake, has happened: if there was lightning, there was also thunder, and if he attempted it, he also did it. And if what naturally happens later, or that for the sake of which something happens, has happened, then the earlier thing, and what is for its sake, has happened too: if it thundered, there was lightning, and if he did it, he attempted it. Of all these, some hold of necessity, others only as a rule.

That something has not happened is clear from the opposites of what has been said. 1393a What will

25 Agathon was an Athenian tragic poet of the late fifth century BC.

GREEK	ENGLISH
δῆλον· τό τε γὰρ ἐν δυνάμει καὶ ἐν βουλήσει ὂν ἔσται, καὶ τὰ ἐν ἐπιθυμίᾳ καὶ ὀργῇ καὶ λογισμῷ μετὰ δυνάμεως ὄντα, ταῦτα καὶ ἐν ὁρμῇ τοῦ ποιεῖν ἢ μελλήσει ἔσται· ὡς γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ γίγνεται μᾶλλον τὰ μέλλοντα ἢ τὰ μὴ μέλλοντα. καὶ εἰ προγέγονε ὅσα πρότερον πεφύκει γίγνεσθαι, οἷον εἰ συννεφεῖ, εἰκὸς ὗσαι. καὶ εἰ τὸ ἕνεκα τούτου γέγονε, καὶ τοῦτο εἰκὸς γενέσθαι, οἷον εἰ θεμέλιος, καὶ οἰκία. περὶ δὲ μεγέθους καὶ μικρότητος τῶν πραγμάτων καὶ μείζονός τε καὶ ἐλάττονος καὶ ὅλως μεγάλων καὶ μικρῶν ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων ἡμῖν ἐστιν φανερόν.	be is also clear from the same considerations. What is within someone's power and wish will be; and what lies in desire, anger or calculation, combined with power, will be too, once there is an impulse or an intention to act. As a rule, what is about to happen happens more often than what is not. Also if what naturally happens earlier has already happened: if it is cloudy, it will probably rain. And if what is for the sake of something has happened, that thing too will probably happen: if there is a foundation, there will be a house. As for the greatness and smallness of things, the greater and the lesser, and great and small things generally, all this is clear to us from what was said before.
1393a εἴρηται γὰρ ἐν τοῖς συμβουλευτικοῖς περί τε μεγέθους ἀγαθῶν καὶ περὶ τοῦ μείζονος ἁπλῶς καὶ ἐλάττονος, ὥστε ἐπεὶ καθ' ἕκαστον τῶν λόγων τὸ προκείμενον τέλος ἀγαθόν ἐστιν, οἷον τὸ συμφέρον καὶ τὸ καλὸν καὶ τὸ δίκαιον, φανερὸν ὅτι δι' ἐκείνων ληπτέον τὰς αὐξήσεις πᾶσιν. τὸ δὲ παρὰ ταῦτα ἔτι ζητεῖν περὶ μεγέθους ἁπλῶς καὶ ὑπεροχῆς κενολογεῖν ἐστιν· κυριώτερα γάρ ἐστιν πρὸς τὴν χρείαν τῶν καθόλου τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα τῶν πραγμάτων. περὶ μὲν οὖν δυνατοῦ καὶ ἀδυνάτου, καὶ πότερον γέγονεν ἢ οὐ γέγονεν καὶ ἔσται ἢ οὐκ ἔσται, ἔτι δὲ περὶ μεγέθους καὶ μικρότητος τῶν πραγμάτων εἰρήσθω ταῦτα.	In the discussion of deliberative speeches we spoke both about the magnitude of goods and about the greater and the lesser in general. Since in each kind of speech the proposed end is a good, namely the advantageous, the fine and the just, it is clear that everyone must draw their amplifications from these. To go on, beyond these, to inquire into magnitude and superiority in the abstract is idle talk, since in practice particulars count for more than universals. So much, then, for the possible and the impossible, whether something has or has not happened and will or will not be, and the greatness and smallness of things.

CHAPTER 20: EXAMPLE

The two kinds of example: historical parallels and invented ones, such as fables.

GREEK	ENGLISH
λοιπὸν δὲ περὶ τῶν κοινῶν πίστεων ἅπασιν εἰπεῖν, ἐπεί περ εἴρηται περὶ τῶν ἰδίων. εἰσὶ δ' αἱ κοιναὶ πίστεις δύο τῷ γένει, παράδειγμα καὶ ἐνθύμημα· ἡ γὰρ γνώμη μέρος ἐνθυμήματός ἐστίν. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν περὶ παραδείγματος λέγωμεν· ὅμοιον γὰρ ἐπαγωγῇ τὸ παράδειγμα, ἡ δ' ἐπαγωγὴ ἀρχή. παραδειγμάτων δὲ εἴδη δύο· ἓν μὲν γάρ ἐστιν παραδείγματος εἶδος τὸ λέγειν πράγματα προγεγενημένα, ἓν δὲ τὸ αὐτὸν ποιεῖν. τούτου δὲ ἓν μὲν παραβολὴ ἓν δὲ λόγοι, οἷον οἱ Αἰσώπειοι καὶ Λιβυκοί.	It remains to speak about the proofs common to all kinds of speech, since we have spoken about the specific ones. The common proofs are of two kinds: example and enthymeme, for the maxim is part of an enthymeme. Let us speak first about example, since example resembles induction, and induction is a starting point. There are two kinds of example. One consists in citing things that have happened before, the other in making them up oneself. Of the latter, one sort is comparison, the other fables, like those of Aesop and the Libyan fables.[26]
ἔστιν δὲ τὸ μὲν πράγματα λέγειν τοιόνδε τι, ὥσπερ εἴ τις λέγοι ὅτι δεῖ πρὸς βασιλέα παρασκευάζεσθαι καὶ μὴ ἐᾶν	Citing things that have happened is something like this. Suppose someone says that we must pre-

26 Aesop was the legendary sixth-century BC teller of animal fables; the "Libyan" fables were another traditional collection.

GREEK

Αἴγυπτον χειρώσασθαι· καὶ γὰρ πρότερον Δαρεῖος οὐ πρότερον διέβη πρὶν Αἴγυπτον ἔλαβεν, [1393b] λαβὼν δὲ διέβη, καὶ πάλιν Ξέρξης οὐ πρότερον ἐπεχείρησεν πρὶν ἔλαβεν, λαβὼν δὲ διέβη, ὥστε καὶ οὗτος ἐὰν λάβῃ, διαβήσεται, διὸ οὐκ ἐπιτρεπτέον. παραβολὴ δὲ τὰ Σωκρατικά οἷον εἴ τις λέγοι ὅτι οὐ δεῖ κληρωτοὺς ἄρχειν. ὅμοιον γὰρ ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις τοὺς ἀθλητὰς κληροίη μὴ οἳ δύνανται ἀγωνίζεσθαι ἀλλ' οἳ ἂν λάχωσιν, ἢ τῶν πλωτήρων ὅν τινα δεῖ κυβερνᾶν κληρώσειεν, ὡς οὐ δέον τὸν ἐπιστάμενον ἀλλὰ τὸν λαχόντα. λόγος δέ, οἷος ὁ Στησιχόρου περὶ Φαλάριδος καὶ Αἰσώπου ὑπὲρ τοῦ δημαγωγοῦ.

ENGLISH

pare against the King and not let him subdue Egypt: in the past Darius did not cross over until he had taken Egypt, [1393b] but once he had taken it, he crossed; and again Xerxes did not attack until he had taken it, but once he had taken it, he crossed; so this king too will cross if he takes it, and we must not allow it. Comparison is the Socratic kind of thing. Suppose someone says that officials should not be chosen by lot. That is like choosing athletes by lot, not those able to compete but whoever the lot falls on, or choosing by lot which of the sailors should steer, as if it should be the one the lot falls on and not the one who knows how. A fable is like Stesichorus' fable about Phalaris, or Aesop's on behalf of the demagogue.[27]

1393b Στησίχορος μὲν γὰρ ἑλομένων στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα τῶν Ἱμεραίων Φάλαριν καὶ μελλόντων φυλακὴν διδόναι τοῦ σώματος, τἆλλα διαλεχθεὶς εἶπεν αὐτοῖς λόγον ὡς ἵππος κατεῖχε λειμῶνα μόνος, ἐλθόντος δ' ἐλάφου καὶ διαφθείροντος τὴν νομὴν βουλόμενος τιμωρήσασθαι τὸν ἔλαφον ἠρώτα τινὰ ἄνθρωπον εἰ δύναιτ' ἂν μετ' αὐτοῦ τιμωρήσασθαι τὸν ἔλαφον, ὁ δ' ἔφησεν, ἐὰν λάβῃ χαλινὸν καὶ αὐτὸς ἀναβῇ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ἔχων ἀκόντια· συνομολογήσαντος δὲ καὶ ἀναβάντος ἀντὶ τοῦ τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτὸς ἐδούλευσε τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ. "οὕτω δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς", ἔφη, "ὁρᾶτε μὴ βουλόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους τιμωρήσασθαι τὸ αὐτὸ πάθητε τῷ ἵππῳ· τὸν μὲν γὰρ χαλινὸν ἔχετε ἤδη, ἑλόμενοι στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα· ἐὰν δὲ φυλακὴν δῶτε καὶ ἀναβῆναι ἐάσητε, δουλεύσετε ἤδη Φαλάριδι".

When the people of Himera had chosen Phalaris as general with absolute power and were about to give him a bodyguard, Stesichorus, after making his other points, told them a fable. A horse had a meadow to himself. A stag came and ruined his pasture, and the horse, wanting to take revenge on the stag, asked a man whether he could help him get revenge on it. The man said yes, if the horse would take a bridle and let him mount it with javelins in hand. The horse agreed, the man mounted, and instead of getting his revenge the horse became the man's slave. "So you too," he said, "take care that, in your wish to take revenge on your enemies, you don't suffer the same fate as the horse. You already have the bridle, since you have chosen a general with absolute power. If you give him a bodyguard and let him mount you, you will be Phalaris' slaves from then on."[28]

Αἴσωπος δὲ ἐν Σάμῳ δημηγορῶν κρινομένου δημαγωγοῦ περὶ θανάτου ἔφη ἀλώπεκα διαβαίνουσαν ποταμὸν ἀπωσθῆναι εἰς φάραγγα, οὐ δυναμένην δὲ ἐκβῆναι πολὺν χρόνον κακοπαθεῖν καὶ κυνοραϊστὰς πολλοὺς ἔχεσθαι αὐτῆς, ἐχῖνον δὲ πλανώμενον, ὡς εἶδεν αὐτήν, κατοικτείραντα ἐρωτᾶν εἰ ἀφέλοι αὐτῆς τοὺς κυνοραϊστάς, τὴν δὲ οὐκ ἐᾶν· ἐρομένου δὲ διὰ τί, ὅτι οὗτοι μὲν φάναι ἤδη μου πλήρεις εἰσὶ καὶ ὀλίγον ἕλκουσιν αἷμα, ἐὰν δὲ τούτους ἀφέλητε, ἕτεροι ἐλθόντες πεινῶντες ἐκπιοῦνταί μου τὸ λοιπὸν αἷμα.

Aesop, speaking before the assembly in Samos when a demagogue was on trial for his life, said that a fox crossing a river was swept into a ravine. Unable to climb out, she suffered for a long time, and many dog-ticks fastened onto her. A hedgehog wandering by saw her, took pity on her and asked whether he should pull the ticks off her. She refused. When he asked why, she said, "These are already full of me and draw little blood; if you take them off, others will come hungry and drink up the rest of my blood."

"ἀτὰρ καὶ ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες Σάμιοι, οὗτος μὲν οὐδὲν ἔτι βλάψει (πλούσιος γάρ ἐστιν), ἐὰν δὲ τοῦτον ἀποκτείνητε,

"So with you too, men of Samos: this man will do you no more harm, since he is rich. But if you put

27 "The King" is the king of Persia; Darius I and Xerxes were the Persian kings who invaded Greece in 490 and 480 BC.
28 Stesichorus was a Sicilian lyric poet (c. 600 BC); Phalaris was a notoriously cruel tyrant of Acragas in Sicily.

GREEK

ENGLISH

1394a ἕτεροι ἥξουσι πένητες, οἳ ὑμῖν ἀναλώσουσι τὰ λοιπὰ κλέπτοντες." εἰσὶ δ' οἱ λόγοι δημηγορικοί, καὶ ἔχουσιν ἀγαθὸν τοῦτο, ὅτι πράγματα μὲν εὑρεῖν ὅμοια γεγενημένα χαλεπόν, λόγους δὲ ῥᾷον· ποιῆσαι γὰρ δεῖ ὥσπερ καὶ παραβολάς, ἄν τις δύνηται τὸ ὅμοιον ὁρᾶν, ὅ περ ῥᾴόν ἐστιν ἐκ φιλοσοφίας. ῥᾷον μὲν οὖν πορίσασθαι τὰ διὰ τῶν λόγων, χρησιμώτερα δὲ πρὸς τὸ βουλεύσασθαι τὰ διὰ τῶν πραγμάτων· ὅμοια γὰρ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ τὰ μέλλοντα τοῖς γεγονόσιν.

1394a him to death, [1394a] others will come who are poor, and they will steal and spend what you have left." Fables are suited to speaking in the assembly, and they have this advantage: it is hard to find similar things that have actually happened, but fables are easier. One has to make them up, as with comparisons, if one can see the likeness, and philosophy makes that easier. So material from fables is easier to come by, but material from actual events is more useful for deliberation, since as a rule the future resembles the past.

1394a δεῖ δὲ χρῆσθαι τοῖς παραδείγμασι οὐκ ἔχοντα μὲν ἐνθυμήματα ὡς ἀποδείξεσιν· (ἡ γὰρ πίστις διὰ τούτων), ἔχοντα δὲ ὡς μαρτυρίοις, ἐπιλόγῳ χρώμενον τοῖς ἐνθυμήμασιν· προτιθέμενα μὲν γὰρ ἔοικεν ἐπαγωγῇ, τοῖς δὲ ῥητορικοῖς οὐκ οἰκεῖον ἐπαγωγὴ πλὴν ἐν ὀλίγοις, ἐπιλεγόμενα δὲ μαρτυρίοις, ὁ δὲ μάρτυς πανταχοῦ πιθανός. διὸ καὶ προτιθέντι μὲν ἀνάγκη πολλὰ λέγειν, ἐπιλέγοντι δὲ καὶ ἓν ἱκανόν· μάρτυς γὰρ χρηστὸς καὶ εἷς χρήσιμος. πόσα μὲν οὖν εἴδη παραδειγμάτων, καὶ πῶς αὐτοῖς καὶ πότε χρηστέον, εἴρηται·

When one has no enthymemes, one should use examples as demonstrations, since that is where the proof lies. When one has them, one should use examples as testimony, as a supplement to the enthymemes. Placed first, they resemble induction, and induction is not suited to rhetoric except in a few cases; placed after, they resemble testimony, and a witness is persuasive everywhere. That is why, if you put them first, you have to cite many, but if you put them after, even one is enough, since even a single good witness is useful. We have now said how many kinds of examples there are, and how and when to use them.

CHAPTER 21: MAXIMS

What a maxim is, and when and by whom maxims should be used.

GREEK

ENGLISH

περὶ δὲ γνωμολογίας, ῥηθέντος τί ἐστιν γνώμη, μάλιστ' ἂν γένοιτο φανερὸν περὶ ποίων τε καὶ πότε καὶ τίσιν ἁρμόττει χρῆσθαι τῷ γνωμολογεῖν ἐν τοῖς λόγοις. ἔστι δ' ἡ γνώμη ἀπόφανσις, οὐ μέντοι οὔτε περὶ τῶν καθ' ἕκαστον, οἷον ποῖός τις Ἰφικράτης, ἀλλὰ καθόλου· καὶ οὐ περὶ πάντων, οἷον ὅτι τὸ εὐθὺ τῷ καμπύλῳ ἐναντίον, ἀλλὰ περὶ ὅσων αἱ πράξεις εἰσί, καὶ αἱρετὰ ἢ φευκτά ἐστι πρὸς τὸ πράττειν, ὥστ' ἐπεὶ τὰ ἐνθυμήματα ὁ περὶ τοιούτων συλλογισμός ἐστιν, σχεδὸν τὰ συμπεράσματα τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων καὶ αἱ ἀρχαὶ ἀφαιρεθέντος τοῦ συλλογισμοῦ γνῶμαί εἰσιν, οἷον χρὴ δ' οὔ ποθ' ὅς τις ἀρτίφρων πέφυκ' ἀνήρ, / παῖδας περισσῶς ἐκδιδάσκεσθαι σοφούς.

As for using maxims, once we have said what a maxim is, it should become quite clear on what subjects, when, and by whom it is fitting to use maxims in speeches. A maxim is a statement, not, however, about particulars, such as what sort of man Iphicrates is, but universal. Nor is it about everything, such as that the straight is opposite to the curved, but about whatever actions are concerned with, and about what is to be chosen or avoided in acting. So since enthymemes are the syllogism about such matters, the conclusions and the premises of enthymemes, with the syllogism taken away, are pretty much maxims. For instance: "No man who is sensible by nature should ever / have his children taught to be exceedingly wise."[29]

τοῦτο μὲν οὖν γνώμη· προστεθείσης δὲ τῆς αἰτίας καὶ τοῦ διὰ τί ἐνθύμημά ἐστιν τὸ ἄπαν, οἷον χωρὶς γὰρ ἄλλης ἧς

That, then, is a maxim. But when the cause and the reason why are added, the whole is an enthym-

29 The lines are from Euripides' *Medea*.

GREEK

ENGLISH

ἔχουσιν ἀργίας, / φθόνον παρ' ἀστῶν ἀλφάνουσι δυσμενῆ. [1394b] καὶ τὸ οὐκ ἔστιν ὅς τις πάντ' ἀνὴρ εὐδαιμονεῖ καὶ τὸ οὐκ ἔστιν ἀνδρῶν ὅς τις ἔστ' ἐλεύθερος γνώμη, πρὸς δὲ τῷ ἐχομένῳ ἐνθύμημα ἢ χρημάτων γὰρ δοῦλός ἐστιν ἢ τύχης. εἰ δή ἐστιν γνώμη τὸ εἰρημένον, ἀνάγκη τέτταρα εἴδη εἶναι γνώμης· ἢ γὰρ μετ' ἐπιλόγου ἔσται ἢ ἄνευ ἐπιλόγου. ἀποδείξεως μὲν οὖν δεόμεναί εἰσιν ὅσαι παράδοξόν τι λέγουσιν ἢ ἀμφισβητούμενον· ὅσαι δὲ μηδὲν παράδοξον, ἄνευ ἐπιλόγου.

eme. For instance: "For besides the idleness they are guilty of, / they earn hostile envy from their fellow citizens." [1394b] Again, "There is no man who is happy in all things" and "There is no man who is free" are maxims, but with the line that follows, the latter becomes an enthymeme: "For he is a slave either to money or to fortune." If a maxim is what we have said, there must be four kinds of maxim, since a maxim will come either with an added reason or without one. Those that need demonstration are the ones that say something paradoxical or disputed; those that say nothing paradoxical go without an added reason.

1394b τούτων δ' ἀνάγκη τὰς μὲν διὰ τὸ προεγνῶσθαι μηδὲν δεῖσθαι ἐπιλόγου, οἷον ἀνδρὶ δ' ὑγιαίνειν ἄριστόν ἐστιν, ὥς γ' ἡμῖν δοκεῖ (φαίνεται μὲν γὰρ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὕτω), τὰς δ' ἅμα λεγομένας δήλας εἶναι ἐπιβλέψασιν, οἷον οὐδεὶς ἐραστὴς ὅς τις οὐκ ἀεὶ φιλεῖ. τῶν δὲ μετ' ἐπιλόγου αἱ μὲν ἐνθυμήματος μέρος εἰσίν, ὥσπερ χρὴ δ' οὔ ποθ' ὅς τις ἀρτίφρων, αἱ δ' ἐνθυμηματικαὶ μέν, οὐκ ἐνθυμήματος δὲ μέρος· αἵ περ καὶ μάλιστ' εὐδοκιμοῦσιν. εἰσὶν δ' αὗται ἐν ὅσαις ἐμφαίνεται τοῦ λεγομένου τὸ αἴτιον, οἷον ἐν τῷ ἀθάνατον ὀργὴν μὴ φύλασσε θνητὸς ὤν· τὸ μὲν γὰρ φάναι "μὴ δεῖν φυλάττειν" γνώμη, τὸ δὲ προσκείμενον "θνητὸν ὄντα" τὸ διὰ τί. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ θνατὰ χρὴ τὸν θνατόν, οὐκ ἀθάνατα τὸν θνατὸν φρονεῖν.

Of these, some necessarily need no added reason because they are already known, such as "For a man, health is best, as it seems to us at least" (since that is how most people see it). Others are clear as soon as they are said, to anyone who looks at them, such as "No one is a lover who does not love forever." Of those with an added reason, some are part of an enthymeme, such as "No man who is sensible"; others are enthymematic but not part of an enthymeme, and these are the most highly regarded. They are the ones in which the cause of what is said shows through, as in "Do not, being mortal, keep your anger immortal." To say that one should not keep it is a maxim; the addition "being mortal" is the reason why. Similarly: "A mortal should think mortal thoughts, not immortal ones."

φανερὸν οὖν ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων πόσα τε εἴδη γνώμης, καὶ περὶ ποῖον ἕκαστον ἁρμόττει· περὶ μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἀμφισβητουμένων ἢ παραδόξων μὴ ἄνευ ἐπιλόγου, ἀλλ' ἢ προθέντα τὸν ἐπίλογον γνώμῃ χρῆσθαι τῷ συμπεράσματι, οἷον εἴ τις εἴποι, "ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν, ἐπειδὴ οὔτε φθονεῖσθαι δεῖ οὔτ' ἀργὸν εἶναι, οὔ φημι χρῆναι παιδεύεσθαι," ἢ τοῦτο προειπόντα ἐπειπεῖν τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, περὶ δὲ τῶν μὴ παραδόξων ἀδήλων δὲ προστιθέντα τὸ διότι στρογγυλώτατα. ἁρμόττει δ' ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις καὶ τὰ Λακωνικὰ ἀποφθέγματα καὶ τὰ αἰνιγματώδη, [1395a] οἷον εἴ τις λέγει ὅ περ Στησίχορος ἐν Λοκροῖς εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ δεῖ ὑβριστὰς εἶναι, ὅπως μὴ οἱ τέττιγες χαμόθεν ᾄδωσιν.

It is clear, then, from what has been said, how many kinds of maxim there are and what each is suited to. On disputed or paradoxical matters, do not use one without an added reason. Either state the reason first and use the maxim as the conclusion, as if someone were to say, "For my part, since one should neither be envied nor be idle, I say that children should not be educated"; or say the maxim first and then add what came before. On matters that are not paradoxical but are unclear, add the reason as tersely as possible. In such cases Laconian sayings and riddling ones are also fitting, [1395a] as when someone says what Stesichorus said in Locri: that they should not be insolent, or their cicadas would sing from the ground.[30]

1395a ἁρμόττει δὲ γνωμολογεῖν ἡλικίᾳ μὲν πρεσβυτέρων, περὶ δὲ τούτων ὧν ἔμπειρός τις ἐστίν, ὡς τὸ μὲν μὴ

Uttering maxims suits older people, and on subjects in which one is experienced. For someone who is not that age, uttering maxims is inappro-

GREEK

τηλικοῦτον ὄντα γνωμολογεῖν ἁπρεπὲς ὥσπερ καὶ τὸ μυθολογεῖν, περὶ δὲ ὧν ἄπειρος, ἠλίθιον καὶ ἀπαίδευτον. σημεῖον δὲ ἱκανόν· οἱ γὰρ ἀγροῖκοι μάλιστα γνωμοτύποι εἰσὶ καὶ ῥᾳδίως ἀποφαίνονται ⟨καθόλου⟩. καθόλου δὲ μὴ ὄντος καθόλου εἰπεῖν μάλιστα ἁρμόττει ἐν σχετλιασμῷ καὶ δεινώσει, καὶ ἐν τούτοις ἢ ἀρχόμενον ἢ ἀποδείξαντα. χρῆσθαι δὲ δεῖ καὶ ταῖς τεθρυλημέναις καὶ κοιναῖς γνώμαις, ἐὰν ὦσι χρήσιμοι· διὰ τὸ γὰρ εἶναι κοινά, ὡς ὁμολογούντων πάντων, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν δοκοῦσιν, οἷον παρακαλοῦντι ἐπὶ τὸ κινδυνεύειν μὴ θυσαμένους εἶς οἰωνὸς ἄριστος ἀμύνεσθαι περὶ πάτρης, καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἥττους ὄντας ξυνὸς Ἐνυάλιος, καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἀναιρεῖν τῶν ἐχθρῶν τὰ τέκνα καὶ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντα νήπιος ὃς πατέρα κτείνας παῖδας καταλείπει.

ἔτι ἔνιαι τῶν παροιμιῶν καὶ γνῶμαί εἰσιν, οἷον παροιμία, "Ἀττικὸς πάροικος". δεῖ δὲ τὰς γνώμας λέγειν καὶ παρὰ τὰ δεδημοσιευμένα (λέγω δὲ δεδημοσιευμένα οἷον τὸ "γνῶθι σαυτὸν" καὶ "μηδὲν ἄγαν"), ὅταν ἢ τὸ ἦθος φαίνεσθαι μέλλῃ βέλτιον, ἢ παθητικῶς εἰρημένη ᾖ. ἔστι δὲ παθητικὴ μὲν οἷον εἴ τις ὀργιζόμενος φαίη ψεῦδος εἶναι ὡς δεῖ γιγνώσκειν αὐτόν· οὗτος γοῦν εἰ ἐγίγνωσκεν ἑαυτόν, οὐκ ἄν ποτε στρατηγεῖν ἠξίωσε. τὸ δὲ ἦθος βέλτιον, ὅτι οὐ δεῖ, ὥσπερ φασίν, φιλεῖν ὡς μισήσοντας ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον μισεῖν ὡς φιλήσοντας.

δεῖ δὲ τῇ λέξει τὴν προαίρεσιν συνδηλοῦν, εἰ δὲ μή, τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπιλέγειν, οἷον οὕτως εἰπόντα, ὅτι "δεῖ δὲ φιλεῖν οὐχ ὥσπερ φασίν, ἀλλ' ὡς ἀεὶ φιλήσοντα· ἐπιβούλου γὰρ θάτερον", ἢ ὧδε "οὐκ ἀρέσκει δέ μοι τὸ λεγόμενον· δεῖ γὰρ τὸν ἀληθινὸν φίλον ὡς φιλήσοντα ἀεὶ φιλεῖν". καὶ "οὐδὲ τὸ μηδὲν ἄγαν· δεῖ γὰρ τούς γε κακοὺς ἄγαν μισεῖν". [1395b] ἔχουσι δ' εἰς τοὺς λόγους βοήθειαν μεγάλην μίαν μὲν διὰ τὴν φορτικότητα τῶν ἀκροατῶν· χαίρουσι γὰρ ἐάν τις καθόλου λέγων ἐπιτύχῃ τῶν δοξῶν ἃς ἐκεῖνοι

ENGLISH

priate, like telling stories; and to do it on subjects in which one is inexperienced is foolish and uneducated. There is good evidence for this: country people are the greatest coiners of maxims and readily declare their views ⟨in general terms⟩. To speak in general terms about what is not general is most fitting in complaint and indignant exaggeration, and in these either at the beginning or after the demonstration. One should also use hackneyed and common maxims, if they are useful. Because they are common, they seem right, as though everyone agreed with them. For instance, when urging people to face danger without having sacrificed: "One omen is best, to fight for one's country"; or to face danger when they are weaker: "The war god favors neither side"; or to kill the enemy's children even though they have done nothing wrong: "Foolish is he who kills the father and leaves the children."[31]

Further, some proverbs are also maxims, for instance the proverb "An Athenian for a neighbor." One should also utter maxims that go against well-known sayings (by well-known I mean the likes of "Know yourself" and "Nothing in excess") when one's character is going to appear better, or when the maxim is spoken with emotion. An emotional one would be, for instance, if someone in anger said it is false that one should know oneself: this man at any rate, if he had known himself, would never have thought himself fit to be general. Character appears better if one says that we should not, as people say, love as though we were going to hate, but rather hate as though we were going to love.[32]

One should make one's choice clear through the wording, or failing that, add the reason. For instance, by saying, "One should love not as people say, but as someone who will love forever, since the other way is a schemer's"; or like this: "I don't like the saying; a true friend should love as one who will love forever." And "Nor do I like 'Nothing in excess,' since bad people, at least, ought to be hated in excess." [1395b] Maxims are a great help to speeches. One reason is the vulgarity of the audi-

30 "Laconian" means Spartan, and Spartans were famous for terse sayings. The cicadas would sing from the ground because an invader would have cut down the trees.

31 The first two quotations are from Homer's *Iliad* (Enyalius, named in the Greek of the second, is the war god); the third is from the epic *Cypria*.

32 The Athenians were proverbially restless and meddlesome neighbors.

GREEK	ENGLISH
κατὰ μέρος ἔχουσιν. ὃ δὲ λέγω, δῆλον ἔσται ὧδε, ἅμα δὲ καὶ πῶς δεῖ αὐτὰς θηρεύειν.	ence: they are pleased when someone speaking in general terms hits upon the opinions they hold about particular cases. What I mean will be clear from the following, and at the same time how one should hunt for maxims.
1395b ἡ μὲν γὰρ γνώμη, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, ἀπόφανσις καθόλου ἐστίν, χαίρουσι δὲ καθόλου λεγομένου ὃ κατὰ μέρος προϋπολαμβάνοντες τυγχάνουσι· οἷον εἴ τις γείτοσι τύχοι κεχρημένος ἢ τέκνοις φαύλοις, ἀποδέξαιτ' ἂν τοῦ εἰπόντος "οὐδὲν γειτονίας χαλεπώτερον" ἢ ὅτι "οὐδὲν ἠλιθιώτερον τεκνοποιίας", ὥστε δεῖ στοχάζεσθαι πῶς τυγχάνουσι ποῖα προϋπολαμβάνοντες, εἶθ' οὕτως περὶ τούτων καθόλου λέγειν. ταύτην τε δὴ ἔχει μίαν χρῆσιν τὸ γνωμολογεῖν, καὶ ἑτέραν κρείττω· ἠθικοὺς γὰρ ποιεῖ τοὺς λόγους. ἦθος δὲ ἔχουσιν οἱ λόγοι ἐν ὅσοις δήλη ἡ προαίρεσις. αἱ δὲ γνῶμαι πᾶσαι τοῦτο ποιοῦσιν διὰ τὸ ἀποφαίνεσθαι τὸν τὴν γνώμην λέγοντα καθόλου περὶ τῶν προαιρέσεων, ὥστε, ἂν χρησταὶ ὦσιν αἱ γνῶμαι, καὶ χρηστοήθη φαίνεσθαι ποιοῦσι τὸν λέγοντα.	A maxim, as has been said, is a general statement, and people are pleased when something they already happen to assume about particular cases is stated in general terms. For instance, someone who happens to have bad neighbors or bad children would welcome the remark "Nothing is more troublesome than neighbors" or "Nothing is more foolish than having children." So one should guess what sorts of assumptions people happen to hold, and in what way, and then speak generally about those things. This, then, is one use of maxims, and there is another, more important one: they give speeches character. Speeches have character when the speaker's choice is clear. All maxims do this, because whoever utters a maxim makes a general statement about matters of choice; so if the maxims are good, they also make the speaker appear to be of good character.
περὶ μὲν οὖν γνώμης, καὶ τί ἐστι καὶ πόσα εἴδη ταύτης καὶ πῶς χρηστέον αὐτῇ καὶ τίνα ὠφέλειαν ἔχει, εἰρήσθω ταῦτα·	So much, then, for the maxim: what it is, how many kinds there are, how it should be used, and what benefit it offers.

CHAPTER 22: FINDING ENTHYMEMES

How to look for enthymemes: knowing the facts of the subject, and choosing premises.

GREEK	ENGLISH
περὶ δ' ἐνθυμημάτων καθόλου τε εἴπωμεν, τίνα τρόπον δεῖ ζητεῖν, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τοὺς τόπους· ἄλλο γὰρ εἶδος ἑκάτερον τούτων ἐστίν. ὅτι μὲν οὖν τὸ ἐνθύμημα συλλογισμός ἐστιν, εἴρηται πρότερον, καὶ πῶς συλλογισμός, καὶ τί διαφέρει τῶν διαλεκτικῶν· οὔτε γὰρ πόρρωθεν οὔτε πάντα δεῖ λαμβάνοντας συνάγειν· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀσαφὲς διὰ τὸ μῆκος, τὸ δὲ ἀδολεσχία διὰ τὸ φανερὰ λέγειν.	As for enthymemes, let us speak first in general about how to look for them, and after that about the topics; for each of these is a different kind of thing. That the enthymeme is a syllogism has been said before, and in what way it is a syllogism, and how it differs from dialectical ones. We must not draw the conclusion from far back, nor by taking in every step. The first is unclear because of its length; the second is idle chatter, because it states what is obvious.
τοῦτο γὰρ αἴτιον καὶ τοῦ πιθανωτέρους εἶναι τοὺς ἀπαιδεύτους τῶν πεπαιδευμένων ἐν τοῖς ὄχλοις, ὥσπερ φασὶν οἱ ποιηταὶ τοὺς ἀπαιδεύτους παρ' ὄχλῳ μουσικωτέρους λέγειν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ τὰ κοινὰ καὶ καθόλου λέγουσιν, οἱ δ' ἐξ ὧν ἴσασι, καὶ τὰ ἐγγύς· ὥστ' οὐκ ἐξ ἁπάντων τῶν δοκούντων ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν ὡρισμένων λεκτέον, οἷον ἢ τοῖς κρίνουσιν ἢ οὓς ἀποδέχονται, 1396a καὶ τοῦτο δὴ ὅτι οὕτως φαίνεται, δῆλον εἶναι ἅπασιν ἢ	This is also why uneducated people are more persuasive than educated ones before crowds, just as the poets say that the uneducated speak "more musically" to a crowd. The educated speak of what is common and general; the uneducated speak from what they know, and of what is close at hand. So we must argue not from every opinion but from

GREEK

τοῖς πλείστοις, καὶ μὴ μόνον συνάγειν ἐκ τῶν ἀναγκαίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν δεῖ λαβεῖν ὅτι περὶ οὗ δεῖ λέγειν καὶ συλλογίζεσθαι εἴτε πολιτικῷ συλλογισμῷ εἴθ' ὁποιῳοῦν, ἀναγκαῖον καὶ τὰ τούτῳ ἔχειν ὑπάρχοντα, ἢ πάντα ἢ ἔνια· μηδὲν γὰρ ἔχων ἐξ οὐδενὸς ἂν ἔχοις συνάγειν.

1396a λέγω δ' οἷον πῶς ἂν δυναίμεθα συμβουλεύειν Ἀθηναίοις εἰ πολεμητέον [ἢ μὴ πολεμητέον] μὴ ἔχοντες τίς ἡ δύναμις αὐτῶν, πότερον ναυτικὴ ἢ πεζικὴ ἢ ἄμφω, καὶ αὕτη πόση, καὶ πρόσοδοι τίνες ἢ φίλοι καὶ ἐχθροί, ἔτι τίνας πολέμους πεπολεμήκασι καὶ πῶς, καὶ τἆλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα· ἢ ἐπαινεῖν, εἰ μὴ ἔχοιμεν τὴν ἐν Σαλαμῖνι ναυμαχίαν ἢ τὴν ἐν Μαραθῶνι μάχην ἢ τὰ ὑπὲρ τῶν Ἡρακλειδῶν πραχθέντα ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν τοιούτων. ἐκ γὰρ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ἢ δοκούντων ὑπάρχειν καλῶν ἐπαινοῦσι πάντες. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ψέγουσιν ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων, σκοποῦντες τί ὑπάρχει τοιοῦτον αὐτοῖς ἢ δοκεῖ ὑπάρχειν, οἷον ὅτι τοὺς Ἕλληνας κατεδουλώσαντο, καὶ τοὺς πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον ἀριστεύσαντας καὶ συμμαχεσαμένους ἠνδραποδίσαντο, Αἰγινήτας καὶ Ποτιδαιάτας καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο τοιοῦτον ἁμάρτημα ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς.

ὡς δ' αὕτως καὶ οἱ κατηγοροῦντες καὶ οἱ ἀπολογούμενοι ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων σκοπούμενοι κατηγοροῦσι καὶ ἀπολογοῦνται. οὐδὲν δὲ διαφέρει περὶ Λακεδαιμονίων ἢ Ἀθηναίων ἢ ἀνθρώπου ἢ θεοῦ τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο δρᾶν· καὶ γὰρ συμβουλεύοντα τῷ Ἀχιλλεῖ καὶ ἐπαινοῦντα καὶ ψέγοντα καὶ κατηγοροῦντα καὶ ἀπολογούμενον ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τὰ ὑπάρχοντα ἢ δοκοῦντα ὑπάρχειν ληπτέον, ἵν' ἐκ τούτων λέγωμεν ἐπαινοῦντες ἢ ψέγοντες εἴ τι καλὸν ἢ αἰσχρὸν ὑπάρχει, κατηγοροῦντες δ' ἢ ἀπολογούμενοι εἴ τι δίκαιον ἢ ἄδικον, συμβουλεύοντες δ' εἴ τι συμφέρον ἢ βλαβερόν. ὁμοίως δὲ τούτοις καὶ περὶ πράγματος ὁτουοῦν, οἷον περὶ δικαιοσύνης, εἰ ἀγαθὸν [ἢ μὴ ἀγαθὸν], ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων τῇ δικαιοσύνῃ καὶ τῷ ἀγαθῷ.

ENGLISH

defined ones, for instance those of the judges or of people whose authority they accept, 1396a and it must be clear to everyone, or to most people, that this is how things appear. And we must draw conclusions not only from what is necessary but also from what holds for the most part. First, then, we must grasp that whatever we have to speak and reason about, whether by a political syllogism or any other kind, we must also have the facts that belong to it, either all of them or some. If you had none, you would have nothing to draw a conclusion from.

I mean, for instance: how could we advise the Athenians on whether to go to war [or not go to war] without knowing what their power is? Is it naval, or on land, or both, and how great is it? What are their revenues, who are their friends and enemies? What wars have they fought, and how? And other such things. Or how could we praise them if we didn't have the sea battle at Salamis, or the battle at Marathon, or what they did for the Heraclidae, or something else of that kind? For everyone praises on the basis of the fine things that belong, or seem to belong, to the subject. Likewise people blame from the opposites, looking at what of this kind belongs, or seems to belong, to them: for instance, that the Athenians enslaved the Greeks, and reduced to slavery the Aeginetans and Potidaeans, who had fought on their side and distinguished themselves against the barbarians, and all other such things, and any other such fault that may belong to them.[33]

In the same way, accusers and defenders alike accuse and defend by looking at the facts that belong to the case. It makes no difference whether the subject is Spartans or Athenians, a human being or a god; we do this same thing. If we are advising Achilles, or praising or blaming him, or accusing or defending him, we must take what belongs, or seems to belong, to him, so that we can argue from these facts: in praise or blame, from whatever fine or shameful thing belongs to him; in accusation or defense, from whatever is just or unjust; in advice, from whatever is advantageous or harmful. Similarly with any subject at all, such as justice, wheth-

33 The Greek word here, *barbaros*, meant any non-Greek; here it means the Persians of the Persian Wars. The Heraclidae, the children of Heracles, were sheltered by Athens in legend.

GREEK

ENGLISH

er it is a good [or not a good]: we argue from what belongs to justice and to the good.

ὥστ' ἐπειδὴ καὶ πάντες οὕτω φαίνονται ἀποδεικνύντες, ἐάν τε ἀκριβέστερον 1396b ἐάν τε μαλακώτερον συλλογίζωνται· (οὐ γὰρ ἐξ ἁπάντων λαμβάνουσιν ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν περὶ ἕκαστον ὑπαρχόντων), καὶ διὰ τοῦ λόγου δῆλον ὅτι ἀδύνατον ἄλλως δεικνύναι, φανερὸν ὅτι ἀναγκαῖον, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς, πρῶτον περὶ ἕκαστον ἔχειν ἐξειλεγμένα περὶ τῶν ἐνδεχομένων καὶ τῶν ἐπικαιροτάτων, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐξ ὑπογυίου γιγνομένων ζητεῖν τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ἀποβλέποντα μὴ εἰς ἀόριστα ἀλλ' εἰς τὰ ὑπάρχοντα περὶ ὧν ὁ λόγος, καὶ περιγράφοντα, ὅτι πλεῖστα καὶ ἐγγύτατα τοῦ πράγματος· ὅσῳ μὲν γὰρ ἂν πλείω ἔχῃ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων, τοσούτῳ ῥᾷον δεικνύναι, ὅσῳ δ' ἐγγύτερον, τοσούτῳ οἰκειότερα καὶ ἧττον κοινά.

Everyone evidently proves things this way, whether they reason more rigorously 1396b or more loosely, since they take their premises not from everything but from what belongs to each subject. Argument itself also makes clear that it is impossible to prove things any other way. So it is obvious that, as in the *Topics*, we must first have, on each subject, a selection of premises about what is possible and most opportune. For questions that come up on the spur of the moment we must search in the same way, looking not at indefinite things but at what belongs to the subject of the speech, and marking off as many facts as possible, and those closest to the matter. For the more of the facts we have, the easier it is to prove; and the closer they are to the matter, the more specific and the less common they are.

1396b λέγω δὲ κοινὰ μὲν τὸ ἐπαινεῖν τὸν Ἀχιλλέα ὅτι ἄνθρωπος καὶ ὅτι τῶν ἡμιθέων καὶ ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ Ἴλιον ἐστρατεύσατο· ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοις ὑπάρχει πολλοῖς, ὥστε οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ὁ τοιοῦτος τὸν Ἀχιλλέα ἐπαινεῖ ἢ Διομήδην· ἴδια δὲ ἃ μηδενὶ ἄλλῳ συμβέβηκεν ἢ τῷ Ἀχιλλεῖ, οἷον τὸ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν Ἕκτορα τὸν ἄριστον τῶν Τρώων καὶ τὸν Κύκνον, ὃς ἐκώλυσεν ἅπαντας ἀποβαίνειν ἄτρωτος ὤν, καὶ ὅτι νεώτατος καὶ οὐκ ἔνορκος ὢν ἐστράτευσεν, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα. εἷς μὲν οὖν τρόπος τῆς ἐκλογῆς πρῶτος οὗτος ὁ τοπικός, τὰ δὲ στοιχεῖα τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων λέγωμεν· στοιχεῖον δὲ λέγω καὶ τόπον ἐνθυμήματος τὸ αὐτό. πρῶτον δὲ εἴπωμεν περὶ ὧν ἀναγκαῖον εἰπεῖν πρῶτον.

By "common" I mean, for instance, praising Achilles because he is a human being, or one of the demigods, or because he joined the expedition against Troy. These belong to many others too, so that such a speaker praises Achilles no more than Diomedes. "Specific" are things that have happened to no one but Achilles: that he killed Hector, the best of the Trojans, and Cycnus, who was invulnerable and kept the whole army from landing; that he went to war as the youngest, and without being bound by oath; and all other such things. This, then, is one method of selection, and the first: the one based on topics. Now let us discuss the elements of enthymemes. By the "element" and the "topic" of an enthymeme I mean the same thing. But first let us speak of what has to be said first.[34]

ἔστιν γὰρ τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων εἴδη δύο· τὰ μὲν γὰρ δεικτικά ἐστιν ὅτι ἔστιν ἢ οὐκ ἔστιν, τὰ δ' ἐλεγκτικά, καὶ διαφέρει ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς διαλεκτικοῖς ἔλεγχος καὶ συλλογισμός. ἔστι δὲ τὸ μὲν δεικτικὸν ἐνθύμημα τὸ ἐξ ὁμολογουμένων συνάγειν, τὸ δὲ ἐλεγκτικὸν τὸ τὰ ἀνομολογούμενα συνάγειν. σχεδὸν μὲν οὖν ἡμῖν περὶ ἕκαστον τῶν εἰδῶν τῶν χρησίμων καὶ ἀναγκαίων ἔχονται οἱ τόποι· ἐξειλεγμέναι γὰρ αἱ προτάσεις περὶ ἑκάστόν εἰσιν, ὥστε ἐξ ὧν δεῖ φέρειν τὰ ἐνθυμήματα τόπων περὶ ἀγαθοῦ ἢ κακοῦ ἢ καλοῦ ἢ αἰσχροῦ ἢ δικαίου ἢ ἀδίκου, καὶ περὶ τῶν ἠθῶν

There are two kinds of enthymemes. Some are demonstrative, showing that something is or is not so; others are refutative. They differ as refutation and syllogism do in dialectic. The demonstrative enthymeme draws its conclusion from premises that are agreed; the refutative one draws conclusions that are inconsistent with them. We already have the topics on pretty well each of the kinds that are useful and necessary, since the premises on each subject have been selected. So the topics from which enthymemes are to be

34 Helen's suitors had sworn to defend her marriage; Achilles, too young to have been a suitor, was not bound by that oath.

GREEK	ENGLISH
καὶ παθημάτων καὶ ἕξεων ὡσαύτως εἰλημμένοι ἡμῖν ὑπάρχουσι πρότερον οἱ τόποι.	drawn about good or bad, fine or shameful, just or unjust, and likewise about characters, emotions and dispositions, have already been gathered by us.
1397a ἔτι δὲ ἄλλον τρόπον καθόλου περὶ ἁπάντων λάβωμεν, καὶ λέγωμεν παρασημαινόμενοι τοὺς ἐλεγκτικοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἀποδεικτικοὺς καὶ τοὺς τῶν φαινομένων ἐνθυμημάτων, οὐκ ὄντων δὲ ἐνθυμημάτων, ἐπεί περ οὐδὲ συλλογισμῶν. δηλωθέντων δὲ τούτων περὶ τῶν λύσεων καὶ ἐνστάσεων διορίσωμεν, πόθεν δεῖ πρὸς τὰ ἐνθυμήματα φέρειν.	Let us now take them up in another way, in general and covering everything. Let us discuss them, noting separately the refutative and the demonstrative topics, and those of apparent enthymemes, which are not really enthymemes, since they are not really syllogisms either. Once these have been made clear, let us define the solutions and objections: where they are to be found for answering enthymemes.

CHAPTER 23: THE TOPICS OF ENTHYMEMES

A catalogue of topics for demonstrative and refutative enthymemes, with examples from orators and poets.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστι δὲ εἷς μὲν τόπος τῶν δεικτικῶν ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων· δεῖ γὰρ σκοπεῖν εἰ τῷ ἐναντίῳ τὸ ἐναντίον ὑπάρχει, ἀναιροῦντα μὲν εἰ μὴ ὑπάρχει, κατασκευάζοντα δὲ εἰ ὑπάρχει, οἷον ὅτι τὸ σωφρονεῖν ἀγαθόν· τὸ γὰρ ἀκολασταίνειν βλαβερόν. ἢ ὡς ἐν τῷ Μεσσηνιακῷ· “εἰ γὰρ ὁ πόλεμος αἴτιος τῶν παρόντων κακῶν, μετὰ τῆς εἰρήνης δεῖ ἐπανορθώσασθαι.” εἴ περ γὰρ οὐδὲ τοῖς κακῶς δεδρακόσιν ἀκουσίως δίκαιον εἰς ὀργὴν πεσεῖν, οὐδ’ ἂν ἀναγκασθείς τις εὖ δράσῃ τινά, προσῆκον εἶναι τῷδ’ ὀφείλεσθαι χάριν. ἀλλ’ εἴ περ ἔστιν ἐν βροτοῖς ψευδηγορεῖν πιθανά, νομίζειν χρή σε καὶ τοὐναντίον, ἄπιστ’ ἀληθῆ πολλὰ συμβαίνειν βροτοῖς.	One topic of demonstrative enthymemes is from opposites. You must look at whether the opposite belongs to the opposite: refuting if it doesn’t, establishing if it does. For instance, that being moderate is good, because being self-indulgent is harmful. Or as in the *Messenian Speech*: “If the war is the cause of our present evils, we must set things right with peace.” “For if it isn’t just to fall into anger with those who have done harm unwillingly, then neither, if someone was forced to do another good, is it fitting that gratitude be owed to him.” “But if among mortals one can tell lies persuasively, you must believe the opposite as well: that many unbelievable truths happen to mortals.”
ἄλλος ἐκ τῶν ὁμοίων πτώσεων· ὁμοίως γὰρ δεῖ ὑπάρχειν ἢ μὴ ὑπάρχειν, οἷον ὅτι τὸ δίκαιον οὐ πᾶν ἀγαθόν· καὶ γὰρ ἂν τὸ δικαίως, νῦν δ’ οὐχ αἱρετὸν τὸ δικαίως ἀποθανεῖν. ἄλλος ἐκ τῶν πρὸς ἄλληλα· εἰ γὰρ θατέρῳ ὑπάρχει τὸ καλῶς ἢ δικαίως ποιῆσαι, θατέρῳ τὸ πεπονθέναι, καὶ εἰ κελεῦσαι, καὶ τὸ πεποιηκέναι, οἷον ὡς ὁ τελώνης Διομέδων περὶ τῶν τελῶν, “εἰ γὰρ μηδ’ ὑμῖν αἰσχρὸν τὸ πωλεῖν, οὐδ’ ἡμῖν τὸ ὠνεῖσθαι.” καὶ εἰ τῷ πεπονθότι τὸ καλῶς ἢ δικαίως ὑπάρχει, καὶ τῷ ποιήσαντι. ἔστι δ’ ἐν τούτῳ παραλογίσασθαι· εἰ γὰρ δικαίως ἔπαθέν τι, [δικαίως πέπονθεν,] ἀλλ’ ἴσως οὐχ ὑπὸ σοῦ.	Another is from similar inflections of a word: the same thing must belong, or not belong, to them alike. For instance, that what is just is not always good; for then what is done justly would be good too, but as it is, to be put to death justly is not desirable. Another is from correlatives. If it belongs to one party to have acted finely or justly, then it belongs to the other to have been treated so; and if one ordered something, the other carried it out. So Diomedon the tax-farmer said about taxes: “If it isn’t shameful for you to sell, it isn’t shameful for us to buy.” And if fine or just treatment belongs to the one who suffered something, it belongs also to the one who did it. But here there is room for a fal-

GREEK

διὸ δεῖ σκοπεῖν χωρὶς εἰ ἄξιος ὁ παθὼν παθεῖν 1397b καὶ ὁ ποιήσας ποιῆσαι, εἶτα χρῆσθαι ὁποτέρως ἁρμόττει· ἐνίοτε γὰρ διαφωνεῖ τὸ τοιοῦτον καὶ οὐδὲν κωλύει, ὥσπερ ἐν τῷ Ἀλκμαίωνι τῷ Θεοδέκτου μητέρα δὲ τὴν σὴν οὔ τις ἐστύγει βροτῶν; φησὶ δὲ ἀποκρινόμενος ἀλλὰ διαλαβόντα χρὴ σκοπεῖν· ἐρομένης δὲ τῆς Ἀλφεσιβοίας πῶς, ὑπολαβὼν φησιν τὴν μὲν θανεῖν ἔκριναν, ἐμὲ δὲ μὴ κτανεῖν. καὶ ἡ περὶ Δημοσθένους δίκη καὶ τῶν ἀποκτεινάντων Νικάνορα· ἐπεὶ γὰρ δικαίως ἐκρίθησαν ἀποκτεῖναι, δικαίως ἔδοξεν ἀποθανεῖν. καὶ περὶ τοῦ Θήβησιν ἀποθανόντος, περὶ οὗ κελεύει κρίνεσθαι εἰ δίκαιος ἦν ἀποθανεῖν, ὡς οὐκ ἄδικον ὂν τὸ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν δικαίως ἀποθανόντα.

1397b ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ μᾶλλον καὶ ἧττον, οἷον εἰ μηδ' οἱ θεοὶ πάντα ἴσασιν, σχολῇ οἵ γε ἄνθρωποι· τοῦτο γάρ ἐστιν, εἰ ᾧ μᾶλλον ἂν ὑπάρχοι μὴ ὑπάρχει, δῆλον ὅτι οὐδ' ᾧ ἧττον. τὸ δ' ὅτι τοὺς πλησίον τύπτει ὅς γε καὶ τὸν πατέρα [τύπτει, ἐκ τοῦ εἰ τὸ ἧττον ὑπάρχει, καὶ τὸ μᾶλλον ὑπάρχει, καθ' ὁπότερον ἂν δέῃ δεῖξαι,] τύπτει ⟨ἐκ τοῦ⟩ ὅτι εἰ τὸ ἧττον ὑπάρχει, καὶ τὸ μᾶλλον ὑπάρχει· τοὺς γὰρ πατέρας ἧττον τύπτουσιν ἢ τοὺς πλησίον. ἢ δὴ οὕτως ἢ εἰ ᾧ μᾶλλον ὑπάρχει, μὴ ὑπάρχει, ἢ ᾧ ἧττον εἰ ὑπάρχει, ὁπότερον δεῖ δεῖξαι, εἴθ' ὅτι ὑπάρχει εἴθ' ὅτι οὔ.

ἔτι εἰ μήτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἧττον, ὅθεν εἴρηται καὶ σὸς μὲν οἰκτρὸς παῖδας ἀπολέσας πατήρ· / Οἰνεὺς δ' ἄρ' οὐχὶ [τὸν Ἑλλάδος] κλεινὸν ἀπολέσας γόνον; καὶ ὅτι, εἰ μηδὲ Θησεὺς ἠδίκησεν, οὐδ' Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ εἰ μηδ' οἱ Τυνδαρίδαι, οὐδ' Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ εἰ Πάτροκλον Ἕκτωρ, καὶ Ἀχιλλέα Ἀλέξανδρος. καὶ εἰ μηδ' ἄλλοι τεχνῖται φαῦλοι, οὐδ' οἱ φιλόσοφοι. καὶ εἰ μηδ' οἱ στρατηγοὶ φαῦλοι ὅτι θανατοῦνται πολλάκις, οὐδ' οἱ σοφισταί. καὶ ὅτι "εἰ δεῖ τὸν ἰδιώτην τῆς ὑμετέρας δόξης ἐπιμελεῖσθαι, καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων." ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ τὸν χρόνον σκοπεῖν, οἷον ὡς Ἰφικράτης ἐν τῇ πρὸς Ἁρμόδιον, ὅτι "εἰ

ENGLISH

lacy: if someone suffered something justly, [he has suffered justly,] but perhaps not at your hands.[35]

So you must look separately at whether the one who suffered deserved to suffer 1397b and the one who did it deserved to do it, and then use whichever fits. For sometimes the two don't agree, and nothing prevents that, as in Theodectes' *Alcmaeon*: "Did no one among mortals loathe your mother?" He answers: "Well, you must look at it by making a distinction." And when Alphesiboea asks how, he replies: "They judged that she should die, but not that I should kill her." Again, the trial of Demosthenes and those who killed Nicanor: since they were judged to have killed him justly, he was thought to have died justly. And the case of the man who was killed at Thebes, about whom the defendant asks the court to decide whether he deserved to die, on the ground that it cannot be wrong to kill a man who died justly.[36]

Another is from the more and the less. For instance, if not even the gods know everything, human beings hardly do. That is: if something does not hold where it would be more likely to hold, clearly it does not hold where it is less likely either. And the argument that a man who strikes even his father [strikes, from the principle that if the less holds, the more holds too, whichever needs to be shown,] strikes his neighbors too comes from the principle that if the less holds, the more holds too; for people strike their fathers less than they strike their neighbors. So one argues either this way, or that it does not hold where it is more likely to, or that it holds where it is less likely to, depending on which you need to show, that it holds or that it doesn't.

Again, if it is neither more nor less. Hence the lines: "Your father is pitiable, having lost his children; / and is Oeneus not, who lost [Greece's] famous son?" And: if not even Theseus did wrong, neither did Alexander; and if not even the sons of Tyndareus did wrong, neither did Alexander; and if Hector did no wrong to Patroclus, neither did Alexander to Achilles. And if other practitioners of an art are not bad, neither are philosophers. And if generals are not bad because they are often put

35 Tax-farmers bought from the city the right to collect a particular tax.
36 Alcmaeon killed his mother Eriphyle to avenge his father; Alphesiboea was his wife. Theodectes was a fourth-century BC tragedian and orator, a friend of Aristotle.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	πρὶν ποιῆσαι ἠξίουν τῆς εἰκόνος τυχεῖν ἐὰν ποιήσω, ἔδοτε ἄν· ποιήσαντι δ' ἆρ' οὐ δώσετε;	to death, neither are sophists. And: "If a private citizen must care about your good name, you must care about that of the Greeks." Another is from considering the time. So Iphicrates, in his speech against Harmodius: "If before doing the deed I had asked to receive the statue in case I did it, you would have given it. Now that I have done it, won't you give it?"[37]
	μὴ τοίνυν μέλλοντες μὲν ὑπισχνεῖσθε, παθόντες δ' ἀφαιρεῖσθε." καὶ πάλιν πρὸς τὸ Θηβαίους διεῖναι Φίλιππον εἰς τὴν Ἀττικήν, [1398a] ὅτι "εἰ πρὶν βοηθῆσαι εἰς Φωκεῖς ἠξίου, ὑπέσχοντο ἄν· ἄτοπον οὖν εἰ διότι προεῖτο καὶ ἐπίστευσεν μὴ διήσουσιν." ἄλλος ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων καθ' αὑτοῦ πρὸς τὸν εἰπόντα· διαφέρει δὲ ὁ τρόπος, οἷον ἐν τῷ Τεύκρῳ· ᾧ ἐχρήσατο Ἰφικράτης πρὸς Ἀριστοφῶντα, ἐπερόμενος εἰ προδοίη ἂν τὰς ναῦς ἐπὶ χρήμασιν· οὐ φάσκοντος δέ, εἶτα εἶπεν σὺ μὲν ὢν Ἀριστοφῶν οὐκ ἂν προδοίης, ἐγὼ δ' ὢν Ἰφικράτης; δεῖ δὲ ὑπάρχειν μᾶλλον ἂν δοκοῦντα ἀδικῆσαι ἐκεῖνον· εἰ δὲ μή, γελοῖον ἂν φανείη, εἰ πρὸς Ἀριστείδην κατηγοροῦντα τοῦτό τις ἂν εἴπειεν ἄλλος πρὸς ἀπιστίαν τοῦ κατηγόρου· ὅλως γὰρ βούλεται ὁ κατηγορῶν βελτίων εἶναι τοῦ φεύγοντος· τοῦτ' οὖν ἐξελέγχειν δεῖ.	"Don't, then, make promises while you are waiting for something and take them back once you have had it." And again, on letting Philip pass through Theban territory into Attica: [1398a] "If he had asked this before he helped them against the Phocians, they would have promised. So it would be absurd if, because he let that chance go and trusted them, they don't let him through." Another is from things said against oneself, turned against the person who said them. The method varies, as in the *Teucer*. Iphicrates used it against Aristophon: he asked him whether he would betray the fleet for money, and when Aristophon said no, he replied: "So you, being Aristophon, wouldn't betray it, but I, being Iphicrates, would?" But the opponent must be someone more likely to be thought to have done the wrong. Otherwise it would look ridiculous, if someone said this to Aristides when Aristides was accusing him, in order to discredit the accuser. For in general the accuser claims to be better than the defendant, and this is what has to be refuted.[38]
1398a	καθόλου δὲ ἄτοπός ἐστιν, ὅταν τις ἐπιτιμᾷ ἄλλοις ἃ αὐτὸς ποιεῖ ἢ ποιήσειεν ἄν, ἢ προτρέπῃ ποιεῖν ἃ αὐτὸς μὴ ποιεῖ μηδὲ ποιήσειεν ἄν. ἄλλος ἐξ ὁρισμοῦ, οἷον τί τὸ δαιμόνιόν ἐστίν; ἆρ' ἢ θεὸς ἢ θεοῦ ἔργον; καίτοι ὅς τις οἴεται θεοῦ ἔργον εἶναι, τοῦτον ἀνάγκη οἴεσθαι καὶ θεοὺς εἶναι. καὶ ὡς ὁ Ἰφικράτης, ὅτι γενναιότατος ὁ βέλτιστος· καὶ γὰρ Ἁρμοδίῳ καὶ Ἀριστογείτονι οὐδὲν πρότερον ὑπῆρχεν γενναῖον πρὶν γενναῖόν τι πρᾶξαι. καὶ ὅτι συγγενέστερος αὐτός· "τὰ γοῦν ἔργα συγγενέστερά ἐστι τὰ ἐμὰ τοῖς Ἁρμοδίου καὶ Ἀριστογείτονος ἢ τὰ σά." καὶ ὡς ἐν τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ὅτι πάντες ἂν ὁμολογήσειαν τοὺς μὴ κοσμίους οὐχ ἑνὸς σώματος ἀγαπᾶν ἀπόλαυσιν.	In general it is absurd when someone criticizes others for what he does himself or would do, or urges others to do what he does not do and would not do. Another is from definition. For instance: what is the divine sign? Is it a god, or the work of a god? And yet whoever thinks it is the work of a god must think there are gods. And as Iphicrates argued that the best man is the most noble: Harmodius and Aristogeiton had nothing noble about them until they did something noble. And that he himself was more akin to them than his opponent: "At any rate my deeds are more akin to those of Harmodius and Aristogeiton than yours are." And as in the *Alexander*: everyone would agree that

37 Theseus had carried off Helen before Paris did, and the sons of Tyndareus had carried off the daughters of Leucippus.
38 Philip of Macedon had helped Thebes against the Phocians; in 339 BC he asked the Thebans to let him march through their territory against Athens.

GREEK

καὶ δι' ὃ Σωκράτης οὐκ ἔφη βαδίζειν ὡς Ἀρχέλαον· ὕβριν γὰρ ἔφη εἶναι τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι ἀμύνασθαι ὁμοίως καὶ εὖ παθόντας ὥσπερ καὶ κακῶς. πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ὁρισάμενοι καὶ λαβόντες τὸ τί ἐστι, συλλογίζονται περὶ ὧν λέγουσιν. ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ ποσαχῶς, οἷον ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς περὶ τοῦ ὀρθῶς. ἄλλος ἐκ διαιρέσεως, οἷον εἰ πάντες τριῶν ἕνεκεν ἀδικοῦσιν (ἢ τοῦδε γὰρ ἕνεκα ἢ τοῦδε ἢ τοῦδε), καὶ διὰ μὲν τὰ δύο ἀδύνατον, διὰ δὲ τὸ τρίτον οὐδ' αὐτοί φασιν.

ἄλλος ἐξ ἐπαγωγῆς, οἷον ἐκ τῆς Πεπαρηθίας, ὅτι περὶ τῶν τέκνων αἱ γυναῖκες πανταχοῦ διορίζουσι τἀληθές· 1398b τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ Ἀθήνησι Μαντίᾳ τῷ ῥήτορι ἀμφισβητοῦντι πρὸς τὸν υἱὸν ἀπέφηνεν ἡ μήτηρ, τοῦτο δὲ Θήβησιν Ἰσμηνίου καὶ Στίλβωνος ἀμφισβητούντων ἡ Δωδωνὶς ἀπέδειξεν Ἰσμηνίου τὸν υἱόν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο Θετταλίσκον Ἰσμηνίου ἐνόμιζον. καὶ πάλιν ἐκ τοῦ Νόμου τοῦ Θεοδέκτου, εἰ τοῖς κακῶς ἐπιμεληθεῖσι τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἵππων οὐ παραδιδόασι τοὺς οἰκείους, οὐδὲ τοῖς ἀνατρέψασι τὰς ἀλλοτρίας ναῦς ⟨τὰς οἰκείας⟩, οὐκοῦν εἰ ὁμοίως ἐφ' ἁπάντων, καὶ τοῖς κακῶς φυλάξασι τὴν ἀλλοτρίαν οὐ χρηστέον ἐστὶν εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν σωτηρίαν.

1398b καὶ ὡς Ἀλκιδάμας, ὅτι πάντες τοὺς σοφοὺς τιμῶσιν· Πάριοι γοῦν Ἀρχίλοχον καίπερ βλάσφημον ὄντα τετιμήκασι, καὶ Χῖοι Ὅμηρον οὐκ ὄντα πολίτην, καὶ Μυτιληναῖοι Σαπφῶ καίπερ γυναῖκα οὖσαν, καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι Χίλωνα καὶ τῶν γερόντων ἐποίησαν ἥκιστα φιλόλογοι ὄντες, καὶ Ἰταλιῶται Πυθαγόραν, καὶ Λαμψακηνοὶ Ἀναξαγόραν ξένον ὄντα ἔθαψαν καὶ τιμῶσι ἔτι καὶ νῦν * * * ὅτι Ἀθηναῖοι τοῖς Σόλωνος νόμοις χρησάμενοι εὐδαιμόνησαν καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοῖς Λυκούργου, καὶ Θήβησιν ἅμα οἱ προστάται φιλόσοφοι ἐγένοντο καὶ εὐδαιμόνησεν ἡ πόλις.

ἄλλος ἐκ κρίσεως περὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἢ ὁμοίου ἢ ἐναντίου, μάλιστα μὲν εἰ πάντες καὶ ἀεί, εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλ' οἵ γε πλεῖστοι, ἢ σοφοὶ ἢ πάντες ἢ οἱ πλεῖστοι, ἢ ἀγαθοί, καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ κρίνοντες, ἢ οὓς ἀποδέχονται οἱ κρίνοντες, ἢ οἷς μὴ οἷόν τε ἐναντίον κρίνειν, οἷον τοῖς κυρίοις, ἢ οἷς μὴ

ENGLISH

men of disorderly habits are not content with enjoying one body.

And the reason Socrates gave for not going to Archelaus: he said it was insolence to be unable to repay good treatment, just as it is to be unable to repay bad. All these people define and grasp what a thing is, and then reason about the subject they are discussing. Another is from the different senses of a word, as in the *Topics* about "correctly." Another is from division. For instance: if everyone does wrong for one of three reasons (this one, or this, or this), and for two of them it is impossible, while the third not even the accusers allege.[39]

Another is from induction. For instance, from the *Peparethian Speech*: that women everywhere settle the truth about children. 1398b At Athens, when the orator Mantias was in dispute with his son, the mother made the truth plain; and at Thebes, when Ismenias and Stilbon were in dispute, the woman of Dodona proved that the son was Ismenias', and for that reason people regarded Thettaliscus as Ismenias' son. And again, from Theodectes' *Law*: if people don't hand over their own horses to those who have taken bad care of other people's horses, nor ⟨their own ships⟩ to those who have capsized other people's ships, then, if it is the same in every case, we must not employ, for our own safety, those who have guarded other people's safety badly.

And as Alcidamas argued that everyone honors the wise: the Parians, at any rate, have honored Archilochus, abusive as he was; the Chians honored Homer, though he was not their citizen; the Mytilenaeans honored Sappho, though she was a woman; the Spartans, the least literary of people, made Chilon one of their elders; the Greeks of Italy honored Pythagoras; and the people of Lampsacus buried Anaxagoras, a foreigner, and honor him even now * * * that the Athenians prospered by using Solon's laws, and the Spartans by using Lycurgus', and at Thebes, as soon as the leaders became philosophers, the city prospered.

Another is from a judgment about the same thing, or a similar or opposite one. It is best if everyone has always judged so; if not, then at least most people; or the wise, all or most of them; or the good; or the judges themselves, or those whose au-

39 Archelaus, king of Macedon (c. 413–399 BC), invited poets and thinkers to his court.

GREEK

καλὸν ἐναντία κρίνειν, οἷον θεοῖς ἢ πατρὶ ἢ διδασκάλοις, ὥσπερ τὸ εἰς Μιξιδημίδην εἶπεν Αὐτοκλῆς, εἰ ταῖς μὲν σεμναῖς θεαῖς καλῶς εἶχεν ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ δοῦναι τὰ δίκαια, Μιξιδημίδῃ δ' οὔ. ἢ ὥσπερ Σαπφώ, ὅτι τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν κακόν· οἱ θεοὶ γὰρ οὕτω κεκρίκασιν· ἀπέθνησκον γὰρ ἄν. ἢ ὥσπερ Ἀρίστιππος πρὸς Πλάτωνα ἐπαγγελτικώτερόν τι εἰπόντα, ὡς ᾤετο· ἀλλὰ μὴν ὅ γ' ἑταῖρος ἡμῶν, ἔφη, οὐθὲν τοιοῦτον, λέγων τὸν Σωκράτην.

καὶ Ἡγήσιππος ἐν Δελφοῖς ἠρώτα τὸν θεόν, πρότερον κεχρημένος Ὀλυμπίασιν, εἰ αὐτῷ τὰ αὐτὰ δοκεῖ ἅ περ τῷ πατρί, [1399a] ὡς αἰσχρὸν ὂν τἀναντία εἰπεῖν. καὶ περὶ τῆς Ἑλένης ὡς Ἰσοκράτης ἔγραψεν ὅτι σπουδαία, εἴπερ Θησεὺς ἔκρινεν· καὶ περὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου, ὃν αἱ θεαὶ προέκριναν, καὶ περὶ Εὐαγόρου, ὅτι σπουδαῖος, ὥσπερ Ἰσοκράτης φησίν· Κόνων γοῦν δυστυχήσας, πάντας τοὺς ἄλλους παραλιπών, ὡς Εὐαγόραν ἦλθεν. ἄλλος ἐκ τῶν μερῶν, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς, ποία κίνησις ἡ ψυχή· ἤδε γὰρ ἢ ἥδε. παράδειγμα ἐκ τοῦ Σωκράτους τοῦ Θεοδέκτου· "εἰς ποῖον ἱερὸν ἠσέβηκεν;

1399a τίνας θεῶν οὐ τετίμηκεν ὧν ἡ πόλις νομίζει;" ἄλλος, ἐπειδὴ ἐπὶ τῶν πλείστων συμβαίνει ὥστε ἔπεσθαί τι τῷ αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν καὶ κακόν, ἐκ τοῦ ἀκολουθοῦντος προτρέπειν ἢ ἀποτρέπειν καὶ κατηγορεῖν ἢ ἀπολογεῖσθαι καὶ ἐπαινεῖν ἢ ψέγειν, οἷον τῇ παιδεύσει τὸ φθονεῖσθαι ἀκολουθεῖ κακόν, τὸ δὲ σοφὸν εἶναι ἀγαθόν· οὐ τοίνυν δεῖ παιδεύεσθαι, φθονεῖσθαι γὰρ οὐ δεῖ· δεῖ μὲν οὖν παιδεύεσθαι, σοφὸν γὰρ εἶναι δεῖ. ὁ τόπος οὗτός ἐστιν ἡ Καλλίππου τέχνη προσλαβοῦσα τὸ δυνατὸν καὶ τἆλλα, ὡς εἴρηται. ἄλλος, ὅταν περὶ δυοῖν καὶ ἀντικειμένοιν ἢ προτρέπειν ἢ ἀποτρέπειν δέῃ, καὶ τῷ πρότερον εἰρημένῳ τρόπῳ ἐπ' ἀμφοῖν χρῆσθαι. διαφέρει δέ, ὅτι ἐκεῖ μὲν τὰ τυχόντα ἀντιτίθεται, ἐνταῦθα δὲ τἀναντία.

οἷον ἱέρεια οὐκ εἴα τὸν υἱὸν δημηγορεῖν· "ἐὰν μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, τὰ δίκαια λέγῃς, οἱ ἄνθρωποί σε μισήσουσιν, ἐὰν δὲ

ENGLISH

thority the judges accept, or those whose judgment cannot be contradicted, such as those in power, or those whom it is not honorable to contradict, such as gods, a father, or teachers. So Autocles said against Mixidemides: if it was right for the Venerable Goddesses to submit to justice before the Areopagus, was it not right for Mixidemides? Or as Sappho said that dying is an evil: the gods have judged it so, or else they would die. Or as Aristippus said to Plato, when Plato had said something rather too pretentious, as Aristippus thought: "Well, our friend, at any rate, never spoke like that," meaning Socrates.[40]

And Hegesippus, having first consulted the oracle at Olympia, asked the god at Delphi whether his opinion was the same as his father's, [1399a] implying that it would be shameful to contradict him. And about Helen, as Isocrates wrote that she was a woman of worth, since Theseus judged her so; and about Alexander, whom the goddesses preferred; and about Evagoras, that he was a man of worth, as Isocrates says: at any rate Conon, when he met with misfortune, passed over everyone else and went to Evagoras. Another is from the parts, as in the *Topics*: what kind of motion is the soul? It must be this one or this one. An example from Theodectes' *Socrates*: "What temple has he committed impiety against?"[41]

"Which of the gods the city recognizes has he failed to honor?" Another: since in most cases it happens that something good and something bad both follow from the same thing, you can urge or dissuade, accuse or defend, praise or blame, from the consequences. For instance, education is followed by an evil, being envied, and by a good, being wise. So one shouldn't be educated, since one shouldn't be envied; or rather one should be educated, since one should be wise. This topic is the *Art* of Callippus, with the addition of the possible and the rest, as has been said. Another: when you have to urge or dissuade about two opposed things, use the method just described on both. The difference is that there any two things are set against each other, here opposites.

For instance, a priestess would not let her son speak in the assembly. "If you say what is just," she

40 The Venerable Goddesses are the Furies, who in myth brought their case against Orestes before the Areopagus.
41 At Olympia Hegesippus had consulted the oracle of Zeus; Apollo, the god of Delphi, was Zeus' son.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὰ ἄδικα, οἱ θεοί. δεῖ μὲν οὖν δημηγορεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν γὰρ τὰ δίκαια λέγῃς, οἱ θεοί σε φιλήσουσιν, ἐὰν δὲ τὰ ἄδικα, οἱ ἄνθρωποι. τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ ταὐτὸ τῷ λεγομένῳ τὸ ἕλος πρίασθαι καὶ τοὺς ἅλας· καὶ ἡ βλαίσωσις τοῦτο ἐστίν, ὅταν δυοῖν ἐναντίοιν ἑκατέρῳ ἀγαθὸν καὶ κακὸν ἕπηται, ἐναντία ἑκάτερα ἑκατέροις. ἄλλος, ἐπειδὴ οὐ ταὐτὰ φανερῶς ἐπαινοῦσι καὶ ἀφανῶς, ἀλλὰ φανερῶς μὲν τὰ δίκαια καὶ τὰ καλὰ ἐπαινοῦσι μάλιστα, ἰδίᾳ δὲ τὰ συμφέροντα μᾶλλον βούλονται, ἐκ τούτων πειρᾶσθαι συνάγειν θάτερον· τῶν γὰρ παραδόξων οὗτος ὁ τόπος κυριώτατός ἐστιν.	said, "people will hate you; if you say what is unjust, the gods will." On the contrary, you should speak in the assembly: "If you say what is just, the gods will love you; if you say what is unjust, people will." This is the same as the saying, "to buy the marsh along with the salt." And this is what "bow-legging" an argument is: when good and bad follow each of two opposites, each opposite to each. Another: since people don't praise the same things in public and in private, but in public praise above all what is just and fine, while in private they rather want what is advantageous, you should try to infer from these the other of the two. Of the topics for paradoxes, this is the most effective.[42]
ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ ἀνάλογον ταῦτα συμβαίνειν, οἷον ὁ Ἰφικράτης τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ νεώτερον ὄντα τῆς ἡλικίας, ὅτι μέγας ἦν, λειτουργεῖν ἀναγκαζόντων, εἶπεν ὅτι εἰ τοὺς μεγάλους τῶν παίδων ἄνδρας νομίζουσι, τοὺς μικροὺς τῶν ἀνδρῶν παῖδας εἶναι ψηφιοῦνται. 1399b καὶ Θεοδέκτης ἐν τῷ Νόμῳ, ὅτι "πολίτας μὲν ποιεῖσθε τοὺς μισθοφόρους, οἷον Στράβακα καὶ Χαρίδημον, διὰ τὴν ἐπιείκειαν· φυγάδας δ' οὐ ποιήσετε τοὺς ἐν τοῖς μισθοφόροις ἀνήκεστα διαπεπραγμένους;" ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ τὸ συμβαῖνον ἐὰν ᾖ ταὐτόν, ὅτι καὶ ἐξ ὧν συμβαίνει ταὐτά· οἷον Ξενοφάνης ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὁμοίως ἀσεβοῦσιν οἱ γενέσθαι φάσκοντες τοὺς θεοὺς τοῖς ἀποθανεῖν λέγουσιν· ἀμφοτέρως γὰρ συμβαίνει μὴ εἶναι τοὺς θεούς ποτε.	Another is from the analogy between results. For instance, when people were trying to force Iphicrates' son, who was under age, to perform a public service because he was tall, Iphicrates said that if they count tall boys as men, they will be voting that short men are boys. 1399b And Theodectes in the *Law*: "You make citizens of mercenaries like Strabax and Charidemus because of their decency; won't you make exiles of those among the mercenaries who have done irreparable harm?" Another: if the result is the same, the things it results from are the same. For instance, Xenophanes said that those who claim the gods were born are just as impious as those who say they die; for either way it follows that at some time the gods do not exist.[43]
1399b καὶ ὅλως δὲ τὸ συμβαῖνον ἐξ ἑκάστου λαμβάνειν ὡς τὸ αὐτὸ ἀεί· "μέλλετε δὲ κρίνειν οὐ περὶ Ἰσοκράτους ἀλλὰ περὶ ἐπιτηδεύματος, εἰ χρὴ φιλοσοφεῖν." καὶ ὅτι τὸ διδόναι γῆν καὶ ὕδωρ δουλεύειν [ἐστίν], καὶ τὸ μετέχειν τῆς κοινῆς εἰρήνης ποιεῖν τὸ προσταττόμενον. ληπτέον δ' ὁπότερον ἂν ᾖ χρήσιμον. ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ μὴ ταὐτὸ ἀεὶ αἱρεῖσθαι ὕστερον ἢ πρότερον, ἀλλ' ἀνάπαλιν, οἷον τόδε τὸ ἐνθύμημα, εἰ φεύγοντες μὲν ἐμαχόμεθα ὅπως κατέλθωμεν, κατελθόντες δὲ φευξόμεθα ὅπως μὴ μαχώμεθα· ὁτὲ μὲν γὰρ τὸ μένειν ἀντὶ τοῦ μάχεσθαι ᾑροῦντο, ὁτὲ δὲ τὸ μὴ μάχεσθαι ἀντὶ τοῦ μὴ μένειν.	And in general, take the result of each thing as always the same: "You are about to judge not about Isocrates but about a way of life: whether one ought to practice philosophy." And that giving earth and water [is] slavery, and that sharing in the common peace is doing what you are told. You must take whichever is useful. Another is from the fact that people don't always choose the same thing later as earlier, but the reverse. For instance, this enthymeme: if, when we were in exile, we fought to come home, are we now that we have come home to go into exile so as not to fight? At one time they chose to stay home at the cost of

42 A salt marsh brings the bad (the marsh) together with the good (the salt). "Bow-legging" is a retort that crosses the two legs of a dilemma.

43 Public services (liturgies), such as funding a chorus or a warship, were imposed on wealthy Athenian citizens.

GREEK	ENGLISH
	fighting; at another, not to fight at the cost of not staying.[44]
ἄλλος τὸ οὗ ἕνεκ' ἂν εἴη ἢ γένοιτο, τούτου ἕνεκα φάναι εἶναι ἢ γεγενῆσθαι, οἷον εἰ δοίη ἄν τις τινὶ ἵν' ἀφελόμενος λυπήσῃ, ὅθεν καὶ τοῦτ' εἴρηται, πολλοῖς ὁ δαίμων οὐ κατ' εὔνοιαν φρενῶν μεγάλα δίδωσιν εὐτυχήματ', ἀλλ' ἵνα τὰς συμφορὰς λάβωσιν ἐπιφανεστέρας. καὶ τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Μελεάγρου τοῦ Ἀντιφῶντος, οὐχ ἵνα κτάνωσι θῆρ', ὅπως δὲ μάρτυρες ἀρετῆς γένωνται Μελεάγρῳ πρὸς Ἑλλάδα. καὶ τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Αἴαντος τοῦ Θεοδέκτου, ὅτι ὁ Διομήδης προείλετο Ὀδυσσέα οὐ τιμῶν, ἀλλ' ἵνα ἥττων ᾖ ὁ ἀκολουθῶν· ἐνδέχεται γὰρ τούτου ἕνεκα ποιῆσαι.	Another is to say that the purpose for which something might exist or happen is the reason it exists or has happened. For instance, that someone would give a person something in order to cause him pain by taking it away. Hence this saying: "To many the god, from no goodwill of heart, grants great good fortune, but so that the disasters they meet may be more conspicuous." And the lines from Antiphon's *Meleager*: "Not so that they might kill the beast, but that they might be witnesses to Meleager's excellence before Greece." And the passage from Theodectes' *Ajax,* that Diomedes chose Odysseus not to honor him but so that his companion would be his inferior; for it is possible that he did it for that reason.[45]
ἄλλος κοινὸς καὶ τοῖς ἀμφισβητοῦσιν καὶ τοῖς συμβουλεύουσι, σκοπεῖν τὰ προτρέποντα καὶ ἀποτρέποντα, καὶ ὧν ἕνεκα καὶ πράττουσι καὶ φεύγουσιν· ταῦτα γάρ ἐστιν ἃ ἐὰν μὲν ὑπάρχῃ δεῖ πράττειν, ⟨ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ὑπάρχῃ, μὴ πράττειν,⟩ οἷον εἰ δυνατὸν καὶ ῥᾴδιον καὶ ὠφέλιμον ἢ αὐτῷ ἢ φίλοις ἢ βλαβερὸν ἐχθροῖς, κἂν ᾖ ἐπιζήμιον, εἰ ἐλάττων ἡ ζημία τοῦ πράγματος. καὶ προτρέπονται δ' ἐκ τούτων καὶ ἀποτρέπονται ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων. 1400a ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ κατηγοροῦσι καὶ ἀπολογοῦνται· ἐκ μὲν τῶν ἀποτρεπόντων ἀπολογοῦνται, ἐκ δὲ τῶν προτρεπόντων κατηγοροῦσιν. ἀπολογοῦνται μὲν * * * ἔστι δ' ὁ τόπος οὗτος ὅλη τέχνη ἥ τε Παμφίλου καὶ ἡ Καλλίππου. ἄλλος ἐκ τῶν δοκούντων μὲν γίγνεσθαι ἀπίστων δέ, ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ἔδοξαν, εἰ μὴ ἦν ἢ ἐγγὺς ἦν.	Another, common to litigants and to those giving advice, is to look at what encourages and what deters, and at the reasons for which people act or avoid acting. For these are the things which, if they are present, mean one should act ⟨and if they are not present, not act⟩: for instance, if a thing is possible and easy and beneficial either to oneself or to one's friends, or harmful to one's enemies; and even if it involves a loss, if the loss is smaller than the gain. People are urged on by these considerations and deterred by their opposites. 1400a From these same considerations they also accuse and defend: they defend from what deters, and accuse from what encourages. They defend * * * This topic is the whole *Art* of Pamphilus and of Callippus. Another is from things that are thought to happen but are incredible: that people would not have thought so unless they were true or close to true.
1400a καὶ ὅτι μᾶλλον· ἢ γὰρ τὰ ὄντα ἢ τὰ εἰκότα ὑπολαμβάνουσιν· εἰ οὖν ἄπιστον καὶ μὴ εἰκός, ἀληθὲς ἂν εἴη· οὐ γὰρ διά γε τὸ εἰκὸς καὶ πιθανὸν δοκεῖ οὕτως. οἷον Ἀνδροκλῆς ἔλεγεν ὁ Πιτθεὺς κατηγορῶν τοῦ νόμου, ἐπεὶ ἐθορύβησαν αὐτῷ εἰπόντι, "δέονται οἱ νόμοι νόμου τοῦ διορθώσοντος, καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἰχθύες ἁλός, καίτοι οὐκ εἰκὸς οὐδὲ πιθανὸν ἐν ἅλμῃ τρεφομένους δεῖσθαι ἁλός, καὶ τὰ στέμφυλα ἐλαίου·	And all the more so: for people believe either what is true or what is probable. So if something is incredible and not probable, it must be true; for it is certainly not because of its probability and persuasiveness that it is thought so. For instance, Androcles of Pitthus, speaking against the law, said when they shouted him down: "The laws need a law to correct them; so too fish need salt, and yet it

44 Giving earth and water was the token of submission demanded by the Persian king; the "common peace" was the settlement imposed on the Greeks by Philip of Macedon after 338 BC.
45 In the *Iliad* (Book 10) Diomedes picks Odysseus as his companion for a night raid.

GREEK

καίτοι ἄπιστον, ἐξ ὧν ἔλαιον γίγνεται, ταῦτα δεῖσθαι ἐλαίου." ἄλλος ἐλεγκτικός, τὸ τὰ ἀνομολογούμενα σκοπεῖν, εἴ τι ἀνομολογούμενον ἐκ πάντων καὶ χρόνων καὶ πράξεων καὶ λόγων, χωρὶς μὲν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἀμφισβητοῦντος, οἷον "καὶ φησὶ μὲν φιλεῖν ὑμᾶς, συνώμοσεν δὲ τοῖς τριάκοντα," χωρὶς δ' ἐπ' αὐτοῦ, "καὶ φησὶ μὲν εἶναί με φιλόδικον, οὐκ ἔχει δὲ ἀποδεῖξαι δεδικασμένον οὐδεμίαν δίκην," χωρὶς δ' ἐπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ τοῦ ἀμφισβητοῦντος, "καὶ οὗτος μὲν οὐ δεδάνεικε πώποτε οὐδέν, ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ πολλοὺς λέλυμαι ὑμῶν." ἄλλος τοῖς προδιαβεβλημένοις καὶ ἀνθρώποις καὶ πράγμασιν, ἢ δοκοῦσι, τὸ λέγειν τὴν αἰτίαν τοῦ παραδόξου· ἔστιν γάρ τι δι' ὃ φαίνεται.

οἷον ὑποβεβλημένης τινὸς τὸν αὑτῆς υἱὸν διὰ τὸ ἀσπάζεσθαι ἐδόκει συνεῖναι τῷ μειρακίῳ, λεχθέντος δὲ τοῦ αἰτίου ἐλύθη ἡ διαβολή· καὶ οἷον ἐν τῷ Αἴαντι τῷ Θεοδέκτου Ὀδυσσεὺς λέγει πρὸς τὸν Αἴαντα, διότι ἀνδρειότερος ὢν τοῦ Αἴαντος οὐ δοκεῖ. ἄλλος ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰτίου, ἄν τε ὑπάρχῃ, ὅτι ἔστι, κἂν μὴ ὑπάρχῃ, ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν· ἅμα γὰρ τὸ αἴτιον καὶ οὗ αἴτιον, καὶ ἄνευ αἰτίου οὐθέν ἐστιν, οἷον Λεωδάμας ἀπολογούμενος ἔλεγε, κατηγορήσαντος Θρασυβούλου ὅτι ἦν στηλίτης γεγονὼς ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει, ἀλλ' ἐκκόψαι ἐπὶ τῶν τριάκοντα· οὐκ ἐνδέχεσθαι ἔφη· μᾶλλον γὰρ ἂν πιστεύειν αὐτῷ τοὺς τριάκοντα ἐγγεγραμμένης τῆς ἔχθρας πρὸς τὸν δῆμον.

ἄλλος, εἰ ἐνεδέχετο βέλτιον ἄλλως ἢ ἐνδέχεται ὧν ἢ συμβουλεύει ἢ πράττει ἢ πέπραχε σκοπεῖν· φανερὸν γὰρ ὅτι, [1400b] εἰ μὴ οὕτως ἔχει, οὐ πέπραχεν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἑκὼν τὰ φαῦλα καὶ γιγνώσκων προαιρεῖται. ἔστιν δὲ τοῦτο ψεῦδος· πολλάκις γὰρ ὕστερον γίγνεται δῆλον πῶς ἦν πρᾶξαι βέλτιον, πρότερον δὲ ἄδηλον. ἄλλος, ὅταν τι ἐναντίον μέλλῃ πράττεσθαι τοῖς πεπραγμένοις ἅμα, σκοπεῖν, οἷον Ξενοφάνης Ἐλεάταις ἐρωτῶσιν εἰ θύωσι τῇ Λευκοθέᾳ καὶ θρηνῶσιν ἢ μή, συνεβούλευεν, εἰ μὲν θεὸν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν, μὴ θρηνεῖν, εἰ δ' ἄνθρωπον, μὴ θύειν. ἄλλος τόπος τὸ ἐκ τῶν ἁμαρτηθέντων κατηγορεῖν ἢ

ENGLISH

is neither probable nor persuasive that creatures raised in brine should need salt; and pressed olives need oil,"

"and yet it is incredible that what oil comes from should need oil." Another, refutative, is to look for inconsistencies: whether anything is inconsistent among all the dates, actions and words. Do it separately for the opponent, as in "He says he loves you, but he conspired with the Thirty"; separately for yourself, as in "He says I am litigious, but he can't show that I have ever brought a single lawsuit"; and separately for yourself and the opponent together, as in "This man has never lent anything to anyone, while I have ransomed many of you." Another, for people and things that have been slandered beforehand, or seem to have been, is to state the reason for the paradox; for there is some reason why it appears so.[46]

For instance, a woman had passed off her own son as someone else's, and because she kept embracing him she was thought to be sleeping with the young man; but once the reason was stated, the slander was dispelled. And as in Theodectes' *Ajax*, Odysseus tells Ajax why, though he is braver than Ajax, he is not thought to be. Another is from the cause: if the cause is present, the thing exists; if it is not, it doesn't. For the cause and what it causes go together, and nothing exists without a cause. For instance, Leodamas, in his defense, when Thrasybulus accused him of having had his name posted on a pillar of disgrace on the Acropolis and of having chiseled it out under the Thirty, said it was not possible: the Thirty would have trusted him more if his enmity toward the people had stayed inscribed.[47]

Another is to look at whether it was, or is, possible to do better in some other way than what the person is advising, doing or has done. For it is clear that [1400b] if that is not the case, he has not done it; for no one willingly and knowingly chooses what is bad. But this is false: it often becomes clear only later how one could have acted better, though it was unclear before. Another, when something is about to be done that is contrary to what has already been done, is to look at the two together. For instance, when the people of Elea asked Xeno-

46 The Thirty were the oligarchs who ruled Athens in 404–403 BC.
47 Public enemies were named on inscribed stone pillars. Thrasybulus led the democrats who overthrew the Thirty in 403 BC.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	ἀπολογεῖσθαι, οἷον ἐν τῇ Καρκίνου Μηδείᾳ οἱ μὲν κατηγοροῦσιν ὅτι τοὺς παῖδας ἀπέκτεινεν, οὐ φαίνεσθαι γοῦν αὐτούς.	phanes whether or not they should sacrifice to Leucothea and mourn her, he advised them that if they regarded her as a goddess they should not mourn her, and if as a human being they should not sacrifice to her. Another topic is to accuse or defend on the basis of mistakes made. For instance, in Carcinus' *Medea* the accusers say that she has killed her children; at any rate, they are nowhere to be seen.[48]
1400b	ἥμαρτε γὰρ ἡ Μήδεια περὶ τὴν ἀποστολὴν τῶν παίδων· ἡ δ' ἀπολογεῖται ὅτι οὐκ ἂν τοὺς παῖδας ἀλλὰ τὸν Ἰάσονα ἂν ἀπέκτεινεν· τοῦτο γὰρ ἥμαρτεν ἂν μὴ ποιήσασα, εἴπερ καὶ θάτερον ἐποίησεν. ἔστι δ' ὁ τόπος οὗτος τοῦ ἐνθυμήματος καὶ τὸ εἶδος ὅλη ἡ πρότερον Θεοδώρου τέχνη. ἄλλος ἀπὸ τοῦ ὀνόματος, οἷον ὡς ὁ Σοφοκλῆς σαφῶς σιδήρῳ καὶ φοροῦσα τοὔνομα, καὶ ὡς ἐν τοῖς τῶν θεῶν ἐπαίνοις εἰώθασι λέγειν..., καὶ ὡς Κόνων Θρασύβουλον θρασύβουλον ἐκάλει, καὶ Ἡρόδικος Θρασύμαχον ἀεὶ θρασύμαχος εἶ, καὶ Πῶλον ἀεὶ σὺ πῶλος εἶ, καὶ Δράκοντα τὸν νομοθέτην, ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ἀνθρώπου οἱ νόμοι ἀλλὰ δράκοντος· χαλεποὶ γάρ. καὶ ὡς ἡ Εὐριπίδου Ἑκάβη εἰς τὴν Ἀφροδίτην καὶ τοὔνομ' ὀρθῶς ἀφροσύνης ἄρχει θεᾶς, καὶ ὡς Χαιρήμων Πενθεὺς ἐσομένης συμφορᾶς ἐπώνυμος.	For Medea had made a mistake in sending the children away. She defends herself by saying that she would have killed not the children but Jason; for it would have been a mistake not to do that, if she had done the other. This topic, and this kind of enthymeme, is the whole of Theodorus' earlier *Art*. Another is from the name. So Sophocles: "Clearly like iron, and bearing the name." And as people usually say in praising the gods...; and as Conon called Thrasybulus "bold-in-counsel," and Herodicus said to Thrasymachus, "You're always bold in battle," and to Polus, "You're always a colt," and said of Draco the lawgiver that his laws were not those of a human being but of a dragon, since they were harsh. And as Euripides' Hecuba says of Aphrodite, "And the goddess's name rightly begins like 'folly'"; and as Chaeremon says, "Pentheus, named for the grief to come."[49]
	εὐδοκιμεῖ δὲ μᾶλλον τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων τὰ ἐλεγκτικὰ τῶν ἀποδεικτικῶν διὰ τὸ συναγωγὴν μὲν ἐναντίων εἶναι ἐν μικρῷ τὸ ἐλεγκτικὸν ἐνθύμημα, παρ' ἄλληλα δὲ φανερὰ εἶναι τῷ ἀκροατῇ μᾶλλον. πάντων δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐλεγκτικῶν καὶ τῶν δεικτικῶν συλλογισμῶν θορυβεῖται μάλιστα τὰ τοιαῦτα ὅσα ἀρχόμενα προορῶσι μὴ τῷ ἐπιπολῆς εἶναι (ἅμα γὰρ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐφ' αὑτοῖς χαίρουσι προαισθανόμενοι), καὶ ὅσων τοσοῦτον ὑστερίζουσιν ὥσθ' ἅμα εἰρημένων γνωρίζειν.	Refutative enthymemes are better received than demonstrative ones, because a refutative enthymeme brings opposites together in a small space, and things set side by side are clearer to the hearer. But of all syllogisms, refutative and demonstrative alike, those that win the most applause are the ones whose outcome the audience foresees from the start, provided this is not because they are superficial (for at the same time the hearers are pleased with themselves for seeing it coming), and those which they lag behind only so far as to grasp them the moment they are stated.

CHAPTER 24: APPARENT ENTHYMEMES

Topics of arguments that only seem to prove, from wordplay to confusing the probable.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐπεὶ δ' ἐνδέχεται τὸν μὲν εἶναι συλλογισμόν, τὸν δὲ μὴ εἶναι μὲν φαίνεσθαι δέ, ἀνάγκη καὶ ἐνθύμημα τὸ μὲν	Since one syllogism can be genuine and another not genuine but only apparent, it follows that one enthymeme can be genuine and another not an

48 Leucothea was the mortal Ino, who became a sea goddess after drowning herself.

GREEK

εἶναι, τὸ δὲ μὴ εἶναι ἐνθύμημα φαίνεσθαι δέ, ἐπείπερ τὸ ἐνθύμημα συλλογισμός τις. 1401a τόποι δ' εἰσὶ τῶν φαινομένων ἐνθυμημάτων εἷς μὲν ὁ παρὰ τὴν λέξιν, καὶ τούτου ἓν μὲν μέρος, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς διαλεκτικοῖς τὸ μὴ συλλογισάμενον συμπερασματικῶς τὸ τελευταῖον εἰπεῖν, οὐκ ἄρα τὸ καὶ τό, ἀνάγκη ἄρα καὶ τὸ καὶ τό, ⟨καὶ ἐν⟩ τοῖς ἐνθυμήμασι τὸ συνεστραμμένον καὶ ἀντικειμένως εἰπεῖν φαίνεται ἐνθύμημα· ἡ γὰρ τοιαύτη λέξις χώρα ἐστὶν ἐνθυμήματος. καὶ ἔοικε τὸ τοιοῦτον εἶναι παρὰ τὸ σχῆμα τῆς λέξεως.

1401a ἔστι δὲ εἰς τὸ τῇ λέξει συλλογιστικῶς λέγειν χρήσιμον τὸ συλλογισμῶν πολλῶν κεφάλαια λέγειν, ὅτι τοὺς μὲν ἔσωσε, τοῖς δ' ἑτέροις ἐτιμώρησε, τοὺς δ' Ἕλληνας ἠλευθέρωσε· ἕκαστον μὲν γὰρ τούτων ἐξ ἄλλων ἀπεδείχθη, συντεθέντων δὲ φαίνεται καὶ ἐκ τούτων τι γίγνεσθαι. ἓν δὲ τὸ παρὰ τὴν ὁμωνυμίαν, τὸ φάναι σπουδαῖον εἶναι μῦν, ἀφ' οὗ γ' ἐστὶν ἡ τιμιωτάτη πασῶν τελετή· τὰ γὰρ μυστήρια πασῶν τιμιωτάτη τελετή. ἢ εἴ τις κύνα ἐγκωμιάζων τὸν ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ συμπαραλαμβάνοι ἢ τὸν Πᾶνα, ὅτι Πίνδαρος ἔφησεν ὦ μάκαρ, ὅν τε μεγάλας θεοῦ κύνα παντοδαπὸν / καλέουσιν Ὀλύμπιοι. ἢ ὅτι τὸ μηδένα εἶναι κύν' ἀτιμότατόν ἐστιν, ὥστε τὸ κύνα δῆλον ὅτι τίμιον. καὶ τὸ κοινωνικὸν φάναι τὸν Ἑρμῆν εἶναι μάλιστα τῶν θεῶν· μόνος γὰρ καλεῖται κοινὸς Ἑρμῆς.

καὶ τὸ τὸν λόγον εἶναι σπουδαιότατον, ὅτι οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες οὐ χρημάτων ἀλλὰ λόγου εἰσὶν ἄξιοι· τὸ γὰρ λόγου ἄξιον οὐχ ἁπλῶς λέγεται. ἄλλος τὸ διῃρημένον συντιθέντα λέγειν ἢ τὸ συγκείμενον διαιροῦντα· ἐπεὶ γὰρ ταὐτὸν δοκεῖ εἶναι οὐκ ὂν ταὐτὸ πολλάκις, ὁπότερον χρησιμώτερον, τοῦτο δεῖ ποιεῖν. ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο Εὐθυδήμου λόγος, οἷον τὸ εἰδέναι ὅτι τριήρης ἐμ Πειραιεῖ ἐστίν· ἕκαστον γὰρ οἶδεν. καὶ τὸν τὰ στοιχεῖα ἐπιστάμενον ὅτι τὸ ἔπος οἶδεν· τὸ γὰρ ἔπος τὸ αὐτό ἐστιν. καὶ ἐπεὶ τὸ δὶς τοσοῦτον νοσῶδες, μηδὲ τὸ ἓν φάναι ὑγιεινὸν εἶναι· ἄτοπον γὰρ εἰ τὰ δύο ἀγαθὰ ἓν κακόν ἐστιν. οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἐλεγκτικόν, ὧδε δὲ δεικτικόν· οὐ γάρ ἐστιν ἓν ἀγαθὸν δύο κακά. ὅλος δὲ ὁ τόπος παραλογιστικός.

ENGLISH

enthymeme but only apparently one, since the enthymeme is a kind of syllogism. 1401a Of the topics of apparent enthymemes, one depends on the wording. One part of this is the move used in dialectic, where you state the last point as a conclusion without having reasoned to it: "So it is not this and that," "So it must be this and that." In enthymemes, too, saying something in a compressed and antithetical way looks like an enthymeme, since that kind of wording is the enthymeme's home ground. And this sort of thing seems to depend on the form of the expression.

To speak syllogistically by wording alone, it is useful to state the headings of many syllogisms: "he saved some, avenged others, and freed the Greeks." Each of these was proved from other premises, but put together they make it seem that something follows from them too. Another topic depends on homonymy: saying that the mouse is a worthy creature, since the most revered of all rites is named after it, for the mysteries are the most revered of all rites. Or if someone praising the dog were to bring in the dog in the sky, or Pan, because Pindar said: "Blessed one, whom the Olympians call / the many-shaped dog of the great goddess." Or saying that being no dog is the greatest disgrace, so clearly being a dog is an honor. Or saying that Hermes is the most sharing of the gods, since he alone is called "common Hermes."[50]

Or saying that an account is the worthiest thing, since good men are worthy not of money but of account; but "worthy of account" is not meant in the plain sense. Another topic is to state as combined what is separate, or as separate what is combined. Since what is not the same often seems to be the same, you should do whichever is more useful. This is Euthydemus' argument. An example is that a man knows there is a trireme in Piraeus, since he knows each of them. Or that someone who knows the letters knows the word, since the word is the same thing. Or, since a double dose of something is unhealthy, saying that a single dose isn't healthy either, since it would be absurd if two goods made one bad. Put this way it refutes; put

49 Each is a pun on a name: Sidero suggests *sidēros*, "iron," and the names Thrasybulus, Thrasymachus, Polus and Draco mean "bold in counsel," "bold in battle," "colt" and "serpent." Aphrodite begins like *aphrosynē*, "folly," and Pentheus echoes *penthos*, "grief."
50 The pun is on *mys*, "mouse," and *mystēria*, "mysteries." In Pindar's lines Pan is called the "dog" of the great goddess Cybele.

GREEK

ENGLISH

the other way it demonstrates: one good is not two bads. The whole topic is fallacious.[51]

πάλιν τὸ Πολυκράτους εἰς Θρασύβουλον, ὅτι τριάκοντα τυράννους κατέλυσε· συντίθησι γάρ. ἢ τὸ ἐν τῷ Ὀρέστῃ τῷ Θεοδέκτου· ἐκ διαιρέσεως γάρ ἐστιν. δίκαιόν ἐστιν, ἥ τις ἂν κτείνῃ πόσιν, ἀποθνήσκειν ταύτην, καὶ τῷ πατρί γε τιμωρεῖν τὸν υἱόν· [1401b] οὐκοῦν [καὶ] ταῦτα καὶ πεπρᾶχθαι· συντεθέντα γὰρ ἴσως οὐκέτι δίκαιον. εἴη δ' ἂν καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἔλλειψιν· ἀφαιρεῖ γὰρ τὸ ὑπὸ τίνος. ἄλλος δὲ τόπος τὸ δεινώσει κατασκευάζειν ἢ ἀνασκευάζειν· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ὅταν, μὴ δείξας ὅτι ἐποίησεν, αὐξήσῃ τὸ πρᾶγμα· ποιεῖ γὰρ φαίνεσθαι ἢ ὡς οὐ πεποίηκεν, ὅταν ὁ τὴν αἰτίαν ἔχων αὔξῃ, ἢ ὡς πεποίηκεν, ὅταν ὁ κατηγορῶν ὀργίζηται. οὔκουν ἐστὶν ἐνθύμημα· παραλογίζεται γὰρ ὁ ἀκροατὴς ὅτι ἐποίησεν ἢ οὐκ ἐποίησεν, οὐ δεδειγμένου. ἄλλος τὸ ἐκ σημείου· ἀσυλλόγιστον γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο.

Again, Polycrates' claim about Thrasybulus, that he overthrew thirty tyrants: he adds them together. Or the argument in Theodectes' *Orestes*, which depends on division: "It is just that a woman who kills her husband should die," and "that the son should avenge his father"; [1401b] "so then these are [also] the things that have been done." But put together they may no longer be just. It could also depend on omission, since it leaves out by whom. Another topic is to build up or demolish a case by exaggeration. This is when someone amplifies the deed without having shown that it was done. It makes it look either as though he hasn't done it, when the accused is the one amplifying, or as though he has, when the accuser is angry. So it is not an enthymeme, because the hearer falsely infers that he did it or didn't, though nothing has been shown. Another is the topic from a sign, for this too is invalid.[52]

1401b οἷον εἴ τις λέγοι, ταῖς πόλεσι συμφέρουσιν οἱ ἐρῶντες· ὁ γὰρ Ἁρμοδίου καὶ Ἀριστογείτονος ἔρως κατέλυσε τὸν τύραννον Ἵππαρχον. ἢ εἴ τις λέγοι ὅτι κλέπτης Διονύσιος· πονηρὸς γάρ· ἀσυλλόγιστον γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ πᾶς πονηρὸς κλέπτης, ἀλλ' ὁ κλέπτης πᾶς πονηρός. ἄλλος διὰ τὸ συμβεβηκός, οἷον ὃ λέγει Πολυκράτης εἰς τοὺς μῦς, ὅτι ἐβοήθησαν διατραγόντες τὰς νευράς. ἢ εἴ τις φαίη τὸ ἐπὶ δεῖπνον κληθῆναι τιμιώτατον· διὰ γὰρ τὸ μὴ κληθῆναι ὁ Ἀχιλλεὺς ἐμήνισε τοῖς Ἀχαιοῖς ἐν Τενέδῳ· ὁ δ' ὡς ἀτιμαζόμενος ἐμήνισεν, συνέβη δὲ τοῦτο διὰ τὸ μὴ κληθῆναι. ἄλλος τὸ παρὰ τὸ ἑπόμενον, οἷον ἐν τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ὅτι μεγαλόψυχος· ὑπεριδὼν γὰρ τὴν πολλῶν ὁμιλίαν ἐν τῇ Ἴδῃ διέτριβεν καθ' αὑτόν· ὅτι γὰρ οἱ μεγαλόψυχοι τοιοῦτοι, καὶ οὗτος μεγαλόψυχος δόξειεν ἄν.

For example, if someone said, "Lovers are useful to cities, for the love of Harmodius and Aristogeiton overthrew the tyrant Hipparchus." Or if someone said that Dionysius is a thief, since he is a bad man. That is plainly invalid: not every bad man is a thief, but every thief is a bad man. Another topic depends on the accidental. An example is what Polycrates says about the mice, that they came to the rescue by gnawing through the bowstrings. Or if someone said that being invited to dinner is the highest honor, since it was because he was not invited that Achilles was angry with the Achaeans at Tenedos. In fact he was angry because he was being dishonored, and that happened to come about through not being invited. Another depends on the consequent. For example, in the *Alexander* it is argued that he was great-souled, since he scorned the company of the many and spent his time on Ida by himself. Because great-souled people are like this, he too would seem great-souled.[53]

καὶ ἐπεὶ καλλωπιστὴς καὶ νύκτωρ πλανᾶται, μοιχός· τοιοῦτοι γάρ. ὅμοιον δὲ καὶ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς οἱ πτωχοὶ καὶ ᾄδουσι καὶ ὀρχοῦνται, καὶ ὅτι τοῖς φυγάσιν ἔξεστιν

Or, since he's a dandy and roams around at night, he's an adulterer, for that is what adulterers are like. Similar is saying that beggars sing and dance

51 Euthydemus is the sophist portrayed in Plato's *Euthydemus* as a master of verbal tricks.
52 Polycrates was a sophist known for paradoxical display speeches.
53 The *Alexander* was evidently a speech in praise of Paris.

GREEK

οἰκεῖν ὅπου ἂν θέλωσιν· ὅτι γὰρ τοῖς δοκοῦσιν εὐδαιμονεῖν ὑπάρχει ταῦτα, καὶ οἷς ταῦτα ὑπάρχει, δόξαιεν ἂν εὐδαιμονεῖν. διαφέρει δὲ τῷ πῶς· διὸ καὶ εἰς τὴν ἔλλειψιν ἐμπίπτει. ἄλλος παρὰ τὸ ἀναίτιον ὡς αἴτιον, οἷον τῷ ἅμα ἢ μετὰ τοῦτο γεγονέναι· τὸ γὰρ μετὰ τοῦτο ὡς διὰ τοῦτο λαμβάνουσιν, καὶ μάλιστα οἱ ἐν ταῖς πολιτείαις, οἷον ὡς ὁ Δημάδης τὴν Δημοσθένους πολιτείαν πάντων τῶν κακῶν αἰτίαν· μετ' ἐκείνην γὰρ συνέβη ὁ πόλεμος. ἄλλος παρὰ τὴν ἔλλειψιν τοῦ πότε καὶ πῶς, οἷον ὅτι δικαίως Ἀλέξανδρος ἔλαβε τὴν Ἑλένην· αἵρεσις γὰρ αὐτῇ ἐδόθη παρὰ τοῦ πατρός.

οὐ γὰρ ἀεὶ ἴσως, ἀλλὰ τὸ πρῶτον· καὶ γὰρ ὁ πατὴρ μέχρι τούτου κύριος. 1402a ἢ εἴ τις φαίη τὸ τύπτειν τοὺς ἐλευθέρους ὕβριν εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ πάντως, ἀλλ' ὅταν ἄρχῃ χειρῶν ἀδίκων. ἔτι ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς ἐριστικοῖς παρὰ τὸ ἁπλῶς καὶ μὴ ἁπλῶς, ἀλλὰ τί, γίγνεται φαινόμενος συλλογισμός, οἷον ἐν μὲν τοῖς διαλεκτικοῖς ὅτι ἐστὶ τὸ μὴ ὂν ὄν, ἔστι γὰρ τὸ μὴ ὂν μὴ ὄν, καὶ ὅτι ἐπιστητὸν τὸ ἄγνωστον, ἔστιν γὰρ ἐπιστητὸν τὸ ἄγνωστον ὅτι ἄγνωστον, οὕτως καὶ ἐν τοῖς ῥητορικοῖς ἐστιν φαινόμενον ἐνθύμημα παρὰ τὸ μὴ ἁπλῶς εἰκὸς ἀλλὰ τὶ εἰκός. ἔστιν δὲ τοῦτο οὐ καθόλου, ὥσπερ καὶ Ἀγάθων λέγει τάχ' ἄν τις εἰκὸς αὐτὸ τοῦτ' εἶναι λέγοι, / βροτοῖσι πολλὰ τυγχάνειν οὐκ εἰκότα.

1402a γίγνεται γὰρ τὸ παρὰ τὸ εἰκός, ὥστε εἰκὸς καὶ τὸ παρὰ τὸ εἰκός. εἰ δὲ τοῦτο, ἔσται τὸ μὴ εἰκὸς εἰκός. ἀλλ' οὐχ ἁπλῶς, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἐριστικῶν τὸ κατὰ τί καὶ πρὸς τί καὶ πῇ οὐ προστιθέμενα ποιεῖ τὴν συκοφαντίαν, καὶ ἐνταῦθα παρὰ τὸ εἰκὸς εἶναι μὴ ἁπλῶς ἀλλὰ τὶ εἰκός. ἔστι δ' ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου ἡ Κόρακος τέχνη συγκειμένη· ἄν τε γὰρ μὴ ἔνοχος ᾖ τῇ αἰτίᾳ, οἷον ἀσθενὴς ὢν αἰκίας φεύγῃ· οὐ γὰρ εἰκός· κἂν ἔνοχος ὤν, οἷον ἂν ἰσχυρὸς ὤν· οὐ γὰρ εἰκός, ὅτι εἰκὸς ἔμελλε δόξειν.

ENGLISH

in the temples, and that exiles can live wherever they like. Since these things belong to those who are thought happy, those who have them would seem happy too. But how they have them makes a difference, so this also falls under omission. Another topic treats what is not a cause as a cause, on the ground that it happened at the same time or after. People take "after this" as "because of this," especially those in political life. For example, Demades held Demosthenes' policy to be the cause of all the evils, since the war came after it. Another depends on omitting when and how. An example is the claim that Alexander took Helen justly, since her father had given her the choice.[54]

But presumably the choice wasn't for all time, only the first time, since the father's authority extends only that far. 1402a Or if someone said that striking free men is insolence. It isn't in every case, only when one strikes the first, unprovoked blow. Again, in eristic arguments an apparent syllogism arises from confusing what holds absolutely with what holds not absolutely but in a particular respect. In dialectic, for example, it is argued that what is not, is, since what is not is not-being. Or that the unknown is knowable, since it is knowable that the unknown is unknown. So too in rhetoric there is an apparent enthymeme that confuses what is probable not absolutely but in a particular respect. But this is not universal, as Agathon says: "One might perhaps say that this itself is probable: / that many improbable things happen to mortals."

For what is contrary to probability does happen, so that what is contrary to probability is also probable. If so, the improbable will be probable. But not absolutely. In eristic arguments the trick comes from failing to add "in what respect," "in relation to what," and "in what way." Here, likewise, it comes from the probable being probable not absolutely but in a particular respect. Corax's art is put together from this topic. Suppose a man is not open to the charge, for example a weak man prosecuted for assault: his defense is that it isn't probable. Suppose he is open to it, for example because he is strong: his defense is that it isn't probable either, since it was bound to look probable.[55]

54 Demades was a pro-Macedonian Athenian orator and rival of Demosthenes; the war with Philip ended in the Athenian defeat at Chaeronea in 338 BC.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων· ἢ γὰρ ἔνοχον ἀνάγκη ἢ μὴ ἔνοχον εἶναι τῇ αἰτίᾳ· φαίνεται μὲν οὖν ἀμφότερα εἰκότα, ἔστι δὲ τὸ μὲν εἰκός, τὸ δὲ οὐχ ἁπλῶς ἀλλ' ὥσπερ εἴρηται. καὶ τὸ τὸν ἥττω δὲ λόγον κρείττω ποιεῖν τοῦτ' ἐστίν. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν δικαίως ἐδυσχέραινον οἱ ἄνθρωποι τὸ Πρωταγόρου ἐπάγγελμα· ψεῦδός τε γάρ ἐστιν, καὶ οὐκ ἀληθὲς ἀλλὰ φαινόμενον εἰκός, καὶ ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ τέχνῃ ἀλλ' ἐν ῥητορικῇ καὶ ἐριστικῇ.	So too in other cases, for a man must either be open to the charge or not. Both, then, look probable. But one is probable, and the other is probable not absolutely, only in the way described. This is what making the weaker argument the stronger amounts to. That is why people rightly took offense at what Protagoras professed to teach: it is a falsehood, a probability that is not real but apparent, and it has a place in no art except rhetoric and eristic.[56]

CHAPTER 25: REFUTATION

Refuting by counter-syllogism or objection, and the four kinds of objection.

GREEK	ENGLISH
καὶ περὶ μὲν ἐνθυμημάτων καὶ τῶν ὄντων καὶ τῶν φαινομένων εἴρηται, περὶ δὲ λύσεως ἐχόμενόν ἐστιν τῶν εἰρημένων εἰπεῖν. ἔστιν δὲ λύειν ἢ ἀντισυλλογισάμενον ἢ ἔνστασιν ἐνεγκόντα. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἀντισυλλογίζεσθαι δῆλον ὅτι ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τόπων ἐνδέχεται ποιεῖν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ συλλογισμοὶ ἐκ τῶν ἐνδόξων, δοκοῦντα δὲ πολλὰ ἐναντία ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν. αἱ δ' ἐνστάσεις φέρονται καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς, τετραχῶς· ἢ γὰρ ἐξ ἑαυτοῦ ἢ ἐκ τοῦ ὁμοίου ἢ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ἢ ἐκ τῶν κεκριμένων. λέγω δὲ ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ μέν, οἷον εἰ περὶ ἔρωτος εἴη τὸ ἐνθύμημα ὡς σπουδαῖος, [1402b] ἡ ἔνστασις διχῶς· ἢ γὰρ καθόλου εἰπόντα ὅτι πᾶσα ἔνδεια πονηρόν, ἢ κατὰ μέρος ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ἐλέγετο Καύνιος ἔρως, εἰ μὴ ἦσαν καὶ πονηροὶ ἔρωτες.	So much for enthymemes, both genuine and apparent; next we should speak about refutation. One refutes either by a counter-syllogism or by bringing an objection. Clearly counter-syllogisms can be drawn from the same topics. Syllogisms are drawn from reputable opinions, and many opinions are contrary to one another. Objections are brought in four ways, as in the *Topics*: from the thing itself, from what is similar, from the contrary, or from previous judgments. By "from the thing itself" I mean this. Suppose the enthymeme is that love is good. [1402b] The objection can be made in two ways. Either one says universally that all want is bad, or in particular that there would be no talk of "Caunian love" if there were not bad loves too.[57]
1402b ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ ἐναντίου ἔνστασις φέρεται, οἷον εἰ τὸ ἐνθύμημα ἦν ὅτι ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ πάντας τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖ, ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὁ μοχθηρὸς κακῶς, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ ὁμοίου, οἷον εἰ ἦν τὸ ἐνθύμημα ὅτι οἱ κακῶς πεπονθότες ἀεὶ μισοῦσιν, ὅτι ἀλλ' οὐδ' οἱ εὖ πεπονθότες ἀεὶ φιλοῦσιν. αἱ δὲ κρίσεις αἱ ἀπὸ τῶν γνωρίμων ἀνδρῶν, οἷον εἴ τις ἐνθύμημα εἶπεν ὅτι τοῖς μεθύουσι δεῖ συγγνώμην ἔχειν, ἀγνοοῦντες γὰρ ἁμαρτάνουσιν, ἔνστασις ὅτι οὔκουν ὁ Πιττακὸς αἰνετός· οὐ γὰρ ἂν μείζους ζημίας ἐνομοθέτησεν ἐάν τις μεθύων ἁμαρτάνῃ.	An objection is brought from the contrary. For example, if the enthymeme was that a good man does good to all his friends, the objection is, "But a bad man doesn't do harm to all his friends either." From the similar: if the enthymeme was that people who have been badly treated always hate, the objection is, "But people who have been well treated don't always love either." The judgments are those of well-known men. For example, if someone stated the enthymeme that one should forgive the drunk, since they do wrong in ignorance, the objection is that Pittacus, then, deserves no praise, for otherwise he wouldn't have laid

55 Corax of Syracuse, in the fifth century BC, was traditionally one of the founders of the art of rhetoric.
56 Protagoras, the fifth-century BC sophist, claimed he could teach how to make the weaker argument the stronger.
57 "Caunian love" was proverbial for incestuous passion, after the myth of Byblis and her love for her brother Caunus.

GREEK

ENGLISH

down greater penalties for wrongs done while drunk.[58]

ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐνθυμήματα λέγεται ἐκ τεττάρων, τὰ δὲ τέτταρα ταῦτ' ἐστὶν εἰκὸς παράδειγμα τεκμήριον σημεῖον, ἔστι δὲ τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῶν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἢ ὄντων ἢ δοκούντων συνηγμένα ἐνθυμήματα ἐκ τῶν εἰκότων, τὰ δὲ [δι' ἐπαγωγῆς] διὰ τοῦ ὁμοίου, ἢ ἑνὸς ἢ πλειόνων, ὅταν λαβὼν τὸ καθόλου εἶτα συλλογίσηται τὰ κατὰ μέρος, διὰ παραδείγματος, τὰ δὲ διὰ ἀναγκαίου καὶ ⟨ἀεὶ⟩ ὄντος διὰ τεκμηρίου, τὰ δὲ διὰ τοῦ καθόλου ἢ τοῦ ἐν μέρει ὄντος, ἐάν τε ὂν ἐάν τε μή, διὰ σημείων, τὸ δὲ εἰκὸς οὐ τὸ ἀεὶ ἀλλὰ τὸ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, φανερὸν ὅτι τὰ τοιαῦτα μὲν τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων ἀεὶ ἔστι λύειν φέροντα ἔνστασιν, ἡ δὲ λύσις φαινομένη ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀληθὴς ἀεί· οὐ γὰρ ὅτι οὐκ εἰκός λύει ὁ ἐνιστάμενος, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον.

Enthymemes are said to be drawn from four sources: probability, example, sure sign, and sign. Enthymemes drawn from what is, or seems to be, true for the most part are from probabilities. Those drawn [by induction] through the similar, whether one case or several, when one takes the universal and then reasons to the particulars, are through example. Those drawn through what is necessary and ⟨always⟩ so are through sure signs. Those drawn through what is universal or partial, whether it is so or not, are through signs. And the probable is not what always holds but what holds for the most part. It is clear, then, that enthymemes of this kind can always be refuted by bringing an objection, but the refutation is apparent and not always genuine. For the objector shows not that the conclusion is improbable but only that it is not necessary.

διὸ καὶ ἀεὶ ἔστι πλεονεκτεῖν ἀπολογούμενον μᾶλλον ἢ κατηγοροῦντα διὰ τοῦτον τὸν παραλογισμόν· ἐπεὶ γὰρ ὁ μὲν κατηγορῶν διὰ εἰκότων ἀποδείκνυσιν — ἔστι δὲ οὐ ταὐτὸ λῦσαι ἢ ὅτι οὐκ εἰκὸς ἢ ὅτι οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον, ἀεὶ δ' ἔχει ἔνστασιν τὸ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ· οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἦν ⟨ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ καὶ⟩ εἰκὸς ἀλλ' ἀεὶ καὶ ἀναγκαῖον· — ὁ δὲ κριτὴς οἴεται, ἂν οὕτω λυθῇ, ἢ οὐκ εἰκὸς εἶναι ἢ οὐχ αὑτῷ κριτέον, παραλογιζόμενος, ὥσπερ ἐλέγομεν· οὐ γὰρ ἐκ τῶν ἀναγκαίων δεῖ αὐτὸν μόνον κρίνειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν εἰκότων· τοῦτο γάρ ἐστι τὸ γνώμῃ τῇ ἀρίστῃ κρίνειν· οὔκουν ἱκανὸν ἂν λύσῃ ὅτι οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον, ἀλλὰ δεῖ λύειν ὅτι οὐκ εἰκός. τοῦτο δὲ συμβήσεται, ἐὰν ᾖ ἡ ἔνστασις μᾶλλον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ.

That is why, through this fallacy, the defendant always has an advantage over the accuser. The accuser proves his case by probabilities. Refuting a conclusion by showing it is improbable is not the same as showing it is not necessary, and what holds for the most part is always open to objection, since otherwise it would not be ⟨something that holds for the most part and⟩ probable, but something that always holds and is necessary. Yet if the argument is refuted in this way, the judge thinks either that it isn't probable or that it isn't for him to judge. He reasons falsely, as we said, for he should judge not only from what is necessary but also from what is probable. That is what it means to judge "by one's best judgment." So it isn't enough to refute by showing it is not necessary; one must refute by showing it is not probable. This will happen if the objection itself is more in line with what holds for the most part.

ἐνδέχεται δὲ εἶναι τοιαύτην διχῶς, ἢ τῷ χρόνῳ ἢ τοῖς πράγμασιν, κυριώτατα δέ, εἰ ἀμφοῖν· [1403a] εἰ γὰρ τὰ ⟨τὰ πλείω καὶ⟩ πλεονάκις οὕτως, τοῦτ' ἐστὶν εἰκὸς μᾶλλον. λύεται δὲ καὶ τὰ σημεῖα καὶ τὰ διὰ σημείου ἐνθυμήματα εἰρημένα, κἂν ᾖ ὑπάρχοντα, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις· ὅτι γὰρ ἀσυλλόγιστόν ἐστιν πᾶν σημεῖον, δῆλον ἡμῖν ἐκ τῶν ἀναλυτικῶν. πρὸς δὲ τὰ παραδειγματώδη ἡ αὐτὴ λύσις καὶ τὰ εἰκότα· ἐάν τε γὰρ ἔχωμεν ⟨ἕν⟩ τι οὐχ

An objection can be like this in two ways, in time or in the facts, and most decisively in both. [1403a] For if things are so ⟨in more cases and⟩ more often, that is more probable. Signs, too, and enthymemes stated through a sign, can be refuted even if the facts are true, as was said at the beginning, for the *Analytics* make it clear to us that every sign is invalid. Against arguments from example the re-

58 As lawgiver of Mytilene, Pittacus imposed heavier penalties for offenses committed when drunk.

GREEK	ENGLISH
οὕτω, λέλυται, ὅτι οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον, εἰ καὶ τὰ πλείω ἢ πλεονάκις ἄλλως· ἐάν τε καὶ τὰ πλείω καὶ τὰ πλεονάκις οὕτω, μαχετέον ἢ ὅτι τὸ παρὸν οὐχ ὅμοιον ἢ οὐχ ὁμοίως ἢ διαφοράν γέ τινα ἔχει.	futation is the same as against probabilities. If we have a ⟨single⟩ case that is otherwise, the argument is refuted as not necessary, even if more cases, or more often, go the other way. But if more cases and more often are as claimed, one must contend that the present case is not similar, or not similar in the same way, or that it differs in some respect.
1403a τὰ δὲ τεκμήρια καὶ τεκμηριώδη ἐνθυμήματα κατὰ μὲν τὸ ἀσυλλόγιστον οὐκ ἔσται λῦσαι (δῆλον δὲ καὶ τοῦθ' ἡμῖν ἐκ τῶν ἀναλυτικῶν), λείπεται δ' ὡς οὐχ ὑπάρχει τὸ λεγόμενον δεικνύναι. εἰ δὲ φανερὸν καὶ ὅτι ὑπάρχει καὶ ὅτι τεκμήριον, ἄλυτον ἤδη γίγνεται τοῦτο· πάντα γὰρ γίγνεται ἀπόδειξις ἤδη φανερά.	Sure signs and the enthymemes based on them cannot be refuted on the ground that they are invalid (the *Analytics* make this clear to us too). What remains is to show that the alleged fact is not so. If it is evident both that the fact is so and that it is a sure sign, the argument becomes irrefutable, for it then becomes a demonstration plain in every respect.

CHAPTER 26: AMPLIFICATION, AND THE END OF BOOK II

Amplifying is not a topic; the discussion of thought ends and style comes next.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὸ δ' αὔξειν καὶ μειοῦν οὐκ ἔστιν ἐνθυμήματος στοιχεῖον· τὸ γὰρ αὐτὸ λέγω στοιχεῖον καὶ τόπον· ἔστιν γὰρ στοιχεῖον καὶ τόπος, εἰς ὃ πολλὰ ἐνθυμήματα ἐμπίπτει. τὸ δ' αὔξειν καὶ μειοῦν ἐστὶν [ἐνθυμήματα] πρὸς τὸ δεῖξαι ὅτι μέγα ἢ μικρόν, ὥσπερ καὶ ὅτι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ἢ δίκαιον ἢ ἄδικον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὁτιοῦν. ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν πάντα περὶ ἃ οἱ συλλογισμοὶ καὶ τὰ ἐνθυμήματα, ὥστ' εἰ μηδὲ τούτων ἕκαστον ἐνθυμήματος τόπος, οὐδὲ τὸ αὔξειν καὶ μειοῦν. οὐδὲ τὰ λυτικὰ ἐνθυμήματος εἶδός τί ἐστιν [ἄλλο τῶν κατασκευαστικῶν]· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι λύει μὲν ἢ δείξας ἢ ἔνστασιν ἐνεγκών, ἀνταποδεικνύουσιν δὲ τὸ ἀντικείμενον, οἷον εἰ ἔδειξε ὅτι γέγονεν, οὗτος ὅτι οὐ γέγονεν, εἰ δὲ ὅτι οὐ γέγονεν, οὗτος ὅτι γέγονεν.	Amplifying and depreciating is not an element of enthymeme. By "element" I mean the same as "topic," since an element or topic is that under which many enthymemes fall. Amplifying and depreciating are [enthymemes] aimed at showing that something is great or small, just as others show that it is good or bad, just or unjust, or anything else. These are all things that syllogisms and enthymemes are about. So if none of these is a topic of enthymeme, neither is amplifying and depreciating. Nor are refuting enthymemes a distinct kind of enthymeme [different from constructive ones]. Clearly one refutes either by demonstrating or by bringing an objection, and the refuters demonstrate the opposite in return. If the other side showed that something happened, the refuter shows it didn't; if the other side showed it didn't, the refuter shows it did.
ὥστε αὕτη μὲν οὐκ ἂν εἴη ἡ διαφορά· τοῖς αὐτοῖς γὰρ χρῶνται ἀμφότεροι· ὅτι γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν ἢ ἔστιν, ἐνθυμήματα φέρουσιν· ἡ δ' ἔνστασις οὐκ ἔστιν ἐνθύμημα, ἀλλὰ καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς τοπικοῖς τὸ εἰπεῖν δόξαν τινὰ ἐξ ἧς ἔσται δῆλον ὅτι οὐ συλλελόγισται ἢ ὅτι ψεῦδός τι εἴληφεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ δὴ τρία ἐστὶν ἃ δεῖ πραγματευθῆναι περὶ τὸν λόγον, ὑπὲρ μὲν παραδειγμάτων καὶ γνωμῶν καὶ ἐνθυμημάτων καὶ ὅλως τῶν περὶ τὴν διάνοιαν, 1403b ὅθεν τε εὐπορήσομεν καὶ ὡς αὐτὰ λύσομεν, εἰρήσθω ἡμῖν τοσαῦτα, λοιπὸν δὲ διελθεῖν περὶ λέξεως καὶ τάξεως.	So this would not be the difference, since both sides use the same means: both bring enthymemes to show that something is not so, or is so. And the objection is not an enthymeme. As in the *Topics*, it consists in stating some opinion that will make it clear that the opponent has not reasoned validly or has assumed something false. There are three things that must be dealt with concerning a speech. On examples, maxims, enthymemes, and in general on matters of thought, 1403b where to

GREEK	ENGLISH
	find a supply of them and how to refute them, let this be enough; it remains to go through style and arrangement.

Book III

Style (clarity, metaphor, rhythm, the periodic sentence) and the arrangement of a speech, from introduction to epilogue.

CHAPTER 1: DELIVERY AND STYLE

Why style and delivery matter, and how prose style differs from poetry.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
1403b	Ἐπειδὴ τρία ἐστὶν ἃ δεῖ πραγματευθῆναι περὶ τὸν λόγον, ἓν μὲν ἐκ τίνων αἱ πίστεις ἔσονται, δεύτερον δὲ περὶ τὴν λέξιν, τρίτον δὲ πῶς χρὴ τάξαι τὰ μέρη τοῦ λόγου, περὶ μὲν τῶν πίστεων εἴρηται, καὶ ἐκ πόσων, ὅτι ἐκ τριῶν εἰσί, καὶ ταῦτα ποῖα, καὶ διὰ τί τοσαῦτα μόνα· ἢ γὰρ τῷ αὐτοί τι πεπονθέναι οἱ κρίνοντες, ἢ τῷ ποιούς τινας ὑπολαμβάνειν τοὺς λέγοντας, ἢ τῷ ἀποδεδεῖχθαι, πείθονται πάντες. εἴρηται δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐνθυμήματα, πόθεν δεῖ πορίζεσθαι· ἔστι γὰρ τὰ μὲν εἴδη τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων, τὰ δὲ τόποι. περὶ δὲ τῆς λέξεως ἐχόμενόν ἐστιν εἰπεῖν· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόχρη τὸ ἔχειν ἃ δεῖ λέγειν, ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη καὶ ταῦτα ὡς δεῖ εἰπεῖν, καὶ συμβάλλεται πολλὰ πρὸς τὸ φανῆναι ποιόν τινα τὸν λόγον.	There are three things that must be dealt with concerning a speech. First, where the proofs will come from; second, style; third, how the parts of the speech should be arranged. The proofs have been discussed: how many sources they come from (namely three), what these are, and why there are only so many. For in every case people are persuaded either because those judging have themselves been affected in some way, or because they take the speakers to be of a certain character, or because something has been proved. We have also said where enthymemes should be drawn from: some sources are the specific topics of enthymemes, the others are topics. Next we must speak about style. It isn't enough to have what you should say; you must also say it as you should, and this contributes much to how the speech comes across.
	τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον ἐζητήθη κατὰ φύσιν, ὅ περ πέφυκε πρῶτον, αὐτὰ τὰ πράγματα ἐκ τίνων ἔχει τὸ πιθανόν, δεύτερον δὲ τὸ ταῦτα τῇ λέξει διαθέσθαι, τρίτον δὲ τούτων ὃ δύναμιν μὲν ἔχει μεγίστην, οὔπω δ' ἐπικεχείρηται, τὰ περὶ τὴν ὑπόκρισιν. καὶ γὰρ εἰς τὴν τραγικὴν καὶ ῥαψῳδίαν ὀψὲ παρῆλθεν· ὑπεκρίνοντο γὰρ αὐτοὶ τὰς τραγῳδίας οἱ ποιηταὶ τὸ πρῶτον. δῆλον οὖν ὅτι καὶ περὶ τὴν ῥητορικήν ἐστι τὸ τοιοῦτον ὥσπερ καὶ περὶ τὴν ποιητικήν, ὅ περ ἕτεροί τινες ἐπραγματεύθησαν καὶ Γλαύκων ὁ Τήιος. ἔστιν δὲ αὐτὴ μὲν ἐν τῇ φωνῇ, πῶς αὐτῇ δεῖ χρῆσθαι πρὸς ἕκαστον πάθος, οἷον πότε μεγάλῃ καὶ πότε μικρᾷ καὶ μέσῃ, καὶ πῶς τοῖς τόνοις, οἷον ὀξείᾳ καὶ βαρείᾳ καὶ μέσῃ, καὶ ῥυθμοῖς τίσι πρὸς ἕκαστα.	The first question investigated was, as nature dictates, what comes first by nature: the sources from which the facts themselves get their persuasiveness. Second is how to set these out in words. Third comes something that has very great power but has not yet been attempted: delivery. Even in tragedy and rhapsody it came late, for at first the poets acted their tragedies themselves. Clearly, then, there is something of this kind in rhetoric as in poetry, and certain people have dealt with it, among them Glaucon of Teos. Delivery lies in the voice: how it should be used for each emotion, when loud, when soft, when in between; how the pitches should be used, high, low, and middle; and what rhythms suit each subject.[1]
	τρία γάρ ἐστιν περὶ ἃ σκοποῦσιν· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶ μέγεθος ἁρμονία ῥυθμός. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἆθλα σχεδὸν ἐκ τῶν ἀγώνων	There are three things they look to: volume, modulation, and rhythm. Those who master these

1 The Greek word for delivery, *hypokrisis*, is also the word for acting on the stage.

GREEK

οὗτοι λαμβάνουσιν, καὶ καθάπερ ἐκεῖ μεῖζον δύνανται νῦν τῶν ποιητῶν οἱ ὑποκριταί, καὶ κατὰ τοὺς πολιτικοὺς ἀγῶνας διὰ τὴν μοχθηρίαν τῶν πολιτειῶν. οὔπω δὲ σύγκειται τέχνη περὶ αὐτῶν, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ περὶ τὴν λέξιν ὀψὲ προῆλθεν· [1404a] καὶ δοκεῖ φορτικὸν εἶναι, καλῶς ὑπολαμβανόμενον. ἀλλ' ὅλης οὔσης πρὸς δόξαν τῆς πραγματείας τῆς περὶ τὴν ῥητορικήν, οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἔχοντος, ἀλλ' ὡς ἀναγκαίου τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν ποιητέον, ἐπεὶ τό γε δίκαιον μηδὲν πλείω ζητεῖν περὶ τὸν λόγον ἢ ὡς μήτε λυπεῖν μήτ' εὐφραίνειν· δίκαιον γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἀγωνίζεσθαι τοῖς πράγμασιν, ὥστε τἆλλα ἔξω τοῦ ἀποδεῖξαι περίεργα ἐστίν· ἀλλ' ὅμως μέγα δύναται, καθάπερ εἴρηται, διὰ τὴν τοῦ ἀκροατοῦ μοχθηρίαν.

1404a τὸ μὲν οὖν τῆς λέξεως ὅμως ἔχει τι μικρὸν ἀναγκαῖον ἐν πάσῃ διδασκαλίᾳ· διαφέρει γάρ τι πρὸς τὸ δηλῶσαι ὠδὶ ἢ ὠδὶ εἰπεῖν, οὐ μέντοι τοσοῦτον, ἀλλ' ἅπαντα φαντασία ταῦτ' ἐστὶ καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἀκροατήν· διὸ οὐδεὶς οὕτω γεωμετρεῖν διδάσκει. ἐκείνη μὲν οὖν ὅταν ἔλθῃ ταὐτὸ ποιήσει τῇ ὑποκριτικῇ, ἐγκεχειρήκασιν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγον περὶ αὐτῆς εἰπεῖν τινές, οἷον Θρασύμαχος ἐν τοῖς ἐλέοις· καὶ ἔστιν φύσεως τὸ ὑποκριτικὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀτεχνότερον, περὶ δὲ τὴν λέξιν ἔντεχνον. διὸ καὶ τοῖς τοῦτο δυναμένοις γίνεται πάλιν ἆθλα, καθάπερ καὶ τοῖς κατὰ τὴν ὑπόκρισιν ῥήτορσιν· οἱ γὰρ γραφόμενοι λόγοι μεῖζον ἰσχύουσι διὰ τὴν λέξιν ἢ διὰ τὴν διάνοιαν.

ἤρξαντο μὲν οὖν κινῆσαι τὸ πρῶτον, ὥσπερ πέφυκεν, οἱ ποιηταί· τὰ γὰρ ὀνόματα μιμήματα ἐστίν, ὑπῆρξεν δὲ καὶ ἡ φωνὴ πάντων μιμητικώτατον τῶν μορίων ἡμῖν· διὸ καὶ αἱ τέχναι συνέστησαν ἥ τε ῥαψῳδία καὶ ἡ ὑποκριτικὴ καὶ ἄλλαι γε. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ ποιηταὶ λέγοντες εὐήθη διὰ τὴν λέξιν ἐδόκουν πορίσασθαι [τήνδε] τὴν δόξαν, διὰ τοῦτο ποιητικὴ πρώτη ἐγένετο λέξις, οἷον ἡ Γοργίου. καὶ νῦν ἔτι οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀπαιδεύτων τοὺς τοιούτους οἴονται διαλέγεσθαι κάλλιστα. τοῦτο δ' οὐκ ἔστιν, ἀλλ' ἑτέρα λόγου καὶ ποιήσεως λέξις ἐστίν.

δηλοῖ δὲ τὸ συμβαῖνον· οὐδὲ γὰρ οἱ τὰς τραγῳδίας ποιοῦντες ἔτι χρῶνται τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καὶ ἐκ τῶν τετραμέτρων εἰς τὸ ἰαμβεῖον μετέβησαν διὰ τὸ τῷ λόγῳ τοῦτο τῶν μέτρων ὁμοιότατον εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων, οὕτω καὶ τῶν ὀνομάτων ἀφείκασιν ὅσα παρὰ τὴν

ENGLISH

carry off nearly all the prizes in the contests. Just as there actors now count for more than poets, so it is in political contests too, because of the corrupt state of the constitutions. But no art of these things has yet been composed, since even the study of style came late. [1404a] And, rightly regarded, it seems vulgar. But since the whole study of rhetoric is aimed at appearance, we must attend to it, not because it is right, but because it is necessary. In justice, one should look for nothing more in a speech than that it neither pain nor please the audience. The just thing is to fight one's case on the facts alone, so that everything outside demonstration is superfluous. All the same, as has been said, delivery has great power, because of the corruption of the audience.

Still, style has some small necessary place in all teaching. Saying something this way or that makes some difference to clarity, though not that much. All these things are show, aimed at the hearer. That is why no one teaches geometry this way. When an art of delivery does arrive, it will have the same effect as the art of acting. Some have tried to say a little about it, Thrasymachus for example in his *Appeals to Pity*. Skill in delivery is a gift of nature and less a matter of art, while style is a matter of art. So those who are good at it win prizes in their turn, just as orators skilled in delivery do. Written speeches owe more of their effect to style than to thought.[2]

It was the poets, naturally enough, who first set things going. Words are imitations, and the voice, too, is the most imitative of all our parts. That is why the arts of rhapsody and acting, and others besides, came into being. And since the poets, though saying simple-minded things, seemed to have won [this] reputation through their style, the first prose style was poetic, like Gorgias'. Even now most uneducated people think speakers of that sort talk most beautifully. They don't: the style of prose is different from that of poetry.[3]

What is happening shows this. Even the writers of tragedy no longer use poetic style in the same way. They switched from the tetrameter to the iambic because it is the most like speech of all the meters, and in the same way they have given up all words

2 Thrasymachus of Chalcedon was a fifth-century BC sophist and teacher of rhetoric.
3 Gorgias of Leontini, the Sicilian sophist, was famous for his ornate, poetic prose.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	διάλεκτόν ἐστιν, οἷς [δ'] οἱ πρῶτοι ἐκόσμουν, καὶ ἔτι νῦν οἱ τὰ ἑξάμετρα ποιοῦντες [ἀφείκασιν]. διὸ γελοῖον μιμεῖσθαι τούτους οἷ αὐτοὶ οὐκέτι χρῶνται ἐκείνῳ τῷ τρόπῳ, ὥστε φανερὸν ὅτι οὐχ ἅπαντα ὅσα περὶ λέξεως ἔστιν εἰπεῖν ἀκριβολογητέον ἡμῖν, ἀλλ' ὅσα περὶ τοιαύτης οἵας λέγομεν. περὶ δ' ἐκείνης εἴρηται ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιητικῆς.	that depart from ordinary conversation, [and] with which the early poets used to adorn their work, as writers of hexameters still [have given up] even now. So it is ridiculous to imitate people who no longer use that manner themselves. It is clear, then, that we need not go into precise detail about everything that can be said about style, only about the kind we are discussing. The other kind has been dealt with in the *Poetics*.

CHAPTER 2: CLARITY AND METAPHOR

Good style is clear and appropriate; metaphor gives it clarity, pleasure and distinction.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
1404b	ἔστω οὖν ἐκεῖνα τεθεωρημένα καὶ ὡρίσθω λέξεως ἀρετὴ σαφῆ εἶναι· σημεῖον γὰρ ὅτι ὁ λόγος, ὡς ἐὰν μὴ δηλοῖ, οὐ ποιήσει τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἔργον· καὶ μήτε ταπεινὴν μήτε ὑπὲρ τὸ ἀξίωμα, ἀλλὰ πρέπουσαν· ἡ γὰρ ποιητικὴ ἴσως οὐ ταπεινή, ἀλλ' οὐ πρέπουσα λόγῳ. τῶν δ' ὀνομάτων καὶ ῥημάτων σαφῆ μὲν ποιεῖ τὰ κύρια, μὴ ταπεινὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ κεκοσμημένην τἆλλα ὀνόματα ὅσα εἴρηται ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιητικῆς· τὸ γὰρ ἐξαλλάξαι ποιεῖ φαίνεσθαι σεμνοτέραν· ὥσπερ γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς ξένους οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς πολίτας, τὸ αὐτὸ πάσχουσιν καὶ πρὸς τὴν λέξιν. διὸ δεῖ ποιεῖν ξένην τὴν διάλεκτον· θαυμασταὶ γὰρ τῶν ἀπόντων εἰσίν, ἡδὺ δὲ τὸ θαυμαστόν ἐστιν.	Let that, then, be taken as studied, and let it be laid down that the excellence of style is to be clear. A sign of this is that if speech does not make its meaning plain, it will not do its job. Style should be neither flat nor above the dignity of the subject, but appropriate. Poetic style is perhaps not flat, but it is not appropriate to prose. Of nouns and verbs, the standard ones make style clear; the other kinds of word discussed in the *Poetics* make it not flat but ornamented. Departing from the ordinary makes it seem more dignified, since people feel about style the way they feel about foreigners compared with fellow citizens. So you should make your language unfamiliar, for people admire what is distant, and what is admired is pleasant.
	ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν μέτρων πολλά τε ποιεῖ τοῦτο καὶ ἁρμόττει ἐκεῖ· πλέον γὰρ ἐξέστηκεν περὶ ἃ καὶ περὶ οὓς ὁ λόγος· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ψιλοῖς λόγοις πολλῷ ἐλάττοσιν· ἡ γὰρ ὑπόθεσις ἐλάττων, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐνταῦθα, εἰ δοῦλος καλλιεποῖτο ἢ λίαν νέος, ἀπρεπέστερον, ἢ περὶ λίαν μικρῶν· ἀλλ' ἔστι καὶ ἐν τούτοις ἐπισυστελλόμενον καὶ αὐξανόμενον τὸ πρέπον· διὸ δεῖ λανθάνειν ποιοῦντας, καὶ μὴ δοκεῖν λέγειν πεπλασμένως ἀλλὰ πεφυκότως (τοῦτο γὰρ πιθανόν, ἐκεῖνο δὲ τοὐναντίον· ὡς γὰρ πρὸς ἐπιβουλεύοντα διαβάλλονται, καθάπερ πρὸς τοὺς οἴνους τοὺς μεμιγμένους) καὶ οἷον ἡ Θεοδώρου φωνὴ πέπονθε πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἄλλων ὑποκριτῶν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ λέγοντος ἔοικεν εἶναι, αἱ δ' ἀλλότριαι. κλέπτεται δ' εὖ, ἐάν τις ἐκ τῆς εἰωθυίας διαλέκτου ἐκλέγων συντιθῇ· ὅ περ Εὐριπίδης ποιεῖ καὶ ὑπέδειξε πρῶτος.	

GREEK

ENGLISH

In verse many things produce this effect, and it suits verse, since the subjects and persons it deals with are further removed from the ordinary. In prose far fewer such devices are fitting, since the subject matter is humbler. Even in verse it would be rather inappropriate for a slave or a very young man to use fine language, or to use it about very trivial matters. Even here, what is appropriate is a matter of scaling down and scaling up. So you must do it without being noticed and seem to speak not artificially but naturally. The natural is persuasive, the artificial the opposite: people get suspicious, as if someone were plotting against them, just as they are of doctored wine. It should be like the effect of Theodorus' voice compared with those of the other actors: his seems to belong to the character speaking, theirs to someone else. The art is well concealed if you compose by selecting from ordinary speech. Euripides does this, and he was the first to show the way.[4]

ὄντων δ' ὀνομάτων καὶ ῥημάτων ἐξ ὧν ὁ λόγος συνέστηκεν, τῶν δὲ ὀνομάτων τοσαῦτ' ἐχόντων εἴδη ὅσα τεθεώρηται ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιήσεως, τούτων γλώτταις μὲν καὶ διπλοῖς ὀνόμασι καὶ πεποιημένοις ὀλιγάκις καὶ ὀλιγαχοῦ χρηστέον (ὅπου δέ, ὕστερον ἐροῦμεν, τό τε διὰ τί εἴρηται· ἐπὶ τὸ μεῖζον γὰρ ἐξαλλάττει τοῦ πρέποντος), τὸ δὲ κύριον καὶ τὸ οἰκεῖον καὶ μεταφορὰ μόνα χρήσιμα πρὸς τὴν τῶν ψιλῶν λόγων λέξιν. σημεῖον δ' ὅτι τούτοις μόνοις πάντες χρῶνται· πάντες γὰρ μεταφοραῖς διαλέγονται καὶ τοῖς οἰκείοις καὶ τοῖς κυρίοις, ὥστε δῆλον ὡς ἂν εὖ ποιῇ τις, ἔσται τε ξενικὸν καὶ λανθάνειν ἐνδέχεται καὶ σαφηνιεῖ. αὕτη δ' ἦν ἡ τοῦ ῥητορικοῦ λόγου ἀρετή.

Speech is made of nouns and verbs, and nouns come in as many kinds as were studied in the work on poetry. Of these, rare words, compounds, and coined words should be used seldom and in few places (where, we will say later; why, we have already said: they depart from the appropriate toward excess). Only the standard word, the proper word, and metaphor are useful for the style of prose. A sign of this is that these are the only ones everybody uses, since everyone talks in metaphors and in proper and standard words. So it is clear that if you do this well, the style will have an unfamiliar air, the art can go unnoticed, and it will be clear. This, we said, was the excellence of rhetorical speech.

* τῶν δ' ὀνομάτων τῷ μὲν σοφιστῇ ὁμωνυμίαι χρήσιμοι (παρὰ ταύτας γὰρ κακουργεῖ), τῷ ποιητῇ δὲ συνωνυμίαι, [1405a] λέγω δὲ κύριά τε καὶ συνώνυμα οἷον τὸ πορεύεσθαι καὶ τὸ βαδίζειν· ταῦτα γὰρ ἀμφότερα καὶ κύρια καὶ συνώνυμα ἀλλήλοις. * τί μὲν οὖν τούτων ἕκαστόν ἐστι, καὶ πόσα εἴδη μεταφορᾶς, καὶ ὅτι τοῦτο πλεῖστον δύναται καὶ ἐν ποιήσει καὶ ἐν λόγοις, [αἱ μεταφοραί,] εἴρηται, καθάπερ ἐλέγομεν, ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιητικῆς· τοσούτῳ δ' ἐν λόγῳ δεῖ μᾶλλον φιλοπονεῖσθαι περὶ αὐτῶν, ὅσῳ ἐξ ἐλαττόνων βοηθημάτων ὁ λόγος ἐστὶ τῶν μέτρων. καὶ τὸ σαφὲς καὶ τὸ ἡδὺ καὶ τὸ ξενικὸν ἔχει μάλιστα ἡ μεταφορά,

* Of words, homonyms are useful to the sophist, since they are how he works his mischief, and synonyms to the poet. [1405a] By words that are standard and synonymous I mean, for example, "to proceed" and "to walk": these are both standard and synonymous with each other. * What each of these is, how many kinds of metaphor there are, and that this has the greatest power in both poetry and prose [metaphors], has been said, as we mentioned, in the *Poetics*. But in prose you must take all the more pains over them, because prose has fewer resources than verse. Metaphor above all

4 Theodorus was a celebrated tragic actor of the fourth century BC.

GREEK	ENGLISH
καὶ λαβεῖν οὐκ ἔστιν αὐτὴν παρ' ἄλλου. δεῖ δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐπίθετα καὶ τὰς μεταφορὰς ἁρμοττούσας λέγειν.	has clarity, pleasure, and an unfamiliar air, and it cannot be borrowed from someone else. Epithets and metaphors alike should be fitting.[5]
1405a τοῦτο δ' ἔσται ἐκ τοῦ ἀνάλογον· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀπρεπὲς φανεῖται διὰ τὸ παρ' ἄλληλα τὰ ἐναντία μάλιστα φαίνεσθαι. ἀλλὰ δεῖ σκοπεῖν, ὡς νέῳ φοινικίς, οὕτω γέροντι τί· οὐ γὰρ ἡ αὐτὴ πρέπει ἐσθής. καὶ ἐάν τε κοσμεῖν βούλῃ, ἀπὸ τοῦ βελτίονος τῶν ἐν ταὐτῷ γένει φέρειν τὴν μεταφοράν, ἐάν τε ψέγειν, ἀπὸ τῶν χειρόνων, λέγω δ' οἷον, ἐπεὶ τὰ ἐναντία ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ γένει, τὸ φάναι τὸν μὲν πτωχεύοντα εὔχεσθαι τὸν δὲ εὐχόμενον πτωχεύειν, ὅτι ἄμφω αἰτήσεις, τὸ εἰρημένον ἐστὶ ποιεῖν, ὡς καὶ Ἰφικράτης Καλλίαν μητραγύρτην [ἀλλ' οὐ δᾳδοῦχον.], ὁ δὲ ἔφη ἀμύητον αὐτὸν εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἂν μητραγύρτην αὐτὸν καλεῖν, ἀλλὰ δᾳδοῦχον· ἄμφω γὰρ περὶ θεόν, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν τίμιον τὸ δὲ ἄτιμον.	This will come from analogy; otherwise it will look inappropriate, because opposites are most conspicuous side by side. You must ask: as scarlet suits a young man, what suits an old man? For the same clothing is not appropriate. If you want to adorn, take the metaphor from the better things in the same genus; if you want to disparage, from the worse. I mean, for example, since opposites belong to the same genus, saying that a beggar "prays" and that someone praying "begs," since both are requests, is doing what was described. So Iphicrates called Callias a begging priest of the Mother [rather than a torchbearer]. Callias replied that Iphicrates must be uninitiated, or he wouldn't call him a begging priest but a torchbearer. Both have to do with a god, but one is honored and the other dishonored.[6]
καὶ ὁ μὲν διονυσοκόλακας, αὐτοὶ δ' αὐτοὺς τεχνίτας καλοῦσιν· ταῦτα δ' ἄμφω μεταφορά, ἡ μὲν ῥυπαινόντων ἡ δὲ τοὐναντίον. καὶ οἱ μὲν λησταὶ αὐτοὺς πορισταὶς καλοῦσι νῦν· διὸ ἔξεστι λέγειν τὸν ἀδικήσαντα μὲν ἁμαρτάνειν, τὸν δ' ἁμαρτάνοντα ἀδικῆσαι, καὶ τὸν κλέψαντα καὶ λαβεῖν καὶ πορθῆσαι. τὸ δὲ ὡς ὁ Τήλεφος Εὐριπίδου φησίν, κώπης ἀνάσσων κἀποβὰς εἰς Μυσίαν, ἁπρεπές, ὅτι μεῖζον τὸ ἀνάσσειν ἢ κατ' ἀξίαν· οὐ κέκλεπται οὖν. ἔστιν δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς συλλαβαῖς ἁμαρτία, ἐὰν μὴ ἡδείας ᾖ σημεῖα φωνῆς, οἷον Διονύσιος προσαγορεύει ὁ χαλκοῦς ἐν τοῖς ἐλεγείοις κραυγὴν Καλλιόπης τὴν ποίησιν, ὅτι ἄμφω φωναί· φαύλη δὲ ἡ μεταφορὰ ταῖς ἀσήμοις φωναῖς.	Again, one man calls them "Dionysus-flatterers," while they call themselves "artists." Both are metaphors, one from people who sully things, the other the opposite. Robbers, too, now call themselves "providers." So you can say that someone who did wrong "made a mistake," or that someone who made a mistake "did wrong," and that a thief both "took" and "plundered." But what Euripides' Telephus says, "Lord of the oar, and landing in Mysia," is inappropriate, since "lord" is grander than the subject deserves; so the art is not concealed. There is a fault in the syllables too, if they don't suggest a pleasant sound. For example, Dionysius the Brazen in his elegies calls poetry "Calliope's screech," since both are sounds; but the metaphor is poor, drawn as it is from sounds without meaning.[7]
ἔτι δὲ οὐ πόρρωθεν δεῖ ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν συγγενῶν καὶ τῶν ὁμοειδῶν μεταφέρειν τὰ ἀνώνυμα ὠνομασμένως, ὃ λεχθὲν δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι συγγενές, 1405b οἷον ἐν τῷ αἰνίγματι τῷ εὐδοκιμοῦντι ἄνδρ' εἶδον πυρὶ χαλκὸν ἐπ' ἀνέρι κολλήσαντα· ἀνώνυμον γὰρ τὸ πάθος, ἔστι δ' ἄμφω πρόσθεσίς τις· κόλλησιν τοίνυν εἶπε τὴν τῆς σικύας προσβολήν. καὶ ὅλως ἐκ τῶν εὖ ἠνιγμένων ἔστι μεταφορὰς λαβεῖν ἐπιεικεῖς· μεταφοραὶ γὰρ αἰνίττονται,	Further, in naming what has no name, you should take metaphors not from far off but from things that are related and of the same kind, so that as soon as it is said it is clear that they are related. 1405b An example is the celebrated riddle: "I saw a man who with fire welded bronze upon a man." The process has no name, but both are a kind of

5 The single asterisks (*) reproduce marks that Roemer printed in the Greek to set off certain passages; they do not indicate a gap.
6 Callias belonged to the family that supplied the torchbearer at the Eleusinian Mysteries; the wandering begging priests of the Mother of the Gods were despised.
7 The "Dionysus-flatterers" and "artists" are actors, who were organized in guilds of "Dionysiac artists."

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	ὥστε δῆλον ὅτι εὖ μετενήνεκται. καὶ ἀπὸ καλῶν· κάλλος δὲ ὀνόματος τὸ μὲν ὥσπερ Λικύμνιος λέγει, ἐν τοῖς ψόφοις ἢ τῷ σημαινομένῳ, καὶ αἶσχος δὲ ὡσαύτως.	application, so he called the applying of the cupping-glass "welding." In general, good metaphors can be taken from well-made riddles, since metaphors are riddles, and so clearly the transfer is apt. And metaphors should be drawn from beautiful things. A word's beauty, as Licymnius says, lies in its sounds or in its meaning, and so does its ugliness.[8]
1405b	ἔτι δὲ τρίτον * * *, ὃ λύει τὸν σοφιστικὸν λόγον· οὐ γὰρ ὡς ἔφη Βρύσων οὐθένα αἰσχρολογεῖν, εἴπερ τὸ αὐτὸ σημαίνει τόδε ἀντὶ τοῦδε εἰπεῖν· τοῦτο γάρ ἐστιν ψεῦδος· ἔστιν γὰρ ἄλλο ἄλλου κυριώτερον καὶ ὡμοιωμένον μᾶλλον καὶ οἰκειότερον τῷ ποιεῖν τὸ πρᾶγμα πρὸ ὀμμάτων. ἔτι οὐχ ὁμοίως ἔχον σημαίνει τόδε καὶ τόδε, ὥστε καὶ οὕτως ἄλλου ἄλλο κάλλιον καὶ αἴσχιον θετέον· ἄμφω μὲν γὰρ τὸ καλὸν ἢ τὸ αἰσχρὸν σημαίνουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐχ ᾗ καλὸν ἢ οὐχ ᾗ αἰσχρόν· ἢ ταῦτα μέν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον καὶ ἧττον. τὰς δὲ μεταφορὰς ἐντεῦθεν οἰστέον, ἀπὸ καλῶν ἢ τῇ φωνῇ ἢ τῇ δυνάμει ἢ τῇ ὄψει ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ αἰσθήσει. διαφέρει δ' εἰπεῖν, οἷον ῥοδοδάκτυλος ἠὼς μᾶλλον ἢ φοινικοδάκτυλος, ἢ ἔτι φαυλότερον ἐρυθροδάκτυλος.	Further, a third point * * *, which refutes the sophistic argument. It is not true, as Bryson said, that nobody uses foul language, since saying this word instead of that means the same thing. That is false. One word is more proper than another, closer to the likeness, and better suited to putting the thing before the eyes. Moreover, two words do not signify the thing in the same light, so on this ground too one must count one word as more beautiful or uglier than another. Both signify the beautiful or the ugly thing, but not insofar as it is beautiful or ugly; or if they do, then more or less so. Metaphors should be taken from there: from things beautiful in sound, in meaning, to the sight, or to some other sense. It makes a difference whether you say, for example, "rosy-fingered dawn" rather than "crimson-fingered," or, worse still, "red-fingered."[9]
	καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἐπιθέτοις ἔστιν μὲν τὰς ἐπιθέσεις ποιεῖσθαι ἀπὸ φαύλου ἢ αἰσχροῦ, οἷον ὁ μητροφόντης, ἔστι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ βελτίονος, οἷον ὁ πατρὸς ἀμύντωρ· καὶ ὁ Σιμωνίδης, ὅτε μὲν ἐδίδου μισθὸν ὀλίγον αὐτῷ ὁ νικήσας τοῖς ὀρεῦσιν, οὐκ ἤθελε ποιεῖν ὡς δυσχεραίνων εἰς ἡμιόνους ποιεῖν, ἐπεὶ δ' ἱκανὸν ἔδωκεν, ἐποίησε χαίρετ' ἀελλοπόδων θύγατρες ἵππων· καίτοι καὶ τῶν ὄνων θυγατέρες ἦσαν. ἔτι τὸ αὐτὸ ὑποκορίζεσθαι· ἔστιν δὲ ὁ ὑποκορισμὸς ὃς ἔλαττον ποιεῖ καὶ τὸ κακὸν καὶ τὸ ἀγαθόν, ὥσπερ καὶ ὁ Ἀριστοφάνης σκώπτων ἐν τοῖς Βαβυλωνίοις, ἀντὶ μὲν χρυσίου χρυσιδάριον, ἀντὶ δ' ἱματίου ἱματιδάριον, ἀντὶ δὲ λοιδορίας λοιδορημάτιον καὶ νοσημάτιον. εὐλαβεῖσθαι δὲ δεῖ καὶ παρατηρεῖν ἐν ἀμφοῖν τὸ μέτριον.	With epithets, too, you can form them from what is base or ugly, like "mother-slayer," or from what is better, like "avenger of his father." When the winner of the mule race offered Simonides a small fee, he refused to write a poem, as if he balked at writing about mules. But when he was paid enough, he wrote: "Hail, daughters of storm-footed mares!" Yet they were daughters of donkeys too. The same can be done with diminutives. A diminutive is what makes both bad and good smaller, as Aristophanes does in jest in the *Babylonians*: "goldlet" for gold, "cloaklet" for cloak, "insultlet" for insult, and "diseaselet." But in both you must be careful and keep within measure.[10]

8 Cupping was a medical treatment in which a heated bronze vessel was applied to the skin to draw blood.
9 Bryson of Heraclea was a fourth-century BC sophist and mathematician.
10 "Mother-slayer" and "avenger of his father" are both ways of describing Orestes.

CHAPTER 3: FRIGIDITY

Four sources of frigid style: compounds, rare words, epithets and inappropriate metaphors.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὰ δὲ ψυχρὰ ἐν τέτταρσι γίγνεται κατὰ τὴν λέξιν, ἔν τε τοῖς διπλοῖς ὀνόμασιν, οἷον Λυκόφρων τὸν πολυπρόσωπον οὐρανὸν τῆς μεγαλοκορύφου γῆς καὶ ἀκτὴν δὲ στενοπόρον, καὶ ὡς Γοργίας [ὠνόμαζεν] πτωχόμουσος 1406a κόλαξ, ἐπιορκήσαντας καὶ κατευορκήσαντας. καὶ ὡς Ἀλκιδάμας μένους μὲν τὴν ψυχὴν πληρουμένην, πυρίχρων δὲ τὴν ὄψιν γιγνομένην, καὶ τελεσφόρον ᾠήθη τὴν προθυμίαν αὐτῶν γενήσεσθαι, καὶ τελεσφόρον τὴν πειθὼ τῶν λόγων κατέστησεν, καὶ κυανόχρων τὸ τῆς θαλάττης ἔδαφος· πάντα ταῦτα γὰρ ποιητικὰ διὰ τὴν δίπλωσιν φαίνεται. μία μὲν οὖν αὕτη αἰτία, μία δὲ τὸ χρῆσθαι γλώτταις, οἷον Λυκόφρων Ξέρξην πέλωρον ἄνδρα, καὶ Σκίρων σίννις ἀνήρ, καὶ Ἀλκιδάμας ἄθυρμα τῇ ποιήσει, καὶ τὴν τῆς φύσεως ἀτασθαλίαν, καὶ ἀκράτῳ τῆς διανοίας ὀργῇ τεθηγμένον.	Frigidity in style arises in four ways. First, in compound words, as when Lycophron speaks of "the many-faced heaven of the mighty-peaked earth" and a "narrow-passaged shore," and as Gorgias [used to put it], "beggar-mused 1406a flatterer" and "forsworn and well-sworn." And as Alcidamas writes: "his soul filled with fury, his face turning fire-hued"; and "he thought their zeal would be end-fulfilling"; and "he made the persuasion of his words end-fulfilling"; and "the azure-hued floor of the sea." All these seem poetic because of the compounding. That is one cause. Another is the use of rare words, as when Lycophron calls Xerxes "a monstrous man" and Sciron "a ravager man," and Alcidamas writes "a plaything for poetry," "the wanton folly of nature," and "whetted by the unmixed wrath of his thought."[11]
1406a τρίτον δ' ἐν τοῖς ἐπιθέτοις τὸ ἢ μακροῖς ἢ ἀκαίροις ἢ πυκνοῖς χρῆσθαι· ἐν μὲν γὰρ ποιήσει πρέπει γάλα λευκὸν εἰπεῖν, ἐν δὲ λόγῳ τὰ μὲν ἀπρεπέστερα, τὰ δέ, ἂν ᾖ κατακορῆ, ἐξελέγχει καὶ ποιεῖ φανερὸν ὅτι ποίησις ἐστίν, ἐπεὶ δεῖ γε χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς· ἐξαλλάττει γὰρ τὸ εἰωθὸς καὶ ξενικὴν ποιεῖ τὴν λέξιν. ἀλλὰ δεῖ στοχάζεσθαι τοῦ μετρίου, ἐπεὶ μεῖζον ποιεῖ κακὸν τοῦ εἰκῇ λέγειν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἔχει τὸ εὖ, ἡ δὲ τὸ κακῶς.	The third way is in epithets: using them long, out of place, or crowded together. In poetry it is appropriate to say "white milk." In prose, though, some epithets are less appropriate, and others, if overdone, give the game away and make it plain that this is poetry. Still, some use of them is needed, since they vary the familiar and give the style an unfamiliar air. But one must aim at the mean, because overdoing it does more harm than speaking carelessly. Careless speech lacks merit; overdone speech has an actual fault.
διὸ τὰ Ἀλκιδάμαντος ψυχρὰ φαίνεται· οὐ γὰρ ἡδύσματι χρῆται ἀλλ' ὡς ἐδέσματι τοῖς ἐπιθέτοις, οὕτω πυκνοῖς καὶ μείζοσι καὶ ἐπὶ δήλοις, οἷον οὐχ ἱδρῶτα ἀλλὰ τὸν ὑγρὸν ἱδρῶτα, καὶ οὐκ εἰς Ἴσθμια ἀλλ' εἰς τὴν τῶν Ἰσθμίων πανήγυριν, καὶ οὐχὶ νόμους ἀλλὰ τοὺς τῶν πόλεων βασιλεῖς νόμους, καὶ οὐ δρόμῳ ἀλλὰ δρομαίᾳ τῇ τῆς ψυχῆς ὁρμῇ, καὶ οὐχὶ μουσεῖον ἀλλὰ τὸ τῆς φύσεως παραλαβὼν μουσεῖον, καὶ σκυθρωπὸν τὴν φροντίδα τῆς ψυχῆς, καὶ οὐ χάριτος ἀλλὰ πανδήμου χάριτος δημιουργὸς καὶ οἰκονόμος τῆς τῶν ἀκουόντων ἡδονῆς, καὶ οὐ κλάδοις ἀλλὰ τοῖς τῆς ὕλης κλάδοις [ἀπέκρυψεν], καὶ οὐ τὸ σῶμα παρήμπισχεν ἀλλὰ τὴν τοῦ σώματος αἰσχύνην, καὶ ἀντίμιμον τὴν τῆς ψυχῆς ἐπιθυμίαν (τοῦτο	This is why Alcidamas' style seems frigid. He uses epithets not as a seasoning but as the main dish, so crowded are they, so overlong, and so obvious. He says not "sweat" but "the moist sweat"; not "to the Isthmian games" but "to the festal gathering of the Isthmian games"; not "laws" but "the laws, the kings of cities"; not "at a run" but "with the running impulse of the soul"; not "a seat of the Muses" but "having received nature's seat of the Muses"; and "the scowling care of the soul"; and not "craftsman of charm" but "craftsman of universal charm and steward of his hearers' pleasure"; and not "with branches" but "with the branches of the forest [he hid]"; and not "he covered his body" but

11 Lycophron was a fourth-century BC sophist, and Alcidamas a pupil of Gorgias. The English can only approximate their Greek compounds and rare words.

GREEK	ENGLISH
δ' ἅμα καὶ διπλοῦν καὶ ἐπίθετον, ὥστε ποίημα γίνεται), καὶ οὕτως ἕξεδρον τὴν τῆς μοχθηρίας ὑπερβολήν.	"he covered his body's shame"; and "the counter-imitating desire of the soul" (this is at once a compound and an epithet, so that it becomes a poem); and "so outlandish the excess of his wickedness."
διὸ ποιητικῶς λέγοντες τῇ ἀπρεπείᾳ τὸ γελοῖον καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν ἐμποιοῦσι, καὶ τὸ ἀσαφὲς διὰ τὴν ἀδολεσχίαν· ὅταν γὰρ γιγνώσκοντι ἐπεμβάλλῃ, διαλύει τὸ σαφὲς τῷ ἐπισκοτεῖν· οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι τοῖς διπλοῖς χρῶνται, ὅταν ἀνώνυμον ᾖ καὶ ὁ λόγος εὐσύνθετος, οἷον τὸ χρονοτριβεῖν· ἀλλ' ἂν πολύ, πάντως ποιητικόν. 1406b διὸ χρησιμωτάτη ἡ διπλῆ λέξις τοῖς διθυραμβοποιοῖς· οὗτοι γὰρ ψοφώδεις· αἱ δὲ γλῶτται τοῖς ἐποποιοῖς· σεμνὸν γὰρ καὶ αὔθαδες· * * * * ἡ μεταφορὰ τοῖς ἰαμβείοις· τούτοις γὰρ νῦν χρῶνται, ὥσπερ εἴρηται * καὶ ἔτι τέταρτον τὸ ψυχρὸν ἐν ταῖς μεταφοραῖς γίνεται· εἰσὶν γὰρ καὶ μεταφοραὶ ἀπρεπεῖς, αἱ μὲν διὰ τὸ γελοῖον (χρῶνται γὰρ καὶ οἱ κωμῳδοποιοὶ μεταφοραῖς), αἱ δὲ διὰ τὸ σεμνὸν ἄγαν καὶ τραγικόν· ἀσαφεῖς δέ, ἂν πόρρωθεν.	So by speaking poetically, these writers produce absurdity and frigidity through inappropriateness, and obscurity through wordiness. When someone piles words on a hearer who already understands, he destroys clarity by darkening it. People use compounds when a thing has no name and the word combines easily, like "time-wasting"; but if this is done much, it is wholly poetic. 1406b That is why compound diction is most useful to dithyrambic poets, since they are sonorous; rare words to epic poets, since rare words are dignified and self-assured; * * * metaphor to iambic verse, since that is what iambic poets use nowadays, as has been said. * And the fourth kind of frigidity arises in metaphors. For metaphors can be inappropriate too: some because they are ridiculous (comic poets also use metaphors), others because they are too grand and tragic. And they are obscure if far-fetched.[12]
1406b οἷον Γοργίας χλωρὰ καὶ ἔναιμα τὰ πράγματα· σὺ δὲ ταῦτα αἰσχρῶς [μὲν] ἔσπειρας κακῶς δὲ ἐθέρισας· ποιητικῶς γὰρ ἄγαν. καὶ ὡς Ἀλκιδάμας τὴν φιλοσοφίαν ἐπιτείχισμα τῶν νόμων, καὶ τὴν Ὀδύσσειαν καλὸν ἀνθρωπίνου βίου κάτοπτρον, καὶ οὐδὲν τοιοῦτον ἄθυρμα τῇ ποιήσει προσφέρων· ἅπαντα γὰρ ταῦτα ἀπίθανα διὰ τὰ εἰρημένα. τὸ δὲ Γοργίου εἰς τὴν χελιδόνα, ἐπεὶ κατ' αὐτοῦ πετομένη ἀφῆκε τὸ περίττωμα, ἄριστα τῶν τραγικῶν· εἶπε γὰρ αἰσχρόν γε ὦ Φιλομήλα. ὄρνιθι μὲν γάρ, εἰ ἐποίησεν, οὐκ αἰσχρόν, παρθένῳ δὲ αἰσχρόν. εὖ οὖν ἐλοιδόρησεν εἰπὼν ὃ ἦν, ἀλλ' οὐχ ὃ ἔστιν.	For example, Gorgias' "green and bloody affairs," and "you [both] sowed these things shamefully and reaped them badly": too poetic. And Alcidamas calling philosophy "a fortress planted against the laws" and the *Odyssey* "a fine mirror of human life," and "bringing no such plaything to poetry." All these are unpersuasive, for the reasons given. But Gorgias' remark to the swallow, when it flew over him and let its droppings fall on him, is the best of the tragic style. He said, "Shame on you, Philomela!" If a bird did this, it was not shameful; for a maiden it was. So he rebuked it well by calling it what it was, not what it is.[13]

CHAPTER 4: SIMILE

The simile is a metaphor with a word of comparison added.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστιν δὲ καὶ ἡ εἰκὼν μεταφορά· διαφέρει γὰρ μικρόν· ὅταν μὲν γὰρ εἴπῃ τὸν Ἀχιλλέα ὡς δὲ λέων ἐπόρουσεν, εἰκών ἐστιν, ὅταν δὲ λέων ἐπόρουσε, μεταφορά· διὰ τὸ γὰρ ἄμφω ἀνδρείους εἶναι, προσηγόρευσεν μετενέγκας λέοντα τὸν Ἀχιλλέα. χρήσιμον δὲ ἡ εἰκὼν καὶ ἐν λόγῳ,	The simile is also a metaphor, for the difference is small. When the poet says of Achilles, "he sprang like a lion," it is a simile; when he says, "a lion, he sprang," it is a metaphor: because both are brave, he transferred the name and called Achilles a lion.

12 The dithyramb was a choral hymn to Dionysus, by this time notorious for bombastic diction.
13 In myth Philomela, an Athenian princess, was turned into a bird (in some versions a swallow) after Tereus' assault on her.

GREEK

ὀλιγάκις δέ· ποιητικὸν γάρ. οἰστέαι δὲ ὥσπερ αἱ μεταφοραί· μεταφοραὶ γάρ εἰσι διαφέρουσαι τῷ εἰρημένῳ. εἰσὶν δ' εἰκόνες οἷον ἦν Ἀνδροτίων εἰς Ἰδριέα, ὅτι ὅμοιος τοῖς ἐκ τῶν δεσμῶν κυνιδίοις· ἐκεῖνά τε γὰρ προσπίπτοντα δάκνειν, καὶ Ἰδριέα λυθέντα ἐκ τῶν δεσμῶν εἶναι χαλεπόν. καὶ ὡς Θεοδάμας εἴκαζεν Ἀρχίδαμον Εὐξένῳ γεωμετρεῖν οὐκ ἐπισταμένῳ ἐν τῷ ἀνάλογον· ἔσται γὰρ καὶ ὁ Εὔξενος Ἀρχίδαμος γεωμετρικός.

καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ πολιτείᾳ τῇ Πλάτωνος, ὅτι οἱ τοὺς τεθνεῶτας σκυλεύοντες ἐοίκασι τοῖς κυνιδίοις, ἃ τοὺς λίθους δάκνει τοῦ βάλλοντος οὐχ ἁπτόμενα. καὶ ἡ εἰς τὸν δῆμον, ὅτι ὅμοιος ναυκλήρῳ ἰσχυρῷ μὲν ὑποκώφῳ δέ. καὶ ἡ εἰς τὰ μέτρα τῶν ποιητῶν, ὅτι ἔοικε τοῖς ἄνευ κάλλους ὡραίοις· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀπανθήσαντες, τὰ δὲ διαλυθέντα [1407a] οὐχ ὅμοια φαίνεται. καὶ ἡ Περικλέους εἰς Σαμίους, ἐοικέναι αὐτοὺς τοῖς παιδίοις ἃ τὸν ψωμὸν δέχεται μέν, κλαίοντα δέ. καὶ εἰς Βοιωτούς, ὅτι ὅμοιοι τοῖς πρίνοις· τούς τε γὰρ πρίνους ὑφ' αὐτῶν κατακόπτεσθαι, καὶ τοὺς Βοιωτοὺς πρὸς ἀλλήλους μαχομένους.

1407a καὶ ὃ Δημοσθένης τὸν δῆμον, ὅτι ὅμοιός ἐστιν τοῖς ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις ναυτιῶσιν * * * καὶ ὡς Δημοκράτης εἴκασεν τοὺς ῥήτορας ταῖς τίτθαις αἳ τὸ ψώμισμα καταπίνουσαι τῷ σιάλῳ τὰ παιδία παραλείφουσιν. καὶ ὡς Ἀντισθένης Κηφισόδοτον τὸν λεπτὸν λιβανωτῷ εἴκασεν, ὅτι ἀπολλύμενος εὐφραίνει. πάσας δὲ ταύτας καὶ ὡς εἰκόνας καὶ ὡς μεταφορὰς ἔξεστι λέγειν, ὥστε ὅσαι ἂν εὐδοκιμῶσιν ὡς μεταφοραὶ λεχθεῖσαι, δῆλον ὅτι αὗται καὶ εἰκόνες ἔσονται, καὶ αἱ εἰκόνες μεταφοραὶ λόγου δεόμεναι. ἀεὶ δὲ δεῖ τὴν μεταφορὰν τὴν ἐκ τοῦ ἀνάλογον ἀνταποδιδόναι καὶ ἐπὶ θάτερα [καὶ ἐπὶ] τῶν ὁμογενῶν, οἷον εἰ ἡ φιάλη ἀσπὶς Διονύσου, καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἁρμόττει λέγεσθαι φιάλην Ἄρεως.

ENGLISH

The simile is useful in prose too, but only rarely, since it is poetic. Similes should be brought in the way metaphors are, since they are metaphors, differing in the way just stated. Examples of similes: the one Androtion used of Idrieus, that he was like puppies let off the chain—they rush at you and bite, and Idrieus, released from his chains, was savage. And Theodamas' likening of Archidamus to Euxenus without the geometry, which works by proportion: for then Euxenus will be Archidamus with geometry.[14]

And the one in Plato's *Republic*, that those who strip the dead are like puppies that bite the stones but don't touch the person throwing them. And the one about the people, that they are like a ship's captain who is strong but a little deaf. And the one about poets' verses, that they are like those who have youthful bloom without beauty: when the bloom has faded from the one, and the other is broken up, [1407a] they no longer look the same. And Pericles' about the Samians, that they are like children who accept the morsel but keep crying. And the one about the Boeotians, that they are like holm oaks: holm oaks are cut down by their own wood, and the Boeotians by fighting one another.[15]

And Demosthenes' about the people, that they are like the seasick on ships * * * And as Democrates likened the orators to nurses who swallow the morsel themselves and smear the children's lips with the spittle. And as Antisthenes likened skinny Cephisodotus to incense, because he gives pleasure by wasting away. All these can be expressed either as similes or as metaphors, so that any that are well liked when spoken as metaphors will plainly be similes as well, and similes are metaphors that need a word of explanation. The proportional metaphor must always be reversible, applying also to the other one [and to the other] of two things of the same kind. For instance, if the cup is the shield of Dionysus, then the shield may fittingly be called the cup of Ares.

14 Androtion was a fourth-century BC Athenian politician and historian; Idrieus later ruled Caria, in Asia Minor.
15 Athens under Pericles crushed the revolt of Samos in 440–439 BC.

CHAPTER 5: SPEAKING GOOD GREEK

Five requirements of correct speech: connectives, specific words, unambiguous words, genders and numbers.

GREEK

ὁ μὲν οὖν λόγος συντίθεται ἐκ τούτων, ἔστι δ' ἀρχὴ τῆς λέξεως τὸ ἑλληνίζειν· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἐν πέντε, πρῶτον μὲν ἐν τοῖς συνδέσμοις, ἂν ἀποδιδῷ τις ὡς πεφύκασι πρότεροι καὶ ὕστεροι γίγνεσθαι ἀλλήλων, οἷον ἔνιοι ἀπαιτοῦσιν, ὥσπερ ὁ μέν καὶ ὁ ἐγὼ μέν ἀπαιτεῖ τὸν δέ καὶ τὸν ὁ δέ. δεῖ δὲ ἕως μέμνηται ἀνταποδιδόναι ἀλλήλοις, καὶ μήτε μακρὰν ἀπαρτᾶν μήτε σύνδεσμον πρὸ συνδέσμου ἀποδιδόναι τοῦ ἀναγκαίου· ὀλιγαχοῦ γὰρ ἁρμόττει. ἐγὼ δ', ἐπεί μοι εἶπεν (ἦλθε γὰρ Κλέων δεόμενός τε καὶ ἀξιῶν), ἐπορευόμην παραλαβὼν αὐτούς. ἐν τούτοις γὰρ πολλοὶ πρὸ τοῦ ἀποδοθησομένου συνδέσμου προεμβέβληνται σύνδεσμοι· ἐὰν δὲ πολὺ τὸ μεταξὺ γένηται [τοῦ ἐπορευόμην], ἀσαφές. ἓν μὲν δὴ τὸ εὖ ἐν τοῖς συνδέσμοις, δεύτερον δὲ τὸ τοῖς ἰδίοις ὀνόμασι λέγειν καὶ μὴ τοῖς περιέχουσιν.

ENGLISH

Speech, then, is composed of these. The foundation of style is to speak good Greek, and this depends on five things. First, on connectives: one should place them in the order in which they naturally come before and after one another, as some of them require. For instance, "on the one hand" and "I, on the one hand" require "on the other" and "he, on the other." One should make them answer each other while the hearer still remembers, and neither hold them far apart nor put another connective before the one required; that rarely fits. "But I, when he told me (for Cleon came begging and demanding), set out, taking them along." Here many connectives have been thrown in ahead of the one that is to answer; and if the interval [before "set out"] grows long, it is obscure. One element of good style, then, lies in the connectives. The second is to call things by their specific names and not by general ones.[16]

τρίτον μὴ ἀμφιβόλοις· ταῦτα δέ, ἂν μὴ τἀναντία προαιρῆται, ὅ περ ποιοῦσιν ὅταν μηθὲν μὲν ἔχωσι λέγειν, προσποιῶνται δέ τι λέγειν· οἱ γὰρ τοιοῦτοι ἐν ποιήσει λέγουσιν ταῦτα, οἷον Ἐμπεδοκλῆς· φενακίζει γὰρ τὸ κύκλῳ πολὺ ὄν, καὶ πάσχουσιν οἱ ἀκροαταὶ ὅ περ οἱ πολλοὶ παρὰ τοῖς μάντεσιν· ὅταν γὰρ λέγωσιν ἀμφίβολα, συμπαρανεύουσιν, Κροῖσος Ἅλυν διαβὰς μεγάλην ἀρχὴν καταλύσει. 1407b καὶ διὰ τὸ ὅλως ἔλαττον εἶναι ἁμάρτημα διὰ τῶν γενῶν τοῦ πράγματος λέγουσιν οἱ μάντεις· τύχοι γὰρ ἄν τις μᾶλλον ἐν τοῖς ἀρτιασμοῖς ἄρτια ἢ περισσὰ εἰπὼν μᾶλλον ἢ πόσα ἔχει, καὶ τὸ ὅτι ἔσται ἢ τὸ πότε, διὸ οἱ χρησμολόγοι οὐ προσορίζονται τὸ πότε. ἅπαντα δὴ ταῦτα ὅμοια, ὥστ' ἂν μὴ τοιούτου τινὸς ἕνεκα, φευκτέον.

Third, avoid ambiguous words—unless you deliberately want the opposite, as people do when they have nothing to say but pretend to be saying something. Such people say these things in verse, Empedocles for example: the long circumlocution deceives, and the audience feel what most people feel with seers. When seers say ambiguous things, people nod along: "Croesus, crossing the Halys, will destroy a great empire." 1407b And since the chance of error is smaller overall, seers speak in general terms about the matter. In playing odds and evens, you are more likely to be right if you say "even" or "odd" than if you say how many; and if you say that something will happen rather than when—which is why oracle-mongers don't add the when. All these are alike, so unless it is for some such purpose, they should be avoided.[17]

1407b τέταρτον, ὡς Πρωταγόρας τὰ γένη τῶν ὀνομάτων διῄρει, ἄρρενα καὶ θήλεα καὶ σκεύη· δεῖ γὰρ ἀποδιδόναι καὶ ταῦτα ὀρθῶς· ἡ δ' ἐλθοῦσα καὶ διαλεχθεῖσα ᾤχετο. πέμπτον ἐν τῷ τὰ πολλὰ καὶ ὀλίγα καὶ ἓν ὀρθῶς ὀνομάζειν· οἱ δ' ἐλθόντες ἔτυπτόν με. ὅλως δὲ δεῖ εὐανάγνωστον εἶναι τὸ γεγραμμένον καὶ εὔφραστον·

Fourth, keep the genders of nouns as Protagoras distinguished them—masculine, feminine, and things—for these too must be made to agree correctly: "She, having come and having talked, went away." Fifth, name correctly the many, the few, and the one: "They, having come, began beating

16 Greek pairs particles such as μέν … δέ ("on the one hand … on the other"); the first leads the hearer to expect the second.
17 Croesus, king of Lydia, crossed the river Halys to attack Persia (c. 547 BC); the great empire he destroyed was his own.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστιν δὲ τὸ αὐτό· ὅ περ οἱ πολλοὶ σύνδεσμοι οὐκ ἔχουσιν, οὐδ' ἃ μὴ ῥᾴδιον διαστίξαι, ὥσπερ τὰ Ἡρακλείτου.	me." In general, what is written should be easy to read and easy to deliver, which is the same thing. Many connectives destroy this, and so does what is hard to punctuate, like the writings of Heraclitus.[18]
τὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείτου διαστίξαι ἔργον διὰ τὸ ἄδηλον εἶναι ποτέρῳ πρόσκειται, τῷ ὕστερον ἢ τῷ πρότερον, οἷον ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ αὐτοῦ τοῦ συγγράμματος· φησὶ γὰρ "τοῦ λόγου τοῦδ' ἐόντος ἀεὶ ἀξύνετοι ἄνθρωποι γίγνονται"· ἄδηλον γὰρ τὸ ἀεί, πρὸς ποτέρῳ ⟨δεῖ⟩ διαστίξαι * ἔτι τάδε ποιεῖ σολοικίζειν τὸ μὴ ἀποδιδόναι, ἐὰν μὴ ἐπιζευγνύῃς ἀμφοῖν ὃ ἁρμόττει, οἷον ἢ ψόφον ἢ χρῶμα· τὸ μὲν ἰδὼν οὐ κοινόν, τὸ δ' αἰσθόμενος κοινόν. ἀσαφῆ δὲ ἂν μὴ προθεὶς εἴπῃς, μέλλων πολλὰ μεταξὺ ἐμβάλλειν, οἷον ἔμελλον γὰρ διαλεχθεὶς ἐκείνῳ τάδε καὶ τάδε καὶ ὧδε πορεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἔμελλον γὰρ διαλεχθεὶς πορεύεσθαι, εἶτα τάδε καὶ τάδε καὶ ὧδε ἐγένετο. *	Punctuating Heraclitus is real work, because it is unclear which word goes with which, the following or the preceding, as at the very beginning of his book. He says, "Of this account which holds always humans prove uncomprehending": it is unclear which way "always" should be punctuated. * Further, failing to make things correspond produces a solecism, if you don't join to two words one that fits both. With "sound" or "color," for instance, "seeing" isn't common to both, but "perceiving" is. And it is obscure if you don't say first what you mean, when you are going to throw in a lot in between. For instance: "I was going, after talking with him about this and that and in this way, to set out," rather than: "I was going to set out after talking with him; then this and that happened, in this way." *[19]

CHAPTER 6: AMPLITUDE OF STYLE

How to make style more ample or more concise.

GREEK	ENGLISH
εἰς ὄγκον δὲ τῆς λέξεως συμβάλλεται τάδε, τῷ λόγῳ χρῆσθαι ἀντ' ὀνόματος, οἷον μὴ κύκλον, ἀλλ' ἐπίπεδον τὸ ἐκ τοῦ μέσου ἴσον. εἰς δὲ συντομίαν τὸ ἐναντίον, ἀντὶ τοῦ λόγου ὄνομα. καὶ ἐὰν αἰσχρὸν ἢ ἀπρεπές· ἐὰν μὲν ἐν τῷ λόγῳ ᾖ αἰσχρόν, τοὔνομα λέγειν, ἐὰν δ' ἐν τῷ ὀνόματι, τὸν λόγον. καὶ μεταφορᾶς δηλοῦν καὶ τοῖς ἐπιθέτοις εὐλαβούμενον τὸ ποιητικόν. καὶ τὸ ἓν πολλὰ ποιεῖν, ὅ περ οἱ ποιηταὶ ποιοῦσιν· ἑνὸς ὄντος λιμένος ὅμως λέγουσι λιμένας εἰς Ἀχαϊκούς καὶ δέλτου μὲν αἵδε πολύθυροι διαπτυχαί. καὶ μὴ ἐπιζευγνύναι, ἀλλ' ἑκατέρῳ ἑκάτερον "τῆς γυναικὸς τῆς ἡμετέρας"· ἐὰν δὲ συντόμως, τοὐναντίον "τῆς ἡμετέρας γυναικός". καὶ μετὰ συνδέσμου λέγειν· ἐὰν δὲ συντόμως, ἄνευ μὲν συνδέσμου, μὴ ἀσύνδετα δέ, [1408a] οἷον "πορευθεὶς καὶ διαλεχθείς" "πορευθεὶς διελέχθην".	The following contribute to amplitude of style. Use a description instead of a name: not "circle" but "a plane figure equidistant from the center." For conciseness, the opposite: a name instead of a description. And if something is shameful or inappropriate: if the shame lies in the description, use the name; if in the name, the description. Make things clear by metaphors and epithets, while guarding against the poetic. Make one into many, as the poets do: though there is one harbor, they still say "to Achaean harbors," and "here are the tablet's many-leaved folds." Don't join words together, but give each its own article: "of the wife, the one of ours"; for conciseness, the opposite: "of our wife." Speak with connectives; for conciseness, without connectives, but not disjointedly: [1408a] "having traveled and having talked"—"having traveled, I talked."
1408a καὶ τὸ Ἀντιμάχου χρήσιμον, ἐξ ὧν μὴ ἔχει λέγειν, ὃ ἐκεῖνος ποιεῖ ἐπὶ τοῦ Τευμησσοῦ, ἔστι τις ἠνεμόεις ὀλίγος	Antimachus' device is useful too: describing a thing by what it does not have, as he does with

18 Greek participles agree with their subject in gender and number, which English cannot show.

GREEK	ENGLISH
λόφος· αὔξεται γὰρ οὕτως εἰς ἄπειρον. ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐπὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ κακῶν, ὅπως οὐκ ἔχει, ὁποτέρως ἂν ᾖ χρήσιμον, ὅθεν καὶ τὰ ὀνόματα οἱ ποιηταὶ φέρουσιν, τὸ ἄχορδον καὶ τὸ ἄλυρον μέλος· ἐκ τῶν στερήσεων γὰρ ἐπιφέρουσιν· εὐδοκιμεῖ γὰρ τοῦτο ἐν ταῖς μεταφοραῖς λεγόμενον ταῖς ἀνάλογον, οἷον τὸ φάναι τὴν σάλπιγγα εἶναι μέλος ἄλυρον.	Teumessus: "There is a small windy hill." For in this way amplification can go on without limit. This can be done with good and bad things alike, saying what they are not, whichever is useful. This is also where poets get words like "stringless" and "lyreless" music: they apply them from privations. This is well liked when said in proportional metaphors, as when one calls the trumpet "lyreless music."[20]

CHAPTER 7: APPROPRIATENESS

Style is appropriate when it expresses emotion and character and fits the subject.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὸ δὲ πρέπον ἕξει ἡ λέξις, ἐὰν ᾖ παθητική τε καὶ ἠθικὴ καὶ τοῖς ὑποκειμένοις πράγμασιν ἀνάλογον. τὸ δ' ἀνάλογόν ἐστιν ἐὰν μήτε περὶ εὐόγκων αὐτοκαβδάλως λέγηται μήτε περὶ εὐτελῶν σεμνῶς, μηδ' ἐπὶ τῷ εὐτελεῖ ὀνόματι ἐπῇ κόσμος· εἰ δὲ μή, κωμῳδία φαίνεται, οἷον ποιεῖ Κλεοφῶν· ὁμοίως γὰρ ἔνια ἔλεγε καὶ εἰ εἴπειεν ἂν πότνια συκῆ. παθητικὴ δέ, ἐὰν μὲν ᾖ ὕβρις, ὀργιζομένου λέξις, ἐὰν δὲ ἀσεβῆ καὶ αἰσχρά, δυσχεραίνοντος καὶ εὐλαβουμένου καὶ λέγειν, ἐὰν δὲ ἐπαινετά, ἀγαμένως, ἐὰν δὲ ἐλεεινά, ταπεινῶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων δὲ ὁμοίως.	Style will be appropriate if it expresses emotion and character and is proportionate to its subject matter. Proportion means not speaking offhandedly about weighty matters or solemnly about trivial ones, and not adding ornament to a trivial word; otherwise it looks like comedy, as in Cleophon, some of whose expressions were like saying "Lady Fig Tree." The style expresses emotion if, when there is insolence, it is the style of an angry man; when things are impious and shameful, of one who is disgusted and reluctant even to mention them; when they are praiseworthy, it speaks with admiration; when pitiable, humbly; and similarly with the rest.[21]
πιθανοῖ δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα καὶ ἡ οἰκεία λέξις· παραλογίζεταί τε γὰρ ἡ ψυχὴ ὡς ἀληθῶς λέγοντος, ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις οὕτως ἔχουσιν ὥστ' οἴονται, εἰ καὶ μὴ οὕτως ἔχει [ὡς] ὁ λέγων, τὰ πράγματα οὕτως ἔχειν, καὶ συνομοιοπαθεῖ ὁ ἀκούων ἀεὶ τῷ παθητικῶς λέγοντι, κἂν μηθὲν λέγῃ. διὸ πολλοὶ καταπλήττουσι τοὺς ἀκροατὰς θορυβοῦντες. καὶ ἠθικὴ δὲ αὕτη ἡ ἐκ τῶν σημείων δεῖξις,... ὅτι ἀκολουθεῖ ἡ ἁρμόττουσα ἑκάστῳ γένει καὶ ἕξει. λέγω δὲ γένος μὲν καθ' ἡλικίαν, οἷον παῖς ἢ ἀνὴρ ἢ γέρων, καὶ γυνὴ ἢ ἀνήρ, καὶ Λάκων ἢ Θετταλός, ἕξεις δέ, καθ' ἃς ποιός τις τῷ βίῳ· οὐ γὰρ καθ' ἅπασαν ἕξιν οἱ βίοι ποιοί τινες.	Appropriate style also makes the case persuasive. The soul falsely infers that the speaker is telling the truth, because in such circumstances people feel that way; so they think, even if the speaker's case is not [as he puts it], that things are as he says. And the hearer always shares the emotion of someone who speaks emotionally, even if he says nothing of substance. That is why many speakers overwhelm their audiences with sheer noise. This display through signs also conveys character, ... because the style suited to each class and disposition goes with it. By class I mean age—boy, man, or old man—and woman or man, and Spartan or Thessalian; by dispositions, those that make a person a certain kind of person in his life, since not every disposition makes a life of a certain kind.

19 In the Greek, "always" can go either with "holds" or with "prove uncomprehending"; ancient texts had little punctuation.
20 Antimachus of Colophon was an epic poet of about 400 BC; Teumessus is a hill in Boeotia, which he described by listing what it lacked.
21 Cleophon was a tragic poet; "Lady" (πότνια) is a title for goddesses.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἐὰν οὖν καὶ τὰ ὀνόματα οἰκεῖα λέγῃ τῇ ἕξει, ποιήσει τὸ ἦθος· οὐ γὰρ ταὐτὰ οὐδ' ὡσαύτως ἂν ἀγροῖκος ἂν καὶ πεπαιδευμένος εἴπειεν. * πάσχουσι δέ τι οἱ ἀκροαταὶ καὶ ᾧ κατακόρως χρῶνται οἱ λογογράφοι "τίς δ' οὐκ οἶδεν"; "ἅπαντες ἴσασιν"· ὁμολογεῖ γὰρ ὁ ἀκούων αἰσχυνόμενος, ὅπως μετέχῃ οὗ περ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες. * τὸ δ' εὐκαίρως ἢ μὴ εὐκαίρως χρῆσθαι [1408b] κοινὸν ἁπάντων τῶν εἰδῶν ἐστιν. ἄκος δ' ἐπὶ πάσῃ ὑπερβολῇ τὸ θρυλούμενον· δεῖ γὰρ αὐτὸν αὑτῷ προσεπιπλήττειν· δοκεῖ γὰρ ἀληθὲς εἶναι, ἐπεὶ οὐ λανθάνει γε ὃ ποιεῖ τὸν λέγοντα. ἔτι τοῖς ἀνάλογον μὴ πᾶσιν ἅμα χρήσασθαι· οὕτω γὰρ κλέπτεται ὁ ἀκροατής.	So if a speaker also uses words suited to his disposition, he will portray character; for a rustic and an educated man would not say the same things, nor say them in the same way. * Audiences are also affected somewhat by a device speechwriters use to excess: "Who doesn't know?" "Everyone knows." The hearer agrees out of shame, so as to share in what everyone else does. * Using these things in season or out of season [1408b] is a matter common to all the kinds. The remedy for every exaggeration is the familiar one: you should rebuke yourself at the same time. Then it seems true, since the speaker clearly knows what he is doing. Further, don't use all the corresponding devices at once; that way the hearer is taken in without noticing.[22]
1408b λέγω δὲ οἷον ἐὰν τὰ ὀνόματα σκληρὰ ᾖ, μὴ καὶ τῇ φωνῇ καὶ τῷ προσώπῳ καὶ τοῖς ἁρμόττουσιν· εἰ δὲ μή, φανερὸν γίνεται ἕκαστον ὅ ἐστιν. ἐὰν δὲ τὸ μὲν τὸ δὲ μή, λανθάνει ποιῶν τὸ αὐτό. ἐὰν οὖν τὰ μαλακὰ σκληρῶς καὶ τὰ σκληρὰ μαλακῶς λέγηται, ἀπίθανον γίγνεται. τὰ δὲ ὀνόματα τὰ διπλᾶ καὶ τὰ ἐπίθετα πλείω καὶ τὰ ξένα μάλιστα ἁρμόττει λέγοντι παθητικῶς· συγγνώμη γὰρ ὀργιζομένῳ κακὸν φάναι οὐρανόμηκες ἢ πελώριον εἰπεῖν. καὶ ὅταν ἔχῃ ἤδη τοὺς ἀκροατὰς καὶ ποιήσῃ ἐνθουσιάσαι ἢ ἐπαίνοις ἢ ψόγοις ἢ ὀργῇ ἢ φιλίᾳ, οἷον καὶ Ἰσοκράτης ποιεῖ ἐν τῷ πανηγυρικῷ ἐπὶ τέλει "φήμην δὲ καὶ μνήμην" καὶ "οἵτινες ἔτλησαν·" φθέγγονταί τε γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐνθουσιάζοντες, ὥστε καὶ ἀποδέχονται δῆλον ὅτι ὁμοίως ἔχοντες.	I mean, for example, that if the words are harsh, you shouldn't also make the voice and face and the rest match them; otherwise each one shows itself for what it is. But if one does and the other doesn't, the speaker does the same thing without being noticed. So if gentle things are said harshly and harsh things gently, it becomes unpersuasive. Compound words, a plurality of epithets, and strange words especially suit a speaker who is speaking with emotion: we forgive an angry man for calling a wrong "heaven-high" or "monstrous." The same goes for when the speaker already has hold of his audience and has stirred them to enthusiasm by praise or blame, by anger or friendship, as Isocrates does at the end of the *Panegyricus*: "fame and memory" and "who dared." People utter such things when carried away, so that the audience plainly accept them because they are in the same state.[23]
διὸ καὶ τῇ ποιήσει ἥρμοσεν· ἔνθεον γὰρ ἡ ποίησις. ἢ δὴ οὕτως δεῖ, ἢ μετ' εἰρωνείας, ὥσπερ Γοργίας ἐποίει καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ Φαίδρῳ.	That is why it suits poetry as well, for poetry is inspired. So one should use it either in this way or with irony, as Gorgias did, and as in the *Phaedrus*.[24]

CHAPTER 8: PROSE RHYTHM

Prose should have rhythm but not meter; the paean is recommended.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὸ δὲ σχῆμα τῆς λέξεως δεῖ μήτε ἔμμετρον εἶναι μήτε ἄρρυθμον· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπίθανον, πεπλάσθαι γὰρ δοκεῖ, καὶ	The form of the style should be neither metrical nor without rhythm. Meter is unpersuasive, since

22 Speechwriters at Athens composed speeches for clients to deliver themselves in court.
23 Isocrates' *Panegyricus* (380 BC) urged the Greeks to unite against Persia; it is the source of many examples that follow.
24 In Plato's *Phaedrus* Socrates jokingly claims to be inspired and slips into dithyrambic diction.

GREEK

ἅμα καὶ ἐξίστησι· προσέχειν γὰρ ποιεῖ τῷ ὁμοίῳ, πότε πάλιν ἥξει. ὥσπερ οὖν τῶν κηρύκων προλαμβάνουσι τὰ παιδία τὸ τίνα αἱρεῖται ἐπίτροπον ὁ ἀπελευθερούμενος; Κλέωνα. τὸ δὲ ἄρρυθμον ἀπέραντον, δεῖ δὲ πεπεράνθαι μέν, μὴ μέτρῳ δέ· ἀηδὲς γὰρ καὶ ἄγνωστον τὸ ἄπειρον. περαίνεται δὲ ἀριθμῷ πάντα· ὁ δὲ τοῦ σχήματος τῆς λέξεως ἀριθμὸς ῥυθμός ἐστιν, οὗ καὶ τὰ μέτρα τμητά. διὸ ῥυθμὸν δεῖ ἔχειν τὸν λόγον, μέτρον δὲ μή. ποίημα γὰρ ἔσται. ῥυθμὸν δὲ μὴ ἀκριβῶς· τοῦτο δὲ ἔσται ἐὰν μέχρι του ᾖ.

ENGLISH

it seems contrived, and it also distracts: it makes the hearer attend to the recurrence and wait for when it will come again. Just so children shout out ahead of the heralds' question, "Whom does the freedman choose as his patron?"—"Cleon!" What lacks rhythm, on the other hand, is unlimited. It should be limited, though not by meter, since the unlimited is unpleasant and unknowable. Everything is limited by number, and the number of the form of style is rhythm, of which meters are segments. So prose must have rhythm but not meter; otherwise it will be a poem. And not rhythm in a strict sense either; this will be achieved if it goes only so far.[25]

τῶν δὲ ῥυθμῶν ὁ μὲν ἡρῷος σεμνὸς ἀλλὰ λεκτικῆς ἁρμονίας δεόμενος, ὁ δ' ἴαμβος αὐτή ἐστιν ἡ λέξις ἡ τῶν πολλῶν· διὸ μάλιστα πάντων τῶν μέτρων ἰαμβεῖα φθέγγονται λέγοντες. δεῖ δὲ σεμνότητα γενέσθαι καὶ ἐκστῆσαι. ὁ δὲ τροχαῖος κορδακικώτερος· δηλοῖ δὲ τὰ τετράμετρα· 1409a ἔστι γὰρ ῥυθμὸς τροχαῖος τὰ τετράμετρα. λείπεται δὲ παιάν, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο μὲν ἀπὸ Θρασυμάχου ἀρξάμενοι, οὐκ εἶχον δὲ λέγειν τίς ἦν. ἔστι δὲ τρίτος ὁ παιάν, καὶ ἐχόμενος τῶν εἰρημένων· τρία γὰρ πρὸς δύ' ἐστίν, ἐκείνων δὲ ὁ μὲν ἓν πρὸς ἕν, ὁ δὲ δύο πρὸς ἕν. ἔχεται δὲ τῶν λόγων τούτων ὁ ἡμιόλιος· οὗτος δ' ἐστὶν ὁ παιάν.

Of the rhythms, the heroic is dignified but lacks the tone of conversation; the iamb is the very speech of ordinary people, which is why, of all meters, people utter iambic lines most often in talking. But speech should have dignity and lift itself out of the ordinary. The trochee is too much like a comic dance, as the tetrameters show, 1409a for the tetrameter is a trochaic rhythm. There remains the paean, which speakers have used since Thrasymachus, though they could not say what it was. The paean is a third rhythm, close to those mentioned: it is in the ratio of three to two, while of those the one is one to one, the other two to one. Next to these ratios comes one and a half to one, and that is the paean.[26]

1409a οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι διά τε τὰ εἰρημένα ἀφετέοι, καὶ διότι μετρικοί· ὁ δὲ παιὰν ληπτέος· ἀπὸ μόνου γὰρ οὐκ ἔστι μέτρον τῶν ῥηθέντων ῥυθμῶν, ὥστε μάλιστα λανθάνειν. νῦν μὲν οὖν χρῶνται τῷ ἑνὶ παιᾶνι καὶ ἀρχόμενοι ⟨καὶ τελευτῶντες⟩, δεῖ δὲ διαφέρειν τὴν τελευτὴν τῆς ἀρχῆς. ἔστιν δὲ παιᾶνος δύο εἴδη ἀντικείμενα ἀλλήλοις, ὧν τὸ μὲν ἓν ἀρχῇ ἁρμόττει, ὥσπερ καὶ χρῶνται· οὗτος δ' ἐστὶν οὗ ἄρχει μὲν ἡ μακρά, τελευτῶσιν δὲ τρεῖς βραχεῖαι· Δαλογενὲς εἴτε Λυκίαν καὶ χρυσεοκόμα Ἕκατε παῖ Διός. ἕτερος δ' ἐξ ἐναντίας, οὗ βραχεῖαι ἄρχουσιν τρεῖς, ἡ δὲ μακρὰ τελευταία· μετὰ δὲ γᾶν ὕδατά τ' ὠκεανὸν ἠφάνισε νύξ. οὗτος δὲ τελευτὴν ποιεῖ· ἡ γὰρ βραχεῖα διὰ τὸ ἀτελὴς εἶναι ποιεῖ κολοβόν.

The other rhythms, then, should be dropped, for the reasons given and because they are metrical; but the paean should be adopted, since it is the only one of the rhythms mentioned that does not form a meter, and so it best escapes notice. Nowadays people use one and the same paean both at the beginning ⟨and at the end⟩, but the end should differ from the beginning. There are two kinds of paean, opposite to each other. One suits the beginning, and is in fact used there: this is the one that begins with a long syllable and ends with three shorts, as in "Delos-born, or else Lycia" and "golden-haired Far-shooter, child of Zeus." The other is the reverse, with three shorts first and the long last: "after earth and the waters, night blotted out ocean." This one makes an end-

25 When a slave was freed, a herald asked whom he chose as his patron; the children, knowing the pattern, shouted the usual answer first.

26 A foot is measured by the ratio of its two parts: the heroic dactyl (– ⏑ ⏑) is 1:1, iamb and trochee 2:1, and the paean (– ⏑ ⏑ ⏑) 3:2.

GREEK	ENGLISH
	ing, since a short syllable, being incomplete, leaves the ending truncated.[27]
ἀλλὰ δεῖ τῇ μακρᾷ ἀποκόπτεσθαι καὶ δήλην εἶναι τὴν τελευτὴν μὴ διὰ τὸν γραφέα, μηδὲ διὰ τὴν παραγραφήν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸν ῥυθμόν.	Instead, the sentence should be cut off with a long syllable, and the end should be clear not through the scribe or the marginal mark, but through the rhythm.[28]

CHAPTER 9: THE RUNNING AND THE PERIODIC STYLE

Running and compact style; the period, simple and divided into clauses.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ὅτι μὲν οὖν εὔρυθμον δεῖ εἶναι τὴν λέξιν καὶ μὴ ἄρρυθμον, καὶ τίνες εὔρυθμον ποιοῦσι ῥυθμοὶ καὶ πῶς ἔχοντες, εἴρηται· τὴν δὲ λέξιν ἀνάγκη εἶναι ἢ εἰρομένην καὶ τῷ συνδέσμῳ μίαν, ὥσπερ αἱ ἐν τοῖς διθυράμβοις ἀναβολαί, ἢ κατεστραμμένην καὶ ὁμοίαν ταῖς τῶν ἀρχαίων ποιητῶν ἀντιστρόφοις. ἡ μὲν οὖν εἰρομένη λέξις ἡ ἀρχαία ἐστίν· "Ἡροδότου Θουρίου ἥδ' ἱστορίης ἀπόδειξις·" ταύτῃ γὰρ πρότερον μὲν ἅπαντες, νῦν δὲ οὐ πολλοὶ χρῶνται. λέγω δὲ εἰρομένην ἢ οὐδὲν ἔχει τέλος καθ' αὑτήν, ἂν μὴ τὸ πρᾶγμα τὸ λεγόμενον τελειωθῇ. ἔστι δὲ ἀηδὴς διὰ τὸ ἄπειρον· τὸ γὰρ τέλος πάντες βούλονται καθορᾶν. διό περ ἐπὶ τοῖς καμπτῆρσιν ἐκπνέουσι καὶ ἐκλύονται· προορῶντες γὰρ τὸ πέρας οὐ κάμνουσι πρότερον.	That style should be rhythmical and not without rhythm, and which rhythms make it rhythmical and in what arrangement, has now been said. Style must be either running, held together only by connectives, like the preludes in dithyrambs, or compact, like the antistrophes of the old poets. The running style is the old one: "This is the exposition of the inquiry of Herodotus of Thurii." Everyone used to use it; now not many do. By "running" I mean the style that has no end in itself unless the matter being described comes to an end. It is unpleasant because it is unlimited, for everyone wants to see the end in view. That is why runners gasp and collapse at the turning posts: as long as they could see the finish ahead, they didn't tire.[29]
ἡ μὲν οὖν εἰρομένη τῆς λέξεώς ἐστιν ἥδε, κατεστραμμένη δὲ ἡ ἐν περιόδοις· λέγω δὲ περίοδον λέξιν ἔχουσαν ἀρχὴν καὶ τελευτὴν αὐτὴν καθ' αὑτὴν καὶ μέγεθος εὐσύνοπτον. 1409b ἡδεῖα δ' ἡ τοιαύτη καὶ εὐμαθής, ἡδεῖα μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐναντίως ἔχειν τῷ ἀπεράντῳ, καὶ ὅτι ἀεί τι οἴεται ἔχειν ὁ ἀκροατὴς καὶ πεπεράνθαι τι αὐτῷ· τὸ δὲ μηδὲν προνοεῖν εἶναι μηδὲ ἀνύειν ἀηδές. εὐμαθὴς δὲ ὅτι εὐμνημόνευτος. τοῦτο δὲ ὅτι ἀριθμὸν ἔχει ἡ ἐν περιόδοις λέξις, ὃ πάντων εὐμνημονευτότατον. διὸ καὶ τὰ μέτρα πάντες μνημονεύουσιν μᾶλλον τῶν χύδην· ἀριθμὸν γὰρ ἔχει ᾧ μετρεῖται.	That, then, is the running style. The compact style is the one in periods. By a period I mean a stretch of speech that has a beginning and an end in itself, and a size that can easily be taken in at a glance. 1409b Such style is pleasant and easy to learn. It is pleasant because it is the opposite of the unlimited, and because the hearer always thinks he has grasped something and that something has been completed for him; whereas to foresee nothing and get nowhere is unpleasant. It is easy to learn because it is easy to remember, and this is because periodic style has number, which is the easiest of all things to remember. That is why everyone remembers verse better than loose prose: it has number, by which it is measured.
1409b δεῖ δὲ τὴν περίοδον καὶ τῇ διανοίᾳ τετελειῶσθαι, καὶ μὴ διακόπτεσθαι ὥσπερ τὰ Σοφοκλέους ἰαμβεῖα, Καλυδὼν	The period should also be complete in its thought, and not cut off like Sophocles' iambic line, "This land is Calydon, of Pelops' country": by the divi-

27 In the Greek, the first two lines open with long–short–short–short and the last closes with short–short–short–long; the translation cannot keep the rhythm.
28 Scribes marked the end of a section with a stroke in the margin, the paragraphos.

GREEK

μὲν ἥδε γαῖα Πελοπίας χθονός· τοὐναντίον γὰρ ἔστιν ὑπολαβεῖν τῷ διαιρεῖσθαι, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ εἰρημένου τὴν Καλυδῶνα εἶναι τῆς Πελοποννήσου. περίοδος δὲ ἡ μὲν ἐν κώλοις ἡ δ' ἀφελής. ἔστιν δ' ἐν κώλοις μὲν λέξις ἡ τετελειωμένη τε καὶ διῃρημένη καὶ εὐανάπνευστος, μὴ ἐν τῇ διαιρέσει ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ περίοδος, ἀλλ' ὅλη. κῶλον δ' ἐστὶν τὸ ἕτερον μόριον ταύτης. ἀφελῆ δὲ λέγω τὴν μονόκωλον. δεῖ δὲ καὶ τὰ κῶλα καὶ τὰς περιόδους μήτε μυούρους εἶναι μήτε μακράς.

τὸ μὲν γὰρ μικρὸν προσπταίειν πολλάκις ποιεῖ τὸν ἀκροατήν· ἀνάγκη γάρ, ὅταν ἔτι ὁρμῶν ἐπὶ τὸ πόρρω καὶ τὸ μέτρον, οὗ ἔχει ἐν ἑαυτῷ ὅρον, ἀντισπασθῇ παυσαμένου, οἷον προσπταίειν γίγνεσθαι διὰ τὴν ἀντίκρουσιν. τὰ δὲ μακρὰ ἀπολείπεσθαι ποιεῖ, ὥσπερ οἱ ἐξωτέρω ἀποκάμπτοντες τοῦ τέρματος· ἀπολείπουσι γὰρ καὶ οὗτοι τοὺς συμπεριπατοῦντας. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ αἱ περίοδοι αἱ μακραὶ οὖσαι λόγος γίνεται καὶ ἀναβολῇ ὅμοιον, ὥστε γίνεται ὃ ἔσκωψεν Δημόκριτος ὁ Χῖος εἰς Μελανιππίδην ποιήσαντα ἀντὶ τῶν ἀντιστρόφων ἀναβολάς οἵ τ' αὐτῷ κακὰ τεύχει ἀνὴρ ἄλλῳ κακὰ τεύχων, / ἡ δὲ μακρὰ ἀναβολὴ τῷ ποιήσαντι κακίστη· ἁρμόττει γὰρ τὸ τοιοῦτον καὶ εἰς τοὺς μακροκώλους λέγειν. αἵ τε λίαν βραχύκωλοι οὐ περίοδος γίνεται· προπετῆ οὖν ἄγει τὸν ἀκροατήν.

τῆς δὲ ἐν κώλοις λέξεως ἡ μὲν διῃρημένη ἐστὶν ἡ δὲ ἀντικειμένη, διῃρημένη μὲν, οἷον "πολλάκις ἐθαύμασα τῶν τὰς πανηγύρεις συναγαγόντων καὶ τοὺς γυμνικοὺς ἀγῶνας καταστησάντων", ἀντικειμένη δὲ ἐν ᾗ ἑκατέρῳ τῷ κώλῳ ἢ πρὸς ἐναντίῳ ἐναντίον σύγκειται ἢ ταὐτὸ ἐπέζευκται τοῖς ἐναντίοις, [1410a] οἷον "ἀμφοτέρους δ' ὤνησαν, καὶ τοὺς ὑπομείναντας καὶ τοὺς ἀκολουθήσαντας· τοῖς μὲν γὰρ πλείω τῆς οἴκοι προσεκτήσαντο, τοῖς δ' ἱκανὴν τὴν οἴκοι κατέλιπον." ἐναντία ὑπομονὴ ἀκολούθησις, ἱκανόν πλεῖον. "ὥστε καὶ τοῖς χρημάτων δεομένοις καὶ τοῖς ἀπολαῦσαι βουλομένοις" ἀπόλαυσις κτήσει ἀντίκειται.

1410a καὶ ἔτι "συμβαίνει πολλάκις ἐν ταύταις καὶ τοὺς φρονίμους ἀτυχεῖν καὶ τοὺς ἄφρονας κατορθοῦν." "εὐθὺς μὲν τῶν ἀριστείων ἠξιώθησαν, οὐ πολὺ δὲ ὕστερον τὴν

ENGLISH

sion one can take it to mean the opposite of what is meant—in this example, that Calydon is in the Peloponnese. A period is either in clauses or simple. Style in clauses is complete, divided, and easily spoken in one breath—not at the point of division, like the line just quoted, but as a whole. A clause is one of the two parts of such a period. By "simple" I mean a period of one clause. Clauses and periods should be neither stunted nor long.[30]

A short one often makes the hearer stumble: when he is still pressing on toward the distance and the measure whose limit he carries in his own mind, and is pulled back because the speaker has stopped, there is bound to be a sort of stumble from the check. Long ones make him lag behind, like people who turn back beyond the turning point on a walk: they too leave their companions behind. Likewise periods that are long become a speech in themselves and resemble a dithyrambic prelude. The result is what Democritus of Chios mocked in Melanippides, who wrote preludes instead of antistrophes: "A man works harm to himself who works harm to another, / and a long prelude is worst for the one who composed it." This sort of thing also fits those who use long clauses. And periods whose clauses are too short are not periods at all; so they drag the hearer headlong.[31]

Of style in clauses, one kind is divided, the other antithetical. Divided, for example: "I have often wondered at those who convened the festivals and established the athletic contests." Antithetical is the kind in which, in each of the two clauses, opposite is set against opposite, or the same word is yoked to both opposites, [1410a] for example: "They benefited both, those who stayed behind and those who followed: for the latter they acquired more than they had at home, for the former they left enough at home." Opposites: staying behind and following, enough and more. "So that both for those in need of money and for those wishing to enjoy it"—enjoyment is opposed to acquisition.

And again: "It often happens in these that the sensible fail and the foolish succeed." "At once they were judged worthy of the prize for valor, and not

29 Herodotus' *Histories* opens with this sentence; some ancient copies called him "of Thurii," the Italian colony where he settled, rather than "of Halicarnassus."

30 The line goes on to say the land lies across the strait from the Peloponnese; a pause after "Pelops' country" wrongly puts Calydon inside it.

31 The lines parody Hesiod, *Works and Days* 265; Melanippides was a dithyrambic poet of the fifth century BC.

GREEK

ἀρχὴν τῆς θαλάττης ἔλαβον." "πλεῦσαι μὲν διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου, πεζεῦσαι δὲ διὰ τῆς θαλάττης, τὸν μὲν Ἑλλήσποντον ζεύξας, τὸν δ' Ἄθω διορύξας." "καὶ φύσει πολίτας ὄντας νόμῳ τῆς πόλεως στέρεσθαι." "οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν κακῶς ἀπώλοντο, οἱ δ' αἰσχρῶς ἐσώθησαν." καὶ "ἰδίᾳ μὲν τοῖς βαρβάροις οἰκέταις χρῆσθαι, κοινῇ δὲ πολλοὺς τῶν συμμάχων περιορᾶν δουλεύοντας." "ἢ ζῶντας ἔξειν ἢ τελευτήσαντας καταλείψειν." καὶ ὃ εἰς Πειθόλαόν τις εἶπεν καὶ Λυκόφρονα ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ, "οὗτοι δ' ὑμᾶς οἴκοι μὲν ὄντες ἐπώλουν, ἐλθόντες δ' ὡς ὑμᾶς ἐώνηνται." ἅπαντα γὰρ ταῦτα ποιεῖ τὸ εἰρημένον.

ἡδεῖα δὲ ἐστὶν ἡ τοιαύτη λέξις, ὅτι τἀναντία γνωριμώτατα καὶ παρ' ἄλληλα μᾶλλον γνώριμα, καὶ ὅτι ἔοικεν συλλογισμῷ· ὁ γὰρ ἔλεγχος συναγωγὴ τῶν ἀντικειμένων ἐστίν. ἀντίθεσις μὲν οὖν τὸ τοιοῦτον ἐστίν, παρίσωσις δ' ἐὰν ἴσα τὰ κῶλα, παρομοίωσις δὲ ἐὰν ὅμοια τὰ ἔσχατα ἔχῃ ἑκάτερον τὸ κῶλον. ἀνάγκη δὲ ἢ ἐν ἀρχῇ ἢ ἐπὶ τελευτῆς ἔχειν. καὶ ἀρχὴ μὲν ἀεὶ τὰ ὀνόματα, ἡ δὲ τελευτὴ τὰς ἐσχάτας συλλαβὰς ἢ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ὀνόματος πτώσεις ἢ τὸ αὐτὸ ὄνομα.

ἐν ἀρχῇ μὲν τὰ τοιαῦτα "ἀγρὸν γὰρ ἔλαβεν ἀργὸν παρ' αὐτοῦ" δωρητοί τ' ἐπέλοντο παράρρητοί τ' ἐπέεσσιν· ἐπὶ τελευτῆς δέ "ᾠήθησαν αὐτὸν παιδίον τετοκέναι, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ αἴτιον γεγονέναι" "ἐν πλείσταις δὲ φροντίσι καὶ ἐν ἐλαχίσταις ἐλπίσιν." πτώσεις δὲ ταὐτοῦ "ἄξιος δὲ σταθῆναι χαλκοῦς, οὐκ ἄξιος ὢν χαλκοῦ;" ταὐτὸ δ' ὄνομα "σὺ δ' αὐτὸν καὶ ζῶντα ἔλεγες κακῶς καὶ νῦν γράφεις κακῶς." ἀπὸ συλλαβῆς δέ "τί ἂν ἔπαθες δεινόν, εἰ ἄνδρ' εἶδες ἀργόν;" ἔστιν δὲ ἅμα πάντα ἔχειν ταὐτό, [1410b] καὶ ἀντίθεσιν εἶναι τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ πάρισον καὶ ὁμοιοτέλευτον. αἱ δ' ἀρεταὶ τῶν περιόδων σχεδὸν ἐν τοῖς Θεοδεκτείοις ἐξηρίθμηνται. εἰσὶν δὲ καὶ ψευδεῖς ἀντιθέσεις, οἷον καὶ Ἐπίχαρμος ἐποίει, τόκα μὲν ἐν τήνων ἐγὼν ἦν, τόκα δὲ παρὰ τήνοις ἐγών.

ENGLISH

long after they won command of the sea." "To sail through the mainland and march through the sea, bridging the Hellespont and digging through Athos." "And that men who are citizens by nature should be deprived of their city by law." "For some of them perished miserably, others were saved shamefully." And: "Privately to use barbarians as household slaves, but publicly to look on while many of our allies are enslaved." "Either to have them alive or to leave them behind dead." And what someone said in court against Peitholaus and Lycophron: "These men sold you when they were at home, and now that they have come to you, they have bought you." All these produce the effect described.[32]

Such style is pleasant because opposites are most easily known, and more easily still when set side by side, and because it resembles a syllogism, for refutation is a bringing together of opposites. This, then, is antithesis. Parisosis is when the clauses are equal; paromoiosis when each clause has similar extremities. This must come either at the beginning or at the end. At the beginning it is always whole words; at the end, final syllables, or inflections of the same word, or the same word.

At the beginning, things like "For he got from him land unworked" and "they could be won with gifts and won over with words." At the end: "They thought he had fathered a child, but he had become the cause of it"; "amid the greatest cares and the slightest hopes." Inflections of the same word: "Does he deserve a bronze statue, when he's not worth a bronze coin?" The same word: "You spoke ill of him while he lived, and now you write ill of him." From a syllable: "What terrible thing would have happened to you if you had seen an idle man?" The same sentence can have all of these at once, [1410b] and be at once antithesis, parison, and homoeoteleuton. The excellences of periods have been more or less enumerated in the *Theodectea*. There are also false antitheses, like those Epicharmus wrote: "At one time I was in their house, at another I was with them."[33]

32 Sailing through the mainland and marching through the sea refers to Xerxes' bridge over the Hellespont and canal through Athos (480 BC).

33 The examples rest on Greek sound-play that English cannot keep (e.g. *agron*, "land," and *argon*, "unworked"; *chalkous*, "bronze statue," and *chalkou*, "bronze coin"). The *Theodectea* was a rhetorical handbook associated with Theodectes.

CHAPTER 10: WITTY SAYINGS

Witty sayings please by quick learning, through metaphor, antithesis and vividness.

GREEK

ENGLISH

1410b ἐπεὶ δὲ διώρισται περὶ τούτων, πόθεν λέγεται τὰ ἀστεῖα καὶ τὰ εὐδοκιμοῦντα λεκτέον. ποιεῖν μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν τοῦ εὐφυοῦς ἢ τοῦ γεγυμνασμένου, δεῖξαι δὲ τῆς μεθόδου ταύτης. εἴπωμεν οὖν καὶ διαριθμησώμεθα· ἀρχὴ δ' ἔστω ἡμῖν αὕτη. τὸ γὰρ μανθάνειν ῥᾳδίως ἡδὺ φύσει πᾶσιν ἐστί, τὰ δὲ ὀνόματα σημαίνει τι, ὥστε ὅσα τῶν ὀνομάτων ποιεῖ ἡμῖν μάθησιν, ἥδιστα. αἱ μὲν οὖν γλῶτται ἀγνῶτες, τὰ δὲ κύρια ἴσμεν, ἡ δὲ μεταφορὰ ποιεῖ τοῦτο μάλιστα· ὅταν γὰρ εἴπῃ τὸ γῆρας καλάμην, ἐποίησεν μάθησιν καὶ γνῶσιν διὰ τοῦ γένους· ἄμφω γὰρ ἀπηνθηκότα. ποιοῦσιν μὲν οὖν καὶ αἱ τῶν ποιητῶν εἰκόνες τὸ αὐτό· διό περ ἂν εὖ, ἀστεῖον φαίνεται.

Now that these matters have been settled, we must say where witty and well-received sayings come from. Producing them is the work of someone naturally gifted or well trained; showing how they work is the business of this inquiry. So let us discuss them and list them, and let this be our starting point. Learning easily is naturally pleasant to everyone, and words signify something, so the words that make us learn something are the most pleasant. Rare words are unknown to us, and ordinary words we already know; it is metaphor that most produces this effect. When the poet calls old age "stubble," he makes us learn and know something through the genus, since both have lost their bloom. The similes of the poets do the same thing, which is why, if they are done well, they seem witty.

ἔστιν γὰρ ἡ εἰκών, καθάπερ εἴρηται πρότερον, μεταφορὰ διαφέρουσα προθέσει· διὸ ἧττον ἡδύ, ὅτι μακροτέρως· καὶ οὐ λέγει ὡς τοῦτο ἐκεῖνο· οὔκουν οὐδὲ ζητεῖ τοῦτο ἡ ψυχή. ἀνάγκη δὴ καὶ λέξιν καὶ ἐνθυμήματα ταῦτ' εἶναι ἀστεῖα, ὅσα ποιεῖ ἡμῖν μάθησιν ταχεῖαν. διὸ οὔτε τὰ ἐπιπόλαια τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων εὐδοκιμεῖ· (ἐπιπόλαια γὰρ λέγομεν τὰ παντὶ δῆλα, καὶ ἃ μηδὲν δεῖ ζητῆσαι), οὔτε ὅσα εἰρημένα ἀγνοούμενα, ἀλλ' ὅσων ἢ ἅμα λεγομένων ἡ γνῶσις γίνεται, καὶ εἰ μὴ πρότερον ὑπῆρχεν, ἢ μικρὸν ὑστερίζει ἡ διάνοια· γίγνεται γὰρ οἷον μάθησις, ἐκείνως δὲ οὐδέτερον. κατὰ μὲν οὖν τὴν διάνοιαν τοῦ λεγομένου τὰ τοιαῦτα εὐδοκιμεῖ τῶν ἐνθυμημάτων, κατὰ δὲ τὴν λέξιν τῷ μὲν σχήματι, ἐὰν ἀντικειμένως λέγηται, οἷον "καὶ τὴν τοῖς ἄλλοις κοινὴν εἰρήνην νομιζόντων τοῖς αὑτῶν ἰδίοις πόλεμον" ἀντίκειται πόλεμος εἰρήνῃ.

For the simile, as was said earlier, is a metaphor that differs by having a word put in front. That is why it is less pleasant: it is longer. It also does not say that this is that, so the soul does not look for this either. Style and enthymemes, then, are necessarily witty when they make us learn quickly. That is why superficial enthymemes are not well received (by "superficial" we mean those that are obvious to everyone and require no searching), and neither are those that are not understood once they have been said. The ones that succeed are those understood as soon as they are said, even if the knowledge was not there before, or those that the mind catches up with after a short lag. For then a kind of learning takes place, but in the other cases neither happens. In terms of the thought of what is said, then, enthymemes of this kind are well received. In terms of style, they succeed through their form, if they are expressed antithetically, for example: "and regarding the peace that the others share as a war against their own private interests," where war is set against peace.

τοῖς δ' ὀνόμασιν, ἐὰν ἔχῃ μεταφοράν, καὶ ταύτην μήτ' ἀλλοτρίαν, χαλεπὸν γὰρ συνιδεῖν, μήτ' ἐπιπόλαιον, οὐδὲν γὰρ ποιεῖ πάσχειν. ἔτι εἰ πρὸ ὀμμάτων ποιεῖ· ὁρᾶν γὰρ δεῖ τὰ πραττόμενα μᾶλλον ἢ μέλλοντα. δεῖ ἄρα τούτων στοχάζεσθαι τριῶν, μεταφορᾶς ἀντιθέσεως ἐνεργείας. τῶν δὲ μεταφορῶν τεττάρων οὐσῶν 1411a εὐδοκιμοῦσι

They succeed through their words if these contain a metaphor, and a metaphor neither far-fetched (for then it is hard to grasp) nor superficial (for then it has no effect on us). Further, they succeed if they set things before the eyes, for we should see things being done rather than things to come. So

GREEK	ENGLISH
μάλιστα αἱ κατ' ἀναλογίαν, ὥσπερ Περικλῆς ἔφη τὴν νεότητα τὴν ἀπολομένην ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ οὕτως ἠφανίσθαι ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ὥσπερ εἴ τις τὸ ἔαρ ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ ἐξέλοι. καὶ Λεπτίνης περὶ Λακεδαιμονίων, οὐκ ἐᾶν περιιδεῖν τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἑτερόφθαλμον γενομένην. καὶ Κηφισόδοτος σπουδάζοντος Χάρητος εὐθύνας δοῦναι περὶ τὸν Ὀλυνθιακὸν πόλεμον ἠγανάκτει, φάσκων εἰς πνῖγμα τὸν δῆμον ἄγχοντα τὰς εὐθύνας πειρᾶσθαι δοῦναι. καὶ παρακαλῶν ποτὲ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους εἰς Εὔβοιαν ἐπισιτισαμένους ἔφη δεῖν ἐξιέναι τὸ Μιλτιάδου ψήφισμα.	one should aim at these three things: metaphor, antithesis, activity. Of the four kinds of metaphor, [1411a] the most well received are those by analogy. Pericles, for example, said that the young men who had died in the war had vanished from the city as if someone had taken the spring out of the year. And Leptines, speaking about the Spartans, said they must not stand by and watch Greece become one-eyed. And Cephisodotus, when Chares was eager to submit to his audit for the Olynthian war, was indignant, saying that Chares was trying to submit to his audit while he had the people by the throat and was choking them. And once, urging the Athenians to go to Euboea, he said that they must set out with provisions: "Miltiades' decree."[34]
1411a καὶ Ἰφικράτης σπεισαμένων Ἀθηναίων πρὸς Ἐπίδαυρον καὶ τὴν παραλίαν ἠγανάκτει, φάσκων αὐτοὺς τὰ ἐφόδια τοῦ πολέμου παρῃρῆσθαι. καὶ Πειθόλαος τὴν πάραλον ῥόπαλον τοῦ δήμου, Σηστὸν δὲ τηλίαν τοῦ Πειραιέως. καὶ Περικλῆς τὴν Αἴγιναν ἀφελεῖν ἐκέλευσε τὴν λήμην τοῦ Πειραιέως. καὶ Μοιροκλῆς οὐθὲν ἔφη πονηρότερος εἶναι, ὀνομάσας τινὰ τῶν ἐπιεικῶν· ἐκεῖνον μὲν γὰρ ἐπιτρίτων τόκων πονηρεύεσθαι, αὐτὸν δὲ ἐπιδεκάτων. καὶ τὸ Ἀναξανδρίδου ἰαμβεῖον ὑπὲρ τῶν θυγατέρων πρὸς τὸν γάμον ἐγχρονιζουσῶν ὑπερήμεροί μοι τῶν γάμων αἱ παρθένοι. καὶ τὸ Πολυεύκτου εἰς ἀποπληκτικόν τινα Σπεύσιππον, τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν ὑπὸ τῆς τύχης ἐν πεντεσυρίγγῳ νόσῳ δεδεμένον. καὶ Κηφισόδοτος τὰς τριήρεις ἐκάλει μύλωνας ποικίλους, ὁ Κύων δὲ τὰ καπηλεῖα τὰ Ἀττικὰ φιδίτια. Αἰσίων δέ, ὅτι εἰς Σικελίαν τὴν πόλιν ἐξέχεαν· τοῦτο γὰρ μεταφορὰ καὶ πρὸ ὀμμάτων.	And Iphicrates, when the Athenians had made a truce with Epidaurus and the coast near it, was indignant, saying that they had robbed themselves of their travel money for the war. And Peitholaus called the Paralus "the people's club," and Sestos "the bread-board of the Piraeus." And Pericles told them to remove Aegina, "the eyesore of the Piraeus." And Moerocles named one of the decent citizens and said he himself was no more wicked than that man, for that man was wicked at thirty-three percent interest and he himself at ten. And there is the iambic line of Anaxandrides about daughters slow to marry: "My girls have let their wedding day lapse, like a debt." And Polyeuctus' remark about a man called Speusippus who had suffered a stroke: he could not keep still, even though fortune had bound him in a five-holed disease. And Cephisodotus used to call the triremes "painted mills," and the Dog called the taverns of Attica "the Spartan common messes." And Aesion said that they had "poured the city out into Sicily"; this is a metaphor and sets the thing before the eyes.[35]
καὶ "ὥστε βοῆσαι τὴν Ἑλλάδα·" καὶ τοῦτο τρόπον τινὰ μεταφορὰ καὶ πρὸ ὀμμάτων. καὶ ὥσπερ Κηφισόδοτος εὐλαβεῖσθαι ἐκέλευεν μὴ πολλὰς ποιήσωσιν τὰς συνδρομάς [ἐκκλησίας]. καὶ Ἰσοκράτης πρὸς τοὺς συντρέχοντας ἐν ταῖς πανηγύρεσιν. καὶ οἷον ἐν τῷ ἐπιταφίῳ, διότι ἄξιον ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ τάφῳ τῷ τῶν ἐν Σαλαμῖνι	And "so that Greece cried out": this too is in a way a metaphor and before the eyes. And Cephisodotus told them to take care not to hold too many "stampedes" [assemblies]. And Isocrates spoke of those who "stampede together" at the festivals. And there is the funeral speech, which said that Greece

34 Athenian officials, such as the general Chares, had to submit to a public audit of their conduct at the end of their term. Miltiades' decree of 490 BC sent the Athenians out at once, with provisions, to meet the Persians at Marathon.
35 The Paralus was one of Athens' sacred state triremes. "The Dog" is Diogenes the Cynic, and the Spartan common messes were austere communal meals.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τελευτησάντων κείρασθαι τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὡς συγκαταθαπτομένης τῇ ἀρετῇ αὐτῶν τῆς ἐλευθερίας· εἰ μὲν γὰρ εἶπεν ὅτι ἄξιον δακρῦσαι συγκαταθαπτομένης τῆς ἀρετῆς, μεταφορὰ καὶ πρὸ ὀμμάτων, 1411b τὸ δὲ "τῇ ἀρετῇ τῆς ἐλευθερίας" ἀντίθεσίν τινα ἔχει. καὶ ὡς Ἰφικράτης εἶπεν "ἡ γὰρ ὁδός μοι τῶν λόγων διὰ μέσων τῶν Χάρητι πεπραγμένων ἐστίν·" μεταφορὰ κατ' ἀναλογίαν, καὶ τὸ διὰ μέσου πρὸ ὀμμάτων ποιεῖ. καὶ τὸ φάναι παρακαλεῖν τοὺς κινδύνους τοῖς κινδύνοις βοηθήσοντας, πρὸ ὀμμάτων ⟨καὶ⟩ μεταφορά.	ought to have cut her hair at the tomb of those who died at Salamis, since her freedom was being buried along with their excellence. If he had said that it was right to weep because their excellence was being buried with them, that would be a metaphor and before the eyes, 1411b but "freedom along with excellence" has a kind of antithesis. And Iphicrates said, "The path of my speech runs through the middle of Chares' deeds": a metaphor by analogy, and "through the middle" sets it before the eyes. And saying that one "calls on dangers to come to the rescue against dangers" is before the eyes and a metaphor.[36]
1411b καὶ Λυκολέων ὑπὲρ Χαβρίου "οὐδὲ τὴν ἱκετηρίαν αἰσχυνθέντες αὐτοῦ, τὴν εἰκόνα τὴν χαλκῆν·" μεταφορὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ παρόντι, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀεί, ἀλλὰ πρὸ ὀμμάτων· κινδυνεύοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ ἱκετεύει ἡ εἰκών, τὸ ἄψυχον δὴ ἔμψυχον, τὸ ὑπόμνημα τῶν τῆς πόλεως ἔργων. καὶ "πάντα τρόπον μικρὸν φρονεῖν μελετῶντες·" τὸ γὰρ μελετᾶν αὔξειν τι ἐστίν. καὶ ὅτι τὸν νοῦν ὁ θεὸς φῶς ἀνῆψεν ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ· ἄμφω γὰρ δηλοῖ τι. "οὐ γὰρ διαλυόμεθα τοὺς πολέμους ἀλλ' ἀναβαλλόμεθα·" ἄμφω γάρ ἐστιν μέλλοντα, καὶ ἡ ἀναβολὴ καὶ ἡ τοιαύτη εἰρήνη. καὶ τὸ τὰς συνθήκας φάναι τρόπαιον εἶναι πολὺ κάλλιον τῶν ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις γινομένων· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ὑπὲρ μικρῶν καὶ μιᾶς τύχης, αὗται δ' ὑπὲρ παντὸς τοῦ πολέμου· ἄμφω γὰρ νίκης σημεῖα.	And Lycoleon, speaking for Chabrias: "not even respecting his posture of supplication, the bronze statue." This is a metaphor for the moment, though not for all time, but it is before the eyes: when he is in danger, the statue supplicates, the lifeless made alive, the memorial of the city's deeds. And "practicing in every way to think small": for to practice something is to increase it. And that the god kindled the mind as a light in the soul: for both make something clear. "For we do not end our wars, we postpone them": for both postponement and this sort of peace concern the future. And saying that a treaty is a trophy far finer than those won in wars: for those are set up for small things and a single stroke of fortune, while treaties are for the whole war; and both are signs of victory.[37]
ὅτι καὶ αἱ πόλεις τῷ ψόγῳ τῶν ἀνθρώπων μεγάλας εὐθύνας διδόασιν· ἡ γὰρ εὔθυνα βλάβη τις δικαία ἐστίν.	And that cities, too, submit to heavy audits before the censure of mankind; for an audit is a kind of just penalty.

CHAPTER 11: BEFORE THE EYES

Vivid metaphor, surprise, wordplay, proverbs and hyperbole.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ὅτι μὲν οὖν τὰ ἀστεῖα ἐκ μεταφορᾶς τε τῆς ἀνάλογον λέγεται καὶ τῷ πρὸ ὀμμάτων ποιεῖν, εἴρηται· λεκτέον δὲ τί λέγομεν πρὸ ὀμμάτων, καὶ τί ποιοῦσι γίγνεται τοῦτο. λέγω δὴ πρὸ ὀμμάτων ταῦτα ποιεῖν ὅσα ἐνεργοῦντα σημαίνει, οἷον τὸν ἀγαθὸν ἄνδρα φάναι εἶναι τετράγωνον μεταφορά, ἄμφω γὰρ τέλεια, ἀλλ' οὐ σημαίνει ἐνέργειαν· ἀλλὰ τὸ "ἀνθοῦσαν ἔχοντος τὴν ἀκμήν" ἐνέργεια, καὶ τὸ	That witty sayings come from proportional metaphor and from setting things before the eyes has been stated. We must now say what we mean by "before the eyes," and what one must do to bring it about. I mean that words set things before the eyes when they signify things in activity. Calling a good man "four-square," for example, is a meta-

36 Cutting one's hair was a sign of mourning; the funeral speech is the one attributed to Lysias.
37 Chabrias' statue in Athens showed him kneeling behind his shield, the stance of his famous stand against the Spartans, which resembled a suppliant's pose.

GREEK

"σὲ δ' ὥσπερ ἄφετον" [ἐλεύθερον] ἐνέργεια, καὶ [τοὐντεῦθεν οὖν] "Ἕλληνες ᾄξαντες ποσίν τὸ ᾄξαντες ἐνέργεια καὶ μεταφορά· ταχὺ γὰρ λέγει. καὶ ὡς κέχρηται πολλαχοῦ Ὅμηρος, τὸ τὰ ἄψυχα ἔμψυχα ποιεῖν διὰ τῆς μεταφορᾶς.

ἐν πᾶσι δὲ τῷ ἐνέργειαν ποιεῖν εὐδοκιμεῖ, οἷον ἐν τοῖσδε, αὖτις ἐπὶ δάπεδόνδε κυλίνδετο λᾶας ἀναιδής, καὶ ἔπτατ' ὀιστός, καὶ ἐπιπτέσθαι μενεαίνων, [1412a] καὶ ἐν γαίῃ ἵσταντο λιλαιόμενα χροὸς ἆσαι, καὶ αἰχμὴ δὲ στέρνοιο διέσσυτο μαιμώωσα. ἐν πᾶσι γὰρ τούτοις διὰ τὸ ἔμψυχα εἶναι ἐνεργοῦντα φαίνεται· τὸ ἀναισχυντεῖν γὰρ καὶ μαιμᾶν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐνέργεια. ταῦτα δὲ προσῆψε διὰ τῆς κατ' ἀναλογίαν μεταφορᾶς· ὡς γὰρ ὁ λίθος πρὸς τὸν Σίσυφον, ὁ ἀναισχυντῶν πρὸς τὸν ἀναισχυντούμενον. ποιεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς εὐδοκιμούσαις εἰκόσιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀψύχων ταῦτα· κυρτά, φαληριόωντα· πρὸ μέν τ' ἄλλ', αὐτὰρ ἐπ' ἄλλα· κινούμενα γὰρ καὶ ζῶντα ποιεῖ πάντα, ἡ δ' ἐνέργεια κίνησις.

1412a δεῖ δὲ μεταφέρειν, καθάπερ εἴρηται πρότερον, ἀπὸ οἰκείων καὶ μὴ φανερῶν, οἷον καὶ ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ τὸ ὅμοιον καὶ ἐν πολὺ διέχουσι θεωρεῖν εὐστόχου, ὥσπερ Ἀρχύτας ἔφη ταὐτὸν εἶναι διαιτητὴν καὶ βωμόν· ἐπ' ἄμφω γὰρ τὸ ἀδικούμενον καταφεύγει. ἢ εἴ τις φαίη ἄγκυραν καὶ κρεμάθραν τὸ αὐτὸ εἶναι· ἄμφω γὰρ ταὐτό τι, ἀλλὰ διαφέρει τῷ ἄνωθεν καὶ κάτωθεν. καὶ τὸ ὠμαλίσθαι τὰς πόλεις ἐν πολὺ διέχουσιν ταὐτό, ἐν ἐπιφανείᾳ καὶ δυνάμεσι τὸ ἴσον.

ἔστιν δὲ καὶ τὰ ἀστεῖα τὰ πλεῖστα διὰ μεταφορᾶς καὶ ἐκ τοῦ προσεξαπατᾶν· μᾶλλον γὰρ γίγνεται δῆλον ὅτι ἔμαθε παρὰ τὸ ἐναντίως ἔχειν, καὶ ἔοικεν λέγειν ἡ ψυχὴ "ὡς ἀληθῶς, ἐγὼ δὲ ἥμαρτον." καὶ τῶν ἀποφθεγμάτων δὲ τὰ ἀστεῖά ἐστιν ἐκ τοῦ μὴ ὅ φησι λέγειν, οἷον τὸ Στησιχόρου, ὅτι οἱ τέττιγες ἑαυτοῖς χαμόθεν ᾄσονται. καὶ τὰ εὖ ᾐνιγμένα διὰ τὸ αὐτὸ ἡδέα· μάθησις γάρ, καὶ λέγεται μεταφορά. καὶ ὃ λέγει Θεόδωρος, τὸ καινὰ λέγειν. γίγνεται δὲ ὅταν παράδοξον ᾖ, καὶ μή, ὡς ἐκεῖνος λέγει, πρὸς τὴν ἔμπροσθεν δόξαν, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ ἐν τοῖς γελοίοις τὰ παραπεποιημένα, ὅπερ δύναται καὶ τὰ παρὰ γράμμα σκώμματα· ἐξαπατᾷ γάρ.

ENGLISH

phor, since both are complete, but it does not signify activity. But "with his prime in full bloom" is activity, and "you, like a sacred beast let loose to roam" [free] is activity, and in "[then therefore] the Greeks, darting forward on their feet," "darting" is activity and metaphor, since it expresses speed. And there is what Homer does in many places, making lifeless things alive through metaphor.

In all of these he wins praise by producing activity, as in these lines: "Back again to the plain rolled the shameless stone," and "the arrow flew," and "eager to fly at them," [1412a] and "they stood fixed in the ground, longing to glut themselves on flesh," and "the spear-point sped through his chest, raging onward." In all these, things appear active because they are made alive: being shameless, raging, and the rest are activity. He attached these qualities through metaphor by analogy: as the stone is to Sisyphus, so the shameless person is to the one he treats shamelessly. He does the same in his well-received similes about lifeless things: "arching, foam-crested, some in front, others behind." He makes everything moving and living, and activity is movement.

Metaphors should be taken, as was said earlier, from things that are related but not obvious, just as in philosophy too it takes a sharp eye to see the likeness even in things far apart. Archytas, for example, said that an arbitrator and an altar are the same, since the wronged take refuge in both. Or someone might say that an anchor and a pot-hook are the same: both are the same sort of thing, but they differ in that one holds from above and the other from below. And "the cities have been leveled" applies the same thing to things far apart, equality in surface and in power.

Most witty sayings also come through metaphor and from an added deception. It becomes clearer that one has learned something when the thing turns out contrary to what one thought, and the soul seems to say, "How true! I had it wrong." Witty sayings of the apophthegm kind, too, come from not meaning what one says, like Stesichorus' remark that the cicadas would sing to themselves from the ground. Well-made riddles are pleasant for the same reason: there is learning in them, and they are expressed in metaphor. Then there is what Theodorus calls "saying new things." This happens when the thing is unexpected and, as he

GREEK

ENGLISH

puts it, does not fit our previous opinion, like the twisted words in jokes. Jokes that change a letter have the same effect, for they deceive.[38]

καὶ ἐν τοῖς μέτροις· οὐ γὰρ ὥσπερ ὁ ἀκούων ὑπέλαβεν· ἔστειχε δ' ἔχων ὑπὸ ποσσὶ χίμεθλα· ὁ δ' ᾠετο πέδιλα ἐρεῖν. τούτου δ' ἅμα λεγομένου δεῖ δῆλον εἶναι. τὰ δὲ παρὰ γράμμα ποιεῖ οὐχ ὃ λέγει λέγειν, ἀλλ' ὃ μεταστρέφει ὄνομα, οἷον τὸ Θεοδώρου εἰς Νίκωνα τὸν κιθαρῳδὸν "θράττει σε·" προσποιεῖται γὰρ λέγειν τὸ "θράττει σε" καὶ ἐξαπατᾷ· ἄλλο γὰρ λέγει. [1412b] διὸ μαθόντι ἡδύ, ἐπεὶ εἰ μὴ ὑπολαμβάνει Θρᾷκα εἶναι, οὐ δόξει ἀστεῖον εἶναι. καὶ τὸ "βούλει αὐτὸν πέρσαι." δεῖ δὲ ἀμφότερα προσηκόντως λεχθῆναι. οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὰ ἀστεῖα, οἷον τὸ φάναι Ἀθηναίοις τὴν τῆς θαλάττης ἀρχὴν μὴ ἀρχὴν εἶναι τῶν κακῶν· ὄνασθαι γάρ. ἢ ὥσπερ Ἰσοκράτης τὴν ἀρχὴν τῇ πόλει ἀρχὴν εἶναι τῶν κακῶν.

It happens in verse too, when the line is not what the hearer expected: "he strode along, with chilblains beneath his feet," when one thought he would say "sandals." But this must be clear as soon as it is said. Plays on a letter make the speaker mean not what he says but what the twisted word means, like Theodorus' remark to Nicon the lyre-singer, "Thratt'ei se": he pretends to say "it troubles you," and deceives us, since he means something else. [1412b] So it is pleasant to someone who gets it, but if one doesn't know that Nicon is a Thracian, it won't seem witty. And "You want to persai him." Both senses must be appropriately expressed. Witty sayings work the same way, for example telling the Athenians that their rule of the sea was not the beginning of their troubles, since they profited from it; or, as Isocrates said, that the rule was the beginning of the city's troubles.[39]

1412b ἀμφοτέρως γὰρ ὃ οὐκ ἂν ᾠήθη τις ἐρεῖν, τοῦτ' εἴρηται, καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι ἀληθές· τό τε γὰρ τὴν ἀρχὴν φάναι ἀρχὴν εἶναι οὐθὲν σοφόν· ἀλλ' οὐχ οὕτω λέγει ἀλλ' ἄλλως, καὶ ἀρχὴν οὐχ ὃ εἶπεν ἀπόφησιν, ἀλλ' ἄλλως. ἐν ἅπασι δὲ τούτοις, ἐὰν προσηκόντως τὸ ὄνομα ἐνέγκῃ ὁμωνυμίᾳ ἢ μεταφορᾷ, τότε τὸ εὖ. οἷον "Ἀνάσχετος οὐκ ἀνασχετός" ὁμωνυμίαν ἀπέφησε, ἀλλὰ προσηκόντως, εἰ ἀηδής. καὶ οὐκ ἂν γένοιο μᾶλλον ἤ σε δεῖ ξένος / [ξένος] [ἢ] οὐ μᾶλλον ἤ σε δεῖ τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ οὐ δεῖ τὸν ξένον ξένον ἀεὶ εἶναι· ἀλλότριον γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο.

In both cases, something has been said that one would not have expected the speaker to say, and it is recognized as true. Saying that the "archê" is an "archê" is nothing clever; but he does not mean it in that way but in another, and the "archê" he denies is not the one he asserted, but in another sense. In all these cases, the result is good only if the word is applied appropriately, by homonymy or by metaphor. For example, "Anaschetos is not anaschetos [bearable]": he denied the homonym, but appropriately, if the man is unpleasant. And "You must not be more of a stranger than you should, stranger" / [stranger] [or] "not more than you should," which is the same thing; and "the stranger must not always be a stranger," for here too the word is used in a different sense.

τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ τὸ Ἀναξανδρίδου τὸ ἐπαινούμενον, καλόν γ' ἀποθανεῖν πρὶν θανάτου δρᾶν ἄξιον· ταὐτὸ γάρ ἐστι τῷ εἰπεῖν ἄξιόν γ' ἀποθανεῖν μὴ ὄντα ἄξιον ἀποθανεῖν, ἢ ἄξιόν γ' ἀποθανεῖν μὴ θανάτου ἄξιον ὄντα, ἢ μὴ ποιοῦντα θανάτου ἄξια. τὸ μὲν οὖν εἶδος τὸ αὐτὸ τῆς λέξεως τούτων· ἀλλ' ὅσῳ ἂν ἐλάττονι καὶ ἀντικειμένως λεχθῇ, τοσούτῳ εὐδοκιμεῖ μᾶλλον. τὸ δ' αἴτιον ὅτι ἡ μάθησις διὰ μὲν τὸ ἀντικεῖσθαι μᾶλλον, διὰ δὲ τὸ ἐν ὀλίγῳ θᾶττον

Anaxandrides' much-praised line is the same: "It's fine to die before you've done anything that deserves death." This is the same as saying "it is worth dying when one does not deserve to die," or "it is worth dying when one is not deserving of death," or "when one is not doing things that deserve death." The form of expression in these is

38 Theodorus of Byzantium was a rhetorician of the late fifth century BC. Stesichorus warned the Locrians that if they grew arrogant their land would be ravaged and its trees cut down, leaving the cicadas to sing from the ground.
39 Theodorus' *thrattei se* means "it troubles you" but also sounds like "you are a Thracian woman," a jibe at Nicon's origin; *persai*, "to sack," sounds like "Persians." *Archē* means both "rule" and "beginning."

GREEK	ENGLISH
γίνεται. δεῖ δ' ἀεὶ προσεῖναι ἢ τὸ πρὸς ὃν λέγεται ἢ ὀρθῶς λέγεσθαι, εἰ τὸ λεγόμενον ἀληθὲς καὶ μὴ ἐπιπόλαιον· ἔστιν γὰρ ταῦτα χωρὶς ἔχειν, οἷον "ἀποθνήσκειν δεῖ μηθὲν ἁμαρτάνοντα" ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀστεῖον. "τὴν ἀξίαν δεῖ γαμεῖν τὸν ἄξιον" ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀστεῖον.	the same, but the more briefly and antithetically it is put, the better it is received. The reason is that one learns more through antithesis, and more quickly through brevity. Something must always be added, either aptness to the person addressed or correctness of expression, if what is said is to be true and not superficial; for these can be had separately. "One should die having done nothing wrong," but that isn't witty; "a worthy man should marry a worthy woman," but that isn't witty.
ἀλλ' ἐὰν ἅμα ἄμφω ἔχῃ· "ἄξιόν γ' ἀποθανεῖν μὴ ἄξιον ὄντα τοῦ ἀποθανεῖν." ὅσῳ δ' ἂν πλείω ἔχῃ, τοσούτῳ ἀστειότερον φαίνεται, οἷον εἰ καὶ τὰ ὀνόματα μεταφορὰ εἴη καὶ μεταφορὰ τοιαδὶ καὶ ἀντίθεσις καὶ παρίσωσις, καὶ ἔχοι ἐνέργειαν. εἰσὶν δὲ καὶ αἱ εἰκόνες, ὥσπερ εἴρηται καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄνω, αἱ εὐδοκιμοῦσαι τρόπον τινὰ μεταφοραί· ἀεὶ γὰρ ἐκ δυοῖν λέγονται, ὥσπερ ἡ ἀνάλογον μεταφορά. οἷον ἡ ἀσπὶς φαμέν ἐστι φιάλη Ἄρεως, καὶ τόξον φόρμιγξ ἄχορδος. 1413a οὕτω μὲν οὖν λέγουσιν οὐχ ἁπλοῦν, τὸ δ' εἰπεῖν τὸ τόξον φόρμιγγα ἢ τὴν ἀσπίδα φιάλην ἁπλοῦν. καὶ εἰκάζουσιν δὲ οὕτως, οἷον πιθήκῳ αὐλητήν, λύχνῳ ψακαζομένῳ [εἰς] μύωπα· ἄμφω γὰρ συνάγεται.	It is witty only when it has both at once: "it is worth dying when one does not deserve to die." And the more of these qualities it has, the wittier it seems: if, for instance, the words are a metaphor, and a metaphor of the right kind, and there is antithesis and balance, and it has activity. Similes too, as was said above, are, when well received, in a way metaphors; for they are always expressed in terms of two things, like proportional metaphor. We say, for example, that the shield is "the cup of Ares," and a bow is "a lyre without strings." 1413a Said this way, the expression is not simple, while calling the bow a lyre or the shield a cup is simple. People also make comparisons in this way, for instance a pipe-player to an ape, a short-sighted man [to] a lamp spattered with rain; for both screw themselves up.
1413a τὸ δὲ εὖ ἐστὶν ὅταν μεταφορὰ ᾖ· ἔστιν γὰρ εἰκάσαι τὴν ἀσπίδα φιάλῃ Ἄρεως καὶ τὸ ἐρείπιον ῥάκει οἰκίας, καὶ τὸ τὸν Νικήρατον φάναι Φιλοκτήτην εἶναι δεδηγμένον ὑπὸ Πράτυος, ὥσπερ εἴκασεν Θρασύμαχος ἰδὼν τὸν Νικήρατον ἡττημένον ὑπὸ Πράτυος ῥαψῳδοῦντα, κομῶντα δὲ καὶ αὐχμηρὸν ἔτι. ἐν οἷς μάλιστά τ' ἐκπίπτουσιν οἱ ποιηταί, ἐὰν μὴ εὖ, καὶ ἐὰν εὖ, εὐδοκιμοῦσιν. λέγω δ' ὅταν ἀποδιδῶσιν, ὥσπερ σέλινον οὗλα τὰ σκέλη φορεῖ. / ὥσπερ Φιλάμμων ζυγομαχῶν τῷ κωρύκῳ. καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντ' εἰκόνες εἰσίν. αἱ δ' εἰκόνες ὅτι μεταφοραί, εἴρηται πολλάκις. καὶ αἱ παροιμίαι μεταφοραὶ ἀπ' εἴδους ἐπ' εἶδος εἰσίν· οἷον ἄν τις ὡς ἀγαθὸν πεισόμενος αὐτὸς ἐπαγάγηται, εἶτα βλαβῇ, ὡς ὁ Καρπάθιός φησιν τὸν λαγώ· ἄμφω γὰρ τὸ εἰρημένον πεπόνθασιν.	The simile is good when it is a metaphor: one can liken the shield to the cup of Ares, and a ruin to the rag of a house, and say that Niceratus is a Philoctetes bitten by Pratys, the comparison Thrasymachus made when he saw Niceratus, beaten by Pratys in the rhapsode contest, still long-haired and unkempt. It is here above all that poets fail if they do it badly and win praise if they do it well. I mean when they spell out the comparison: "he wears his legs crinkled like parsley" / "like Philammon sparring with the punching bag." All such things are similes; and that similes are metaphors has been said many times. Proverbs, too, are metaphors from species to species. For example, if someone brings something in himself, thinking it will do him good, and is then harmed by it, we say he is like the man from Carpathus with the hare; for both have suffered what was described.[40]
ὅθεν μὲν οὖν τὰ ἀστεῖα λέγεται καὶ διότι, σχεδὸν εἴρηται τὸ αἴτιον· εἰσὶν δὲ καὶ εὐδοκιμοῦσαι ὑπερβολαὶ	Where witty sayings come from, then, and why, has more or less been explained. Well-received hy-

GREEK

μεταφοραί, οἷον εἰς ὑπωπιασμένον "ᾠήθητε δ' ἂν αὐτὸν εἶναι συκαμίνων κάλαθον" ἐρυθρὸν γάρ τι τὸ ὑπώπιον, ἀλλὰ τὸ πολὺ σφόδρα. τὸ δὲ ὥσπερ τὸ καὶ τὸ ὑπερβολὴ τῇ λέξει διαφέρουσα. ὥσπερ Φιλάμμων ζυγομαχῶν τῷ κωρύκῳ· "ᾠήθης δ' ἂν αὐτὸν Φιλάμμωνα εἶναι μαχόμενον τῷ κωρύκῳ." ὥσπερ σέλινον οὖλα τὰ σκέλη φορεῖν· "ᾠήθης δ' ἂν οὐ σκέλη ἀλλὰ σέλινα ἔχειν, οὕτως οὖλα." εἰσὶ δὲ ὑπερβολαὶ μειρακιώδεις· σφοδρότητα γὰρ δηλοῦσιν. διὸ ὀργιζόμενοι λέγουσιν μάλιστα· οὐδ' εἴ μοι τόσα δοίη ὅσα ψάμαθός τε κόνις τε.
κούρην δ' οὐ γαμέω Ἀγαμέμνονος Ἀτρείδαο,
οὐδ' εἰ χρυσείῃ Ἀφροδίτῃ κάλλος ἐρίζοι,
ἔργα δ' Ἀθηναίῃ. * χρῶνται δὲ μάλιστα τούτῳ Ἀττικοὶ ῥήτορες.

* 1413b διὸ πρεσβυτέρῳ λέγειν ἀπρεπές.

ENGLISH

perboles are also metaphors, for example of a man with a black eye: "You'd have thought he was a basket of mulberries"; for the bruise is reddish, but the quantity is greatly exaggerated. And "like this or that" is a hyperbole differing only in its form of expression. "Like Philammon sparring with the punching bag": "you'd have thought he was Philammon fighting the punching bag." "Wearing his legs crinkled like parsley": "you'd have thought he had not legs but parsley, they are so crinkled." Hyperboles are juvenile, for they show vehemence. That's why people use them most when they are angry: "Not even if he gave me as much as there is sand and dust."
"And the daughter of Agamemnon son of Atreus I will not marry,
not even if she rivaled golden Aphrodite in beauty, and Athena in her handiwork." * The Attic orators use this most of all.[41]

* 1413b That is why it is inappropriate for an older man to use them.

CHAPTER 12: STYLES FOR EACH KIND OF SPEECH

Written and spoken style, and the style suited to assembly, court and display.

GREEK

1413b δεῖ δὲ μὴ λεληθέναι ὅτι ἄλλη ἑκάστῳ γένει ἁρμόττει λέξις. οὐ γὰρ ἡ αὐτὴ γραφικὴ καὶ ἀγωνιστική, οὐδὲ δημηγορικὴ καὶ δικανική. ἄμφω δὲ ἀνάγκη εἰδέναι· τὸ μὲν γάρ ἐστιν ἑλληνίζειν ἐπίστασθαι, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἀναγκάζεσθαι κατασιωπᾶν, ἄν τι βούληται μεταδοῦναι τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὅπερ πάσχουσιν οἱ μὴ ἐπιστάμενοι γράφειν. ἔστι δὲ λέξις γραφικὴ μὲν ἡ ἀκριβεστάτη, ἀγωνιστικὴ δὲ ἡ ὑποκριτικωτάτη. (ταύτης δὲ δύο εἴδη· ἡ μὲν γὰρ ἠθικὴ ἡ δὲ παθητική)· διὸ καὶ οἱ ὑποκριταὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν δραμάτων διώκουσι, καὶ οἱ ποιηταὶ τοὺς τοιούτους. βαστάζονται δὲ οἱ ἀναγνωστικοί, οἷον Χαιρήμων (ἀκριβὴς γὰρ ὥσπερ λογογράφος)· καὶ Λικύμνιος τῶν διθυραμβοποιῶν. καὶ παραβαλλόμενοι οἱ μὲν τῶν γραφικῶν ἐν τοῖς ἀγῶσι στενοὶ φαίνονται, οἱ δὲ τῶν ῥητόρων εὖ λεχθέντες ἰδιωτικοὶ ἐν ταῖς χερσίν.

ENGLISH

We must not overlook that a different style suits each kind of speech. The style of written prose is not the same as that of live debate, nor is the style of speaking in the assembly the same as forensic style. One must know both: the one means knowing how to speak good Greek, the other means not being forced to keep silent when one wants to communicate something to others, which is what happens to those who don't know how to write. The written style is the most precise; the debating style is the one most suited to delivery. (The debating style has two kinds: one conveys character, the other emotion.) That is why actors seek out plays of this kind, and poets seek out actors of this kind. But poets written for reading are popular too, like Chaeremon (who is as precise as a speechwriter) and Licymnius among the dithyrambic poets. When compared, the speeches of writers seem thin in actual contests, while those of the orators,

40 The people of Carpathus were said to have brought hares onto their island, which then overran it.
41 The verses are Achilles rejecting Agamemnon's offer of gifts and a daughter in marriage (Homer, *Iliad* 9).

GREEK

αἴτιον δ' ὅτι ἐν τῷ ἀγῶνι ἁρμόττει· διὸ καὶ τὰ ὑποκριτικὰ ἀφῃρημένης τῆς ὑποκρίσεως οὐ ποιοῦντα τὸ αὑτῶν ἔργον φαίνεται εὐήθη, οἷον τά τε ἀσύνδετα καὶ τὸ πολλάκις τὸ αὐτὸ εἰπεῖν ἐν τῇ γραφικῇ ὀρθῶς ἀποδοκιμάζεται, ἐν δὲ ἀγωνιστικῇ οὔ, καὶ οἱ ῥήτορες χρῶνται· ἔστι γὰρ ὑποκριτικά.

ἀνάγκη γὰρ μεταβάλλειν τὸ αὐτὸ λέγοντας, ὅπερ ὥσπερ ὁδοποιεῖ τῷ ὑποκρίνεσθαι· "οὗτός ἐστιν ὁ κλέψας ὑμῶν, οὗτός ἐστιν ὁ ἐξαπατήσας, οὗτος ὁ τὸ ἔσχατον προδοῦναι ἐπιχειρήσας." οἷον καὶ Φιλήμων ὁ ὑποκριτὴς ἐποίει ἔν τε τῇ Ἀναξανδρίδου γεροντομανίᾳ, ὅτε λέγοι "Ῥαδάμανθυς καὶ Παλαμήδης," καὶ ἐν τῷ προλόγῳ τῶν Εὐσεβῶν τὸ "ἐγώ·" ἐὰν γάρ τις τὰ τοιαῦτα μὴ ὑποκρίνηται, γίγνεται "ὁ τὴν δοκὸν φέρων." καὶ τὰ ἀσύνδετα ὡσαύτως· "ἦλθον, ἀπήντησα, ἐδεόμην·" ἀνάγκη γὰρ ὑποκρίνεσθαι καὶ μὴ ὡς ἓν λέγοντα τῷ αὐτῷ ἤθει καὶ τόνῳ εἰπεῖν. ἔτι ἔχει ἴδιόν τι τὰ ἀσύνδετα· ἐν ἴσῳ γὰρ χρόνῳ πολλὰ δοκεῖ εἰρῆσθαι· ὁ γὰρ σύνδεσμος ἓν ποιεῖ τὰ πολλά, ὥστε ἐὰν ἐξαιρεθῇ, δῆλον ὅτι τοὐναντίον ἔσται τὸ ἓν πολλά.

ἔχει οὖν αὔξησιν· "ἦλθον, διελέχθην, ἱκέτευσα·" 1414a
πολλὰ δοκεῖ, "ὑπερεῖδεν ὅσα εἶπον." τοῦτο δὲ βούλεται ποιεῖν καὶ Ὅμηρος ἐν τῷ Νιρεὺς αὖ Σύμηθεν,
Νιρεὺς Ἀγλαΐης,
Νιρεὺς ὃς κάλλιστος. περὶ οὗ γὰρ πολλὰ λέγεται, ἀνάγκη καὶ πολλάκις εἰρῆσθαι· εἰ οὖν καὶ πολλάκις, καὶ πολλὰ δοκεῖ, ὥστε ηὔξησεν ἅπαξ μνησθεὶς διὰ τὸν παραλογισμόν, καὶ μνήμην πεποίηκεν, οὐδαμοῦ ὕστερον αὐτοῦ λόγον ποιησάμενος. ἡ μὲν οὖν δημηγορικὴ λέξις καὶ παντελῶς ἔοικεν τῇ σκιαγραφίᾳ· ὅσῳ γὰρ ἂν πλείων ᾖ ὁ ὄχλος, πορρώτερον ἡ θέα, διὸ τὰ ἀκριβῆ περίεργα καὶ χείρω φαίνεται ἐν ἀμφοτέροις· ἡ δὲ δικανικὴ ἀκριβεστέρα. ἔτι δὲ μᾶλλον ἡ ⟨ἐν⟩ ἑνὶ κριτῇ· ἐλάχιστον γάρ ἐστιν ⟨ἐνὶ⟩ ῥητορικῆς· εὐσύνοπτον γὰρ μᾶλλον τὸ οἰκεῖον τοῦ πράγματος καὶ τὸ ἀλλότριον, καὶ ὁ ἀγὼν ἄπεστιν, ὥστε καθαρὰ ἡ κρίσις.

ENGLISH

though well delivered, seem amateurish when held in the hand.

The reason is that the debating style suits a contest. That is why speeches written for delivery, once the delivery is taken away, fail to do their job and seem silly. Asyndeton, for example, and saying the same thing many times are rightly rejected in written style, but not in debating style, and orators use them, for they belong to delivery.

When saying the same thing, one has to vary it, and this, as it were, paves the way for delivery: "This is the man who robbed you, this is the man who deceived you, this is the man who finally tried to betray you." This is what Philemon the actor used to do in Anaxandrides' *Old Man's Madness*, when he said "Rhadamanthys and Palamedes," and with the "I" in the prologue of *The Pious*. If one does not act such things out, one becomes "the man carrying the beam." Asyndeta work the same way: "I came, I met him, I begged." One has to act it out and not say it in the same character and tone, as if it were a single thing. Asyndeta have a further peculiarity: many things seem to have been said in the same amount of time. For the connective makes many things one, so clearly, if it is removed, the opposite will happen: the one will become many.[42]

So it amplifies: "I came, I spoke with him, I entreated": 1414a it seems like many things; "he disregarded everything I said." Homer aims at this too in "Nireus from Syme,
Nireus, son of Aglaia,
Nireus, the most beautiful." For someone about whom many things are said must also have been named many times; so if he is named many times, it seems that many things are said. So Homer amplified him through this fallacy, though he mentioned him only once, and made him memorable, though he never speaks of him again. The style of speaking in the assembly is in every way like scene painting: the bigger the crowd, the more distant the view, so precise detail is wasted and looks worse in both. Forensic style is more precise, and the style used before a single judge still more so, since it leaves the least room for rhetoric. What belongs to the matter and what is foreign to

42 "The man carrying the beam" was proverbial for someone stiff and wooden.

GREEK	ENGLISH
	it is easier to take in at a glance, and there is no contest, so the judgment is unclouded.[43]
1414a διὸ οὐχ οἱ αὐτοὶ ἐν πᾶσιν τούτοις εὐδοκιμοῦσιν ῥήτορες· ἀλλ' ὅπου μάλιστα ὑποκρίσεως, ἐνταῦθα ἥκιστα ἀκρίβεια ἔνι. τοῦτο δὲ ὅπου φωνῆς, καὶ μάλιστα ὅπου μεγάλης. ἡ μὲν οὖν ἐπιδεικτικὴ λέξις γραφικωτάτη· τὸ γὰρ ἔργον αὐτῆς ἀνάγνωσις· δευτέρα δὲ ἡ δικανική. τὸ δὲ προσδιαιρεῖσθαι τὴν λέξιν, ὅτι ἡδεῖαν δεῖ καὶ μεγαλοπρεπῆ, περίεργον· τί γὰρ μᾶλλον ἢ σώφρονα καὶ ἐλευθέριον καὶ εἴ τις ἄλλη ἦθους ἀρετή; τὸ δὲ ἡδεῖαν εἶναι ποιήσει δῆλον ὅτι τὰ εἰρημένα, εἴπερ ὀρθῶς ὥρισται ἡ ἀρετὴ τῆς λέξεως· τίνος γὰρ ἕνεκα δεῖ σαφῆ καὶ μὴ ταπεινὴν εἶναι ἀλλὰ πρέπουσαν; ἄν τε γὰρ ἀδολεσχῇ, οὐ σαφής, οὐδὲ ἂν σύντομος. ἀλλὰ δῆλον ὅτι τὸ μέσον ἁρμόττει.	That is why the same orators do not excel in all of these. Where delivery counts most, there is least precision; and this is where voice is needed, especially a loud one. Ceremonial style is the most suited to writing, for its function is to be read; second is forensic style. To divide style further by saying that it must be pleasant and magnificent is superfluous. Why these rather than moderate and generous, or any other excellence of character? Clearly what has been said will make it pleasant, if the excellence of style has been correctly defined. For why else must it be clear and not flat, but appropriate? If it is garrulous, it is not clear, nor if it is too concise. Clearly the mean is what fits.
καὶ τὸ ἡδεῖαν τὰ εἰρημένα ποιήσει, ἂν εὖ μιχθῇ, τὸ εἰωθὸς καὶ ξενικόν, καὶ ὁ ῥυθμός, καὶ τὸ πιθανὸν ἐκ τοῦ πρέποντος. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς λέξεως εἴρηται, καὶ κοινῇ περὶ ἁπάντων καὶ ἰδίᾳ περὶ ἕκαστον γένος· λοιπὸν δὲ περὶ τάξεως εἰπεῖν.	What has been said will also make the style pleasant, if it is well blended: the familiar and the unfamiliar, rhythm, and the persuasiveness that comes from appropriateness. So much, then, for style, both in general for all kinds and in particular for each kind. It remains to speak about arrangement.

CHAPTER 13: THE PARTS OF A SPEECH

A speech needs only a statement of the case and its proof; at most four parts.

GREEK	ENGLISH
ἔστι δὲ τοῦ λόγου δύο μέρη· ἀναγκαῖον γὰρ τό τε πρᾶγμα εἰπεῖν περὶ οὗ, καὶ τοῦτ' ἀποδεῖξαι. διὸ εἰπόντα μὴ ἀποδεῖξαι ἢ ἀποδεῖξαι μὴ προειπόντα ἀδύνατον· ὅ τε γὰρ ἀποδεικνύων τι ἀποδείκνυσι, καὶ ὁ προλέγων ἕνεκα τοῦ ἀποδεῖξαι προλέγει. τούτων δὲ τὸ μὲν πρόθεσίς ἐστι τὸ δὲ πίστις, ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις διέλοι ὅτι τὸ μέν πρόβλημα τὸ δὲ ἀπόδειξις. νῦν δὲ διαιροῦσι γελοίως· διήγησις γάρ που τοῦ δικανικοῦ μόνου λόγου ἐστίν, ἐπιδεικτικοῦ δὲ καὶ δημηγορικοῦ πῶς ἐνδέχεται εἶναι διήγησιν οἵαν λέγουσιν, ἢ τὰ πρὸς τὸν ἀντίδικον, 1414b ἢ ἐπίλογον τῶν ἀποδεικτικῶν; προοίμιον δὲ καὶ ἀντιπαραβολὴ καὶ ἐπάνοδος ἐν ταῖς δημηγορίαις τότε γίνεται ὅταν ἀντιλογία ᾖ.	A speech has two parts: one must state the subject, and then prove it. That is why it is impossible to state without proving, or to prove without first stating; for whoever proves proves something, and whoever states something beforehand does so in order to prove it. Of these, the first is the statement and the second the proof, just as if one distinguished the problem from the demonstration. Today people divide speeches absurdly. Narration presumably belongs to forensic speech alone; how can a ceremonial or political speech have narration of the kind they describe, or a reply to the opponent, 1414b or an epilogue to its demonstrations? Introduction, counter-comparison, and recapitulation occur in speeches to the assembly only when there is a debate.
1414b καὶ γὰρ ἡ κατηγορία καὶ ἡ ἀπολογία πολλάκις, ἀλλ' οὐχ ἡ συμβουλή· ἀλλ' ὁ ἐπίλογος ἔτι οὐδὲ δικανικοῦ παντός, οἷον ἐὰν μικρὸς ὁ λόγος ἢ τὸ πρᾶγμα εὐμνημόνευτον· συμβαίνει γὰρ τοῦ μήκους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι. ἀναγκαῖα ἄρα	Accusation and defense, too, often occur in them, but not insofar as they are advice. And the epilogue, moreover, does not belong even to every

43 Scene painting used broad strokes of light and shade meant to be viewed from a distance.

GREEK	ENGLISH
μόρια πρόθεσις καὶ πίστις. ἴδια μὲν οὖν ταῦτα, τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα προοίμιον πρόθεσις πίστις ἐπίλογος· τὰ γὰρ πρὸς τὸν ἀντίδικον τῶν πίστεών ἐστι, καὶ ἡ ἀντιπαραβολὴ αὔξησις τῶν αὐτοῦ, ὥστε μέρος τι τῶν πίστεων· ἀποδείκνυσι γάρ τι ὁ ποιῶν τοῦτο, ἀλλ' οὐ τὸ προοίμιον, οὐδ' ὁ ἐπίλογος, ἀλλ' ἀναμιμνήσκει. ἔσται οὖν, ἄν τις τὰ τοιαῦτα διαιρῇ, ὅπερ ἐποίουν οἱ περὶ Θεόδωρον, διήγησις ἕτερον καὶ ἡ ἐπιδιήγησις καὶ προδιήγησις καὶ ἔλεγχος καὶ ἐπεξέλεγχος.	forensic speech, for instance if the speech is short or the matter easy to remember; for its effect is to cut down the length. So the necessary parts are statement and proof. These are the proper parts; at the most there are introduction, statement, proof, epilogue. The reply to the opponent is part of the proofs, and the counter-comparison is an amplification of one's own case, and so a part of the proofs; for whoever does this proves something. But the introduction does not, nor does the epilogue: it reminds. If one makes such divisions, as Theodorus' followers did, narration will be one thing and supplementary narration and preliminary narration others, and refutation one thing and further refutation another.
δεῖ δὲ εἶδός τι λέγοντα καὶ διαφορὰν ὄνομα τίθεσθαι· εἰ δὲ μή, γίνεται κενὸν καὶ ληρῶδες, οἷον Λικύμνιος ποιεῖ ἐν τῇ τέχνῃ, ἐπούρωσιν ὀνομάζων καὶ ἀποπλάνησιν καὶ ὄζους.	One should give a name only when one is describing a distinct kind and a real difference; otherwise it becomes empty and silly, like what Licymnius does in his *Art*, coining names like "Fair-sailing," "Wandering-off," and "Branches."

CHAPTER 14: THE INTRODUCTION

Introductions in ceremonial and forensic speeches, and their uses.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὸ μὲν οὖν προοίμιόν ἐστιν ἀρχὴ λόγου, ὅπερ ἐν ποιήσει πρόλογος καὶ ἐν αὐλήσει προαύλιον· πάντα γὰρ ἀρχαὶ ταῦτ' εἰσί, καὶ οἷον ὁδοποίησις τῷ ἐπιόντι. τὸ μὲν οὖν προαύλιον ὅμοιον τῷ τῶν ἐπιδεικτικῶν προοιμίῳ· καὶ γὰρ οἱ αὐληταί, ὅ τι ἂν εὖ ἔχωσιν αὐλῆσαι, τοῦτο προαυλήσαντες συνῆψαν τῷ ἐνδοσίμῳ, καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς λόγοις δεῖ οὕτως γράφειν· ὅ τι γὰρ ἂν βούληται εὐθὺ εἰπόντα ἐνδοῦναι καὶ συνάψαι, ὅπερ πάντες ποιοῦσιν. παράδειγμα τὸ τῆς Ἰσοκράτους Ἑλένης προοίμιον· οὐθὲν γὰρ οἰκεῖον ὑπάρχει τοῖς ἐριστικοῖς καὶ Ἑλένῃ. ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἐὰν ἐκτοπίσῃ, ἁρμόττει, καὶ μὴ ὅλον τὸν λόγον ὁμοειδῆ εἶναι.	The introduction is the beginning of a speech, corresponding to the prologue in poetry and the prelude in pipe-playing. All of these are beginnings, and as it were pave the way for what follows. The prelude resembles the introduction of ceremonial speeches. Pipe-players first play whatever they can play well and then attach it to the opening note of the piece, and ceremonial speeches should be written the same way: say straight off whatever you like, then give the keynote and join it on, which is what everyone does. An example is the introduction of Isocrates' *Helen*, for the eristics and Helen have nothing in common. At the same time, even if one strays from the subject, this is fitting, and it keeps the whole speech from being uniform.[44]
λέγεται δὲ τὰ τῶν ἐπιδεικτικῶν προοίμια ἐξ ἐπαίνου ἢ ψόγου, οἷον Γοργίας μὲν ἐν τῷ Ὀλυμπικῷ λόγῳ "ὑπὸ πολλῶν ἄξιοι θαυμάζεσθαι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες" ἐπαινεῖ γὰρ τοὺς τὰς πανηγύρεις συνάγοντας· Ἰσοκράτης δὲ ψέγει ὅτι τὰς μὲν τῶν σωμάτων ἀρετὰς δωρεαῖς ἐτίμησαν, τοῖς δ' εὖ φρονοῦσιν οὐθὲν ἆθλον ἐποίησαν. καὶ ἀπὸ	The introductions of ceremonial speeches are drawn from praise or blame. Gorgias, for example, in his *Olympic Speech*: "Worthy of admiration by many, men of Greece"; he praises those who founded the festival gatherings. Isocrates, on the other hand, blames them, because they honored excel-

44 Isocrates' *Helen* opens with an attack on the "eristics," contentious philosophical debaters, before turning to praise Helen.

GREEK	ENGLISH
συμβουλῆς, οἷον ὅτι δεῖ τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς τιμᾶν, διὸ καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀριστείδην ἐπαινεῖ, ἢ τοὺς τοιούτους οἳ μήτε εὐδοκιμοῦσιν μήτε φαῦλοι, ἀλλ' ὅσοι ἀγαθοὶ ὄντες ἄδηλοι, ὥσπερ Ἀλέξανδρος ὁ Πριάμου· [1415a] οὗτος γὰρ συμβουλεύει. ἔτι δ' ἐκ τῶν δικανικῶν προοιμίων· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἐκ τῶν πρὸς τὸν ἀκροατήν, εἰ περὶ παραδόξου λόγος ἢ περὶ χαλεποῦ ἢ περὶ τεθρυλημένου πολλοῖς, ὥστε συγγνώμην ἔχειν, οἷον Χοιρίλος νῦν δ' ὅτε πάντα δέδασται.	lences of the body with prizes but established no reward for those who think well. They are also drawn from advice, for example that one should honor the good, which is why the speaker himself praises Aristides; or that one should honor those who are neither famous nor worthless but are good without being recognized, like Alexander son of Priam; [1415a] for such a speaker is giving advice. They are also drawn from forensic introductions, that is, from appeals to the hearer, if the speech is about something paradoxical, or difficult, or already much talked about, in order to win indulgence, like Choerilus: "But now, when everything has been portioned out."[45]
1415a τὰ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἐπιδεικτικῶν λόγων προοίμια ἐκ τούτων, ἐξ ἐπαίνου, ἐκ ψόγου, ἐκ προτροπῆς, ἐξ ἀποτροπῆς, ἐκ τῶν πρὸς τὸν ἀκροατήν· δεῖ δὲ ἢ ξένα ἢ οἰκεῖα εἶναι τὰ ἐνδόσιμα τῷ λόγῳ. τὰ δὲ τοῦ δικανικοῦ προοίμια δεῖ λαβεῖν ὅτι ταὐτὸ δύναται ὅπερ τῶν δραμάτων οἱ πρόλογοι καὶ τῶν ἐπῶν τὰ προοίμια· τὰ μὲν γὰρ τῶν διθυράμβων ὅμοια τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς· διὰ σὲ καὶ τεὰ δῶρα εἴτε σκῦλα. ἐν δὲ τοῖς λόγοις καὶ ἔπεσι δεῖγμά ἐστιν τοῦ λόγου, ἵνα προειδῶσι περὶ οὗ ᾖ ὁ λόγος καὶ μὴ κρέμηται ἡ διάνοια· τὸ γὰρ ἀόριστον πλανᾷ· ὁ δοὺς οὖν ὥσπερ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα τὴν ἀρχὴν ποιεῖ ἐχόμενον ἀκολουθεῖν τῷ λόγῳ. διὰ τοῦτο μῆνιν ἄειδε θεά. / ἄνδρα μοι ἔννεπε μοῦσα.	The introductions of ceremonial speeches, then, come from these sources: praise, blame, exhortation, dissuasion, and appeals to the hearer. And the keynote must be either extraneous or related to the speech. As for the introductions of forensic speech, one must understand that they have the same function as the prologues of plays and the openings of epics; for those of dithyrambs resemble ceremonial introductions: "Because of you and your gifts, or spoils." In speeches and epics the introduction gives a sample of the subject, so that the audience may know in advance what the speech is about and their minds are not left hanging; for the indefinite leads astray. So whoever puts the beginning, as it were, into the hearer's hand lets him hold on and follow the speech. That's why we have "Sing, goddess, the wrath." / "Tell me, Muse, of the man."
/ ἄγεό μοι λόγον ἄλλον, ὅπως Ἀσίας ἀπὸ γαίης / ἦλθεν ἐς Εὐρώπην πόλεμος μέγας. καὶ οἱ τραγικοὶ δηλοῦσι περὶ τὸ δρᾶμα, κἂν μὴ εὐθὺς ὥσπερ Εὐριπίδης, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ προλόγῳ γέ που [δηλοῖ,] ὥσπερ καὶ Σοφοκλῆς ἐμοὶ πατὴρ ἦν Πόλυβος. καὶ ἡ κωμῳδία ὡσαύτως. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἀναγκαιότατον ἔργον τοῦ προοιμίου καὶ ἴδιον τοῦτο, δηλῶσαι τί ἐστιν τὸ τέλος οὗ ἕνεκα ὁ λόγος· διόπερ ἂν δῆλον ᾖ καὶ μικρὸν τὸ πρᾶγμα, οὐ χρηστέον προοιμίῳ. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἴδη οἷς χρῶνται, ἰατρεύματα καὶ κοινά. λέγεται δὲ ταῦτα ἔκ τε τοῦ λέγοντος καὶ τοῦ ἀκροατοῦ καὶ τοῦ πράγματος καὶ τοῦ ἐναντίου. περὶ αὐτοῦ μὲν καὶ τοῦ ἀντιδίκου, ὅσα περὶ διαβολὴν λῦσαι καὶ ποιῆσαι.	/ "Lead me to another tale, how from the land of Asia / a great war came to Europe." The tragedians, too, make clear what the play is about, if not immediately, as Euripides does, then at least somewhere in the prologue [makes it clear], as Sophocles does: "My father was Polybus." Comedy does the same. The most necessary function of the introduction, then, and the one proper to it, is this: to make clear what the end is for which the speech is given. That is why, if the matter is clear and small, one should not use an introduction. The other kinds people use are remedies, and common to all speeches. They are drawn from the speaker, the hearer, the matter, and the opponent.

45 Choerilus of Samos, a late fifth-century BC epic poet, lamented that all themes had already been taken by earlier poets.

GREEK

ENGLISH

Those concerning oneself and one's opponent are whatever serves to dispel or to create prejudice.

ἔστιν δὲ οὐχ ὁμοίως· ἀπολογουμένῳ μὲν γὰρ πρῶτον τὰ πρὸς διαβολήν, κατηγοροῦντι δ' ἐν τῷ ἐπιλόγῳ. δι' ὃ δέ, οὐκ ἄδηλον· τὸν μὲν γὰρ ἀπολογούμενον, ὅταν μέλλῃ εἰσάξειν αὑτόν, ἀναγκαῖον ἀνελεῖν τὰ κωλύοντα, ὥστε λυτέον πρῶτον τὴν διαβολήν· τῷ δὲ διαβάλλοντι ἐν τῷ ἐπιλόγῳ διαβλητέον, ἵνα μνημονεύσωσι μᾶλλον. τὰ δὲ πρὸς τὸν ἀκροατὴν ἔκ τε τοῦ εὖνουν ποιῆσαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ὀργίσαι, καὶ ἐνίοτε τὸ προσεκτικὸν ἢ τοὐναντίον· οὐ γὰρ ἀεὶ συμφέρει ποιεῖν προσεκτικόν, διὸ πολλοὶ εἰς γέλωτα πειρῶνται προάγειν. εἰς δὲ εὐμάθειαν ἅπαντα ἀνάξει, ἐάν τις βούληται, καὶ τὸ ἐπιεικῆ φαίνεσθαι· [1415b] προσέχουσι γὰρ μᾶλλον τούτοις. προσεκτικοὶ δὲ τοῖς μεγάλοις, τοῖς ἰδίοις, τοῖς θαυμαστοῖς, τοῖς ἡδέσιν· διὸ δεῖ ἐμποιεῖν ὡς περὶ τοιούτων ὁ λόγος.

These are not used in the same way. The defendant deals with prejudice first, the accuser in the epilogue. Why is not hard to see. When the defendant is about to bring himself forward, he must remove the obstacles, so he must dispel the prejudice first; while the one creating prejudice should do so in the epilogue, so that they remember it better. Appeals to the hearer aim at making him well disposed or angry, and sometimes attentive or the opposite; for it is not always useful to make him attentive, which is why many speakers try to make the audience laugh. Everything will lead to receptiveness, if one wishes, including appearing to be a decent person, [1415b] for people pay more attention to such speakers. Hearers attend to things that are important, that concern themselves, that are astonishing, that are pleasant; so one should give the impression that the speech is about such things.

1415b ἐὰν δὲ μὴ προσεκτικούς, ὅτι μικρόν, ὅτι οὐδὲν πρὸς ἐκείνους, ὅτι λυπηρόν. δεῖ δὲ μὴ λανθάνειν ὅτι πάντα ἔξω τοῦ λόγου τὰ τοιαῦτα· πρὸς φαῦλον γὰρ ἀκροατὴν καὶ τὰ ἔξω τοῦ πράγματος ἀκούοντα, ἐπεὶ ἂν μὴ τοιοῦτος ᾖ, οὐθὲν δεῖ προοιμίου, ἀλλ' ἢ ὅσον τὸ πρᾶγμα εἰπεῖν κεφαλαιωδῶς, ἵνα ἔχῃ ὥσπερ σῶμα κεφαλήν. ἔτι τὸ προσεκτικοὺς ποιεῖν πάντων τῶν μερῶν κοινόν, ἐὰν δέῃ· πανταχοῦ γὰρ ἀνιᾶσι μᾶλλον ἢ ἀρχόμενοι. διὸ γελοῖον ἐν ἀρχῇ τάττειν, ὅτε μάλιστα πάντες προσέχοντες ἀκροῶνται. ὥστε ὅπου ἂν ᾖ καιρός, λεκτέον, "καί μοι προσέχετε τὸν νοῦν· οὐθὲν γὰρ μᾶλλον ἐμὸν ἢ ὑμέτερον," καὶ ἐρῶ γὰρ ὑμῖν οἷον οὐδεπώποτε ἀκηκόατε δεινὸν ἢ οὕτω θαυμαστόν. τοῦτο δ' ἐστίν, ὥσπερ ἔφη Πρόδικος, ὅτε νυστάζοιεν οἱ ἀκροαταί, παρεμβάλλειν τῆς πεντηκονταδράχμου αὐτοῖς.

If one wants them not to be attentive, one should say that the matter is trivial, that it has nothing to do with them, that it is painful. But we must not overlook that all such things lie outside the speech proper. They are addressed to a poor hearer, one who listens to things outside the subject. If he is not like that, there is no need for an introduction, except to state the matter in summary, so that it has a head, as a body does. Further, making the audience attentive is common to all parts of the speech, if it is needed; for they slacken anywhere rather than at the beginning. So it's ridiculous to put this at the beginning, when everyone is listening most attentively. Wherever the moment is right, then, one must say, "And pay attention to me, for this concerns you as much as me," and "I will tell you something more terrible, or more astonishing, than anything you have ever heard." This is, as Prodicus said, slipping in a bit of the fifty-drachma lecture whenever the audience nodded off.[46]

ὅτι δὲ πρὸς τὸν ἀκροατὴν οὐχ ᾗπερ [ὁ] ἀκροατής, δῆλον· πάντες γὰρ ἢ διαβάλλουσιν ἢ φόβους ἀπολύονται ἐν τοῖς προοιμίοις. ἄναξ, ἐρῶ μὲν οὐχ ὅπως σπουδῆς ὕπο. / τί φροιμιάζῃ; καὶ οἱ πονηρὸν τὸ πρᾶγμα ἔχοντες ἢ δοκοῦντες· πανταχοῦ γὰρ βέλτιον διατρίβειν ἢ ἐν τῷ πράγματι, διὸ οἱ δοῦλοι οὐ τὰ ἐρωτώμενα λέγουσιν ἀλλὰ

That these appeals are addressed to the hearer not in his capacity as [the] hearer is clear: everyone, in their introductions, either creates prejudice or tries to dispel fears. "My lord, I will not say that from haste" / "Why the preamble?" So do those whose case is bad, or seems so. For it's better for

46 Prodicus of Ceos, a sophist, charged fifty drachmas for his full lecture on the correct use of words.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὰ κύκλῳ, καὶ προοιμιάζονται. πόθεν δ' εὔνους δεῖ ποιεῖν, εἴρηται, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἕκαστον τῶν τοιούτων. ἐπεὶ δ' εὖ λέγεται δός μ' ἐς Φαίηκας φίλον ἐλθεῖν ἠδ' ἐλεεινόν, τούτων οὖν δεῖ δύο στοχάζεσθαι.	them to dwell anywhere rather than on the case itself. That is why slaves don't answer what they're asked but talk around it, and make introductions. We have said from what sources one should make the audience well disposed, and each of the other things of this kind. And since it is well said, "Grant that I come to the Phaeacians as a friend and as one to be pitied," these are the two things one should aim at.[47]
* ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς οἴεσθαι δεῖ ποιεῖν συνεπαινεῖσθαι τὸν ἀκροατήν, ἢ αὐτὸν ἢ γένος ἢ ἐπιτηδεύματ' αὐτοῦ ἢ ἁμῶς γέ πως· ὃ γὰρ λέγει Σωκράτης ἐν τῷ ἐπιταφίῳ, ἀληθές, ὅτι οὐ χαλεπὸν Ἀθηναίους ἐν Ἀθηναίοις ἐπαινεῖν ἀλλ' ἐν Λακεδαιμονίοις. * τὰ δὲ τοῦ δημηγορικοῦ ἐκ τῶν τοῦ δικανικοῦ λόγου ἐστίν, φύσει δὲ ἥκιστα ἔχει· καὶ γὰρ καὶ περὶ οὗ ἴσασιν, καὶ οὐδὲν δεῖται τὸ πρᾶγμα προοιμίου, ἀλλ' ἢ δι' αὐτὸν ἢ τοὺς ἀντιλέγοντας, ἢ ἐὰν μὴ ἡλίκον βούλει ὑπολαμβάνωσιν, ἀλλ' ἢ μεῖζον ἢ ἔλαττον, διὸ ἢ διαβάλλειν ἢ ἀπολύεσθαι ἀνάγκη, καὶ ἢ αὐξῆσαι ἢ μειῶσαι. τούτων δὲ ἕνεκα προοιμίου δεῖται, ἢ κόσμου χάριν, [1416a] ὡς αὐτοκάβδαλα φαίνεται, ἐὰν μὴ ἔχῃ.	* In ceremonial speeches one must make the hearer think that he shares in the praise, either himself or his family or his way of life, or somehow or other. For what Socrates says in the Funeral Speech is true: it isn't hard to praise Athenians among Athenians, but among Spartans. * The introductions of political speech are drawn from those of forensic speech, but by its nature it has least need of them. The audience knows what the subject is, and the matter needs no introduction, except because of the speaker himself or his opponents, or if the audience doesn't take the matter to be as important as you want, but either more or less so. Then you have to either create or dispel prejudice, and either amplify or diminish. For these reasons it needs an introduction, or else for ornament's sake, [1416a] since speeches look slapdash if they don't have one.[48]
1416a τοιοῦτον γὰρ τὸ Γοργίου ἐγκώμιον εἰς Ἠλείους· οὐδὲν γὰρ προεξαγωνίσας οὐδὲ προανακινήσας εὐθὺς ἄρχεται "Ἦλις πόλις εὐδαίμων."	Such is Gorgias' encomium of the Eleans: without any preliminary sparring or warming up, he begins straight off, "Elis, happy city."

CHAPTER 15: MEETING PREJUDICE

Ways of dispelling an unfavorable suspicion, or rousing it against the opponent.

GREEK	ENGLISH
περὶ δὲ διαβολῆς ἓν μὲν τὸ ἐξ ὧν ἄν τις ὑπόληψιν δυσχερῆ ἀπολύσαιτο· οὐθὲν γὰρ διαφέρει εἴτε εἰπόντος τινὸς εἴτε μή, ὥστε τοῦτο καθόλου * * * ἄλλος τόπος ὥστε πρὸς τὰ ἀμφισβητούμενα ἀπαντᾶν, ἢ ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν, ἢ ὡς οὐ βλαβερὸν ἢ οὐ τούτῳ ἢ ὡς οὐ τηλικοῦτον, ἢ οὐκ ἄδικον ἢ οὐ μέγα, ἢ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν ἢ οὐκ ἔχον μέγεθος· περὶ γὰρ τοιούτων ἡ ἀμφισβήτησις, ὥσπερ Ἰφικράτης πρὸς Ναυσικράτην· ἔφη γὰρ ποιῆσαι ὃ ἔλεγεν καὶ βλάψαι, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀδικεῖν. ἢ ἀντικαταλλάττεσθαι ἀδικοῦντα, εἰ βλαβερόν, ἀλλ' οὖν καλόν, εἰ λυπηρὸν ἀλλ' ὠφέλιμον ἤ τι ἄλλο τοιοῦτον.	As for prejudice, one method is to use the means by which one might dispel an unpleasant suspicion; it makes no difference whether someone has voiced it or not, so this is a general method. * * * Another topic is to meet the disputed points by saying either that the thing is not so, or that it is not harmful, or not to this man, or not so much, or not unjust, or not a great wrong, or not shameful, or of no importance. For these are the sorts of things the dispute is about, as with Iphicrates against Nausicrates: he admitted he had done

47 The first line is the guard's in Sophocles' *Antigone*, the second is from Euripides; the prayer is Odysseus' in *Odyssey* 6.
48 The Funeral Speech is the one Socrates delivers in Plato's *Menexenus*.

GREEK

ENGLISH

what Nausicrates said, and had done harm, but denied that he had done wrong. Or, admitting the wrong, to offset it: if it was harmful, at least it was fine; if painful, yet beneficial; or something else of this sort.

ἄλλος τόπος ὡς ἐστὶν ἁμάρτημα ἢ ἀτύχημα ἢ ἀναγκαῖον, οἷον Σοφοκλῆς ἔφη τρέμειν οὐχ ὡς ὁ διαβάλλων ἔφη, ἵνα δοκῇ γέρων, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀνάγκης· οὐ γὰρ ἑκόντι εἶναι αὐτῷ ἔτη ὀγδοήκοντα. καὶ ἀντικαταλλάττεσθαι τὸ οὗ ἕνεκα, ὅτι οὐ βλάψαι ἐβούλετο ἀλλὰ τόδε, καὶ οὐ τοῦτο ὃ διεβάλλετο ποιῆσαι, συνέβη δὲ βλαβῆναι· "δίκαιον δὲ μισεῖν, εἰ ὅπως τοῦτο γένηται ἐποίουν." ἄλλος, εἰ ἐμπεριείληπται ὁ διαβάλλων, ἢ νῦν ἢ πρότερον, ἢ αὐτὸς ἢ τῶν ἐγγύς. ἄλλος, εἰ ἄλλοι ἐμπεριλαμβάνονται, οὓς ὁμολογοῦσιν μὴ ἐνόχους εἶναι τῇ διαβολῇ, οἷον εἰ ὅτι καθάριος ὁ ⟨δεῖνα⟩ μοιχός, καὶ ὁ δεῖνα ἄρα. ἄλλος, εἰ ἄλλους, διέβαλεν, ἢ ἄλλος αὐτούς, ἢ ἄνευ διαβολῆς ὑπελαμβάνοντο ὥσπερ αὐτὸς νῦν, οἳ πεφήνασιν οὐκ ἔνοχοι.

Another topic: that it was a mistake, or a misfortune, or a necessity. Sophocles, for instance, said that he trembled not, as his accuser claimed, so as to seem old, but from necessity: it wasn't by his own choice that he was eighty. And to offset the motive: that he didn't want to cause harm but to do such and such, and didn't mean to do what he is accused of, but the harm happened by accident: "It would be just to hate me if I had acted so that this would happen." Another, if the accuser has been implicated, either now or before, either himself or one of those close to him. Another, if others are included who are admitted not to be liable to the charge: for instance, if ⟨so-and-so⟩ is an adulterer because he's well groomed, then so-and-so must be too. Another, if he has slandered others, or someone else has slandered them, or without any slander they were suspected as he himself is now, and they have turned out not to be guilty.

ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ ἀντιδιαβάλλειν τὸν διαβάλλοντα· ἄτοπον γὰρ εἰ ὃς αὐτὸς ἄπιστος, οἱ τούτου λόγοι ἔσονται πιστοί. ἄλλος, εἰ γέγονεν κρίσις, ὥσπερ Εὐριπίδης πρὸς Ὑγιαίνοντα ἐν τῇ ἀντιδόσει κατηγοροῦντα ὡς ἀσεβής, ὅς γ' ἐποίησε κελεύων ἐπιορκεῖν· ἡ γλῶσσ' ὀμώμοχ', ἡ δὲ φρὴν ἀνώμοτος. ἔφη γὰρ αὐτὸν ἀδικεῖν τὰς ἐκ τοῦ Διονυσιακοῦ ἀγῶνος κρίσεις εἰς τὰ δικαστήρια ἄγοντα· ἐκεῖ γὰρ αὐτῶν δεδωκέναι λόγον ἢ δώσειν, εἰ βούλεται κατηγορεῖν. ἄλλος ἐκ τοῦ διαβολῆς κατηγορεῖν, ἡλίκον, καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι ἄλλας κρίσεις ποιεῖ, καὶ ὅτι οὐ πιστεύει τῷ πράγματι.

Another, from attacking the accuser in turn: it would be absurd if a man who is himself not to be trusted should have words that are to be trusted. Another, if there has already been a verdict. So Euripides replied to Hygiaenon, who in the exchange-of-property case was accusing him of impiety for having written a line urging perjury: "My tongue has sworn, but my mind is unsworn." Euripides said that Hygiaenon was doing wrong in bringing into the law courts judgments that belonged to the contest of Dionysus: he had given an account of his words there, or would give one, if Hygiaenon wanted to accuse him. Another, from attacking slander itself: how great an evil it is, and this because it substitutes other issues for trial, and because it shows no confidence in the case itself.[49]

* * * κοινὸς δ' ἀμφοῖν ὁ τόπος τὸ σύμβολα λέγειν, [1416b] οἷον ἐν τῷ Τεύκρῳ ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ὅτι οἰκεῖος τῷ Πριάμῳ· ἡ γὰρ Ἡσιόνη ἀδελφή· ὁ δὲ ὅτι ὁ πατὴρ ἐχθρὸς τῷ Πριάμῳ, ὁ Τελαμών, καὶ ὅτι οὐ κατεῖπε τῶν

* * * A topic common to both is to cite tokens, [1416b] as in the *Teucer* Odysseus says that Teucer is related to Priam, Hesione being Priam's sister; and Teucer replies that his father, Telamon, was Pri-

49 In an "exchange of property" (antidosis), an Athenian assigned a costly public service could challenge a richer man to take it on or swap estates with him. The line is from Euripides' *Hippolytus*, and his plays were judged at the festival of Dionysus.

GREEK	ENGLISH
κατασκόπων. * * * ἄλλος τῷ διαβάλλοντι, τῷ ἐπαινοῦντι μικρὸν μακρῶς ψέξαι μέγα συντόμως, ἢ πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ προθέντα, ὃ εἰς τὸ πρᾶγμα προφέρει ἓν ψέξαι. τοιοῦτοι δὲ οἱ τεχνικώτατοι καὶ ἀδικώτατοι· τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς γὰρ βλάπτειν πειρῶνται, μιγνύντες αὐτὰ τῷ κακῷ.	am's enemy, and that he did not inform on the spies. * * * Another, for the accuser: to praise something small at length and censure something great briefly; or, after setting out many good points, to censure one thing that bears on the issue. People like this are the most artful and the most unjust, for they try to do harm with good things by mixing them with the bad.[50]
1416b κοινὸν δὲ τῷ διαβάλλοντι καὶ τῷ ἀπολυομένῳ, ἐπειδὴ τὸ αὐτὸ ἐνδέχεται πλειόνων ἕνεκα πραχθῆναι, τῷ μὲν διαβάλλοντι κακοηθιστέον ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον ἐκλαμβάνοντι, τῷ δὲ ἀπολυομένῳ ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον, οἷον ὅτι ὁ Διομήδης τὸν Ὀδυσσέα προείλετο, τῷ μὲν ὅτι διὰ τὸ ἄριστον ὑπολαμβάνειν τὸν Ὀδυσσέα, τῷ δ' ὅτι οὔ, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ μόνον μὴ ἀνταγωνιστὴν ὡς φαῦλον.	Common to the accuser and the defender: since the same action can be done for several motives, the accuser must disparage it by taking it in the worse sense, the defender in the better. For example, Diomedes chose Odysseus. One side says it was because he thought Odysseus the best man; the other says no, it was because he was the only one who wouldn't be a rival, being worthless.

CHAPTER 16: NARRATION

How narration differs in ceremonial, forensic and deliberative speeches.

GREEK	ENGLISH
καὶ περὶ μὲν διαβολῆς εἰρήσθω τοσαῦτα, διήγησις δ' ἐν μὲν τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς ἐστιν οὐκ ἐφεξῆς ἀλλὰ κατὰ μέρος· δεῖ μὲν γὰρ τὰς πράξεις διελθεῖν ἐξ ὧν ὁ λόγος· σύγκειται γὰρ ἔχων ὁ λόγος τὸ μὲν ἄτεχνον, οὐθὲν γὰρ αἴτιος ὁ λέγων τῶν πράξεων, τὸ δ' ἐκ τῆς τέχνης· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἢ ὅτι ἔστι δεῖξαι, ἐὰν ᾖ ἄπιστον, ἢ ὅτι ποιόν, ἢ ὅτι ποσόν, ἢ καὶ ἅπαντα. διὰ δὲ τοῦτ' ἐνίοτε οὐκ ἐφεξῆς δεῖ διηγεῖσθαι πάντα, ὅτι δυσμνημόνευτον τὸ δεικνύναι οὕτως. ἐκ μὲν οὖν τούτων ἀνδρεῖος, ἐκ δὲ τῶνδε σοφὸς ἢ δίκαιος. καὶ ἁπλούστερος ὁ λόγος οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος δὲ ποικίλος καὶ οὐ λιτός.	So much for prejudice. Narration in ceremonial speeches is not continuous but piecemeal. One must go through the actions the speech is based on. For the speech is a composite: one part is non-technical, since the speaker is in no way responsible for the actions; the other comes from the art. This consists in showing either that something is so, if it is hard to believe, or of what kind it is, or how great, or all of these. That is why one sometimes shouldn't narrate everything continuously, because a demonstration of that sort is hard to remember. So: from these actions he is shown to be brave, from those wise or just. This kind of speech is simpler, the other intricate and not plain.
δεῖ δὲ τὰς μὲν γνωρίμους ἀναμιμνήσκειν· διὸ οἱ πολλοὶ οὐδὲν δέονται διηγήσεως, οἷον εἰ θέλεις Ἀχιλλέα ἐπαινεῖν· ἴσασι γὰρ πάντες τὰς πράξεις, ἀλλὰ χρῆσθαι αὐταῖς δεῖ. ἐὰν δὲ Κριτίαν, δεῖ· οὐ γὰρ πολλοὶ ἴσασιν * * * νῦν δὲ γελοίως τὴν διήγησίν φασι δεῖν εἶναι ταχεῖαν. καίτοι ὥσπερ ὁ τῷ μάττοντι ἐρομένῳ πότερον σκληρὰν ἢ μαλακὴν μάξῃ, "τί δ';" ἔφη, "εὖ ἀδύνατον;" καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὁμοίως· δεῖ γὰρ μὴ μακρῶς διηγεῖσθαι ὥσπερ οὐδὲ προοιμιάζεσθαι μακρῶς, οὐδὲ τὰς πίστεις λέγειν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐνταῦθά ἐστι τὸ εὖ ἢ τὸ ταχὺ ἢ τὸ συντόμως, ἀλλὰ τὸ μετρίως· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ τὸ λέγειν ὅσα δηλώσει τὸ πρᾶγμα, 1417a ἢ ὅσα ποιήσει ὑπολαβεῖν γεγονέναι ἢ	Well-known actions one need only recall, which is why many speeches need no narration at all. If you want to praise Achilles, for example: everyone knows his deeds, but you have to make use of them. If it's Critias, though, you do need a narration, for not many people know * * * At present people absurdly say that narration should be rapid. Yet, as the man said to the baker who asked whether he should knead the dough hard or soft, "What? Is doing it well impossible?"—so it is here too. One shouldn't narrate at length, just as one shouldn't make long introductions or state the

50 The *Teucer* is a lost play of Sophocles; Hesione was Teucer's mother.

GREEK	ENGLISH
βεβλαφέναι ἢ ἠδικηκέναι, ἢ τηλικαῦτα ἡλίκα βούλει· τῷ δὲ ἐναντίῳ τὰ ἐναντία.	proofs at length. Here too, doing it well doesn't mean doing it rapidly or concisely, but in due measure. That means saying as much as will make the matter clear, 1417a or as much as will make the hearer believe that it happened, or did harm, or was a wrong, or was as important as you want; and for the opponent, the opposite.[51]
1417a παραδιηγεῖσθαι δὲ ὅσα εἰς τὴν σὴν ἀρετὴν φέρει, οἷον "ἐγὼ δ' ἐνουθέτουν ἀεὶ τὰ δίκαια λέγων, μὴ τὰ τέκνα ἐγκαταλείπειν", ἢ θατέρου κακίαν· "ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατό μοι ὅτι, οὗ ἂν ᾖ αὐτός, ἔσται ἄλλα παιδία," ὃ τοὺς ἀφισταμένους Αἰγυπτίους ἀποκρίνασθαί φησιν ὁ Ἡρόδοτος. ἢ ὅσα ἡδέα τοῖς δικασταῖς. ἀπολογουμένῳ δὲ ἐλάττων ἡ διήγησις· αἱ γὰρ ἀμφισβητήσεις ἢ μὴ γεγονέναι ἢ μὴ βλαβερὸν εἶναι ἢ μὴ ἄδικον ἢ μὴ τηλικοῦτον, ὥστε περὶ τὸ ὁμολογούμενον οὐ διατριπτέον, ἐὰν μή τι εἰς ἐκεῖνο συντείνῃ, οἷον εἰ πέπρακται, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄδικον. ἔτι πεπραγμένα δεῖ λέγειν ὅσα μὴ πραττόμενα ἢ οἴκτον ἢ δείνωσιν φέρει. παράδειγμα ὁ Ἀλκίνου ἀπόλογος, ὅτι πρὸς τὴν Πηνελόπην ἐν ἑξήκοντα ἔπεσιν πεποίηται, καὶ ὡς Φάϋλλος τὸν κύκλον, καὶ ὁ ἐν τῷ Οἰνεῖ πρόλογος.	In passing, narrate whatever bears on your own excellence, for instance, "I kept admonishing him, always telling him what was just, not to abandon his children"; or on the other's vice: "But he answered me that wherever he was, there would be other children"—the answer Herodotus says the Egyptian deserters gave. Or whatever will please the jurors. For the defendant the narration is shorter. The points in dispute are that the thing didn't happen, or wasn't harmful, or wasn't unjust, or wasn't so serious, so one shouldn't dwell on what is agreed, unless something contributes to that, for instance, that it was done but was not unjust. Further, things should be told as already done, unless telling them as they happen brings pity or outrage. An example is the tale to Alcinous, because it is told to Penelope in sixty lines; and how Phayllus treated the epic cycle; and the prologue in the *Oeneus*.[52]
ἠθικὴν δὲ χρὴ τὴν διήγησιν εἶναι. ἔσται δὲ τοῦτο, ἂν εἰδῶμεν τί ἦθος ποιεῖ. ἓν μὲν δὴ τὸ προαίρεσιν δηλοῦν, ποιὸν δὲ τὸ ἦθος τῷ ποιὰν ταύτην· ἡ δὲ προαίρεσις ποιὰ τῷ τέλει. διὰ τοῦτο οὐκ ἔχουσιν οἱ μαθηματικοὶ λόγοι ἤθη, ὅτι οὐδὲ προαίρεσιν· τὸ γὰρ οὗ ἕνεκα οὐκ ἔχουσιν. ἀλλ' οἱ Σωκρατικοί· περὶ τοιούτων γὰρ λέγουσιν. ἄλλα ἠθικὰ τὰ ἑπόμενα ἑκάστῳ ἤθει, οἷον ὅτι ἅμα λέγων ἐβάδιζεν· δηλοῖ γὰρ θρασύτητα καὶ ἀγροικίαν ἤθους. καὶ μὴ ὡς ἀπὸ διανοίας λέγειν, ὥσπερ οἱ νῦν, ἀλλ' ὡς ἀπὸ προαιρέσεως· "ἐγὼ δὲ ἐβουλόμην· καὶ προειλόμην γὰρ τοῦτο· ἀλλ' εἰ μὴ ὠνήμην, βέλτιον·" τὸ μὲν γὰρ φρονίμου τὸ δὲ ἀγαθοῦ· φρονίμου μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῷ τὸ ὠφέλιμον διώκειν, ἀγαθοῦ δ' ἐν τῷ τὸ καλόν.	The narration should convey character. This will happen if we know what produces character. One thing is to reveal choice: the character is of a certain kind because the choice is of a certain kind, and the choice is of a certain kind because of its end. That is why mathematical discourses have no character: they have no choice either, since they have no "that for the sake of which." But Socratic dialogues do, for they speak of such things. Other things that convey character are those that go with each character: for instance, that he kept walking as he talked, which shows a rash and boorish character. And don't speak as if from the intellect, as people do now, but as if from choice: "But I wanted it; yes, I chose this; and even if I gained nothing, it's better." The first is the mark of a person of practical wisdom, the second of a good one. The person of practical wisdom shows himself in pur-

51 Critias, a writer and a leader of the Thirty, was killed in 403 BC.
52 Odysseus' long tale to King Alcinous fills *Odyssey* 9–12, but in book 23 he retells it briefly to Penelope. Phayllus seems to have summarized the epic cycle; the *Oeneus* is a lost play of Euripides.

GREEK

ENGLISH

suing the useful, the good person in pursuing the fine.

ἂν δ' ἄπιστον ᾖ, τότε τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπιλέγειν, ὥσπερ Σοφοκλῆς ποιεῖ· παράδειγμα τὸ ἐκ τῆς Ἀντιγόνης, ὅτι μᾶλλον τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἐκήδετο ἢ ἀνδρὸς ἢ τέκνων· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἂν γενέσθαι ἀπολόμενα, μητρὸς δ' ἐν Ἅιδου καὶ πατρὸς βεβηκότων / οὐκ ἔστ' ἀδελφὸς ὅς τις ἂν βλάστοι ποτέ. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἔχῃς αἰτίαν, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐκ ἀγνοεῖς ἄπιστα λέγων, ἀλλὰ φύσει τοιοῦτος εἶ· ἀπιστοῦσι γὰρ ἄλλο τι πράττειν ἑκόντα πλὴν τὸ συμφέρον. ἔτι ἐκ τῶν παθητικῶν λέγε διηγούμενος καὶ τὰ ἑπόμενα καὶ ἃ ἴσασι, καὶ τὰ ἴδια ἢ αὐτῷ ἢ ἐκείνῳ προσόντα· "ὁ δ' ᾤχετό με ὑποβλέψας." [1417b] καὶ ὡς περὶ Κρατύλου Αἰσχίνης, ὅτι διασίζων, τοῖν χεροῖν διασείων· πιθανὰ γάρ, διότι σύμβολα γίγνεται ταῦτα ἃ ἴσασιν ἐκείνων ὧν οὐκ ἴσασιν.

If something is hard to believe, then add the reason, as Sophocles does. An example is from the *Antigone*, that she cared more for her brother than for a husband or children, since those could be replaced if lost: "But with mother and father gone to Hades, / no brother could ever be born." If you have no reason, say that you aren't unaware that what you're saying is hard to believe, but that you are naturally like this. For people don't believe that anyone willingly does anything other than what is to his advantage. Further, in narrating draw on what expresses emotion, telling both what goes with it and what the audience knows, and what is peculiar to yourself or to the other man: "He went off with a scowl at me." [1417b] And as Aeschines says of Cratylus, "hissing, shaking his fists." These are persuasive because the things they know become tokens of the things they don't.[53]

1417b πλεῖστα δὲ τοιαῦτα λαβεῖν ἐξ Ὁμήρου ἔστιν. ὧς ἄρ' ἔφη, γρῆυς δὲ κατέσχετο χερσὶ πρόσωπα· οἱ γὰρ δακρύειν ἀρχόμενοι ἐπιλαμβάνονται τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. καὶ εὐθὺς εἰσάγαγε καὶ σεαυτὸν ποιόν τινα, ἵνα ὡς τοιοῦτον θεωρῶσιν, καὶ τὸν ἀντίδικον· λανθάνων δὲ ποίει. ὅτι δὲ ῥᾴδιον, ὁρᾶν ἐκ τῶν ἀπαγγελλόντων· περὶ ὧν γὰρ μηθὲν ἴσμεν, ὅμως λαμβάνομεν ὑπόληψιν τινά. πολλαχοῦ δὲ δεῖ διηγεῖσθαι, καὶ ἐνίοτε οὐκ ἐν ἀρχῇ. ἐν δὲ δημηγορίᾳ ἥκιστα διήγησις ἔστιν, ὅτι περὶ τῶν μελλόντων οὐθεὶς διηγεῖται· ἀλλ' ἐάν περ διήγησις ᾖ, τῶν γενομένων ἔσται, ἵνα ἀναμνησθέντες ἐκείνων βέλτιον βουλεύσωνται περὶ τῶν ὕστερον. ἢ διαβάλλοντες, ἢ ἐπαινοῦντες. ἀλλὰ τότε οὐ τὸ τοῦ συμβούλου ποιεῖ ἔργον.

Plenty of such things can be taken from Homer: "So she spoke, and the old woman held her hands over her face"—for people who are starting to cry put their hands to their eyes. And bring yourself on at once as a certain kind of person, so that they see you as such, and your opponent too; but do it without being noticed. That this is easy you can see from people who bring news: about people we know nothing of, we still form some idea. Narration should come in many places, and sometimes not at the beginning. In speaking in the assembly there is very little narration, because no one narrates the future. But if there is narration, it will be of what has happened, so that, being reminded of it, they may deliberate better about what comes later. Or else when attacking or praising someone. But then the speaker isn't doing the adviser's job.

ἂν δ' ᾖ ἄπιστον, ὑπισχνεῖσθαί τε καὶ αἰτίαν λέγειν εὐθύς, καὶ διατάττειν οἷς βούλονται, οἷον ἡ Ἰοκάστη ἡ Καρκίνου ἐν τῷ Οἰδίποδι ἀεὶ ὑπισχνεῖται πυνθανομένου τοῦ ζητοῦντος τὸν υἱόν, καὶ ὁ Αἵμων ὁ Σοφοκλέους.

If something is hard to believe, one should promise to give the reason, give it at once, and set it out for them in whatever way they wish. So Jocasta in Carcinus' *Oedipus* keeps making promises when the man searching for her son questions her; and so does Sophocles' Haemon.[54]

53 This Aeschines was a follower of Socrates who wrote dialogues; Cratylus was a philosopher of Heraclitus' school.
54 Carcinus was a tragic poet of the fourth century BC.

CHAPTER 17: PROOF

Proofs in each kind of speech: what is disputed, and the use of enthymemes and character.

GREEK	ENGLISH
τὰς δὲ πίστεις δεῖ ἀποδεικτικὰς εἶναι· ἀποδεικνύναι δὲ χρή, ἐπεὶ περὶ τεττάρων ἡ ἀμφισβήτησις, περὶ τοῦ ἀμφισβητουμένου φέροντα τὴν ἀπόδειξιν, οἷον εἰ ὅτι οὐ γέγονεν ἀμφισβητεῖται ἐν τῇ κρίσει, δεῖ τούτου μάλιστα τὴν ἀπόδειξιν φέρειν, εἰ δ' ὅτι οὐκ ἔβλαψεν, τούτου, καὶ ὅτι οὐ τοσόνδε ἢ ὅτι δικαίως, ὡσαύτως καὶ εἰ περὶ τοῦ γενέσθαι τοῦτο ἡ ἀμφισβήτησις. μὴ λανθανέτω δ' ὅτι ἀναγκαῖον ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἀμφισβητήσει μόνῃ τὸν ἕτερον εἶναι πονηρόν· οὐ γάρ ἐστιν ἄγνοια αἰτία, ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τινες περὶ τοῦ δικαίου ἀμφισβητοῖεν, ὥστ' ἐν τούτῳ χρονιστέον, ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις οὔ. ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς τὸ πολύ, ὅτι καλὰ καὶ ὠφέλιμα, ἡ αὔξησις ἔσται· τὰ γὰρ πράγματα δεῖ πιστεύεσθαι· ὀλιγάκις γὰρ καὶ τούτων ἀποδείξεις φέρουσιν, ἐὰν ἄπιστα ᾖ ἢ ἐὰν ἄλλος αἰτίαν ἔχῃ.	The proofs should be demonstrative. Since the dispute concerns four things, one should demonstrate by bringing the demonstration to bear on the point in dispute. For instance, if what is disputed at the trial is whether the thing happened, it is this above all that must be demonstrated; if it is that he did no harm, then this; and likewise if it is that the harm was not so great, or that it was justly done; and likewise if the dispute is over whether this happened. Don't overlook that in this dispute alone one of the two parties must be a villain. Ignorance is not the cause, as it might be if people were disputing about what is just. So this is the point to spend time on, but not the others. In ceremonial speeches, amplification will mostly be about the deeds being fine and beneficial. The facts themselves must be taken on trust; speakers rarely bring demonstrations of these, only if they are hard to believe or if someone else is held responsible.
ἐν δὲ τοῖς δημηγορικοῖς ἢ ὡς οὐκ ἔσται ἀμφισβητήσειεν ἄν τις, ἢ ὡς ἔσται μὲν ἃ κελεύει, ἀλλ' οὐ δίκαια ἢ οὐκ ὠφέλιμα ἢ οὐ τηλικαῦτα. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ὁρᾶν εἴ τι ψεύδεται ἐκτὸς τοῦ πράγματος. τεκμήρια γὰρ ταῦτα φαίνεται καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὅτι ψεύδεται. [1418a] ἔστιν δὲ τὰ μὲν παραδείγματα δημηγορικώτατα, τὰ δ' ἐνθυμήματα δικανικώτερα· ἡ μὲν γὰρ περὶ τὸ μέλλον, ὥστ' ἐκ τῶν γενομένων ἀνάγκη παραδείγματα λέγειν, ἡ δὲ περὶ ὄντων ἢ μὴ ὄντων, οὗ μᾶλλον ἀπόδειξίς ἐστι καὶ ἀνάγκη· ἔχει γὰρ τὸ γεγονὸς ἀνάγκην. οὐ δεῖ δὲ ἐφεξῆς λέγειν τὰ ἐνθυμήματα, ἀλλ' ἀναμιγνύναι· εἰ δὲ μή, καταβλάπτει ἄλληλα. ἔστιν γὰρ καὶ τοῦ ποσοῦ ὅρος. ὦ φίλ', ἐπεὶ τόσα εἶπες ὅσ' ἂν πεπνυμένος ἀνήρ, ἀλλ' οὐ τοιαῦτα.	In political speeches one might dispute either that something will happen, or that what the opponent urges will happen but is not just, or not beneficial, or not so important. One should also see whether he says anything false outside the matter at hand, for these look like sure signs that he is lying about the rest too. [1418a] Examples are most suited to political oratory, enthymemes more to forensic. The one is concerned with the future, so its examples must be drawn from the past; the other is concerned with what is or is not, where there is more room for demonstration and necessity, since what has happened has a kind of necessity. Enthymemes shouldn't be stated one after another, but mixed in; otherwise they spoil one another. For there is a limit of quantity too: "Friend, since you have said as many things as a sensible man would"—as many, not such things.
1418a καὶ μὴ περὶ πάντων ἐνθυμήματα ζητεῖν· εἰ δὲ μή, ποιήσεις ὅ περ ἔνιοι ποιοῦσι τῶν φιλοσοφούντων, οἳ συλλογίζονται τὰ γνωριμώτερα καὶ πιστότερα ἢ ἐξ ὧν λέγουσιν. καὶ ὅταν πάθος ποιῇς, μὴ λέγε ἐνθύμημα· ἢ γὰρ ἐκκρούσει τὸ πάθος ἢ μάτην εἰρημένον ἔσται τὸ ἐνθύμημα· ἐκκρούουσι γὰρ αἱ κινήσεις ἀλλήλας αἱ ἅμα, καὶ ἢ ἀφανίζουσιν ἢ ἀσθενεῖς ποιοῦσιν. οὐδ' ὅταν ἠθικὸν	And don't look for enthymemes about everything. Otherwise you'll do what some philosophers do, who prove by syllogism conclusions better known and more credible than the premises they argue from. And when you are rousing emotion, don't state an enthymeme: it will either knock the emotion out or be stated in vain. Movements that hap-

GREEK

τὸν λόγον, οὐ δεῖ ἐνθύμημά τι ζητεῖν ἅμα· οὐ γὰρ ἔχει οὔτε ἦθος οὔτε προαίρεσιν ἡ ἀπόδειξις.

γνώμαις δὲ χρηστέον καὶ ἐν διηγήσει καὶ ἐν πίστει· ἠθικὸν γάρ, "καὶ ἐγὼ δέδωκα, καὶ ταῦτ' εἰδὼς ὡς οὐ δεῖ πιστεύειν." ἐὰν δὲ παθητικῶς, "καὶ οὐ μεταμέλει μοι καίπερ ἠδικημένῳ· τούτῳ μὲν γὰρ περίεστιν τὸ κέρδος, ἐμοὶ δὲ τὸ δίκαιον." τὸ δὲ δημηγορεῖν χαλεπώτερον τοῦ δικάζεσθαι, εἰκότως, διότι περὶ τὸ μέλλον· ἐκεῖ δὲ περὶ τὸ γεγονός, ὃ ἐπιστητὸν ἤδη καὶ τοῖς μάντεσιν, ὡς ἔφη Ἐπιμενίδης ὁ Κρής. ἐκεῖνος γὰρ περὶ τῶν ἐσομένων οὐκ ἐμαντεύετο, ἀλλὰ περὶ τῶν γεγονότων μὲν ἀδήλων δὲ. καὶ ὁ νόμος ὑπόθεσις ἐν τοῖς δικανικοῖς· ἔχοντα δὲ ἀρχὴν ῥᾷον εὑρεῖν ἀπόδειξιν. καὶ οὐκ ἔχει πολλὰς διατριβάς, οἷον πρὸς ἀντίδικον ἢ περὶ αὐτοῦ, ἢ παθητικὸν ποιεῖν. ἀλλ' ἥκιστα πάντων, ἐὰν μὴ ἐξιστῇ.

δεῖ οὖν ἀποροῦντα τοῦτο ποιεῖν ὅπερ οἱ Ἀθήνησι ῥήτορες ποιοῦσι καὶ Ἰσοκράτης· καὶ γὰρ συμβουλεύων κατηγορεῖ, οἷον Λακεδαιμονίων μὲν ἐν τῷ πανηγυρικῷ, Χάρητος δ' ἐν τῷ συμμαχικῷ. ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἐπιδεικτικοῖς δεῖ τὸν λόγον ἐπεισοδιοῦν ἐπαίνοις, οἷον Ἰσοκράτης ποιεῖ· ἀεὶ γάρ τινα εἰσάγει. καὶ ὃ ἔλεγεν Γοργίας, ὅτι οὐχ ὑπολείπει αὐτὸν ὁ λόγος, ταὐτό ἐστιν· εἰ γὰρ Ἀχιλλέα λέγων Πηλέα ἐπαινεῖ, εἶτα Αἰακόν, εἶτα τὸν θεόν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἀνδρίαν, ἢ τὰ καὶ τὰ ποιεῖ ἢ τοιόνδε ἐστίν. ἔχοντα μὲν οὖν ἀποδείξεις καὶ ἠθικῶς λεκτέον καὶ ἀποδεικτικῶς, ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἔχῃς ἐνθυμήματα, ἠθικῶς· καὶ μᾶλλον τῷ ἐπιεικεῖ ἁρμόττει
1418b χρηστὸν φαίνεσθαι ἢ τὸν λόγον ἀκριβῆ.

1418b τῶν δὲ ἐνθυμημάτων τὰ ἐλεγκτικὰ μᾶλλον εὐδοκιμεῖ τῶν δεικτικῶν, ὅτι ὅσα ἔλεγχον ποιεῖ, μᾶλλον δῆλον ὅτι συλλελόγισται· παρ' ἄλληλα γὰρ μᾶλλον τἀναντία γνωρίζεται. τὰ δὲ πρὸς τὸν ἀντίδικον οὐχ ἕτερόν τι εἶδος,

ENGLISH

pen at the same time knock each other out, and either cancel each other or weaken each other. Nor, when you are making the speech convey character, should you look for an enthymeme at the same time, for demonstration has neither character nor choice.

Maxims should be used both in narration and in proof, for they convey character: "And I gave it, even though I knew one shouldn't trust." Or, to express emotion: "And I don't regret it, though I've been wronged; he has the profit, but I have justice." Speaking in the assembly is harder than speaking in court, understandably, since it concerns the future. In court the concern is the past, which is knowable already, even to seers, as Epimenides the Cretan said: he didn't prophesy about the future, but about things that had happened but were obscure. Also, in forensic speeches the law serves as a premise, and with a starting point it is easier to find a demonstration. And speaking in the assembly doesn't allow much lingering, for instance on attacking the opponent, or speaking about oneself, or rousing emotion. It allows these least of all kinds, unless the speaker strays from the subject.[55]

So when at a loss, one should do what the orators at Athens do, and Isocrates: even when giving advice, he accuses—the Spartans, for instance, in the *Panegyricus*, and Chares in the speech on the alliance. In ceremonial speeches one should vary the speech with episodes of praise, as Isocrates does: he is always bringing someone in. And what Gorgias used to say, that he never ran short of things to say, comes to the same thing. For in speaking of Achilles he praises Peleus, then Aeacus, then the god, and likewise courage, saying that it does this and that, or is of such a kind. Now if you have demonstrations, you should speak both so as to convey character and demonstratively; if you have no enthymemes, so as to convey character. And it is more fitting for a decent person 1418b to appear good than for his speech to be precise.[56]

Of enthymemes, those that refute are better received than those that demonstrate, because whatever amounts to a refutation is more evidently a syllogism: opposites are more recognizable

55 Epimenides was a semi-legendary Cretan seer, said to have purified Athens around 600 BC.
56 Achilles was the son of Peleus, son of Aeacus, son of Zeus. Chares is attacked in Isocrates' speech *On the Peace*.

GREEK

ἀλλὰ τῶν πίστεών ἐστιν, τὰ μὲν λῦσαι ἐνστάσει τὰ δὲ συλλογισμῷ. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν συμβουλῇ καὶ ἐν δίκῃ ἀρχόμενον μὲν λέγειν τὰς ἑαυτοῦ πίστεις πρότερον, ὕστερον δὲ πρὸς τἀναντία ἁπαντᾶν λύοντα καὶ προδιασύροντα. ἂν δὲ πολύχους ᾖ ἡ ἐναντίωσις, πρότερον τὰ ἐναντία, οἷον ἐποίησε Καλλίστρατος ἐν τῇ Μεσσηνιακῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ· ἃ γὰρ ἐροῦσι προανελὼν οὕτως τότε αὐτὸς εἶπεν.

ὕστερον δὲ λέγοντα πρῶτον πρὸς τὸν ἐναντίον λόγον λεκτέον, λύοντα καὶ ἀντισυλλογιζόμενον, καὶ μάλιστα ἂν εὐδοκιμηκότα ᾖ· ὥσπερ γὰρ ἄνθρωπον προδιαβεβλημένον οὐ δέχεται ἡ ψυχή, τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον οὐδὲ λόγον, ἐὰν ὁ ἐναντίος εὖ δοκῇ εἰρηκέναι. δεῖ οὖν χώραν ποιεῖν ἐν τῷ ἀκροατῇ τῷ μέλλοντι λόγῳ· ἔσται δὲ ἂν ἀνέλῃς. διὸ ἢ πρὸς πάντα ἢ τὰ μέγιστα ἢ τὰ εὐδοκιμοῦντα ἢ εὐέλεγκτα μαχεσάμενον οὕτω τὰ αὐτοῦ πιστὰ ποιητέον. ταῖς θεαῖσι πρῶτα σύμμαχος γενήσομαι· / ἐγὼ γὰρ Ἥραν. ἐν τούτοις ἥψατο πρῶτον τοῦ εὐηθεστάτου. περὶ μὲν οὖν πίστεων ταῦτα.

εἰς δὲ τὸ ἦθος, ἐπειδὴ ἔνια περὶ αὐτοῦ λέγειν ἢ ἐπίφθονον ἢ μακρολογίαν ἢ ἀντιλογίαν ἔχει, καὶ περὶ ἄλλου ἢ λοιδορίαν ἢ ἀγροικίαν, ἕτερον χρὴ λέγοντα ποιεῖν, ὅ περ Ἰσοκράτης ποιεῖ ἐν τῷ Φιλίππῳ καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀντιδόσει, καὶ ὡς Ἀρχίλοχος ψέγει· ποιεῖ γὰρ τὸν πατέρα λέγοντα περὶ τῆς θυγατρὸς ἐν τῷ ἰάμβῳ χρημάτων δ' ἄελπτον οὐθέν ἐστιν οὐδ' ἀπώμοτον, καὶ τὸν Χάρωνα τὸν τέκτονα ἐν τῷ ἰάμβῳ οὗ ἀρχὴ οὔ μοι τὰ Γύγεω. καὶ ὡς Σοφοκλῆς τὸν Αἵμονα ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἀντιγόνης πρὸς τὸν πατέρα ὡς λεγόντων ἑτέρων.

* δεῖ δὲ καὶ μεταβάλλειν τὰ ἐνθυμήματα καὶ γνώμας ποιεῖν ἐνίοτε, οἷον "χρὴ δὲ τὰς διαλλαγὰς ποιεῖν τοὺς νοῦν ἔχοντας εὐτυχοῦντας· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν μέγιστα πλεονεκτοῖεν." ἐνθυμηματικῶς δὲ "εἰ γὰρ δεῖ, ὅταν

ENGLISH

side by side. Replies to the opponent are not a separate kind of thing but belong to the proofs: some arguments are to be undone by objection, others by syllogism. Both in deliberation and in a trial, if you speak first, you should state your own proofs first, and afterwards meet the opposing arguments, undoing them and tearing them apart in advance. But if the opposition has many strands, take the opposing arguments first, as Callistratus did in the Messenian assembly: he first demolished what they were going to say, and only then made his own speech.

If you speak second, you should first address the opposing speech, undoing it and arguing against it, especially if it has been well received. For just as the soul doesn't welcome a person against whom it has already been prejudiced, in the same way it doesn't welcome a speech either, if the opponent seems to have spoken well. So you have to make room in the hearer for the speech to come, and that will happen if you demolish the other. That is why you should first do battle with all the points, or the most important, or the well-received, or the easily refuted ones, and then make your own case credible. "First I will be the goddesses' ally; / for I, as for Hera…" In these lines she first touched on the silliest point. So much for proofs.[57]

As to character: since saying some things about oneself invites envy, or long-windedness, or contradiction, and saying them about another invites a charge of abuse or boorishness, you should have someone else speak. This is what Isocrates does in the *Philip* and the *Antidosis*, and how Archilochus delivers his censure. In the iambic poem he has the father speak about his daughter: "Where money is concerned, nothing is beyond hope, nothing sworn impossible"; and Charon the carpenter in the iambic poem that begins "Not for me the wealth of Gyges." And so Sophocles has Haemon speak to his father on Antigone's behalf as if others were saying it.[58]

* One should also sometimes recast enthymemes and make them into maxims, for instance: "Sensible people should make peace when they are prospering, for that way they would gain the

57 Hecuba in Euripides' *Trojan Women*, answering Helen, first defends Hera and Athena against the tale of the Judgment of Paris.
58 Archilochus was a seventh-century BC poet famous for his iambic invective; Gyges was a king of Lydia proverbial for his wealth.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	ὠφελιμώταται ὦσιν καὶ πλεονεκτικώταται αἱ καταλλαγαί, τότε καταλλάττεσθαι, εὐτυχοῦντας δεῖ καταλλάττεσθαι." *	most." As an enthymeme: "For if one should come to terms when terms are most beneficial and most advantageous, then one should come to terms when prospering." *

CHAPTER 18: INTERROGATION AND JOKES

When to question the opponent, how to answer, and the use of jokes.

	GREEK	ENGLISH
	περὶ δὲ ἐρωτήσεως, εὔκαιρόν ἐστι ποιεῖσθαι μάλιστα μὲν 1419a ὅταν τὸ ἕτερον εἰρηκὼς ᾖ, ὥστε ἑνὸς προσερωτηθέντος συμβαίνει τὸ ἄτοπον, οἷον Περικλῆς Λάμπωνα ἐπήρετο περὶ τῆς τελετῆς τῶν τῆς σωτείρας ἱερῶν, εἰπόντος δὲ ὅτι οὐχ οἷόν τε ἀτέλεστον ἀκούειν, ἤρετο εἰ οἶδεν αὐτός, φάσκοντος δὲ "καὶ πῶς ἀτέλεστος ὤν";	As for questioning, the best time to use it is 1419a when the opponent has already stated one of two points, so that if one more question is asked, the absurdity follows. Pericles, for instance, questioned Lampon about initiation into the rites of the Savior goddess. When Lampon said that one couldn't hear about them without being initiated, Pericles asked whether he himself knew them; and when he said he did, Pericles asked, "And how, when you're uninitiated?"[59]
1419a	δεύτερον δὲ ὅταν τὸ μὲν φανερὸν ᾖ, τὸ δὲ ἐρωτήσαντι δῆλον ᾖ ὅτι δώσει· πυθόμενον μὲν γὰρ δεῖ τὴν μίαν πρότασιν μὴ προσερωτᾶν τὸ φανερὸν ἀλλὰ τὸ συμπέρασμα εἰπεῖν, οἷον Σωκράτης Μελήτου οὐ φάσκοντος αὐτὸν θεοὺς νομίζειν, εἴρηκεν ὡς ἂν δαιμόνιόν τι λέγοι, ἤρετο εἰ οὐχ οἱ δαίμονες ἤτοι θεῶν παῖδες εἶεν ἢ θεῖόν τι, φήσαντος δὲ "ἔστιν οὖν" ἔφη "ὅς τις θεῶν μὲν παῖδας οἴεται εἶναι, θεοὺς δὲ οὔ;" ἔτι ὅταν μέλλῃ ἢ ἐναντία λέγοντα δείξειν ἢ παράδοξον. τέταρτον δὲ ὅταν μὴ ἐνῇ ἀλλ' ἢ σοφιστικῶς ἀποκρινάμενον λῦσαι· ἐὰν γὰρ οὕτως ἀποκρίνηται, ὅτι ἔστι μὲν ἔστι δ' οὔ, ἢ τὰ μὲν τὰ δ' οὔ, ἢ πῇ μὲν πῇ δ' οὔ, θορυβοῦσιν ὡς ἀποροῦντος. ἄλλως δὲ μὴ ἐγχειρεῖν.	Second, when one point is obvious and it is clear that he will grant the other if asked. Having obtained the one premise by questioning, you shouldn't ask about the obvious one as well, but state the conclusion. For instance, when Meletus said that Socrates didn't believe in gods, but had admitted that he spoke of a divine sign, Socrates asked whether divine beings weren't either children of gods or something divine. When Meletus said yes, he said, "Is there anyone, then, who thinks there are children of gods, but not gods?" Again, when you are going to show that he is contradicting himself or saying something paradoxical. Fourth, when he can only get out of the question by giving a sophistical answer. If he answers that it is and it isn't, or partly yes and partly no, or in one way yes and in another no, the audience raises an uproar as if he were stuck. Otherwise don't attempt it.[60]
	ἐὰν γὰρ ἐνστῇ, κεκρατῆσθαι δοκεῖ· οὐ γὰρ οἷόν τε πολλὰ ἐρωτᾶν διὰ τὴν ἀσθένειαν τοῦ ἀκροατοῦ. διὸ καὶ τὰ ἐνθυμήματα ὅτι μάλιστα συστρέφειν δεῖ. ἀποκρίνασθαι δὲ δεῖ πρὸς μὲν τὰ ἀμφίβολα διαιροῦντα λόγῳ καὶ μὴ συντόμως, πρὸς δὲ τὰ δοκοῦντα ἐναντία τὴν λύσιν φέροντα εὐθὺς τῇ ἀποκρίσει, πρὶν ἐπερωτῆσαι τὸ ἐπιὸν ἢ συλλογίσασθαι· οὐ γὰρ χαλεπὸν προορᾶν ἐν τίνι ὁ λόγος. φανερὸν δ' ἡμῖν ἔστω ἐκ τῶν τοπικῶν καὶ τοῦτο καὶ αἱ	For if he raises an objection, you seem to have been beaten, since you can't ask a lot of questions because of the weakness of the audience. That is also why enthymemes should be compressed as much as possible. When answering, you should meet ambiguous questions by drawing distinctions in your answer, and not curtly. Meet apparent contradictions by offering the solution at once

59 Lampon was a famous Athenian seer. Mystery rites like these were open only to initiates.
60 The exchange is in Plato's *Apology*, where Socrates questions his accuser Meletus.

GREEK

λύσεις. καὶ συμπεραινόμενον, ἐὰν ἐρώτημα ποιῇ τὸ συμπέρασμα, τὴν αἰτίαν εἰπεῖν, οἷον Σοφοκλῆς ἐρωτώμενος ὑπὸ Πεισάνδρου εἰ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις προβούλοις, καταστῆσαι τοὺς τετρακοσίους, ἔφη. "τί δέ; οὐ πονηρά σοι ταῦτα ἐδόκει εἶναι," ἔφη.

"οὐκοῦν σὺ ταῦτα ἔπραξας τὰ πονηρά;" "ναὶ" ἔφη· "οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἄλλα βελτίω." καὶ ὡς ὁ Λάκων εὐθυνόμενος τῆς ἐφορίας, ἐρωτώμενος εἰ δοκοῦσιν αὐτῷ δικαίως ἀπολωλέναι ἄτεροι, ἔφη. ὁ δὲ "οὐκοῦν σὺ τούτοις ταὐτὰ ἔθου;" καὶ ὃς ἔφη. "οὐκοῦν δικαίως ἂν ἔφη καὶ σὺ ἀπόλοιο;" "οὐ δῆτα" ἔφη· "οἱ μὲν γὰρ χρήματα λαβόντες ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, ἐγὼ δὲ οὔ, ἀλλὰ γνώμῃ." διὸ οὔτε ἐπερωτᾶν δεῖ μετὰ τὸ συμπέρασμα, [1419b] οὔτε τὸ συμπέρασμα ἐπερωτᾶν, ἐὰν μὴ τὸ πολὺ περιῇ τοῦ ἀληθοῦς. περὶ δὲ τῶν γελοίων, ἐπειδή τινα δοκεῖ χρῆσιν ἔχειν ἐν τοῖς ἀγῶσι, καὶ δεῖν ἔφη Γοργίας τὴν μὲν σπουδὴν διαφθείρειν τῶν ἐναντίων γέλωτι τὸν δὲ γέλωτα σπουδῇ, ὀρθῶς λέγων, εἴρηται πόσα εἴδη γελοίων ἐστὶν ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιητικῆς, ὧν τὸ μὲν ἁρμόττει ἐλευθέρῳ τὸ δ' οὔ.

1419b ὅπως τὸ ἁρμόττον αὐτῷ λήψεται. ἔστι δ' ἡ εἰρωνεία τῆς βωμολοχίας ἐλευθεριώτερον· ὁ μὲν γὰρ αὐτοῦ ἕνεκα ποιεῖ γελοῖον, ὁ δὲ βωμολόχος ἑτέρου.

ENGLISH

in your answer, before he asks the next question or draws his conclusion, for it isn't hard to see in advance where the argument is going. Let this, and the ways of solving such arguments, be clear to us from the *Topics*. And when he is drawing a conclusion, if he puts the conclusion as a question, state your reason. For instance, Sophocles was asked by Pisander whether he had decided, like the other commissioners, to set up the Four Hundred, and he said yes. "What? Didn't you think this was wicked?" He said he did.[61]

"So you did these wicked things?" "Yes," he said, "for there was nothing better." And the Spartan who was being examined on his conduct as ephor was asked whether he thought the others had been justly put to death, and he said yes. The questioner said, "Didn't you pass the same measures as them?" And he said yes. "Then," he said, "wouldn't you also justly be put to death?" "Certainly not," he said. "They did these things for money, but I didn't —I acted on my judgment." That is why you shouldn't ask a further question after the conclusion, [1419b] nor put the conclusion as a question, unless the truth is overwhelmingly on your side. As for jokes, since they seem to have some use in contests, and Gorgias said, rightly, that one should destroy the opponents' seriousness with laughter and their laughter with seriousness, it has been stated in the *Poetics* how many kinds of jokes there are. Some of them suit a free man, others don't.[62]

This is so that the speaker may pick out what suits him. Irony is more fitting for a free man than buffoonery: the ironist makes a joke for his own sake, the buffoon for someone else's.

CHAPTER 19: THE EPILOGUE

The four tasks of the epilogue, ending with the words that end the work.

GREEK

ὁ δ' ἐπίλογος σύγκειται ἐκ τεττάρων, ἔκ τε τοῦ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν κατασκευάσαι εὖ τὸν ἀκροατὴν καὶ τὸν ἐναντίον φαύλως, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ αὐξῆσαι καὶ ταπεινῶσαι, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ εἰς τὰ πάθη τὸν ἀκροατὴν καταστῆσαι, καὶ ἐξ ἀναμνήσεως. πέφυκε γὰρ μετὰ τὸ ἀποδεῖξαι αὐτὸν μὲν ἀληθῆ τὸν δὲ ἐναντίον ψευδῆ, οὕτω τὸ ἐπαινεῖν καὶ

ENGLISH

The epilogue is made up of four things: disposing the hearer well toward yourself and badly toward your opponent; amplifying and depreciating; putting the hearer into emotional states; and recapitulation. For after you have shown that you are truthful and your opponent is false, the natural

61 In 411 BC Sophocles sat on the board of commissioners that helped bring in the oligarchy of the Four Hundred; Pisander was one of the oligarchs' leaders.

62 The ephors were Sparta's five chief magistrates, elected yearly and called to account when their term ended.

GREEK

ψέγειν καὶ ἐπιχαλκεύειν. δυοῖν δὲ θατέρου δεῖ στοχάζεσθαι, ἢ ὅτι τούτοις ἀγαθὸς ἢ ὅτι ἁπλῶς, ὁ δ' ὅτι κακὸς τούτοις ἢ ὅτι ἁπλῶς. ἐξ ὧν δὲ δεῖ τοῦτο κατασκευάζειν [δεῖ], εἴρηνται οἱ τόποι πόθεν σπουδαίους δεῖ κατασκευάζειν καὶ φαύλους. τὸ δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο δεδειγμένων ἤδη αὔξειν ἐστὶν κατὰ φύσιν ἢ ταπεινοῦν· δεῖ γὰρ τὰ πεπραγμένα ὁμολογεῖσθαι, εἰ μέλλει τὸ ποσὸν ἐρεῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἡ τῶν σωμάτων αὔξησις ἐκ προϋπαρχόντων ἐστίν.

ὅθεν δὲ δεῖ αὔξειν καὶ ταπεινοῦν, ἔκκεινται οἱ τόποι πρότερον. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα, δήλων ὄντων καὶ οἷα καὶ ἡλίκα, εἰς τὰ πάθη ἄγειν τὸν ἀκροατήν. ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν ἔλεος καὶ δείνωσις καὶ ὀργὴ καί μῖσος καὶ φθόνος καὶ ζῆλος καὶ ἔρις. εἴρηνται δὲ καὶ τούτων οἱ τόποι πρότερον, ὥστε λοιπὸν ἀναμνῆσαι τὰ προειρημένα. τοῦτο δὲ ἁρμόττει ποιεῖν οὕτως ὥσπερ φασὶν ἐν τοῖς προοιμίοις, οὐκ ὀρθῶς λέγοντες. ἵνα γὰρ εὐμαθὴς ᾖ, κελεύουσι πολλάκις εἰπεῖν. ἐκεῖ μὲν οὖν δεῖ τὸ πρᾶγμα εἰπεῖν, ἵνα μὴ λανθάνῃ περὶ οὗ ἡ κρίσις, ἐνταῦθα δὲ δι' ὧν δέδεικται, κεφαλαιωδῶς. ἀρχὴ δὲ διότι ἃ ὑπέσχετο ἀποδέδωκεν, ὥστε ἅ τε καὶ δι' ὃ λεκτέον. λέγεται δὲ ἐξ ἀντιπαραβολῆς τοῦ ἐναντίου. παραβάλλειν δὲ ἢ ὅσα περὶ τὸ αὐτὸ ἄμφω εἶπον, ἢ μὴ καταντικρύ.

"ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν τάδε περὶ τούτου, ἐγὼ δὲ ταδί, [1420a] καὶ διὰ ταῦτα." ἢ ἐξ εἰρωνείας, οἷον "οὗτος γὰρ τάδ' εἶπεν, ἐγὼ δὲ τάδε. καὶ τί ἂν ἐποίει, εἰ τάδε ἔδειξεν, ἀλλὰ μὴ ταδί;" ἢ ἐξ ἐρωτήσεως, "τί οὐ δέδεικται;" ἢ "οὗτος τί ἔδειξεν;" ἢ δὴ οὕτως [ἢ] ἐκ παραβολῆς ἢ κατὰ φύσιν, ὡς ἐλέχθη, οὕτως τὰ αὐτοῦ, καὶ πάλιν, ἐὰν βούλῃ, χωρὶς τὰ τοῦ ἐναντίου λόγου. τελευτὴ δὲ τῆς λέξεως ἁρμόττει ἡ ἀσύνδετος, ὅπως ἐπίλογος ἀλλὰ μὴ λόγος ᾖ "εἴρηκα, ἀκηκόατε, ἔχετε, κρίνατε."

ENGLISH

thing is then to praise and blame and hammer the point home. You should aim at one of two things: to show that you are good either to these people or absolutely, and that he is bad either to these people or absolutely. The topics from which one ought [ought] to construct this have been stated: those from which one should present people as good or as bad. The next thing, once the facts have been shown, is naturally to amplify or depreciate them. The deeds must be agreed if you are going to speak of their magnitude; the growth of bodies, too, comes from what is already there.

The topics for amplifying and depreciating have been set out earlier. After this, when it is clear what sort the facts are and how great, lead the hearer into emotions: pity, outrage, anger, hatred, envy, emulation, and strife. The topics for these too were stated earlier, so what remains is to recall what has been said. It is fitting to do this in the way people say one should in introductions, though they are wrong to say so: they tell you to repeat things often so that they are easily understood. There, you should state the case, so that the question to be decided isn't missed; here, you should state in summary the points by which it has been demonstrated. Begin by saying that you have delivered what you promised, so you must say what your points were and why. This is done by setting your case against your opponent's. You can compare either what you both said on the same point, or points not directly opposed.

"But he said this about it, and I said that, [1420a] and for these reasons." Or by irony, for instance: "He said this, and I said that. And what would he have done if he had proved this, and not that?" Or by a question: "What has not been proved?" or "What has he proved?" So either in this way [or] by comparison, or in their natural order, as they were stated, give your own points, and then again, if you wish, the points of the opposing speech separately. For the end, the style without connectives is fitting, so that it is an epilogue and not a speech: "I have spoken; you have heard; you have the facts; give your verdict."